High School

GERMAN GRAMMAR

W. D. [illegible], M.A.

AND

W. H. [illegible], B.A.

SEVENTY-FIVE CENTS.

Jas W. L. Prentice
Form IV
C. L. C.

Digitized by the Internet Archive
in 2009 with funding from
Ontario Council of University Libraries

http://www.archive.org/details/c2highschoolgewest00vand

THE HIGH SCHOOL

GERMAN GRAMMAR

WITH APPENDICES, EXERCISES IN COMPOSITION AND VOCABULARIES

BY

W. H. VAN DER SMISSEN, M. A.

LECTURER ON GERMAN, UNIVERSITY COLLEGE, TORONTO,

AND

W. H. FRASER, B. A.

LECTURER ON ITALIAN AND SPANISH, UNIVERSITY COLLEGE, TORONTO; LATE FRENCH AND GERMAN MASTER, UPPER CANADA COLLEGE.

Authorized by the Education Department of Ontario.

TORONTO:

THE COPP, CLARK COMPANY, LIMITED.

1888.

Entered according to Act of the Parliament of Canada, in the year one thousand eight hundred and eighty-eight, by THE COPP, CLARK COMPANY, LIMITED, in the Office of the Minister of Agriculture.

PRINTED BY
THE COPP, CLARK COMPANY, LTD.
TORONTO.

PREFACE.

In presenting this Grammar to the Public, the authors venture to express the hope that it will be found adapted to the wants, not only of High School teachers and pupils, but also to those of students of German in general.

The Lessons and Exercises have been made, as far as possible, strictly progressive, so that the beginner may not at the outset be overburdened and impeded by too copious vocabularies, or by too difficult exercises. At the same time each separate subject, as for instance the declension of substantives, is fully treated before being dissmissed. Copious examples are given in illustration of each rule.

In the Exercises, especial care has been taken that no grammatical point shall occur in any sentence on which the pupil has not been previously instructed, and also that every Exercise shall contain thorough practice in applying the principles, not only of the corresponding lesson, but also of past lessons.

An oral exercise, consisting of questions, to which the pupil should be required to supply the answers, accompanies each lesson. These oral exercises may be extended at will by the teacher.

The supplementary lessons contain chiefly special cases in grammatical usage, and are mainly for reference. These lessons should be omitted by the elementary pupil, and should not in any case be taken up on the first reading.

The grammar of the substantive, the adjective, the verb (including the passive voice), the pronouns and the principal prepositions, is disposed of in the first twenty-two lessons, together with the fundamental principles of word order, so that, with the completion of Lesson XXII, the pupil will be fully equipped

for reading easy German texts. The Modal Auxiliaries, however, could not be introduced in their proper connection until the strong verbs had been disposed of, and where they occur in reading texts must be treated as anomalous forms until Lesson XXXIII is reached.

Special care has been taken to call attention to and explain those points in which German differs from English usage, particularly with regard to the prepositions and their puzzling idioms, the use of participles and the construction of participial clauses, the order of words and construction of sentences. The Historical Sketch in Lesson LII does not claim to be more than rudimentary, and such terms only are employed in explaining phonetic laws as are likely to be familiar to junior pupils.

In the Vocabulary, only such meanings of words are given as occur in the exercises; for the principal parts of strong and irregular verbs the pupil is referred to the proper section of the Grammar. Similar references are given under the prepositions and pronouns.

The Index has been made as full as possible, and it is hoped that it will be of no little assistance to both teacher and pupil.

In writing this Grammar, the authors have freely consulted, among others, the grammars of Heyse, Whitney and Brandt, Vernaleken's "Deutsche Syntax," and the various works of Sanders, especially his great "Dictionary," his "Sprachbriefe," and his "Satzbau und Wortfolge der deutschen Sprache." For some of the examples in Lesson XLIX, as well as the sentences in Exercise G, the authors are indebted to Buchheim's "German Prose Composition."

University College,
Toronto, May, 1888.

CONTENTS.

	PAGE
PREFACE	iii
INTRODUCTION. — Alphabet	1
" Examples of Pronunciation	6
" General Remarks on Pronunciation	8
" Quantity of Vowels	9
" Accentuation	10
" Orthography	11
" German Script	13

PART I.

LESSON		PAGE	§§
I.	Present Indicative of **haben**, to have	17.	1, 2
II.	Use of Cases. — Definite Article	18.	3–5
III.	**Dieſer** Model. — Imperf. Indic. of **haben**, to have	20.	6, 7
IV.	**Mein** Model. — Indef. Article. — Present and Imperf. Indic. of **ſein**, to be	22.	8–15
V.	Declension of Substantives: — **Maler** Model, or **-l, -m, -n, -r** Stems	25.	16–18
VI.	Present and Imperfect of **werden**, to become. — Construction of Principal Sentences	28.	19, 20
VII.	Declension of Substantives: — **Sohn** Model. — Question Order	32.	21 23
VIII.	Conjugation of **haben**, to have. — Place of Participle and Infinitive	36.	24–26
IX.	Weak Conjugation: **loben**. — Dependent Sentences. — Prepositions with Accusative only	41.	27–34
X.	Weak Verbs (continued). — Declension of Substantives: — **Dorf** Model, or Plural in **-er**	47.	35–37

CONTENTS.

LESSON		PAGE	§§
XI.	Personal Pronouns	52.	38–42
XII.	Possessive Adjectives. — Use of Articles .	58.	43, 44
XIII.	Construction of Sentences: — Place of Objects, Adverbs, etc. — Prepositions with Dative only	64.	45, 46
A.	Additional Remarks on Personal Pronouns and Prepositions	70.	47–51
XIV.	Conjugation of **ſein**, to be. — Declension of Substantives: — Weak or -n Stems: **Knabe** Model	72.	52–59
XV.	Mixed Declension. — Double Plurals. — Prepositions governing Dative or Accusative .	80.	60–65
B.	Anomalies of Declension	87.	66–69
XVI.	Declension of Substantives: Recapitulation. — Proper Names. — Prepositions with Genitive	89.	70–75
C.	Proper Names. — Foreign Substantives .	95.	76–78
XVII.	Gender of Substantives. — Interrogative Pronouns and Adjectives. — Indirect Statements and Questions	97.	79–88
XVIII.	Gender of Substantives (concluded). — General Remarks. — Double Gender . .	105.	89–91
XIX.	Relative Pronouns. — Irregular Weak Verbs	111.	92–99
XX.	Declension of Attributive Adjectives: Strong Form. — Conjugation of Strong Verbs .	118.	100–111
XXI.	Passive Voice	126.	112–114
XXII	Declension of Adjectives: Weak and Mixed. — Strong Verbs: **beißen** Model . . .	134.	115–118
XXIII.	Possessive Pronouns.— Strong Verbs: **bleiben** Model	142.	119, 120
XXIV.	Declension of Adjectives (concluded): Table, General Remarks. — Strong Verbs: **ſchießen** and **fechten** Models	147.	121–124
XXV.	Comparison of Adjectives. — Strong Verbs: **frieren** Model	154.	125–131
XXVI.	Demonstrative Pronouns. — Strong Verbs: **ſingen** Model	162.	132–144
XXVII.	Indefinite Pronouns. — Strong Verbs: **ſpinnen** and **helfen** Models	171.	145–159
D.	On Certain Adjectives and Pronouns . .	178.	160–162

LESSON		PAGE	§§
XXVIII.	Numerals: — Cardinals and Ordinals. — Strong Verbs: **ſprechen** Model	180.	163–167
XXIX.	Indefinite Numerals.— Strong Verbs: **eſſen** Model	189.	168–181
XXX.	Derivative Numerals. — Time, Measure, Date. — Strong Verbs: **ſchlagen** Model	196.	182–186
XXXI.	Adverbs. — Strong Verbs: **fallen** Model	204.	187, 188
XXXII.	Adverbs (continued): Formation and Comparison. — Table of Strong Verbs and General Remarks on the same	210.	189–194
XXXIII.	Adverbs (continued): Idioms. — Irregular Strong Verbs	217.	195, 196
XXXIV.	Modal Auxiliaries	225.	197–199
XXXV.	Modal Auxiliaries (continued): Idioms	233.	200–202
XXXVI.	Compound Verbs	239.	203–208
E.	On Certain Prefixes	246.	209–213
XXXVII.	Reflexive and Impersonal Verbs	249.	214–220
XXXVIII.	Prepositions governing the Genitive	257.	221–224
XXXIX.	Prepositions (continued): — Idioms	264.	225–234
XL.	Conjunctions. — Interjections	273.	235–240
F.	Conjunctions. — Additional Remarks	282.	241

PART II.

SYNTAX.

XLI.	Syntax of the Cases. — Nominative and Genitive	286.	242–247
XLII.	Syntax of the Cases. — Dative and Accusative	291.	248–255
XLIII.	Indicative Mood: Syntax of its Tenses	299.	256–262
XLIV.	Subjunctive and Conditional Moods	304.	263–268
XLV.	Imperative and Infinitive Moods.	311.	269–272
XLVI.	Infinitive Mood (continued)	318.	273–278
XLVII.	The Participles	325.	279–284
XLVIII.	Concord and Apposition	334.	285–289
XLIX.	Apposition (continued): Appositive Adjectives. —Syntax of the Preposition	341.	290, 291
L.	Word-Order	348.	292–301
G.	Complex Sentences — Clause-Order	360.	302–306

PART III.

WORD-FORMATION AND HISTORICAL SKETCH.

LESSON		PAGE	§§
LI.	Word-Formation: — Derivation and Composition	364.	307–321
LII.	Historical Sketch of the Language, Grimm's Law, Umlaut	374.	322–326

APPENDICES.

A.	Substantives of Maler Model with Umlaut	381.	17
B.	Masculine Monosyllables of Hund Model	381.	22
C.	Feminines of Sohn Model	382.	22
D.	Irregular Foreign Substantives	382.	22
E.	Neuter Monosyllables of Hund Model	382.	22
F.	Weak Masculines not ending in -e	383.	57
G.	Substantives of Mixed Declension	383.	61
*G.**	Double Plurals with Different Meaning	384.	64
H.	Plurals of Abstract Substantives	384.	66
I.	Exceptions to the Rules on Gender	385.	80, 89, 90
J.	Double Genders	388.	91
K.	Monosyllabic Adjectives without Umlaut in Comparison	389.	125
L.	Strong Verbs not given in the Lists	389.	192

	PAGE
EXERCISES IN COMPOSITION	390
ABBREVIATIONS	404
VOCABULARY: German-English	405
VOCABULARY: English-German	423
INDEX	440

INTRODUCTION.

(For Reference only.)

THE GERMAN ALPHABET.

Characters.	Name.	Sound.	Observe the difference between
𝔄 𝔞	*ah*	like *a* in f*a*ther; never as in b*a*ll, h*a*t, c*a*re.	𝔄 and 𝔘.
𝔅 𝔟	*bay*	as in Eng., except at end of word or syll., when pron. like *p*.	𝔅 and 𝔙; 𝔟, 𝔥, 𝔳 and 𝔶.
ℭ 𝔠	*tsay*	before ä, e, i, and 𝔶, like *ts*; otherwise like *k*; in words from French, before e and i, like *ss*.	ℭ and 𝔈; 𝔠 and 𝔢.
𝔇 𝔡	*day*	as in Eng., except at end of word or syll., when pron. like *t*.	𝔇 and 𝔒.
𝔈 𝔢	*ay*	long, like *a* in g*a*me; short, like *e* in p*e*n; when final or in unaccented prefixes, like short *ă* in Louis*ă*.	𝔈 and ℭ; 𝔢 and 𝔠.
𝔉 𝔣	*eff*	as in English.	𝔣 and 𝔰.
𝔊 𝔤	*gay*	always hard, before all vowels and before l, m, n, r, like *g* in *g*ive; at end of words and sylls., or before other consonants, like Germ. ch; in words from French, before e and i, like *s* in plea*s*ure.	𝔊 and 𝔖.

Characters.	Name.	Sound.	Observe the difference between
𝔥	*hah*	always aspirated before vowels, as in *h*at; silent before consonants, after t, between vowels, and when final.	𝔟, 𝔥, 𝔳 and 𝔶.
𝔦	*ee*	long, like *e* in h*e*; short, like *i* in sk*i*n.	
𝔧	*yot*	like *y* in *y*et; in words from French, like *s* in plea*s*ure.	
𝔨	*kah*		𝔨 and ℜ.
𝔩	*ell*		
𝔪	*em*		𝔐 and 𝔚; 𝔪 and 𝔴.
𝔫	*en*	as in English.	𝔑 and ℜ.
𝔬	*o*		
𝔭	*pay*		
𝔮	*koo*		
𝔯	*err*	like Eng. *r* with strong guttural roll; formed by making the tongue convex, and checking the breath by gently pressing the middle of the tongue against the roof of the mouth.	ℜ and 𝔨; 𝔯 and 𝔷.
𝔰 ſ	*ess*	before vowels, like *z* in *z*one, or *s* in dai*s*y; before consonants, and when final, like *s* in ye*s*; but see ſ𝔥, ſ𝔱, ſ𝔭, below. 𝔰 is used at the end of words, otherwise ſ.	ſ and ſ.

Characters.	Name.	Sound.	Observe the difference between
𝔗 𝔱	*tay*	as in Eng.; t𝔥 also like *t*; t𝔦 in foreign words, preceding another vowel, like *tse*.	
𝔘 𝔲	*oo*	long, like *oo* in b*oo*t; short, like *oo* in f*oo*t.	𝔘 and 𝔄.
𝔙 𝔳	*fow*	like Eng. *f* in Germ. words; in foreign words, like Eng. *v*.	𝔙 and 𝔅; 𝔳, 𝔟, 𝔥, 𝔶.
𝔚 𝔴	*vay*	like Eng. *v*, except after ſ𝔥 and ȝ, when pron. like Eng. *w*.	
𝔛 𝔵	*iks*	like *ks*, even when initial.	𝔵 and 𝔯.
𝔜 𝔶	*ypsilon*	like the Germ. vowel i; or like ü.	
𝔝 ȝ	*tset*	like *ts*.	

MODIFIED VOWELS (UMLAUTS).

Characters.		Sound.
𝔄̈ (𝔄𝔢)	ä	like the Germ. vowel e. (The forms 𝔄𝔢, etc., are replaced by 𝔄̈, etc., in modern orthography.)
𝔒̈ (𝔒𝔢)	ö	about like *u* in m*u*rder; nearly like French *eu*, but with lips rounded and nearly closed.
𝔘̈ (𝔘𝔢)	ü	nearly like French *u*; there is no corresponding sound in Eng. Pronounced with lips rounded and pointed, as for whistling.

DOUBLE VOWELS.

Characters.		Sound.
Aa	aa	like long a (*a* in f*a*rm).
Ee	ee	" " e (*a* " c*a*re).
Oo	oo	" " o (never like Eng. *oo*).

DIPHTHONGS.

Characters.		Sound.
Ai	ai	like *i* in f*i*re.
Ei	ei	
Au	au	like *ou* in h*ou*r.
Äu (Aeu)	äu	like *oy* in j*oy*.
Eu	eu	
	ie	like *ie* in f*ie*ld (not found at the beginning of words); in the unaccented sylls. of foreign words, i and e are pronounced separately.

CONSONANTAL DIGRAPHS AND TRIGRAPHS.

Characters.		Sound.
Ch	ch	after a, o, u, au, like *ch* in Scotch lo*ch*; softer after ä, e, i, ö, ü, äu, eu; it does not occur at the beginning, except in foreign words, where it is pronounced like *k* before a, o, u, and like final ch before e, i. In French words it has the sound of *sh*, as in French; chs when in one syll. = *x*.

Characters.		Sound.
	ck	like Eng. *ck;* when divided between two lines, is written k-k; not found at beginning.
Pf	pf	pronounce both p and f distinctly.
Ph	ph	as in Eng.; in foreign words only.
Sch	ſch	like *sh* in Eng.; but when the s is in a distinct syll., pron. separately.
Sp	ſp	like soft *shp* in Eng. at the beginning; otherwise like *sp*.
St	ſt	like soft *sht* in Eng. at the beginning; otherwise like *st*.
	ſſ ß	like *ss;* ß replaces ſſ after long vowels in the middle of a word, and always when final. Hence Fuß (long u), gen. Fußes; but Fluß (short u), gen. Fluſſes; and beißen, biß, gebiſſen. Diphthongs are always followed by ß. Not found at the beginning.
	tz	like *ts*. It stands for zz. Not found at the beginning.

EXAMPLES OF PRONUNCIATION.

Simple Vowels.

A long: gar, bat, kam; short: kalt, Mann, Kamm.

E long: her, den, dem; short: Herr, denn, Bett.

In formative sylls. foll. by a consonant shorter still: Fenſter, haben, Eſel.

In final syll. not foll. by a consonant, like *ă* in Louis*ă*: Ende, Habe, Gabe. Also in prefixes, as in the first syll. of gehangen, gefallen, Gedanken, befallen, bedenken.

I long: mir, dir, Mine; short: ſtill, mit, bitten.

O long: Ton, loben, holen; short: Tonne, kommen, ſoll.

U long: Hut, du, Blutes; short: Mutter, dumm, unter.

Y long: Dynami't, Poly'p; short: Myrte, Syſte'm.

Double Vowels (all long).

Aa: Haar, Aal, Staat. | **Ee**: Klee, leer, Beet.

Oo: Boot, Moos, Loos.

Modified Vowels (Umlauts).

Ä long: Bär, käme, prägen; short: hätte, Kämme, fällt.

Ö long: Öl, Töne, Ströme; short: könnte, Götter, öffnen.

Ü long: Hüte, für, Übel; short: Hütte, füllen, müſſen.

Diphthongs (all long).

Ai: Mai, Hain, Main.

Ei: mein, heiter, bleiben.

Au: Haut, Aue, blau.

Äu: Häute, Bäume, läuten.

Eu: heute, neu, Leute.

Ie: die, hier, tief (in some foreign words, pron. i–e: Familie, Spanien, Linie).

Simple Consonants.

b	final (= *p*)	ab, Grab, ob.
c	soft (= *ts*)	Cäſar, Ceremonie, Cicero.
d	final (= *t*)	Rad, Tod, Lied.
g	(= *g* in *g*ive)	geben, beginnen, Tages.
	(= *ch*)	Tag, bog, gütig, Magd.
	(= *zh* in French words)	Genie, Gage, Page.
h	mute	Höhe, Lohe, Krähe, führen, ſah, Bahn, Thüre, Thaler, Rat(h), Mut(h).
j	(= *y*)	jeder, jemand, Jakob.
	(= *zh* in French words)	Jalouſie, Journal.
r		rede, murren, Paar, Stern, Erde, Prediger.
ſ	initial and medial (= *s* in daisy)	Sonne, dieſer, Sattel, Häuſer.
s	final (= *s* in yes)	Haus, dies, es, Laſter, lesbar.
t	in foreign words before i (= *ts*)	national, Patient.
v	in Germ. words (= *f*)	von, Vater, Vetter.
	in foreign words (= *v*)	November, dividieren, Advokat.
w	(= Eng. *v*)	wenn, wer, wo, wie.
	(after ſch and z = Eng. *w*)	Schweſter, ſchwer, zwei, Zweck.
x	initial (= *ks*)	Xerxes, Xenophon.
z	(= *ts*)	Zierde, zu, zwanzig, Zorn.

Remark. — In the above list, only those consonants are given, which differ in pronunciation from their equivalents in English. Below are given also certain consonantal combinations, most of which do not occur in English.

Consonantal Digraphs and Trigraphs.

ch	initial (= *k*)	**Character, Chor, Chriſt.**
	" (=ch guttural)	**Chiru'rg, Chemie'.**
	medial and final (guttural)	**acht, Loches, hoch, Buch, Blech, bleich, ich, Löcher, Bücher.**
	in French words (= *sh*)	**Charlatan, Chicane.**
	(in same syll. = *x*)	**Dachs, Ochs, Lachs, Achſe.**
pf		**Pferd, Pfennig, hüpfen.**
ſch	(= *sh*)	**Schaf, Schnee, Schiff;** but pron. **s** separately when it belongs to a different syll., as: **Häus-chen, Gäns-chen.**
ſt	initial (= *sht* softened)	**Stand, ſtehen, Stengel, Stube.**
ſp	initial (= *shp* softened)	**ſpüren, Sprüche, Sporn.**
ſſ	(preceding vowel short)	**müſſen, küſſen, laſſen, Meſſe.**
ß	medial (preceding vowel long)	**größer, ſtoßen, fraßen.**
	final (preceding vowel long)	**Maß, groß, Fuß** (gen. **Fußes**).
	final (preceding vowel short)	**Faß** (gen. **Faſſes**), **Roß** (gen. **Roſſes**), **Fluß** (gen. **Fluſſes**).

A. GENERAL REMARKS ON PRONUNCIATION.

1. The acquisition of a correct and pure pronunciation of the vowels is the most important point to be attended to; especially that of the vowel **a**, which must never have a shade of the sound of the Eng. *a* in h*a*t, b*a*ll, or c*a*ne. **Look after your vowels, and the consonants will look after themselves.**

2. The most difficult vowel-sounds are the *Umlauts*, or *modified vowels*, especially **ö** and **ü**, which must be learned from the teacher.

3. The only difficult consonant-sounds are:

r, with strong guttural roll.

ſ, initial, and medial before vowels, which is like *s* in dai*s*y, or *z* in *z*one.

ß final = *ss* in English.

ch (and g final), which must be learned from the teacher.

4. The pronunciation of the following consonants, though not difficult, differs from the English pronunciation:

b final = *p*.
c before ä, e, i = *ts*.
d final = *t*.
g never like *g* in *g*esture.
g final see above.
j = *y* in *y*et.
v = *f* in Germ. words.
w = *v*, except after ſch and z.
z = *ts*.

5. There are no silent letters in German, except h before consonants, after t (see below), and between vowels; thus e is never silent. Hence End-e, Gab-e are dissylls.; and g, t in Gnade, Knabe must be heard.

B. QUANTITY OF VOWELS.

Long: Double vowels and diphthongs are always long. Simple vowels are long before a single consonant; before a consonant preceded by h; when not followed by a consonant; also before and after th.

Exceptions: Articles, pronouns, prepositions, and other unaccented monosylls., also unaccented prefixes, and inflexional sylls. in e and i, have the vowel short before a single consonant.

Short: Vowels followed by a double consonant (but see note 2 below), or by more than one consonant, vowels of unaccented words and prefixes. and of formative and terminal sylls., are short; also most vowels before ch, and all vowels before ſch.

EXCEPTIONS: Long vowels before several consonants: Adler, eagle; erſt, 'first'; Geburt, 'birth'; Herd, 'hearth'; Herde, 'herd'; Huſten, 'cough'; Kloſter, 'convent'; Krebs, 'crab'; Magd, 'maid'; Mond, 'moon'; nebſt, 'besides'; Obſt, 'fruit'; Oſt, 'east'; Oſtern, 'Easter'; Papſt, 'pope'; Pferd, 'horse'; Probſt, 'prebendary'; Schuſter, 'shoemaker'; Schwert, 'sword'; ſtets, 'continually'; todt, 'dead' (now spelt tot); Troſt, 'consolation'; Vogt, 'governor'; Wüſte, 'desert'; also Stadt, 'town,' which has the vowel short in the sing., lengthens it in the plur. Städte. Long vowels before **ch**: fluchen, 'to curse'; hoch, 'high' (but short in Hochzeit, wedding); Schmach, 'disgrace'; Sprache, 'speech.'

NOTES.—1. Long radical vowels remain long even before two or more consonants; thus: loben, (du) lob-ſt, (er) lob-t, ge-lob-t, all with long vowel, according to the quantity of the stem.

2. Before **ſſ** all vowels are short; before **ß** medial, long; before **ß** final, **a**, **o**, **u** are sometimes long, sometimes short; **e** and **i** always short.

3. The vowel **a** is always long before **r**.

EXERCISE IN QUANTITY OF VOWELS.

(Accent on first syll. of dissylls.)

Haare, Art, eſſen, loben, lobt, Art, Klee, Bier, thun, dumm, Moos, Nebel, Ofen, Öfen, öde, öfter, nett, näht, kann, los, Kahn, Blätter, ähnlich, Liebe, über, dünn, Düne, Loos, dann, Däne, Ohr, geworden, Uhr, Beere, während, mehr, der, das, es, denn, Kern, gerne, munter, Stadt, Städte, Statt, Staat, Bett, Beet, müſſen, Füße, Flüſſe, hören, hehr, her, Heer, Kämme, käme.

C. ACCENTUATION.

The principal accent is on the *radical* syll. in simple Germ. words, whether primitive or derived.

EXCEPTIONS:—1. Substantives in **-ei** have the principal accent on the termination.

2. The following adjectives are accented on the last syll. but one: lebendig, wahrhaftig, balſamiſch, lutheriſch); also verbs in **-ieren.**

3. Most foreign substantives which have undergone a change of form are accented on the last syll., unless they end in **-e**, **-el**, **-er**, **-or**, when they are generally accented on the last syll. but one. Those in **-ie** are accented on the last syll., except those which, like Famili-e, Tragödi-e, Komödi-e, Lini-e, are directly from the Latin, the i-e being pron. separately.

NOTES. — 1. With these few exceptions, formative sylls. are always unaccented.

2. In compound substantives, adjectives and verbs, the first component generally has the principal accent; in other compounds (prepositions, adverbial conjunctions, etc.), generally the last component.

3. The following prefixes are never accented: **be-, er-, emp-, ent-, ge-, ver-, zer-.**

EXERCISES IN ACCENTUATION.

1. Simple words: Reinigung, Ehrlichkeit, Esel, Finsternis, gütig, sparsam, Sparsamkeit, Heimat, Reichtum, reinlich, Reinlichkeit, Tugend, tugendhaft, Arznei.

2. Compound words: Ausgang, aufstehen, Augenblick, entgehen, Aufenthalt, aufbehalten, Verdienst, Geselle, Eisenhammer, merkwürdig, heraus, hineingehen, Schwarzwald, daher, anfänglich, Bettelstab, Montag, Mitleid, ausgegangen.

3. Foreign: Student, Professor, Professoren, Melodie, Familie, Instrument, Altar, Kardinal, Nation, national, Universität, Soldat, marschieren, religiös, Monument, monumental.

D. ORTHOGRAPHY.

Use of Capitals. The following words are written with capital letters:

1. Words beginning a paragraph or sentence (after a period), and the first word of each line in poetry.

2. All substantives and words used as such, as: der Weise, 'the wise man'; das Sterben, 'dying,' etc.

NOTE. — Substantives used as adverbs are not written with capitals, as: morgens, abends.

3. The personal pronoun and possessive adjective of the third plur. when used in address.

NOTE. — The pronouns of the second person (sing. and plur.) are often written with a capital, and must be so in writing to persons.

4. Ordinal numerals and pronouns in titles, as: Friedrich der Große, 'Frederick the Great'; Karl der Fünfte, 'Charles

the Fifth'; Ihre Majeſtät, 'Her Majesty'; Seine Durchlaucht, 'His Serene Highness.'

5. Adjectives from names of persons, as: die Goetheſchen Gedichte, 'Goethe's poems.'

NOTES. — 1. Adjectives, with the above exceptions, are never written with capitals, as: preußiſch, 'Prussian'; engliſch, 'English.'

2. The numeral ein, 'one,' is sometimes spelt with a capital, to distinguish it from the indef. art. ein, 'a,' 'an.'

E. RECENT CHANGES IN ORTHOGRAPHY.

These changes relate chiefly to the rejection of lengthening **h** after **t**, which takes place:

1. in derivative sylls.: Königtum, Ungetüm, etc.
2. after **t** medial and final: Atem, Rat, rot, wert, etc.
3. before diphthongs: Tier, teuer, Teil, etc.
4. before short vowels: Turm, etc.

NOTE. — In the majority of text-books, the pupil will still meet with the old orthography; but in the High School German Reader, and in the present senior author's editions of texts, the **h** is invariably rejected after **t**.

F. ADDITIONAL REMARKS.

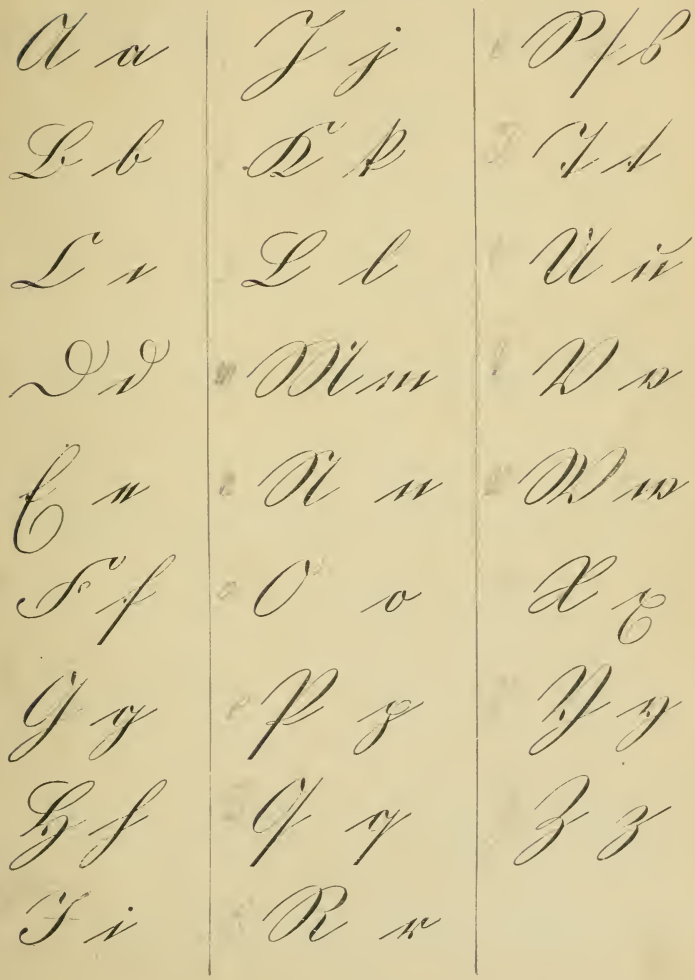
1. The use of Italics being unknown in German print, an emphasized word is printed with larger spaces between the letters, as: ich habe nur e i n e n Sohn, 'I have but *one* son.'

2. The double vowels never take Umlaut; hence: Boot, plur. Böte.

3. The modified vowels as capitals are always written Ä, Ö, Ü, not (as formerly) Ae, Oe, Ue.

THE GERMAN SCRIPT.

SIMPLE LETTERS.

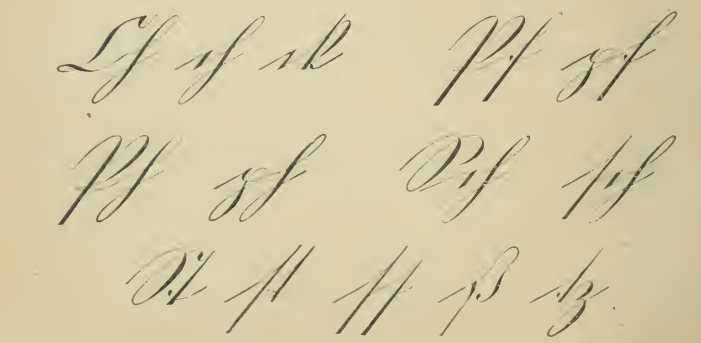


UMLAUTS.

DOUBLE VOWELS.

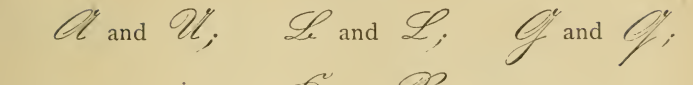
DIPHTHONGS.

CONSONANTAL DIGRAPHS AND TRIGRAPHS.

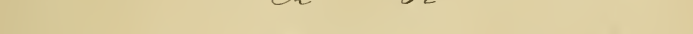


Observe carefully the Difference between:

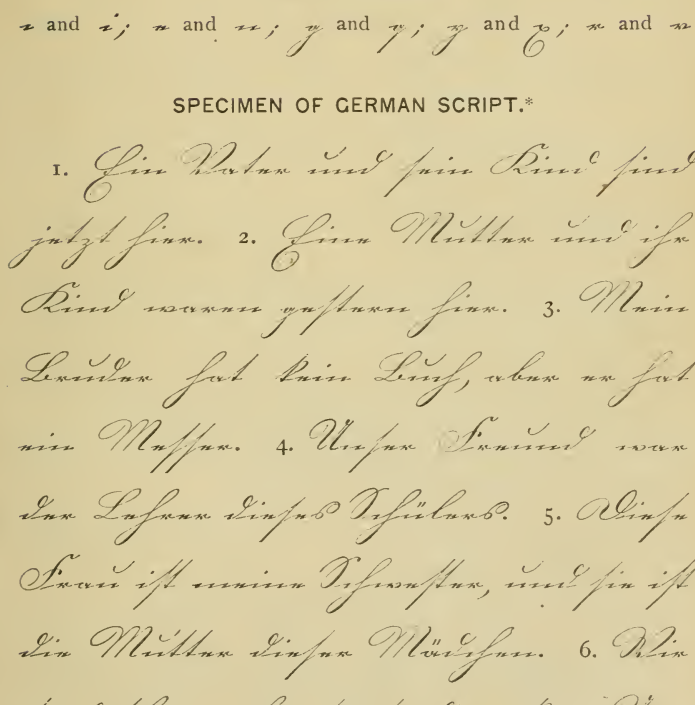
CAPITALS.



SMALL LETTERS.

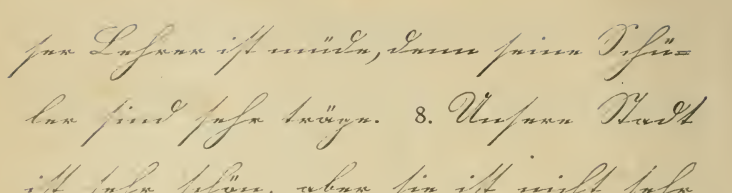


SPECIMEN OF GERMAN SCRIPT.*



1. Ein Vater und sein Kind sind jetzt fort. 2. Ein Mutter und ihr Kind waren gestern fort. 3. Mein Freund hat kein Tuch, aber er hat ein Messer. 4. Unser Freund war der Lehrer dieses Schülers. 5. Diese Frau ist meine Tischnachbarin, und sie ist die Mutter dieser Mädchen. 6. Die sind klein, aber sie sind groß. 7. Un-

* These sentences, with the exception of the last two, are identical with those of Ex. IV., *A*.



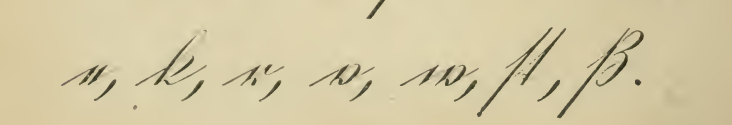
Remarks. — 1. Observe the *angularity* of the small letters.

2. Observe the manner in which the letters are joined to each other.

3. The strokes connecting the different letters should be made longer than those connecting the different parts of the same letter. This is particularly necessary where several *n* 's or *m* 's follow each other.

4. Never omit the hook over *ü* , which alone distinguishes it from *u* .

5. The most difficult letters to make neatly are



GERMAN GRAMMAR.

PART FIRST.

LESSON I.

1. PRESENT INDICATIVE OF **haben, to have.**

Sing.	ich habe, I have	habe ich, have I?
	du haſt, thou hast	haſt du, hast thou
	er hat, he has	hat er, has he
	ſie hat, she has	hat ſie, has she
	es hat, it has	hat es, has it
Plur.	wir haben, we have	haben wir, have we
	ihr habt, ye have	habt ihr, have ye
	ſie haben, they have	haben ſie, have they

2. RULE 1. The verb agrees with its subject in number and person, as: ich habe, I have; er hat, he has; ſie haben, they have.

2. Words used in a *partitive sense*, i. e., indicating only a *part*, not the whole, of anything, have no article before them in German, and the English *some* or *any* remains untranslated, as:

Has he (*any*)	bread?		I have (*some*)	gold.	
Hat er	Brot?		Ich habe	Gold.	

VOCABULARY

bread, Brot	silver, Silber	also, auch
meat, Fleiſch	water, Waſſer	what, was?
gold, Gold	wine, Wein	but, aber
flour, Mehl	and, und	yes, ja
milk, Milch	or, oder	no, nein
		not, nicht

EXERCISE I.

A. 1. Hat er Brot? 2. Ja, er hat Brot, aber wir haben Fleiſch. 3. Haben ſie Milch? 4. Nein, aber ſie haben Mehl. 5. Hat ſie Gold? 6. Sie hat Gold und ſie hat auch Silber. 7. Er hat Waſſer, aber ich habe Wein.

B. 1. Have we any bread? 2. No, but she has some bread. 3. Have they any gold or silver? 4. They have some silver. 5. Has he water and wine? 6. He has only wine; he has not water. 7. I have milk and flour, but I have not meat.

ORAL EXERCISE I.

(The pupils will supply the answer to each question, with books closed.)

1. Was hat er? 2. Was haben wir? 3. Was haben sie? 4. Was hat sie?

LESSON II.

USE OF CASES. — DEFINITE ARTICLE.

3. Use of the Cases. — Every declinable word in German has two numbers, the *Singular* and the *Plural*, and in each number four cases, viz.: Nominative, Genitive, Dative, and Accusative.

The *Nominative* is the same as the English Nominative, or Subjective, and answers the question *who?* or *what?* as: *Who* (or *what*) is there? The boy (the book).

The *Genitive* corresponds to the English Possessive, or Objective with *of*, and answers to the question *whose? of whom?* or *of what?* as: *Whose* book? The boy's book, the book of the boy.

The *Dative* corresponds to the Indirect Object in English, and answers the question *to whom?* as: *To whom* does he give the book? He gives you (dat.) the book, he gives the boy (dat.) the book, he gives it to the boy (dat.).

The *Accusative* corresponds to the Direct Object in English, and answers the question *whom?* or *what?* as: *Whom* (*what*) do you see? I see the man (the house).

4. DECLENSION OF THE DEFINITE ARTICLE.

	Singular.			*Plural.*
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUTER.	ALL GENDERS.
Nom.	der	die	das	die, the
Gen.	des	der	des	der, of the
Dat.	dem	der	dem	den, (to, for) the
Acc.	den	die	das	die, the

5. RULE 1. The Definite Article, like every determinative word, agrees with its substantive in Gender, Number, and Case, as: **der** Mann, 'the man' (masc.); **die** Frau, 'the woman' (fem.); **das** Kind, 'the child' (neuter).

2. Articles and other determinative words should be repeated before each substantive in the singular, as: Der Mann und die Frau; der Lehrer und der Schüler.

VOCABULARY.*

(N. B. Always learn the *definite article* with each German substantive.)

dog, **der** Hund
boy, der Knabe
teacher, der Lehrer
teachers, **die** Lehrer
scholar, pupil, der Schüler
scholars, pupils, die Schüler
stick, der Stock
mother, **die** Mutter
pen, feather, die Feder
flower, die Blume
horse, **das** Pferd
book, das Buch
girl, das Mädchen
girls, die Mädchen
knife, das Messer
knives, die Messer
who, wer?
only, nur

* The article is omitted in the English portions of all Vocabularies, being indeclinable.

EXERCISE II.

A. 1. Hat ſie das Buch oder die Feder? 2. Wir haben das Buch, aber ſie hat die Feder. 3. Der Lehrer hat die Meſſer der Schüler. 4. Dem Lehrer der Mädchen. 5. Die Schüler haben den Hund, aber ſie haben nicht das Pferd. 6. Ich habe den Stock, das Buch und die Feder; aber der Knabe hat nur das Buch und die Feder.

B. 1. Have we not the book of the mother? 2. We have the book of the mother. 3. Have the pupils the dog and the horse, or have they only the horse? 4. They have the horse, but they have not the dog. 5. Has the mother of the girls the flower? 6. She has not the flower, but she has the book of the girls, and they have the pen. 7. To the mother and to the teacher.

ORAL EXERCISE II.

1. Was hat der Hund? 2. Wer hat den Hund? 3. Wer hat Schüler? 4. Was haben die Lehrer? 5. Was hat das Mädchen? 6. Hat er den Stock?

LESSON III.

Dieſer MODEL. — IMPERFECT INDICATIVE OF **haben**, to have.

6. DECLENSION OF **dieſer**, this, that.

	Singular.			*Plural.*
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUTER.	ALL GENDERS.
Nom.	**dieſer**	**dieſe**	**dieſes**, this	**dieſe**, these
Gen.	**dieſes**	**dieſer**	**dieſes**, of this	**dieſer**, of these
Dat.	**dieſem**	**dieſer**	**dieſem**, (to, for) this	**dieſen**, (to, for) these
Acc.	**dieſen**	**dieſe**	**dieſes**, this	**dieſe**, these

In the same way decline jener, that; jeder, every; welcher, which?

REMARK. — The accusative of declinable words differs in form from the nominative in the *masculine singular* only.

7. IMPERFECT INDICATIVE OF **haben, to have.**

Sing.	ich hatte, I had	hatte ich, had I?
	du hatteſt, thou hadst	hatteſt du, hadst thou
	er hatte, he had	hatte er, had he
	ſie hatte, she had	hatte ſie, had she
	es hatte, it had	hatte es, had it
Plur.	wir hatten, we had	hatten wir, had we
	ihr hattet, ye had	hattet ihr, had ye
	ſie hatten, they had	hatten ſie, had they

VOCABULARY.

brother, **der** Bruder	woman, **die** Frau
garden, der Garten	sister, die Schweſter
gardens, **die** Gärten	daughter, die Tochter
bone, der Knochen	daughters, die Töchter
bones, die Knochen	newspaper, die Zeitung
reader, der Leſer	house, **das** Haus
readers, die Leſer	two, zwei
man, der Mann	three, drei
son, der Sohn	four, vier
father, der Vater	

EXERCISE III.

A. 1. Ich hatte dieſe Zeitung. 2. Dieſer Hund hatte Knochen. 3. Dieſer Lehrer hat vier Schüler, aber jener Lehrer hat nur drei. 4. Der Bruder dieſer Frau hatte jenes Haus, und er hatte auch jene Gärten. 5. Jedes Buch hat Leſer. 6. Welches Buch hatten dieſe Mädchen? 7. Der Schweſter und dem Bruder.

B. 1. Which newspaper had the father of these girls? 2. The dog had these bones, but he had not this stick. 3. Which stick has this man? 4. Which man has this stick? 5. This father had three daughters, but that woman had only

two. 6. The son of that woman had this dog and horse. 7. We had the book of those pupils. 8. To the brother of those girls.

ORAL EXERCISE III.

1. Welches Mädchen hatte die Zeitung? 2. Welches Buch hatten die Mädchen? 3. Wer hatte das Buch dieser Schüler? 4. Welche Feder hatte dieser Knabe? 5. Welchen Hund hatte jener Mann? 6. Was hat dieser Lehrer?

LESSON IV.

Mein MODEL.—INDEFINITE ARTICLE.—PRESENT AND IMPERFECT INDICATIVE OF **ſein**, to be.

8. DECLENSION OF **mein**, my.

	Singular.			*Plural.*
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUTER.	ALL GENDERS.
Nom.	mein	meine	mein	meine, my
Gen.	meines	meiner	meines	meiner, of my
Dat.	meinem	meiner	meinem	meinen, (to, for) my
Acc.	meinen	meine	mein	meine, my

9. The following words are declined like mein: kein, 'no'; ſein, 'his, its'; ihr, 'her, its, their'; unſer, 'our.'

The indefinite article ein, eine, ein is also declined in the same way, but has no plural, thus:

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUTER.
Nom.	ein	eine	ein
Gen.	eines	einer	eines
Dat.	einem	einer	einem
Acc.	einen	eine	ein

REMARK. — This model differs from the dieſer model only in having no distinctive ending in the nom. sing. masc. and neuter, or in the acc. neuter. Thus, while we say **dieſer**

Mann, but dieſes Buch, we say **ein** (kein, mein, etc.) Mann, and also **ein** (kein, etc.) Buch.

10. PRESENT AND IMPERFECT INDICATIVE OF **ſein, to be.**

	Present.	*Imperfect.*
Sing.	ich bin, I am	ich war, I was
	du biſt, thou art	du warſt, thou wast
	er iſt, he is	er war, he was
	ſie iſt, she is	ſie war, she was
	es iſt, it is	es war, it was
Plur.	wir ſind, we are	wir waren, we were
	ihr ſeid, ye are	ihr waret, ye were
	ſie ſind, they are	ſie waren, they were
	bin ich, am I? etc.	war ich, was I? etc.

11. Time before Place. RULE. — In German sentences, expressions of **time** always **precede** those of *place*, as:

This man was here *to-day*.
Dieſer Mann war **heute** hier.

12. Place of the Negative nicht. RULE. — The negative **nicht** precedes that member of the sentence which it negatives. Hence:

Er war geſtern **nicht** hier, he was not here yesterday.

13. Agreement of Pronouns. RULE. — Pronouns agree in gender, number and person with the substantive to which they refer, as:

Der Hut (masc.) iſt nicht groß, **er** iſt klein,
the hat is not large, *it* is small; but
die Zeitung (fem.) iſt nicht groß, **ſie** iſt klein,
the newspaper is not large, *it* is small.

The English pronoun *it* must therefore be rendered by **er** when it refers to a masc. substantive, by **ſie** when it refers to a fem., and by **es** when it refers to a neuter.

14. Observe: In the sentence 'the boy is good,' *good* is a *predicative* adjective.

Rule. — *Predicative* Adjectives are not declined.

15. A substantive following the verb *to be* is of course *subject*, not object, and must therefore be put in the *nominative*, and not in the accusative, as: Er iſt **ein** (not **einen**) Mann, he is a man.

Vocabulary.

friend, der Freund
gentleman, der Herr
bird, der Vogel
carriage, wagon, } der Wagen
carriages, die Wagen
city, die Stadt
dress, garment, } das Kleid
weather, das Wetter
old, alt
pleasant, agreeable, angenehm
great, large, big, tall, groß
pretty, hübſch
cold, kalt
small, little, klein
tired, müde
beautiful, fine, ſchön
strong, ſtark
idle, träge
warm, warm
windy, windig
very, very much, ſehr
yesterday, geſtern
to-day, heute
still, yet, noch (referring to time)
for, denn

EXERCISE IV.

A. 1. Ein Vater und ſein Kind ſind jetzt hier. 2. Eine Mutter und ihr Kind waren geſtern hier. 3. Mein Bruder hat kein Buch, aber er hat ein Meſſer. 4. Unſer Freund war der Lehrer dieſer Schüler. 5. Dieſe Frau iſt meine Schweſter, und ſie iſt auch die Mutter dieſer Mädchen. 6. Wir ſind klein, aber ſie ſind groß. 7. Unſer Lehrer iſt müde, denn ſeine Schüler waren ſehr träge. 8. Unſere Stadt iſt ſehr ſchön, aber ſie iſt nicht ſehr groß. 9. Meinem Vater und meiner Mutter.

B. 1. I am the sister of those girls. 2. Where are my books and newspaper? 3. Our brother and his dog are big and strong, but our sister and her bird are small and pretty. 4. Which gentleman was here yesterday? 5. The friend of our brothers was here to-day, but he was not here yesterday. 6. My sister had her book, but she had not her pen. 7. Our father and mother have still their carriage, but they have no horse. 8. The weather was cold and windy, but it is now warm and pleasant. 9. To my brother and sister.

ORAL EXERCISE IV.

1. Wo ist unsere Mutter? 2. Wann war sie hier? 3. Wer war gestern hier? 4. Was ist sein Vater? 5. Wer ist die Mutter dieser Schüler? 6. Wer sind diese Mädchen?

LESSON V.

DECLENSION OF SUBSTANTIVES: — Maler MODEL, OR -l, -m, -n, -r STEMS.

16. DECLENSION OF **der Maler**, the painter.

	Singular.	*Plural.*
Nom.	der Maler, the painter	die Maler, the painters
Gen.	des Malers, the painter's, of the painter	der Maler, the painters', of the painters
Dat.	dem Maler, (to, for) the painter	den Malern, (to, for) the painters
Acc.	den Maler, the painter	die Maler, the painters

OBSERVE: The only changes are additional -s in the gen. sing., and -n in the dat. pl.

17. In the same way are declined:

1. Masc. and neuter substantives ending in **-el**, **-em**, **-en**, **-er**, and diminutives in **-chen** and **-lein** (these last being always neuter).

2. Neuters beginning with **Ge-** and ending in **-e**, as: das Gemälde, the painting.

3. Two feminines: die Mutter, the mother, and die Tochter, the daughter.

4. Der Käse, the cheese.

(*a*) But many masculines with **a**, **o**, **u** in the root, the two feminines Mutter and Tochter, and one neuter, das Kloster, 'the convent,' take also Umlaut (modified vowel) in the plural, as: —

Sing. N. D. A. Bruder, G. Bruders; *Plur.* N. G. A. **Brüder**, D. Brüdern.

(*b*) Substantives in **-n** do not add **n** in the dat. plur., as:

Sing. N. D. A. Mädchen, G. Mädchens; *Plur.* N. G. D. A. Mädchen.

(*c*) In feminine substantives all cases are alike in the sing. Hence, Mutter and Tochter are thus declined:

Sing. N. G. D. A. Mutter; *Plur.* N. G. A. **Mütter**, D. **Müttern**.
Sing. N. G. D. A. Tochter; *Plur.* N. G. A. **Töchter**, D. **Töchtern**.

Further examples:

Der Vogel, the bird: *Sing.* N. D. A. Vogel, G. Vogels; *Plur.* N. G. A. **Vögel**, D. Vögeln.

Der Wagen, the carriage: *Sing.* N. D. A. Wagen, G. Wagens; *Plur.* N. G. D. A. Wagen.

Das Fenster, the window: *Sing.* N. D. A. Fenster, G. Fensters; *Plur.* N. G. A. Fenster, D. Fenstern.

Das Gemälde, the painting: *Sing.* N. D. A. Gemälde, G. Gemäldes; *Plur.* N. G. A. Gemälde, D. Gemälden.

Decline with Umlaut: der Vater, the father; der Schwager, the brother-in-law; der Apfel, the apple; der Garten, the garden; der Mantel, the cloak.

NOTE. — For a complete list of Substantives of this declension that take Umlaut in the plur., see App. A.

Decline without Umlaut: der Lehrer, the teacher; der Schüler, the scholar; der Adler, the eagle; das Meſſer, the knife; der Sommer, the summer; der Winter, the winter; der Onkel, the uncle.

NOTE. — The preposition in is contracted with the dat. sing. masc. and neut. of the def. art., when not emphasized, thus: in dem = **im**; in dem Garten, contr. **im** Garten; in dem Waſſer, contr. **im** Waſſer.

18. RULE OF CONSTRUCTION. — If the verb is in a simple tense, the predicate adjective comes at the end.

VOCABULARY.

tree, der Baum	ripe, reif
fire, das Feuer	weak, ſchwach
spring, der Frühling	satisfied, } zufrieden
autumn, der Herbſt	contented, }
stove, der Ofen	quickly, ſchnell
diligent, industrious, fleißig	not at all, gar nicht
poor, arm	not yet, noch nicht
hot, heiß	with, mit (gov. dat.)
ill, krank	in, in (gov. dat.)
rich, reich	whose, weſſen?

EXERCISE V.

A. 1. Die Väter dieſer Mädchen waren müde. 2. Es war geſtern kalt, aber wir hatten kein Feuer im Ofen. 3. Die Gemälde dieſes Malers ſind gar nicht ſchön. 4. Unſere Gärten ſind ſchön, denn das Wetter iſt warm. 5. Die Mutter dieſer Schüler war arm. 6. Mit den Flügeln dieſer Vögel. 7. Die Schüler

dieſes Lehrers waren krank. 8. Die Mäntel meiner Töchter ſind alt. 9. Die Gärten in dieſer Stadt ſind ſehr ſchön.

B. 1. The father of this girl was my teacher. 2. Our father and mother are old and weak. 3. The gardens of my brother-in-law are very beautiful, but his carriages are not at all beautiful. 4. My uncle is not at all satisfied with his daughters. 5. These apples are not yet ripe. 6. The teacher of these pupils was not very rich. 7. With the wings of this bird. 8. The weather is hot in the summer, but it is cold in the winter. 9. The eagle is a bird.

ORAL EXERCISE V.

1. Wann ist das Wetter kalt? 2. Mit welchen Schülern sind die Lehrer zufrieden? 3. In wessen Haus sind die Brüder dieses Mädchens? 4. Wo waren sie im Herbst? 5. Sind diese Mädchen träge oder fleiszig? 6. Ist die Blume schön?

LESSON VI.

PRESENT AND IMPERFECT OF **werden**, to become. — CONSTRUCTION OF PRINCIPAL SENTENCES.

19. PRESENT AND IMPERFECT OF **werden**, to become.

	Present Indicative.	*Present Subjunctive.*
Sing.	ich werde, I become	ich werde
	du wirſt, thou becomest	du werdeſt
	er wird, he becomes	er werde
Plur.	wir werden, we become	wir werden
	ihr werdet, ye become	ihr werdet
	ſie werden, they become	ſie werden

	Imperfect Indicative.	*Imperfect Subjunctive.*
Sing.	ich wurde or ward, I became	ich würde
	du wurdeſt or wardſt, thou becamest	du würdeſt
	er wurde or ward, he became	er würde
Plur.	wir wurden, we became	wir würden
	ihr wurdet, ye became	ihr würdet
	ſie wurden, they became	ſie würden

OBSERVE: 1. the **persistent e** in the subjunctive endings;

2. the **Umlaut** in the imperfect subjunctive:

3. the second form (ward, etc.) in the *singular only* of the imperfect indicative.

20. CONSTRUCTION OF PRINCIPAL SENTENCES. — PLACE OF VERB AND SUBJECT.

RULE. — In principal sentences containing a statement, the **verb** is the **second idea** in the sentence, as:

SUBJECT.	VERB.	PREDICATE.	SUBJECT.	VERB.	PREDICATE.
Ich	**bin**	hier.	Er	iſt	krank.
I	am	here.	He	is	ill.

OBSERVE: 1. The verb is the second *idea*, not necessarily the second *word*, in the sentence.. Thus the subject with its attributes and enlargements constitutes but one idea, as:

1	2	3
SUBJECT AND ATTRIBUTE.	VERB.	ADVERB.
Der Vater dieſes Lehrers	**war**	hier.

2. The *subject* (or subjects) with attributes and enlargements may come either in the first or in the third place, as:

SUBJECT.	VERB.	ADVERB.		ADVERB.	VERB.	SUBJECT.
Ich	bin	hier;	or:	Hier	bin	**ich.**

3. The *predicate adjective* is placed last, when the verb is in a *simple* tense, as:

I am satisfied with my daughters.
Ich bin mit meinen Töchtern **zufrieden.**

Remarks. — 1. Any other member of the sentence may occupy the first place, but in that case the subject is thrown *after* the verb, which still occupies the second place. Thus:

ADV. PHRASE.	VERB.	SUBJECT.	PREDICATE.
Im Frühling	sind	**die Gärten**	schön.

2. In English, on the contrary, the subject precedes the verb, which is, in such cases, in the *third* place, as:

ADV. PHRASE.	SUBJECT.	VERB.	PREDICATE.
In the spring	the gardens	are	beautiful.

3. *This fixed position of the* verb *as the* second idea *in every German principal sentence should never be forgotten.*

4. The conjunctions und, aber, oder, denn do not count as members of the sentence.

Vocabulary.

sleigh, der Schlitten
thunder-storm, das Gewitter
attentive, aufmerksam
green, grün
new, neu
young, jung
inattentive, unaufmerksam
unpleasant, disagreeable, unangenehm
dissatisfied, unzufrieden
after, nach (with dat.)
therefore, on that account, deshalb
never, nie
so, so
why, warum?
again, wieder
well, wohl

EXERCISE VI.

A. 1. Nach dem Gewitter wurde das Wetter schön und warm. 2. Gestern wurden meine Mutter und ihre Schwester krank, aber jetzt sind sie wohl. 3. Sein Vater hat ein Haus und einen Garten und er hat auch Wagen und Schlitten. 4. Das Wetter

ward geſtern unangenehm und windig; aber es iſt heute wieder ganz ſchön und warm. 5. Der Lehrer wird unzufrieden, denn ſeine Schüler werden unaufmerkſam. 6. Warum wird unſer Vater jetzt ſo ſchwach? 7. Er wird ſehr alt, und wird deßhalb auch ſchwach. 8. Unſere Mutter iſt nicht jung, aber ſie iſt noch ſchön. 9. Waren die Brüder dieſer Lehrer in Berlin oder in Hamburg? 10. Sie waren in Hamburg, aber ſie waren nie in Berlin.

B. 1. The brother of these pupils became our teacher. 2. Teachers often become dissatisfied with their pupils. 3. In the spring our garden becomes beautiful. 4. Our brothers-in-law were in Paris; they are now in London. 5. This tree becomes green very quickly. 6. The pupils of this teacher became very attentive. 7. My daughters are not contented with their cloaks. 8. In the autumn (the)* apples become ripe. 9. The father of these girls becomes old and weak. 10. With the feathers of an eagle. 11. We became rich, but he became poor. 12. The eagle is a bird; it is large and strong. 13. The cloaks of those girls were new, but now they are getting (say: become) old.

ORAL EXERCISE VI.

1. Wer ist in dem Schlitten? 2. Wer hat das Messer ihres Onkels? 3. Wann waren seine Brüder in Hamburg? 4. Wann werden die Äpfel reif? 5. Wird der Baum im Sommer grün? 6. Wann wird das Wetter kalt?

---

* Words in ( ) are omitted in English, but not in German; words in [ ] are omitted in German, but not in English.

LESSON VII.

DECLENSION OF SUBSTANTIVES:—Sohn MODEL.—QUESTION ORDER.

21. DECLENSION OF { **der Sohn**, the son; **der Hund**, the dog.

(*a*) With Umlaut in the plural:

	Singular.	*Plural.*
Nom.	der Sohn, the son	die Söhne, the sons
Gen.	des Sohn(e)s, the son's, of the son	der Söhne, the sons', of the sons
Dat.	dem Sohn(e), (to, for) the son	den Söhnen, (to, for) the sons
Acc.	den Sohn, the son	die Söhne, the sons

OBSERVE: 1. The –es of the gen., and –e of dat. sing.

2. The Umlaut and –e of the plur.

3. The additional –n of the dat. plur.

4. The –e may be dropped in the dat. sing., and (except after sibilants) in the gen sing., but is usually retained in monosyllables.

(*b*) Without Umlaut:

	Singular.	*Plural.*
Nom.	der Hund, the dog	die Hunde, the dogs
Gen.	des Hund(e)s, the dog's, of the dog	der Hunde, the dogs', of the dogs
Dat.	dem Hund(e), to the dog	den Hunden, (to, for) the dogs
Acc.	den Hund, the dog	die Hunde, the dogs

22. In this way are declined:

1. Most masculine monosyllables: *generally* add Umlaut (see App. B.)

2. Masculines in **-at**, **-ich**, **-ig**, **-ing**, **-ling**: *never* add Umlaut.

3. Many feminine monosyllables with **a**, **u**, or **au** in the root: *always* add Umlaut (for list, see App. C.)

4. Substantives in **-nis** and **-sal**: *never* add Umlaut.

5. Many neuter monosyllables (all those in **-r**): *never* add Umlaut, except Floß, Chor, Boot (Böte or Boote) App. E.

6. Foreign masculines, with accent on last syll., in **-al**, **-an**, **-ar**: *generally* without Umlaut; in **-ast**, with Umlaut; in **-ier**, **-on**, **-or**, and foreign neuters in **-at**: *never* with Umlaut (for exceptions, see App. D.)

Further examples:

Die Hand, the hand: *Sing.* N. G. D. A. Hand; *Plur.* N. G. A Hände, D. Händen.

(Observe again: Feminines have all cases of the sing. alike.)

Das Begräbnis, the burial, funeral: *Sing.* N. A. Begräbnis, G. Begräbnisses, D. Begräbnis(se); *Plur.* N. G. A. Begräbnisse, D. Begräbnissen.

(Observe the doubling of the final **-s** when a termination is added.)

Der Monat, the month: *Sing.* N. A. Monat, G. Monat(e)s, D. Monat(e); *Plur.* N. G. A. Monate, D. Monaten.

Das Jahr, the year: *Sing.* N. A. Jahr, G. Jahr(e)s, D. Jahr(e); *Plur.* N. G. A. Jahre, D. Jahren.

Der Apfelbaum, the apple-tree: *Sing.* N. A. Apfelbaum, G. Apfelbaum(e)s, D. Apfelbaum(e); *Plur.* N. G. A. Apfelbäume, D. Apfelbäumen.

(Observe that in compounds only the last component is varied, and is declined as when standing alone).

23. CONSTRUCTION OF DIRECT QUESTIONS.

Examples:

1	2		1	2	
1. Has	the dog	meat?	2. Which man	is	old?
Hat	der Hund	Fleisch?	Welcher Mann	ist	alt?

	1	2				1	2	3	
3.	Who	is	in the garden?	5.	What	has	the teacher?		
	Wer	iſt	in dem Garten?		Was	hat	der Lehrer?		
	1	2	3			1	2	3	
4.	Where	is	my father?	6.	When	was	the pupil	here?	
	Wo	iſt	mein Vater?		Wann	war	der Schüler	hier?	

Observe from these examples:

1. That the construction of Direct Interrogative Sentences is exactly the same in German as in English, as far as the position of Verb and Subject is concerned.

2. That in both languages the question-word always begins the sentence.

Vocabulary.

(An Asterisk (*) after a word signifies that the plural has Umlaut.)

Tuesday, Diens'tag
enemy, **der** Feind
finger, der Finger
Friday, Frei'tag
foot, der Fuß*
general, der General'
young man, youth, der Jüng'ling
emperor, der Kaiſer
acquirements, die Kenntniſſe
king, der König
Wednesday, der Mitt'woch
Monday, der Mon'tag
officer (military) der Offizier'
town, city, **die** Stadt*
Sunday, der Sonn'tag
Saturday, { der Sonn'abend, or Sams'tag
marsh, swamp, der Sumpf*
day, der Tag
carpet, der Teppich
curtain, der Vor'hang*
week, die Woche
room, das Zimmer
thirty, dreißig
five, fünf
long, lang
new, neu
magnificent, prächtig
red, rot
seven, ſieben
white, weiß
where, wo?
twelve, zwölf

EXERCISE VII.

A. 1. Ein Jahr hat zwölf Monate und in jedem Monat sind dreißig Tage. 2. Die Hände dieser Mädchen sind klein. 3. Die Gärten in diesen Städten wurden im Frühling schön. 4. Die Tage sind im Sommer lang, aber im Winter werden sie kurz und kalt. 5. Die Mutter meines Freundes war gestern in der Stadt. 6. Die Kenntnisse des Lehrers sind groß. 7. Die Vorhänge dieses Zimmers sind weiß, aber die Teppiche sind rot. 8. Die Schwäger dieser Offiziere sind Generale.

B. 1. The horses and dogs of this young man are handsome. 2. We have two feet and two hands, and each hand has five fingers. 3. The emperor and the king were enemies, but now they are friends. 4. These trees are old, but they are still beautiful. 5. The curtains and carpets in this room are new and magnificent. 6. Every week has seven days: Sunday, Monday, Tuesday, Wednesday, Thursday, Friday, Saturday. 7. The sons are tall, but the father is not quite so tall. 8. The funeral of the king was magnificent. 9. My father has two apple-trees in his garden. 10. Where are the frogs? In the spring they are in the marshes.

ORAL EXERCISE VII.

1. Wo waren die Brüder seiner Mutter gestern? 2. Sind die Vorhänge weisz oder rot? 3. Was hat sein Vater im Garten? 4. Wer war gestern in der Stadt? 5. Wessen Schwäger sind Offiziere? 6. Welche sind die Tage der Woche?

LESSON VIII.

CONJUGATION OF haben, to have. — PLACE OF PARTICIPLE AND INFINITIVE.

24. PARADIGM OF **haben**, to have.

Principal Parts.

PRES. INFIN. haben IMPF. INDIC. hatte PAST PART. gehabt

Indicative.	Subjunctive.
PRESENT.	
ich habe, I have	ich habe, I (may) have, etc.
du haſt, thou hast	du habeſt
er hat, he has	er habe
wir haben, we have	wir haben
ihr habt, ye have	ihr habet
ſie haben, they have	ſie haben
IMPERFECT.	
ich hatte, I had	ich hätte, I had (might have),
du hatteſt, thou hadst	du hätteſt [etc.
er hatte, he had	er hätte
wir hatten, we had	wir hätten
ihr hattet, ye had	ihr hättet
ſie hatten, they had	ſie hätten

PERFECT.

(Pres. of haben + P. Part.)

I have had, etc.		I (may) have had, etc.	
ich habe	gehabt	ich habe	gehabt
du haſt		du habeſt	
er hat		er habe	
wir haben		wir haben	
ihr habt		ihr habet	
ſie haben		ſie haben	

Indicative.	Subjunctive.
PLUPERFECT.	
(Imperf. of haben + P. Part.)	
I had had, etc.	I had (might have) had, etc.
ich hatte du hatteſt er hatte wir hatten ihr hattet ſie hatten } **gehabt**	ich hätte du hätteſt er hätte wir hätten ihr hättet ſie hätten } **gehabt**
FUTURE.	
(Pres. of **werden** + Infin. of haben.)	
I shall have, etc.	I shall have, etc.
ich **werde** du wirſt er wird wir werden ihr werdet ſie werden } **haben**	ich werde du werdeſt er werde wir werden ihr werdet ſie werden } **haben**
FUTURE PERFECT.	
(Future of haben + P. Part.)	
I shall have had, etc.	I shall have had, etc.
ich werde du wirſt er wird wir werden ihr werdet ſie werden } **gehabt haben**	ich werde du werdeſt er werde wir werden ihr werdet ſie werden } **gehabt haben**
Conditional.	
SIMPLE.	**COMPOUND.**
(Impf. Subj. of werden + Infin. of haben.)	(Simple Cond. of haben + Past Part.)
I should have, etc.	I should have had, etc.
ich **würde** du würdeſt } **haben**	ich würde du würdeſt } **gehabt haben**

Conditional.

er würde wir würden ihr würdet ſie würden	haben	er würde wir würden ihr würdet ſie würden	gehabt haben

Imperative.

habe (du), have (thou)
habt (ihr), have (ye)

Infinitive.

(zu) haben, (to) have
gehabt (zu) haben, (to) have had

Participles.

PRES. habend, having PAST. gehabt, had.

25. Use of Auxiliaries of Tense. — 1. **Haben** forms the **perfect** tenses of all transitive and most intransitive verbs precisely as above.

In any verb not conjugated with ſein (see 4, below):

The **Present** of haben + **P. Part.** of any verb form the **Perfect** of that verb.

The **Imperfect** of haben + **P. Part.** of any verb form the **Pluperfect** of that verb.

2. **Werden** forms the **Future** and **Simple Conditional** thus:

The **Present** of werden + **Infin.** of any verb form the **Future.**

The **Imperf. Subj.** of werden + **Infin.** of any verb form the **Simple Conditional.**

3. The **Future** of haben + **P. Part.** of any verb (not conjugated with ſein) form the **Future Perfect.**

The **Simple Conditional** of haben + **P. Part.** of any verb (not conjugated with ſein) form the **Compound Conditional.**

4. **Sein** replaces haben in the Perfect Tenses of many Intransitive Verbs. (See § 53.) Compare the English 'He is come.'

26. CONSTRUCTION OF COMPOUND TENSES. — PLACE OF PARTICIPLE AND INFINITIVE.

Rule of Construction. — In every principal sentence the Participle and Infinitive come at the end; but if both be present, the Participle precedes the Infinitive, which is always last, as:

	1	2	3	4
	SUBJECT.	VERB.	PART.	OBJECT.
(*Engl.*)	My teacher	has	**had**	money.

	1	2	3	4
	SUBJECT.	VERB.	OBJECT.	PART.
(*Germ.*)	Mein Lehrer	hat	Geld	**gehabt.**

	1	2	3	4
	SUBJECT.	VERB.	INFIN.	OBJECT.
(*Engl.*)	We	shall	**have**	a storm.

	1	2	3	4
	SUBJECT.	VERB.	OBJECT.	INFIN.
(*Germ.*)	Wir	werden	einen Sturm	**haben.**

	1	2	3	4	5
	SUBJECT.	VERB.	INFIN.	PART.	OBJECT.
(*Engl.*)	The beggars	would	**have**	**had**	no shoes.

	1	2	3	4	5
	SUBJECT.	VERB.	OBJECT.	PART.	INFIN.
(*Germ.*)	Die Bettler	würden	keine Schuhe	**gehabt**	**haben.**

REMEMBER: In compound tenses, **the auxiliary is the verb**, and occupies the **second place** in a principal sentence (see § 20, Rule 1, above).

VOCABULARY.

evening, der A'bend	money, das Geld
beggar, der Bettler	guest, der Gaſt*
holiday, der Fei'ertag	harbour, der Hafen*
fish, der Fiſch	glove, der Hand'ſchuh
fruit, die Frucht*	basket, der Korb*
fox, der Fuchs*	nut, die Nuß*

to be right, Recht haben
sailing-ship, das Se'gelſchiff
chair, der Stuhl *
storm, der Sturm *
stocking, der Strumpf *
shoe, der Schuh
table, der Tiſch
animal, das Tier
to be wrong, Un'recht haben
pleasure, das Vergnügen
wolf, der Wolf *
out of, aus (gov. dat.)
to become of, aus ... werden
poor, arm
bad, ſchlecht
to-morrow, morgen
the day after to-morrow, ü'bermorgen
much, viel
already, ſchon
when, wann?

EXERCISE VIII.

A. 1. Ich habe viel Geld gehabt, aber jetzt bin ich arm. 2. Die Früchte werden im Herbſt reif. 3. Wird der Knabe einen Tiſch und Stühle in ſeinem Zimmer haben? 4. Ihre Handſchuhe wurden ſchlecht, denn ſie waren ſchon alt. 5. Es iſt angenehm, Freunde zu haben. 6. Was wurde aus dem Sohne des Lehrers? Er wurde auch Lehrer. 7. Ich werde Feinde und auch Freunde haben. 8. Die Gäſte in unſerer Stadt wurden müde, denn das Wetter war ſehr heiß. 9. Werden wir Teppiche und Vorhänge in unſerm Zimmer haben? 10. Er hatte Freunde gehabt. 11. Sie werden in dieſem Jahre viel Vergnügen gehabt haben. 12. Die Söhne des Königs haben Pferde und Wagen, aber die Töchter des Bettlers haben keine Schuhe und keine Strümpfe. 13. Wir hatten Recht gehabt, aber er hatte Unrecht gehabt. 14. Mit meinen Freunden habe ich viel Vergnügen gehabt. 15. Unſere Freunde werden geſtern viel Vergnügen gehabt haben, denn das Wetter war ſchön und warm.

B. 1. The sailing-ships are in the harbour. 2. We had thirty fishes in our baskets. 3. He would have friends. 4. The evening was fine, but the weather became cold. 5. We have had two storms. 6. Where are our guests? They became tired and are now in the garden. 7. To-morrow we shall have

a holiday, for it is Saturday. 8. We were in the garden yesterday, and the trees are already green. 9. What has he had? He has had apples and nuts. 10. Dogs, wolves, and foxes are animals.

ORAL EXERCISE VIII.

1. Wer hatte Recht und wer hatte Unrecht? 2. Wann werden wir einen Feiertag haben? 3. Wo sind die Segelschiffe? 4. Wessen Söhne haben Wagen und Pferde? 5. Warum wurden die Gäste müde? 6. Welche Gemälde sind schön?

LESSON IX.

WEAK CONJUGATION: loben. — DEPENDENT SENTENCES. — PREPOSITIONS WITH ACCUSATIVE ONLY.

27. The **stem** of a verb is what is left when the termination of the Present Infinitive (**-en** or **-n**) is dropped, as: hab-en, stem **hab**; lob-en, stem **lob**.

28. The **Principal Parts** of a verb are the **Present Infinitive, Imperfect Indicative,** and **Past Participle.**

29. Any verb, when these principal parts are given, may be conjugated throughout, by using the auxiliaries, precisely as in the paradigm of haben in Less. VIII.

30. **Weak verbs** are those which form the Imperfect by adding **-te,** and the Past Participle by prefixing **ge-** and adding **-t** to the stem, as: lob-en, to praise (stem **lob**), Imperfect lob-**te**, P. Part. **ge**-lob-**t**; tadel-**n**, to blame (stem **tadel**), Imperf. tadel-**te**, P. Part. **ge**-tadel-**t**.

NOTE. — Weak verbs are also called *Regular* or *Modern*.

31. PARADIGM OF **loben, to praise.**

Principal Parts.

PRES. INFIN. loben IMPF. INDIC. lobte PAST PART. gelobt

Indicative.	Subjunctive.
PRESENT.	
ich lobe, I praise (am praising, do praise)	ich lobe, I (may) praise
du lob(e)ſt, thou praisest, etc.	du lobeſt, thou (mayest) praise
er lob(e)t, he praises	er lobe, he (may) praise
wir loben, we praise	wir loben, we (may) praise
ihr lob(e)t, ye praise	ihr lobet, ye (may) praise
ſie loben, they praise	ſie loben, they (may) praise

IMPERFECT.

(Same form for both moods.)

ich lobte, I praised (was praising, etc.)
du lobteſt, thou praisedst
er lobte, he praised
wir lobten, we praised
ihr lobtet, ye praised
ſie lobten, they praised

PERFECT.

(Pres. of haben + P. Part of loben.)

ich habe gelobt, I have praised (been praising)	ich habe gelobt
du haſt gelobt, thou hast praised, etc.	du habeſt gelobt, ꝛc.

PLUPERFECT.

(Imperf. of haben + P. Part. loben.)

ich hatte gelobt, I had praised (been praising), etc.	ich hätte gelobt, ꝛc.

FUTURE.

(Present of werden + Infin. of loben.)

ich werde loben, I shall praise (be praising)	ich werde loben
du wirſt loben, thou wilt praise, etc.	du werdeſt loben, ꝛc.

Indicative.	Subjunctive.
Future Perfect. (Future of **haben** + P. Part. of loben.)	
ich werde **gelobt** haben, I shall have praised	ich werde gelobt haben
du wirſt gelobt haben, thou wilt have praised, etc.	du werdeſt gelobt haben, ꝛc.

Conditional.

Simple. (Impf. Subj. of werden + Infin. of loben.)	Compound. (Simple Cond. of haben + P. Part. of loben.)
ich würde **loben**, I should **praise** (be praising) etc.	ich würde **gelobt** haben, I should have **praised**, etc.

Imperative.	Infinitive.
lobe (du), praise (thou)	(zu) loben, (to) praise.
lobe er, let him praise	**gelobt** (zu) haben, (to) have praised
loben wir, let us praise	
lobt (ihr), praise (ye)	
loben ſie, let them praise	

Participles.

Pres. lobend, praising	*Past.* gelobt, praised

Remarks. — 1. e is sometimes found in the terminations of the following parts: Pres. Ind. du lob(e)ſt, er lob(e)t, ihr lob(e)t; Impf. (Ind. and Subj.) ich lob(e)te, etc.; P. Part. gelob(e)t, etc.; and is always retained in certain verbs. (See § 35, Rem. 2, below.)

2. Note again the persistent e of the Pres. Subj.

3. English periphrastic forms of the verb are to be avoided in German; thus:

I praise I **am** praising I **do** praise	} ich lobe	(praise I?) am I praising? do I praise?	} lobe ich?

(he praised not)		(praised he not?)	
he was not praising	er lobte nicht	was he not praising?	lobte er nicht?
he did not praise		did he not praise?	

I have been praising, etc., ich habe gelobt, etc.
Had I been praising? hatte ich gelobt?

4. The only true Imperative forms are those of the 2. sing. and 2. plur., lobe, lobt. For the other persons, the pres. subj. is used, as: lobe er, let him praise; loben wir, let us praise; loben ſie, let them praise; — the verb preceding the pronoun.

CONSTRUCTION OF DEPENDENT SENTENCES.

32. The **Verb** in a Dependent Sentence comes *last*, as:

Ich glaube, daß er Geld **hat**,
I believe that he **has** money.

REMEMBER: that the **auxiliary is the verb** in compound tenses.

33. In compound tenses the Participle and Infinitive immediately precede the verb; if both be present, the Participle precedes, as in principal sentences, thus:

Ich glaube, daß er Geld **gehabt** hat,
I believe, that he has *had* money.

Ich glaube, daß er Geld **haben** wird,
I believe that he will *have* money.

Ich glaube, daß er Geld **gehabt** haben wird,
I believe that he will have *had* money.

NOTE. — The place of the **Subject**, in a Dependent Sentence, is usually the same as in English.

34. PREPOSITIONS GOVERNING THE ACCUSATIVE ONLY.

Bis, durch, für, gegen, ohne, um, wider.

bis, (1) till, until (*time*), as: I shall not come **until** tomorrow (**bis** morgen).

(2) up to, as far as (*place*), as: He travelled with us as far as (bis) Montreal.

durch, through; as: He rode through the forest (durch den Wald).

für, for; as: That is for my friend (für meinen Freund); the scissors are not a toy for children (für Kinder).

gegen, towards, against (not necessarily denoting hostility), as: The enemy advanced towards (or against) the bridge (gegen die Brücke).

ohne, without; as: We cannot travel without money (ohne Geld).

um, (1) around, about; as: We drove around the town (um die Stadt).

(2) at, about (*time*), as: He came at four o'clock (um vier Uhr); it happened at (or about) Christmas (um Weihnachten).

wider, against (*opposition*, *hostility*), as: He swam against the stream (wider den Strom); the soldiers were fighting against the enemy (wider den Feind).

REMARK. — Durch, für, and um are generally contracted with the Neuter of the unemphasized Definite Article, thus:

durch das = **durchs** (durch's)
für das = **fürs** (für's)
um das = **ums** (um's)

VOCABULARY.

believe, glauben
hope, hoffen
buy, kaufen
laugh, lachen
live, leben
learn, lernen
love, lieben
make, do, machen
say, sagen
send, schicken
play, spielen
sell, verkaufen

weep, cry, weinen
bishop, der Bi'ſchof *
German, Deutſch
servant, der Diener
industry, diligence, der Fleiß
young lady, Miss, das Fräulein
cardinal, der Kardinal
noise, der Lärm
Latin, das Latein
palace, der Pala'ſt *
pope, der Papſt *
place, square, der Platz *
ring, der Ring
walk, der Spazier'gang *
time, die Zeit
good, kind, gut
merry, merrily, luſtig
sad, traurig
that (conj.), daß
because, weil
if, wenn
why, warum'?

Idiom: **to take a walk, einen Spaziergang machen.**

NOTE. — A past tense after wenn ('if') is put in the subj. mood.

EXERCISE IX.

A. 1. Die Kardinale und Biſchöfe waren geſtern im Palaſte des Papſtes. 2. Das Fräulein wird dieſe Ringe kaufen, denn ſie ſind ſchön. 3. Der Maler würde dieſes Gemälde nicht verkaufen. 4. Ich würde dieſen Ring kaufen, wenn ich reich wäre. 5. Hat er es geglaubt? Er hat es geglaubt, weil ſein Vater es geſagt hat. 6. Die Schüler haben viel Lärm gemacht. 7. Wir loben den Jüngling, weil er fleißig iſt. 8. Der König wird ſeine Generale gegen den Feind ſchicken. 9. Meine Schweſter wird Handſchuhe kaufen, denn ihre Handſchuhe ſind ſchlecht. 10. Wir würden heute einen Spaziergang durch die Stadt machen, wenn das Wetter ſchön wäre. 11. Sie würden auch einen Spaziergang gemacht haben, wenn ſie Zeit gehabt hätten. 12. Sie wird ſagen, daß ich Recht habe. 13. Ich habe immer gehofft, daß er lernen würde. 14. Sie liebt ihren Vater und ihre Mutter, denn ſie ſind gut. 15. Er würde das Gemälde nicht gelobt haben, denn es war nicht ſchön.

B. 1. What were they doing yesterday? They were playing in the garden. 2. This gentleman will praise his servants, for they are industrious. 3. We have taken a walk about

the town. 4. The squares in those cities are very fine. 5. Where were the daughters of the officers? They were living in a convent. 6. Without industry we shall not learn much. 7. The boy was playing with the dog. 8. The gentleman has sold his horses and carriages. 9. What are the young ladies doing now? 10. Why was she crying? She was crying because she was sad. 11. They are laughing because they are merry. 12. We shall have learned much in a week. 13. I am laughing because the child is playing so merrily. 14. To-day we are learning German, to-morrow we shall learn Latin. 15. We have bought shoes and stockings for the beggars.

ORAL EXERCISE IX.

1. Weshalb hat sie gelacht? 2. Wer machte so viel Lärm? 3. Wo haben die Fräulein einen Spaziergang gemacht? 4. Was hat die Frau gekauft? 5. Weshalb hat seine Schwester Handschuhe gekauft? 6. Was werden wir morgen machen?

LESSON X.

WEAK VERBS (continued). DECLENSION OF SUBSTANTIVES: — Dorf MODEL, OR PLURAL IN -er.

35. ENDINGS OF WEAK VERBS IN SIMPLE TENSES.

	Present.		Imperfect.	Imperative.
	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCT.	IND. AND SUBJ.	*Sing.* 2. —e
Sing. 1.	—e	—e	—(e)te	*Plur.* 2. —(e)t
2.	—(e)ſt	—eſt	—(e)teſt	Infinitive.
3.	—(e)t	—e	—(e)te	—en
Plur. 1.	—en	—en	—(e)ten	Participles.
2.	—(e)t	—et	—(e)tet	*Pres.* —end
3.	—en	—en	—(e)ten	*Past.* ge—(e)t

Remarks. — 1. Observe the following endings:

(*a*) Final **–t** of the 3. sing. occurs *only* in the **Pres. Indic.**

(*b*) The 2. sing. has **–ſt** *except* in the **Imperative.**

(*c*) The 2. plur. has **–t throughout.**

2. Verb-Stems in **–d** or **–t** (**th**), or in **–m** or **–n** preceded by another consonant, retain **–e** throughout *after* the stem, as:

reden, to speak.

Pres. Ind.	Imperfect.	Imperative.
Sing. 2. du redeſt	*Sing.* 1. ich redete	*Plur.* 2. redet (ihr)
3. er redet	2. du redeteſt	
Plur. 2. ihr redet	etc.	

Thus: arbeiten, to work: ich arbeitete; atmen, to breathe: du atmeſt; regnen, to rain: es regnet.

3. Verb-Stems in a sibilant (**s**, **ſch**, **ß**, **x**, **z**) retain **–e** in the 2. sing. Pres. Ind. and Subj. only, as:

tanzen, to dance: du tanzeſt; reiſen, to travel: du reiſeſt.

4. Verb-Stems in **–el** and **–er** drop **e** of the stem before terminations in **–e** (i. e. in 1. sing. Pres. Ind., 1. and 3. sing. Pres. Subj., and 2. sing. Imper.), and, *except in the Subjunctive*, never insert **e** *after* **l** or **n**, as:

tadeln, to blame.

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Subj.	Imperfect.
ich tadle	tadle	ich tadelte, etc.
du tadelſt	tadleſt	Imperative.
er tadelt	tadle	tadle
wir tadeln	tadlen	tadelt
ihr tadelt	tadlet	P. Part.
ſie tadeln	tadlen	getadelt

5. Foreign verbs in **–ieren** (**–iren**) do not take the prefix **ge–** in the P. Part., as: ſtud–ieren, to study: P. Part. **ſtudiert**

(not ge-ſtudiert); bombardieren, to bombard: P. Part. bombardiert.

6. Verbs with the prefixes be-, er-, emp-, ent-, ge-, ver-, zer- also omit the prefix ge- in the P. Part., as: bezahlen, P. Part. bezahlt; verſchwenden, verſchwendet.

36. DECLENSION OF **das Dorf, the village.**

	Singular.	*Plural.*
Nom.	das Dorf, the village	die Dörfer, the villages
Gen.	des Dorf(e)s, of the village	der Dörfer, of the villages
Dat.	dem Dorf(e), (to, for) the village	den Dörfern, (to, for) the villages
Acc.	das Dorf, the village	die Dörfer, the villages

REMARKS. — 1. The Singular is formed precisely as in the Sohn model. (See § 21.)

2. Observe -er of the Plural, with the additional -n of the Dative.

3. All Substantives of this Declension with a, o, u or au in the stem take Umlaut.

37. In this way are declined:

1. Most neuter monosyllables (exceptions in App. E.).

2. Substantives ending in -t(h)um.

3. *Five* neuters with prefix Ge-, viz.:

das Gemach, the apartment
das Gemüt, the temper, disposition
das Geſchlecht, the sex
das Geſpenſt, the spectre
das Gewand, the garment (also Geſicht; see § 64)

4. Two foreign neuters, viz.: das Regiment, the regiment; das Hoſpital (or Spital), the hospital.

5. The following *nine* masculines:

der Böſewicht, the villain
der Geiſt, the spirit
der Gott, the God
der Leib, the body
der Mann, the man, husband (Lat. *vir*)
der Rand, the edge, margin
der Vormund, the guardian
der Wald, the forest
der Wurm, the worm (also Dorn, Ort; see App. E.)

Further examples (Sing. like Sohn):

Das Schloß, the castle, palace: *Plur.* N. G. A. Schlöſſer, D. Schlöſſern.

Das Buch, the book: *Plur.* N. G. A. Bücher, D. Büchern.

Der Mann, the man, husband: *Plur.* N. G. A. Männer, D. Männern.

Das Kind, the child: *Plur.* N. G. A. Kinder, D. Kindern.

Das Haus, the house: *Plur.* N. G. A. Häuſer, D. Häuſern.

Vocabulary.

to row, rudern
shake, ſchütteln
waste, verſchwenden
exercise, task, die Aufgabe
leaf, das Blatt
egg, das Ei
possession, property, das Eigentum
earth, die Erde
gardener, der Gärtner
fowl, das Huhn
child, das Kind
dress, das Kleid
clothes, pl. of Kleid
song, das Lied
courage, spirit, der Mut
woman, wife, das Weib
yellow, gelb
enough, genug
well (adv.), gut
a long while, lange
too, zu

EXERCISE X.

A. 1. Im Herbſt werden die Blätter gelb, denn das Wetter iſt kalt. 2. Ich tadle dieſe Mädchen, weil ſie ihre Aufgabe nicht ſtudiert haben. 3. Im Winter ſtudierten die Jünglinge; im

Sommer arbeiteten ſie. 4. „Du ruderſt nicht ſchnell genug, mein Bruder," ſagte ich. 5. Dieſe Männer lieben ihre Weiber und Kinder. 6. Der Lehrer ſagte, daß die Kinder zu viel Lärm machten. 7. Der König redete mit den Generalen, und lobte den Mut ihrer Regimenter. 8. Die Vormünder dieſer Kinder ſind Böſewichter, denn ſie haben das Eigentum der Kinder verſchwendet. 9. Die Würmer leben in der Erde, aber die Fiſche leben im Waſſer. 10. Wo ſind die Eier der Hühner? Sie ſind in unſeren Körben. 11. Ich werde müde, weil ich gegen den Strom rudre. 12. Der Kaiſer hat die Generale getadelt, aber ihre Regimenter hat er gelobt.

B. 1. The general has bombarded the town. 2. The woman was buying books and clothes for her children. 3. The gardener is shaking the apple-tree. 4. The children were learning songs. 5. The boy is industrious; he has studied well. 6. The apartments of the palaces are magnificent. 7. It rained yesterday, but it will not rain to-day. 8. We have rowed a long while against the stream. 9. These men travelled through towns and villages. 10. The hospitals in London are large and fine. 11. The leaves of these trees are large and beautiful. 12. This gentleman would buy my houses, if he had money enough.

ORAL EXERCISE X.

1. Weshalb werden die Blätter gelb? 2. Wessen Regimenter hat der König getadelt? 3. Was sagte der Lehrer? 4. Wo leben die Würmer? 5. Was lernten die Kinder? 6. Würde dieser Herr das Haus kaufen?

LESSON XI.

PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

38. Declension of Personal Pronouns.

	First Person.	Second Person.
Sing. N.	ich, I	du, thou
G.	meiner (mein), of me	deiner (dein), of thee
D.	mir, (to, for) me	dir, (to, for) thee
A.	mich, me	dich, thee
Plur. N.	wir, we	ihr, ye, you
G.	unſer (unſrer), of us	euer (eurer), of you
D.	uns, (to, for) us	euch, (to, for) you
A.	uns, us	euch, you

Third Person.

Singular.

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUTER.	REFLEXIVE (ALL GENDERS).
N.	er, he	ſie, she	es, it	
G.	ſeiner (ſein), of him	ihrer (ihr), of her	ſeiner (ſein, es), of it	
D.	ihm, (to, for) him	ihr, (to, for) her	ihm, (to, for) it	ſich, (to, for) himself, herself, itself
A.	ihn, him	ſie, her	es, it	ſich, himself, herself, itself

Plural.

N.	ſie, they	FOR ALL GENDERS	
G.	ihrer (ihr), of them		
D.	ihnen, (to, for) them		ſich, (to, for) themselves
A.	ſie, them		ſich, themselves

Remarks. — 1. The forms mein, dein, ſein, ihr, unſrer, eurer are poetical or archaic.

2 The form es of the 3. sing. gen. neuter is only used in certain phrases, as: Ich bin es müde, I am tired of it.

3. The gen. and dat. of the 3. sing. neuter do not occur, except when referring to *persons* (e. g. Mädchen, Fräulein).

4. The Pronouns of the 3. sing. must agree in gender with the substantive to which they refer, as:

Haſt du **den** Hut?	Ja, ich habe **ihn**.
Hast thou the hat?	Yes, I have **it**.
Haſt du **die** Blume?	Nein, ich habe **ſie nicht**.
Hast thou the flower?	No, I have **it** not.
Wo iſt **das** Mädchen?	**Es** iſt im Garten.
Where is the girl?	*She* is in the garden.

5. The Pronouns of the 3. person are *not used after Prepositions, when referring to inanimate objects*, but are replaced by the adverb **da(r)**, *there*, before the Preposition, the **r** being inserted if the Preposition begins with a vowel, as:

Biſt du mit **dieſem Buche** zufrieden? Ja, ich bin **damit** zufrieden. Art thou satisfied with this book? Yes, I am satisfied **with it** (*therewith*).

How much did you pay for this hat? I paid two dollars **for it**, **dafür** (*therefor*).

What have you in your purse? I have money **in it** (**darin**, *there*in).

39. Idiomatic Uses of es.

1. Before the verb, representing the real subject, which follows the verb, and with which the verb agrees, as:

Who is **it**? **It** is my cousin; it **is** my cousin**s**.

Wer iſt **es**? **Es** iſt mein Vetter; es **ſind** meine Vettern.

Es leuchtet die Sonne, the sun shines, i. e., **it is** the sun that shines.

Es leuchten die Sterne, (it **is**) the stars (that) shine.

REMARK. — Es in this construction is often rendered by 'there' in English, as:

There is a bird in this cage.
Es iſt ein Vogel in dieſem Bauer.

There are three books on this table.
Es ſind drei Bücher auf dieſem Tiſch.

(See also es giebt, Less. XXXVII.)

2. When the real subject represented by **es** is a personal pronoun, with the verb *to be*, es follows the verb, which agrees with the real subject in person and number, as:

It is I,	Ich **bin** es.
It is you,	Du **biſt** es. / Ihr **ſeid** es. / Sie **ſind** es.
It is we,	wir **ſind** es.
It is they,	ſie **ſind** es.
Is it you?	**ſind** Sie es?

3. After the verb, representing a predicate or a clause, and corresponding to the English 'one' or 'so,' as:

Is your father a soldier? Yes, he is one (es).
We are free, and you shall be so (es) too.

40. USE OF PRONOUNS IN ADDRESS.

1. **Du** is used only in addressing persons with whom we are very intimate, or towards whom we use no ceremony; also in addressing the Supreme Being, as:

Wo biſt **du**, lieber Freund?
Where are you, dear friend?

Was machſt **du**, mein Kind?
What are you doing, my child?

Wir loben **Dich**, o Gott! We praise Thee, o God!

2. **Ihr** (plur. of **du**) is used in addressing a number of persons, each of whom we should address by **du**, as:

Was macht **ihr**, Kinder?
What are you doing, **children**?

3. In all other cases we use for 'you' in German, whether sing. or plur., the pronoun of the **Third Plural**: **Sie**, **Ihrer**, **Ihnen**, **Sie**, distinguished by a *capital letter*. (See also § 43.)

41. PARADIGM OF **loben** WITH REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS.

PRESENT INDICATIVE.

Sing. 1.	ich lobe **mich**,	I praise **myself**
2.	du lobſt **dich**,	thou praisest **thyself**
3.	er / ſie / es } lobt **ſich**,	he / she / it } praises { **himself** / **herself** / **itself**
Plur. 1.	wir loben **uns**,	we praise **our**selves
2.	ihr lobt **euch**,	ye praise **your**selves
3.	ſie loben **ſich**,	they praise **them**selves

So throughout the verb, as:

PERFECT: Ich habe mich gelobt, du haſt dich gelobt, er hat ſich gelobt, etc.

42. REFLEXIVE AND RECIPROCAL PRONOUNS — **ſelbſt**.

1. The Pronouns of the First and Second Persons express *reflexive* action without a special form, as shown by the above paradigm, but those of the Third Person have the form **ſich**.

2. These pronouns are also used in the Plural to express *reciprocal* action, as:

We met **each other**; **they** will see **each other** again.
Wir begegneten **uns**; ſie werden **ſich** wiederſehen.

But when, to prevent ambiguity, it is necessary to distinguish reciprocal from reflexive action, we use **einander** as the reciprocal pronoun for all persons, thus:

We love each other (one another), Wir lieben **einander**.

(Wir lieben **uns** might mean 'we love *ourselves*.')

3. To emphasize and strengthen the reflexive pronouns, and give them an *exclusive* sense, as well as further to distinguish them from reciprocal pronouns, the indeclinable word **ſelbſt** (or **ſelber**) is used, as:

Know yourselves, Erkennet euch **ſelbſt**.

(Erkennet **euch** might mean 'know *one another*.')

He has injured himself, Er hat ſich **ſelbſt** beſchädigt.

Remark. — This word **ſelbſt** is in apposition to the subject (or object, as the case may be), as:

Der König **ſelbſt** iſt nicht immer glücklich.
The king **himself** is not always happy.

It is also used adverbially (= Eng. 'even'), as

Even the king is not always happy.
Selbſt der König iſt nicht immer glücklich.

Vocabulary.

behave one's self properly (of children), artig ſein
meet, begegnen (dat.)
visit, beſuchen
pay, bezahlen
have finished (with), fertig ſein mit
belong (to), gehören (dat.)
be ashamed of, ſich ſchämen (gen.)
seat one's self (sit down), ſich ſetzen
punish, ſtrafen
work, labour, die Arbeit
parents, die Eltern (no sing.)
patience, die Geduld
gentleman, master, Mr., der Herr
hat, bonnet, der Hut*
John, Johann
Charles, Karl

artist, der Künſtler	away, gone, fort
Mary, Marie	here, hier
uncle, der O'heim	ever, at any time, je, jemals
dollar, der Thaler	never, nie, niemals

EXERCISE XI.

A. 1. Sei artig Karl, du machſt zu viel Lärm. 2. Jene Männer ſind ſehr reich, denn dieſe Häuſer gehören ihnen. 3. Gehört das Pferd Ihnen? Nein, es gehört mir nicht, es gehört dem Offizier. 4. Unſer Oheim hat uns Bücher gekauft. 5. Habt Geduld, Kinder, ich werde euch morgen Äpfel und Nüſſe kaufen. 6. Ich werde morgen einen Spaziergang mit Ihnen machen. 7. Er glaubt, daß ich mir das Pferd gekauft habe. 8. Morgen werden wir einen Feiertag haben, und wir werden unſre Eltern beſuchen. 9. Ich werde ihr ſagen, daß ihre Mutter fort iſt. 10. Waren Sie jemals in dieſer Kirche? Ich war nie darin. 11. Karl und Johann begegneten ſich geſtern im Walde. 12. Iſt Ihr Vater noch krank? Nein, mein Vater iſt jetzt wohl. 13. Marie, liebſt du deine Eltern? Ja, und ſie lieben mich auch. 14. Ich würde einen Spaziergang mit Ihnen machen, wenn ich Zeit hätte. 15. Hat der Lehrer Marie getadelt? Ja, er hat ſie getadelt. 16. Die Schüler loben ſich ſelbſt, weil ſie ihre Aufgabe ſo ſchnell gemacht haben. 17. Wir würden uns ſelbſt auch loben, wenn wir unſre Aufgabe gemacht hätten. 18. Er würde ſich ſchämen, wenn er mit ſeiner Aufgabe nicht fertig wäre. 19. Weshalb loben dieſe Künſtler einander? Sie loben einander, weil ihre Gemälde ſchön ſind. 20. Sind Sie mit meiner Arbeit zufrieden? Nein, ich bin nicht damit zufrieden.

B. 1. Is the table large? No, it is small. 2. Her father has bought her a ring. 3. Were the fishes in your basket? Yes, they were in it. 4. Who has told it [to] her? 5. John, have you my shoes? No, I have them not. 6. We sit down because we are tired. 7. Even the beggars of this city have shoes and stockings. 8. Who has bought this hat? 9. I bought it myself in the city, and paid four dollars for it. 10.

Charles and his teacher love each other very much. 11. Mother, have you bought me apples or nuts? 12. Mr. A., here is a chair for you; sit down. 13. Has the teacher blamed him? Yes, he had not done his exercise. 14. Do you believe that this milk is good? Yes, it is very good. 15. The teacher is ashamed of her, because she has not finished (with) her work.

ORAL EXERCISE XI.

1. Würden sie einen Spaziergang mit mir machen? 2. Weshalb loben Sie sich so viel? 3. Was sagten Sie mir? 4. Sind Sie mit meiner Arbeit zufrieden? 5. Was werden wir morgen machen? 6. Werden Sie morgen Ihre Eltern besuchen?

LESSON XII.

POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES. — USE OF ARTICLES.

43. POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES.

	First Person.	Second Person.
Sing.	**mein**, my	**dein**, thy
Plur.	**unſer**, our	**euer**, your

Third Person.

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUTER.	ALL GENDERS.
Sing.	**ſein**, his (its)	**ihr**, her (its)	**ſein**, its	*Plur.* **ihr**, their

Poss. Adj. of Polite Address: **Ihr**.

REMARKS. — 1. The Possessive Adjectives are the Genitive Cases of the respective Personal Pronouns, declined after the **mein** Model. (See § 8, above.)

2. **Unſer** and **euer** may drop **e** of the stem when inflected; or they may drop **e** of the termination, unless the termination is **–e** or **–er**, as: **unſere** or **unſre**; **unſeres**, **unſres** or **unſers**.

3. Observe the correlatives of the Pronouns of Address:

du — dein
ihr — euer
Sie — Ihr

Thus we say:

du	haſt	deine	Aufgabe	gelernt,
ihr	habt	eure	„	„
Sie	haben	Ihre	„	„

} you have learnt your lesson

NOTE. — The last example shows the use of the Pers. Pron. and Poss. Adj. of *Third Plural* as Pronoun of Address.

4. Observe also the correlatives of the Third Person:

Referring	to subst.	*masc.*	*sing.*	ſein	whether animate
"	"	*fem.*	"	ihr	or inanimate
"	"	*neuter*	"	ſein	
"	to substs.	plur. (all genders)		ihr	

Thus we say:

Der	Hund	hat	ſeinen	Knochen verloren (lost)
Die	Blume	„	ihre	Blätter „
Das	Buch	„	ſeine	„ „

5. The possessive adjectives agree in gender with both the possessor and the thing possessed. The *termination* will depend on the gender (number and case) of the substantive they qualify (the *thing possessed*); the *stem* (as above) on the gender of the substantive to which they refer (the *possessor*).

NOTE. — Feminine diminutives, such as: Mädchen, girl, Fräulein, young lady, generally take the possessive adjective referring to them in the feminine, agreeing with the sex rather than the gender, as:

Das	Mädchen	liebt	ihre Mutter.
The	girl	loves	her mother.

For Possessive Pronouns, see Less. XXIII.

44. USE OF THE ARTICLES.

The **Definite Article** is required in German, contrary to English usage, in the following cases:

1. Before all substantives used **in the full extent of their signification** (i. e. in a *general* as well as in a *particular* sense); hence:

(*a*) Before nouns (sing. or plur.) denoting a **whole class**, as:

Der Menſch iſt ſterblich, **Man** is mortal;
Die Vögel haben Neſter, **Birds** have nests.

(*b*) Before names of **materials**, **abstract** nouns, etc., used in their *unlimited* sense, not partitively, as:

Das Glas iſt durchſichtig,
Glass is transparent;

Das Gold iſt wertvoller als **das** Silber,
Gold is more valuable than **silver**; but:

Gold und **Silber** habe ich nicht,
Gold and silver I have not (have none **of**).

Die Not iſt die Mutter **der** Erfindung,
Necessity is the mother of **invention**;

Die Muſik iſt eine Kunſt,
Music is an art; but:

Er ſtudiert **Muſik**,
He studies music (limited sense).

NOTE. — In Proverbs and Enumerations this article is omitted, as:

Not kennt kein Gebot,
Necessity knows no law;

Muſik und **Malerei** ſind ſchöne Künſte,
Music and painting are fine arts.

2. Before names of **mountains**, **lakes**, **seas**, **rivers**, **forests**, **streets**, **seasons**, **months** and **days** of the week, as:

Der Veſuv, **Mount** Vesuvius.
Der Ontario, **Lake** Ontario.
Die Themſe, the Thames.
Der Speſſart, the (forest of) Spessart.
Die Friedrichſtraße, Frederick **Street**.

Im Frühling, in spring.
Der Januar iſt kalt, January is cold.
Am Montag, on Monday.

Also before Himmel, Erde, Hölle, as:

Im Himmel, in heaven;
Zur Erde, to earth;

and before places of public resort, as:

Zur Schule gehen, to go to school.
Ich war in **der** Kirche, I was at church.

3. Before names of countries when not neuter, or when preceded by an adjective, as:

Die Schweiz, Switzerland.
Das ſchöne Frankreich, fair France.

NOTE. — Further information on the article with Proper Names is given in §§ 73, 74, 76.

4. The English *Indefinite* Article is replaced by the *Definite* Article in German when used distributively (= each), as:

Zweimal **des** Jahres, twice a year.
Drei Thaler **die** Elle, three dollars a yard.

5. The Indefinite Article is omitted before the unqualified predicate after ſein or werden, as:

Er iſt (wurde) Soldat, he is (became) a soldier;

but:

Er iſt **ein** tapferer Soldat, he is a brave soldier.

6. (*a*) The Definite Article replaces the Possessive Adjective when no ambiguity would result as to the possessor, as:

Er ſteckte **die** Hand in die Taſche,
He put his hand into his pocket;
Er ſchüttelt **den** Kopf,
He shakes his head.

Geben Sie mir **die** Hand, Give me **your** hand.

(*b*) With parts of the person, clothing, etc., the **Dative** of the **Personal** Pronoun + Definite Article replace the Possessive Adjective, as:

Ein Stein fiel **ihm** auf **den** Kopf,
A stone fell on **his** head;

Ein Nagel hat **mir den** Rock zerriſſen,
A nail has torn **my** coat.

NOTE. — If the *subject* is the possessor, the *reflexive* pronoun is used, as:

Er hat **ſich** in den Finger geſchnitten, **He** has cut **his** finger.

VOCABULARY.

to cost, koſten
hurt, wound, verletzen
cry, weep, weinen
draw, zeichnen
doctor, physician, der Arzt*
axe, die Axt*
mountain, hill, der Berg
lead-pencil, der Bleiſtift
iron, das Eiſen
window, das Fenſter
wing, der Flügel
purse, der Geldbeutel
hope, die Hoffnung
merchant, der Kaufmann
farewell, (das) Lebewohl
master, der Meiſter
Mont Blanc, der Mont Blanc
music, die Muſik
coat, der Rock*
Schiller-street, die Schiller-ſtraße
tailor, der Schneider
cloth, das Tuch
exercise, practice, die Übung
hot, heiß
light, leicht
dear, teuer
as, when, als
often, oft

EXERCISE XII.

A. 1. Übung macht den Meiſter. 2. Die Muſik und die Malerei ſind Künſte. 3. Kinder, habt ihr eure Aufgaben gemacht? Ja, wir haben ſie gemacht. 4. Der Mont Blanc iſt ein Berg in der Schweiz. 5. Iſt dieſes Tuch teuer? Ja, es koſtet drei Thaler

die Elle. 6. Die Mutter ſchickt ihre Kinder zur Schule. 7. Haben Sie Gold in Ihrem Geldbeutel? Ich habe kein Gold, aber ich habe Silber. 8. Was lernt das Mädchen? Sie lernt ihre Aufgabe. 9. Der Vater ſchüttelte ſeinem Sohne die Hand und ſagte ihm Lebewohl. 10. Die Flügel der Vögel ſind ſehr leicht und ſtark. 11. Hat der Schneider Ihren Rock nach Hauſe geſchickt? 12. Nein, er hat ihn noch nicht geſchickt, aber er wird ihn morgen ſchicken. 13. Unſere Eltern reiſten in Deutſchland und in der Schweiz. 14. Im Juli iſt das Wetter oft ſehr heiß. 15. Das Eiſen wird rot, wenn es heiß wird. 16. Glauben Sie, daß ich Recht habe? 17. Karl verletzte ſich die Hand, als er mit einer Axt arbeitete. 18. Ich würde Soldat werden, wenn ich alt genug wäre. 19. Wir würden Freunde gehabt haben, wenn wir reich geweſen wären.

B. 1. Gold is yellow, but silver is white. 2. Mary is studying music and painting. 3. Are your parents still living in Frederick-Street? 4. No, they are now living in Schiller-Street. 5. Mont Blanc is a mountain in Switzerland. 6. The girl is crying; she has hurt her hand. 7. Is your father a doctor? No, he is a merchant. 8. Glass is transparent, and we make windows of it. 9. What are you doing with your lead-pencil? I am drawing a flower with it. 10. The emperor is satisfied with his generals. 11. I blame you, because you are not industrious. 12. What are you drawing now? I am drawing a bird. 13. Why are you crying, my child? 14. The doctor shook his head, for he had no hope. 15. Would you buy a horse, if you were rich? 16. Miss B. has sent her mother a present. 17. The girl will visit her parents.

ORAL EXERCISE XII.

1. Iſt das Gold weisz? 2. Weshalb weint das Mädchen? 3. Werden Sie ſich ein Haus kaufen? 4. Sind Sie Soldat? 5. Wo wohnen Sie jetzt? 6. Was machen Sie mit Ihrem Gelde?

LESSON XIII.

CONSTRUCTION OF SENTENCES: PLACE OF OBJECTS, ADVERBS, etc. — INDIRECT NARRATION. — PREPOSITIONS GOVERNING THE DATIVE ONLY.

45. Rules for Position of Objects, Adverbs, etc.

Rule 1. (*a*) **Pronouns first of all**, unless governed by a preposition, when they come after all other objects, adverbs, etc.

(*b*) Adverbs or Adverbial Expressions of **Time** precede everything except Pronouns without Prepositions, thus:

1 2 3 4 5
(*Germ.*) Ich ſchickte **ihm geſtern** (**dieſe Woche**) einen Brief,
1 2 3 4 5
(*Engl.*) I sent **him** a letter **yesterday** (**this week**);

but:

1 2 3 4 5
(*Germ.*) Ich ſchickte **geſtern** einen Brief **an ihn**,
1 2 3 4 5
(*Engl.*) I sent a letter **to him** **yesterday**;

1 2 3 4 5 6
(*Germ.*) Ich habe **es heute** meiner Schweſter geſchickt,
1 2 3 4 5 6
(*Engl.*) I have sent **it** to my sister **to-day**.

Rule 2. Of **Nouns**, *persons* (unless governed by prepositions) before *things*, as:

1 2 3 4 5
(*Germ.*) Ich ſchickte geſtern **meinem Vater einen Brief**,
1 2 3 4 5
(*Engl.*) I sent **my father** **a letter** yesterday;

but:

1 2 3 4 5
(*Germ.*) Ich ſchickte geſtern **einen Brief an meinen Vater**,
1 2 3 4 5
(*Engl.*) I sent **a letter** **to my father** yesterday.

RULE 3. Of **Pronouns**, *Personal* before all other Pronouns, as:

Ich habe **ihm das** (Demonstr. Pron.) gegeben,
I have given him **that**.

RULE 4. Of **Personal** Pronouns, *Direct* Object before Indirect Object, as:

(*Germ.*) Ich habe **es ihm** gegeben,
1 2 3 4 5

(*Engl.*) I have given it **to him**.
1 2 3 4 5

RULE 5. Adverbs of *place*, *cause* and *manner* follow objects in the order named, as:

(*Germ.*) Er hat **das Buch zu Hause sehr fleißig** studiert,
1 2 3 4 5 6 7

(*Engl.*) He has studied **the book very diligently at home**.
1 2 3 4 5 6 7

REMEMBER: 1. That in compound tenses all these objects, adverbs, etc., come between the auxiliary and the participle or infinitive.

2. That any of these members of a sentence may occupy the *first* place instead of the subject, especially an adverb of time, etc., and that the subject (see § 20, Obs. 2) is then thrown *after* the verb, as:

Gestern schickte **ich** ihm einen Brief.
1 2 3 4 5

Diese Woche schickte ich einen Brief an ihn.
1 2 3 4 5

46. PREPOSITIONS GOVERNING THE DATIVE ONLY.

Aus, außer, bei, mit, nach, seit, von, zu } govern the Dative Case.

aus, (1) out of (*motion*), as: He came **out of** the house (**aus dem** Hause).

(2) of (*made* of), as: This house is built **of** wood (**aus** Holz).

(3) from (*origin*), as: He comes **from** England (**aus** England); from the town (aus **der** Stadt).

(4) from (*cause*), as: I did it **from** fear (**aus** Furcht).

außer, (1) outside of (*rest*), as: The table is standing **outside of** the room (**außer dem** Zimmer).

(2) except, besides, but, as: I had nothing **except** (**besides, but**) my stick (**außer** meinem Stocke).

bei, (1) (near) by, as: The chair stands (**near**) **by** the table (**bei dem** or beim Tische).

(2) at (the *house*, etc., of, = Fr. *chez*), with, as: He lives **at the house of** (or: **with**) his uncle (or: at his uncle's), er wohnt **bei** seinem Onkel.

(3) about (one's *person*), with, as: I have no money **about** (**with**) me (**bei** mir).

mit, with, as: He is coming **with** (**along with**) his friend (**mit** seinem Freunde); he struck the dog **with** a stick (**mit** einem Stocke).

nach, (1) after (*time, order*), as: He arrived **after** his brother (**nach** seinem Bruder).

(2) to (with *names* of *places*), as: He is going **to** Quebec (**nach** Quebec); to England (**nach** England); home(wards) (**nach** Hause).

(3) according to (often *follows* its case in this sense), as: This is wrong **according to** my opinion (**nach** meiner Meinung, or meiner Meinung **nach**).

seit, since, as: He has not been here **since** the war (**seit dem** Kriege); **seit** hundert Jahren, **for the last** hundred years.

von, (1) from, as: He has just come **from** dinner (**von dem, vom** Mittagseſſen).

(2) of, as: We were speaking **of** our mother (**von** unſerer Mutter).

(3) by (with *personal agent after the passive voice*), as: Children are loved **by** their parents (**von** ihren Eltern).

zu, (1) to (*persons*), as: He went **to** his friend, or **to** his friend's (**zu** ſeinem Freunde); he spoke **to** me (**zu** mir).

(2) to (*places*, if not proper names; see **nach**, above), as: He was going **to** the town (**zu der**, or **zur** Stadt).

(3) at (with proper names of *towns* only), as: He lives **at** Ottawa (**zu** Ottawa); **at** home (**zu** Hauſe).

Remarks. — 1. Bei, von and zu (and sometimes außer) are contracted with the **Dative** Sing. Masc. and Neuter of the *unemphasized* Definite Article, thus: bei dem = beim, von dem = vom, zu dem = zum; zu is also contracted with the Dat. Sing. Fem., thus: zu der = zur.

2. The **-e** of the Dat. Sing. is never used when a preposition (except **zu**) stands before a substantive without an article, pronoun or adjective preceding, as: aus Holz, of wood; mit Fleiß, on purpose; but **nach** Hauſe, home; **zu** Hauſe, at home.

3. Observe the following:

(*Germ.*) Der Brief meines Onkels,
(*Engl.*) The letter **of** my uncle = My uncle's letter.

(*Germ.*) Der Brief **von** meinem Onkel,
(*Engl.*) The letter **from** my uncle.

The English preposition **of** with a substantive must generally be rendered in German by a *Genitive case without a preposition*, whenever it can be turned into the English Possessive case, as above; otherwise by von, as:

He was speaking of his mother (von ſeiner Mutter).

4. Observe also the following:

(*Engl.*) Show the book to me = Show me the book,

(*Germ.*) Zeigen Sie **mir** das Buch (Dat. without Preposition).

The English preposition **to** with a substantive must be rendered in German by the *Dative without a preposition* whenever the subst. can be turned into the English Indirect Objective, as above; otherwise (generally) by the preposition **zu**, as:

He spoke to me (**zu** mir).

VOCABULARY.

to answer, antworten	dinner, das Mit'tagseſſen
honour, ehren	journey, die Reiſe
show, zeigen	Roman, der Römer
picture, das Bild	aunt, die Tante
letter, der Brief	thankful, grateful, dankbar (gov. dat.)
Germany, Deutſchland	ready, finished, fertig
present, das Geſchenk	quiet, still, ſtill
glass, das Glas	there, da
war, der Krieg	

Idiom: **It is I, Ich bin es.**

EXERCISE XIII.

A. 1. Seit dem Kriege ſind meine Schwäger ſehr arm. 2. Wir haben uns zwei Häuſer in der Stadt gekauft. 3. Wo iſt deine Aufgabe? Hier iſt ſie. 4. Wir machten nach dem Mittagseſſen einen Spaziergang mit unſeren Gäſten. 5. Mein Vater hat mir ein Geſchenk geſchickt und ich bin ihm dafür ſehr dankbar. 6. Biſt du mit deiner Arbeit fertig? Nein, ich bin noch nicht damit fertig. 7. Wir werden morgen mit Ihnen nach Montreal reiſen. 8. Karl lernt ſeit vier Monaten Deutſch. 9. „Setzt euch und ſeid ſtill," ſagte die Mutter zu ihren Töchtern. 10. Würden Sie viel für dieſe Bücher bezahlen? Ich würde fünf Thaler dafür bezahlen. 11.

Sind die Mädchen zu Hause? Ja, ihre Mutter schickte sie um fünf Uhr nach Hause. 12. Ehre deinen Vater und deine Mutter. 13. Bei meinem Onkel redeten wir immer viel vom Kriege. 14. Sind Sie es, Herr Schmidt? Ja, ich bin es. 15. Haben Sie in Deutschland viel Vergnügen gehabt? Sie sagen nicht viel von Ihrer Reise. 16. Bei Ihnen haben wir immer viel Vergnügen. 17. Dieser Mann lobt sich zu viel. 18. Meine Tante ist jetzt bei mir; ich werde ihr die Stadt zeigen. 19. Mein Bruder und meine Schwester sind zu Hause. 20. Was würden Sie für diese Gläser bezahlen? Ich würde nicht viel dafür bezahlen.

B. 1. Here is my uncle's letter. 2. Is he for me or against me? 3. Our servant is from Germany. 4. 'Buy me an apple,' said the child to its mother. 5. Have you sold your horses? 6. The teacher speaks of the gods of the Romans. 7. Charles, you have answered well, sit down. 8. My son always sends me the newspaper from Chicago. 9. My friend showed me his pictures. 10. Buy me this ring; it is magnificent. 11. Who is in the garden? It is she. 12. I believe that Charles has bought himself a hat. 13. Here is the letter from my uncle. 14. I am ashamed of you, because you are not industrious. 15. My father would send me to the city, if I were old enough.

ORAL EXERCISE XIII.

1. Weshalb schämen Sie sich meiner? 2. Ist es Karl oder sein Bruder? 3. Seit wann lernen Sie Deutsch? 4. Wer hat mir diese Zeitung geschickt? 5. Was machte ich nach dem Mittagsessen? 6. Wo hat mein Vater dieses Buch gekauft?

SUPPLEMENTARY LESSON A.

ADDITIONAL REMARKS ON PERSONAL PRONOUNS AND PREPOSITIONS.

47. Pronouns in Address.

1. The pronouns **du** and **ihr** are the usual pronouns of address in *poetry* and the *drama*, ihr being used for one person or more, as:

Der Becher iſt **dein**,
Und dieſen Ring noch beſtimm' ich **dir**,
The goblet is thine,
And this ring too I'll keep for thee.
(Schiller, „Der Taucher.")

Laßt, **Vater**, genug ſein das grauſame Spiel.
Er hat **euch** beſtanden, was keiner beſteht,
Und könnt **ihr** des Herzens Gelüſten nicht zähmen, u. ſ. w.,
Enough, father, of this cruel sport.
He has ventured for you what none will venture,
And if you cannot subdue the desire of your heart, etc. (*Ibid.*)

2. **Er** and **Sie** (3. sing.) were formerly regularly used as pronouns of address towards inferiors, with the verb agreeing in 3. sing., and they are often found so used in the classics, being spelt with a capital. Their use *may* imply contempt; so Faust says to his servant Wagner, who is otherwise addressed as „ihr":

Sei Er kein ſchellenlauter Thor,
Don't be a jingling fool. (Goethe, „Fauſt.")

3. Er and Sie, also ihr, are still used in *complimentary* address, corresponding to the polite use of Sie (3. plur.), by people of the lower orders.

48. The forms meines**gleichen**, deines**gleichen**, etc., = 'a person, or persons, like me, you,' etc. (vulg. 'the like of me'), are used as indeclinable substantives, either as object or as predicate, as:

Wir werden **ſeinesgleichen** nie wieder ſehen,
We ne'er shall look upon his like again.

Du biſt nicht **meinesgleichen**,
You are not (a person) like me (my equal).

(For the use of desgleichen, dergleichen, see §§ 97, 139.)

49. In addressing persons of rank, the proper title, as: Ihre Gnaden, 'Your Honour'; Eure (abbrev. Ew.) Excellenz, 'Your Excellency'; Eure

Durchlaucht, 'Your Serene Highness'; Eure Majeſtät, 'Your Majesty,' etc., is used, also without the poss. adj., and with the verb in the plur. It was this plur. use of complimentary titles that gave rise to the use of Sie as the pronoun of polite address. The old forms Ihro, Dero, are now obsolete.

50. Prepositions with Accusative.

1. The preposition **ſonder** takes the accusative, but is of rare occurrence.

2. Gegen has an obsolete form **gen**, now used only in certain phrases, as: **gen** Himmel, heavenwards; **gen** Norden, northwards, etc.

3. Ohne has a dative in the phrase ohne**dem**, 'at any rate.'

4. Bis may be followed by another preposition, indicating motion or direction to (nach, zu, an, auf, etc.); if this preposition is one governing dat. or acc., it will always take the accusative when combined with bis, as:

Er ging bis **an's** Thor, he went as far as the gate.

51. Prepositions with Dative.

The following additional prepositions take the Dative only:

1. **Binnen**, within (of *time*), as: Binnen zwei Tagen, within two days.

Notes. — 1. Binnen sometimes governs the *genitive*.

2. Binnen is used of time only; innerhalb (see §) of *space* and time.

2. **Entge'gen**
3. **Zuwi'der** } Contrary to, as: { Meiner Neigung entgegen (zuwider), contrary to my inclination.

4. **Gegenüber**, opposite (to), follows the case, as:

Dem Thore gegenüber, opposite the gate.

Note. — The case is sometimes placed between the two parts of the preposition, as: **gegen** dem Thore **über**; but this is not to be imitated.

5. **Gemäß**, according to, agreeably to, precedes or follows its case, as:

Seinem Wunſche gemäß (or gemäß ſeinem Wunſche),
Agreeably to his desire.

6. **Gleich**, like, precedes or follows its case, as:

Sie lächelte gleich einem Engel (einem Engel gleich),
She smiled like an angel.

7. **Nächſt**, or **Zunächſt** } next to (1) of *proximity* (= neben), as:

Er ſaß nächſt **mir** (or mir zunächſt),
He sat next to me.

(2) of *succession*, as:

Nächſt **dem** Leben liebt er die Ehre,
Next to life he loves honour.

NOTE. — Zunächſt usually follows its case; nächſt is the commoner of the two as preposition, especially in the senses under (2).

8. **Nebſt** } together with, along with, as:
9. **Samt** }

Der Herr kam nebſt ſeinem Freunde,
The gentleman came **along with** his friend.

Der Vater ſamt ſeinen Kindern,
The father **together with** his children.

NOTE 1. Distinguish nebſt, along **with**, and neben (along**side** of, near).

2. Samt is used of objects naturally belonging together, as above.

10. **Ob** is poetical and obsolete for über, and denotes:

(1) above (of *position*), as: Ob **dem** Altare, **above** the altar.

(2) about, concerning, as: Entrüſtet ob dieſem Frevel, indignant **about** (at) this outrage.

NOTE. — In the latter sense it also takes a genitive.

LESSON XIV.

CONJUGATION OF ſein, to be. — DECLENSION OF SUBSTANTIVES. — WEAK OR -n STEMS: — Knabe MODEL.

52. PARADIGM OF **ſein**, to be.

Principal Parts.

PRES. INFIN. **ſein** IMPF. INDIC. **war** PAST PART. **geweſen**

Indicative.	Subjunctive.
PRESENT.	
ich **bin**, I am	ich **ſei**, I (may) be, etc.
du **biſt**, thou art	du **ſeieſt**
er **iſt**, he is	er ſei
wir **ſind**, we are	wir **ſeien**
ihr **ſeid**, ye are	ihr **ſeiet**
ſie **ſind**, they are	ſie **ſeien**

Indicative.	Subjunctive.
IMPERFECT.	
ich **war**, I was	ich wäre, (if) I were (might be), etc.
du warſt, thou wast	du wäreſt, thou wert
er war, he was	er wäre, he were
wir waren, we were	wir wären, we were
ihr waret, ye were	ihr wäret, ye were
ſie waren, they were	ſie wären, they were

PERFECT.

(**Pres.** of **ſein** + P. Part.)

I **have** been, etc.		I (may) **have** been, etc.	
ich **bin**	**geweſen**	ich **ſei**	**geweſen**
du biſt		du ſeieſt	
er iſt		er ſei	
wir ſind		wir ſeien	
ihr ſeid		ihr ſeiet	
ſie ſind		ſie ſeien	

PLUPERFECT.

(**Imperf.** of **ſein** + P. Part.)

I **had** been, etc.		I had (might have) been, [etc.	
ich **war**	**geweſen**	ich wäre	**geweſen**
du warſt		du wäreſt	
er war		er wäre	
wir waren		wir wären	
ihr waret		ihr wäret	
ſie waren		ſie wären	

FUTURE.

(**Pres.** of **werden** + Infin. of ſein.)

I shall be, etc.		I shall be, etc.	
ich werde	**ſein**	ich werde	**ſein**
du wirſt		du werdeſt	

Indicative.		Subjunctive.	
er wird		er werde	
wir werden		wir werden	
ihr werdet	**ſein**	ihr werdet	**ſein**
ſie werden		ſie werden	

FUTURE PERFECT.

(Future of **ſein** + P. Part.)

I shall have been, etc.		I shall have been, etc.	
ich werde		ich werde	
du wirſt		du werdeſt	
er wird		er werde	
wir werden	**geweſen ſein**	wir werden	**geweſen ſein**
ihr werdet		ihr werdet	
ſie werden		ſie werden	

Conditional.

SIMPLE. (Impf. Subj. of werden + Infin. of ſein.)		COMPOUND. (Simple Cond. of **ſein** + Past Part.)	
I should be, etc.		I should have been, etc.	
ich würde		ich würde	
du würdeſt		du würdeſt	
er würde		er würde	
wir würden	**ſein**	wir würden	**geweſen ſein**
ihr würdet		ihr würdet	
ſie würden		ſie würden	

Imperative.	Indicative.
ſei (du), be (thou)	(zu) ſein, (to) be
ſeid (ihr), be (ye)	**geweſen** (zu) ſein, to have been.

Participles.

Pres. **ſeiend**, being *Past.* **geweſen**, been

REMARKS. — 1. Observe the absence of the Subjunctive **-e** in the 1. and 3. sing. Pres.

2. The above paradigm shows the use of **ſein** in forming its own perfect tenses, in precisely the same way as haben is used with most verbs. Sein is used in the same way with the verbs mentioned in the following Section.

53. Use of ſein as Auxiliary of Tense.

Sein replaces haben as auxiliary of the perfect tenses with the following **neuter** verbs:

(*a*) With those expressing a **change of condition**, as:

ſterben, die	wachſen, grow
geneſen, recover (from illness)	werden, become.

(*b*) With **neuter verbs of motion** when a **change of place** is specified or implied, as:

fahren, drive, go (in a conveyance)	kommen, come
gehen, go, walk	ziehen, move, go, proceed.

(*c*) **Sein**, to be; bleiben, to remain; begegnen, to meet; folgen, to follow.

(*d*) The impersonal verbs: gelingen, glücken, to succeed; geſchehen, to happen.

Remarks. — 1. The proper auxiliary to use with such verbs is always given in the dictionary.

2. Other verbs of this sort only take ſein when the change of place is **specified.**

3. Most of them (except kommen) take haben when they denote an *action* merely, and not a specific change of place, as:

Er hat viel gereiſt, he has travelled a great deal.

4. Compounds do not necessarily take the same auxiliary as the simple verb. Thus, begehen, being transitive, takes haben, the prefix changing the nature of the verb.

54. Declension of **der Knabe**, the boy.

	Singular.	*Plural.*
Nom.	der Knabe, the boy	die Knaben, the boys
Gen.	des Knaben, the boy's, of the boy	der Knaben, the boys', of the boys
Dat.	dem Knaben, (to, for) the boy	den Knaben, (to, for) the boys
Acc.	den Knaben, the boy	die Knaben, the boys

Observe: 1. All cases end in **-n**, except Nom. Sing.

2. No Umlaut added in Plural.

3. The only change is the addition of **-n**.

Remark. — The Plural ox-**en** is a remnant of the **-n** declension in English.

55. Substantives ending in a consonant add **-en**, as:

	Singular.	*Plural.*
Nom.	der Graf, the count	die Grafen, the counts
Gen.	des Grafen, of the count	der Grafen, of the counts
Dat.	dem Grafen, (to, for) the count	den Grafen, (to, for) the counts
Acc.	den Grafen, the count	die Grafen, the counts

56. Feminines do not vary in the singular, as:

	Singular.	*Plural.*
Nom.	die Blume, the flower	die Blumen, the flowers
Gen.	der Blume, of the flower	der Blumen, of the flowers
Dat.	der Blume, (to, for) the flower	den Blumen, (to, for) the flowers
Acc.	die Blume, the flower	die Blumen, the flowers.

57. In this way are declined:

1. All masculines ending in **-e**, except der Käse, cheese (see § 17), and the doubtful ones in § 61.

2. Certain masculines which have dropped the final **-e**, as:

der Bär, bear
der Bauer, peasant
der Chriſt, christian
der Geſell(e), fellow, companion, journeyman
der Graf, count
der Held, hero
der Herr, gentleman, master
der Hirt(e), herdsman, shepherd
der Menſch, man (human being = Lat. *homo*)

A full List of these Substantives is given in App. F.

3. All **feminines**, except Mutter, Tochter (§ 17, 3), the monosyllables under § 22, 3, and those in **-nis** and **-ſal** (22, 4).

4. **No Neuters** (but see §§ 62, 63).

5. Foreign Masculines accented on the last syllable, except those in **-al**, **-an**, **-ar**, etc. (§ 22, 6).

Further Examples:

Like Knabe:

Singular.		*Plural.*
N. der Bote, messenger	G. D. A. Boten	N. G. D. A. Boten
der Haſe, hare	Haſen	Haſen
der Rieſe, giant	Rieſen	Rieſen
der Ruſſe, Russian	Ruſſen	Ruſſen

Like Graf:

N. der Bär, bear	G. D. A. Bären	N. G. D. A. Bären
der Fürſt, prince	Fürſten	Fürſten
der Held, hero	Helden	Helden
der Menſch, man	Menſchen	Menſchen
der Student', student	Studenten	Studenten
der Soldat', soldier	Soldaten	Soldaten

Remark 1. Der Herr, gentleman, master, lord, adds **-n** only in the sing., but **-en** in plur.

Like Blume:

Singular.	*Plural.*
N. G. D. A. Blume	N. G. D. A. Blumen
Kirche	Kirchen
Schönheit	Schönheiten
That	Thaten
Wiſſenſchaft	Wiſſenſchaften

REMARK 2. Feminines in **-el**, **-er** add **-n** only in the Plur., as:

Sing. die Feder, pen	*Plur.* Federn
die Gabel, fork	Gabeln
die Schweſter, sister	Schweſtern

REMARK 3. Feminines in **-in** double the **n** in the plur., as:

Sing. die Gräfin, countess *Plur.* Gräfinnen

VOCABULARY.

admire, bewundern	monarch, der Monarch'
hasten, eilen	news, die Nachricht
hunt, jagen	nephew, der Neffe
dwell, reside, live, wohnen	planet, der Planet'
astrologer, der Aſtrolog'	Prussian, der Preuße
lady, die Dame	raven, der Rabe
influence, der Ein'fluß*	valley, das Thal
heathen, der Heide	happy, glücklich
comet, der Komet'	when, als, wenn
landscape, die Landſchaft	when? wann?

58. **When = wenn** *always* with Present, Perfect and Future; and also with Imperfect and Pluperfect, of a *habitual* or *repeated* occurrence (= whenever), as:

I *always* rose, **when** (i. e. whenever, **wenn**) the sun rose.

When = als with Imperfect and Pluperfect *only*, of a *single, definite* occurrence, as:

I rose *yesterday*, **when** (**als**) the sun rose.

When? interrogative = **wann?** as:

When was your father here?
Wann war Ihr Vater hier?

NOTE. — Remember that wenn also = "if."

59. When a conditional or "if" sentence precedes the principal sentence on which it depends, the principal sentence is usually introduced by the particle **ſo**, which is not to be translated into English, or counted as a member of the sent.

NOTE. — A principal sentence preceded by a subordinate clause has the subject after the verb, the subord. clause being reckoned as a single idea (see § 20), as: Wenn ich Geld hätte, ſo würde ich Freunde haben.

EXERCISE XIV.

A. 1. Wir werden morgen zu unſerer Tante in Ottawa reiſen. 2. Die Boten des Monarchen ſind mit der Nachricht nach Paris geeilt. 3. Die Arme eines Rieſen ſind ſehr lang und ſtark. 4. Die Bäume in dieſen Wäldern ſind ſehr ſchön geweſen, aber jetzt ſind die Blätter gelb geworden. 5. Der Vater iſt in der Stadt geweſen und hat ſeinen Knaben Bücher gekauft. 6. Ich bewundre die Schönheit dieſer Landſchaften. 7. Die Schüler und ihr Lehrer redeten viel von den Thaten der Helden. 8. Die Schüler werden glücklich ſein, wenn ſie mit ihrer Arbeit fertig ſind. 9. Sind die Ruſſen Heiden? Nein, ſie ſind Chriſten. 10. Mein Neffe war lange in Berlin geweſen und hatte dort die Wiſſenſchaften ſtudiert. 11. Meine Schweſter war mit ihrer Arbeit nicht fertig, als ich geſtern bei ihr war. 12. Die Aſtrologen redeten viel vom Einfluß der Kometen und Planeten. 13. Der Lehrer lobte ſeine Schüler und ſagte zu ihnen: „Ihr ſeid fleißig geweſen." 14. Wenn ich nach Deutſchland reiſe, werde ich meine Oheime und meine Tanten beſuchen. 15. Die Knaben hatten viel Vergnügen, als ſie die Haſen und Füchſe durch Wälder und Thäler jagten. 16. Die Gräfinnen waren ſehr glücklich, als ſie die Nachricht von ihrem Vater hörten. 17. Dieſe Herren werden arm werden, wenn ſie ihr

Geld ſo verſchwenden. 18. Unſere Neffen ſind lange bei uns geweſen.

B. 1. The castles of the count are magnificent. 2. The churches of this city are large and beautiful. 3. When will your brother be at home? 4. Are these soldiers Prussians? No, they are Russians. 5. The bears live in the forests. 6. The boys have two ravens and three hares. 7. The ladies have been in the church, but they are now at home. 8. Who was right? 9. For a boy of (von) five years he is very large. 10. I should be happy, if I were rich. 11. He has not been at home to-day. 12. When she was in the city she lived at her aunt's. 13. Would the girl be contented, if she were with her mother? 14. The students became tired, because they had studied too much.

ORAL EXERCISE XIV.

1. Was hat Ihr Neffe in Berlin gemacht? 2. Hatte ich Recht? 3. Wer eilte mit der Nachricht nach Paris? 4. Haben Sie jemals Hasen oder Füchse gejagt? 5. Wann wird mein Bruder zu Hause sein? 6. Würde ich glücklich sein, wenn ich reich wäre?

LESSON XV.

MIXED DECLENSION. — DOUBLE PLURALS. — PREPOSITIONS GOVERNING DATIVE OR ACCUSATIVE.

60. DECLENSION OF **der Name**, the name.

	Singular.	*Plural.*
Nom.	der Name, the name	die Namen, the names
Gen.	des Namens, of the name	der Namen, of the names
Dat.	dem Namen, (to, for) the name	den Namen, (to, for) the names
Acc.	den Namen, the name	die Namen, the names

OBSERVE: 1. **-e** in the Nom. Sing. and **-ens** in Gen. Sing.
2. **-en** all other cases.
3. No Umlaut, except in Schade (see below).

NOTE. — The Nom. Sing. sometimes has **-n**.

61. In this way are declined the following masculines:

der Buchſtabe, letter (of the Alphabet)
der Friede, peace
der Funke, spark
der Glaube, faith, belief, creed
der Gedanke, thought, idea
der Haufe, heap
der Same, seed
der Schade, harm, injury [pl. Schäden]
der Wille, will

Also one neuter: das Herz, the heart (Acc. Sing. Herz).

62. Some masculine and neuter substantives follow the model of **Maler** (§ 16) or **Sohn** (§ 21) in the singular, and that of **Knabe** (§ 54) or **Graf** (§ 55) in the plural, as:

Der Nachbar, the neighbour: *Sing.* N. D A. Nachbar, G. Nachbars; *Plur.* Nachbarn.

Das Ohr, the ear: *Sing.* N. A. Ohr, G. Ohr(e)s, D. Ohr(e); *Plur.* Ohren.

63. In this way decline also:

1. Certain masculines, as:

der Staat, state
der Strahl, beam, ray
der Vetter, (male) cousin

2. Certain neuters, as:

das Auge, eye
das Bett, bed
das Ende, end

(A full List of these substantives will be found in App. G.)

3. Foreign (Latin) masculines in unaccented **-or**, as:

der Profeſ'ſor, the professor: G. Profeſſors; *Plur.* Profeſſo'ren.
der Dok'tor, the doctor: G. Doktors; *Plur.* Dokto'ren.

64. SUBSTANTIVES WITH DOUBLE PLURAL.

The following have double forms of the Plural, with a different meaning for each:

Singular.	*Plural.*
das Band, **ribbon**	Bänder
das Band, **tie, bond**	Bande
(der Band, **volume**	Bände)
die Bank, **bank** (commercial)	Banken
die Bank, **bench**	Bänke
das Geſicht, **face, countenance**	Geſichter
das Geſicht, **vision**	Geſichte
der Laden, **shop**	Läden
der Laden, **shutter**	Laden
das Land, **land, country**	Länder
das Land, **province**	Lande
das Wort, word	Wörter, words considered *separately* Worte, words considered *connectedly* (as making *sense*)

REMARK. — The plural Lande is also used in poetical language; and in the compound die Niederlande, the Netherlands (= Lower Provinces).

65. PREPOSITIONS GOVERNING THE DATIVE OR ACCUSATIVE.

The following nine prepositions govern the **Dative** when they indicate *locality* merely, or answer the question 'where?' or 'in what place?'; the **Accusative** when they imply *motion*, *direction* or *tendency* (figurative motion) towards, or answer the question 'whither?' or 'to what place or person?':

an, auf, hinter, in, neben, über, unter, vor and **zwiſchen.**

an, 1. (of *place*):

(*a*) With DAT., on, upon (adjacent to), as:
The picture *hangs* **on** the wall (**an der Wand**).

(*b*) With ACC., to, towards, on, as:
I *hang* the picture **on** the wall (**an die Wand**).

} surface non-horizontal.

2. (of *time*, *date*) with DAT. ONLY, on, upon, as:
I was born **on** the eighteenth of August (**am achtzehnten Auguſt**).
He will arrive **on** Monday (**am Montag**).

OBSERVE: that in this use the Prep. and Article are *always contracted.*

auf, (of *place*):

(*a*) With DAT., on, upon (*on top of*), as:
The book *lies* **on** the table (**auf dem Tiſch**).

(*b*) With ACC., to, towards, on, as:
I *lay* the book **on** the table (**auf den Tiſch**).

} surface horizontal

hinter, behind:

(*a*) With DAT., as: The dog *lies* **behind** the stove (**hinter dem Ofen**).

(*b*) With ACC., as: The dog *goes* **behind** the stove (**hinter den Ofen**).

in, 1. (of *place*):

(*a*) With DAT., in, as: The gardener *is* **in** the garden (**im Garten**).

(*b*) With ACC., into, as: The gardener *goes* **into** the garden (**in den Garten**).

2. (of *time*) in (with DAT. ONLY), as: God made the world in seven days (**in ſieben Tagen**).

neben, near, alongside of, by:

(*a*) With DAT., as: The chair *stands* near (by) the table (**neben dem Tiſche**).

(*b*) With ACC., as: I *place* the chair near the table (**neben den Tiſch**).

über, 1. (of *place*) over, above:

(*a*) With DAT., as: The bridge *is* over the river (**über dem Fluſſe**).

(*b*) With ACC., as: I *go* over the river (**über den Fluß**).

2. (of *excess*) over, above (with ACC. ONLY), as: He remained over (more than) two days (**über zwei Tage**).

3. about, concerning (with ACC. ONLY), as: He spoke with me about his journey (**über ſeine Reiſe**).

unter, 1. (of *place*), under, beneath, below:

(*a*) With DAT., as: The cat *lies* under the chair (**unter dem Stuhle**).

(*b*) With ACC., as: The cat *creeps* under the chair (**unter den Stuhl**).

2. (of *number*) among:

(*a*) With DAT., as: The wolf *is* among the sheep (**unter den Schafen**).

(*b*) With ACC., as: The wolf *mingles* among the sheep (**unter die Schafe**).

vor, 1. (of *place*) before, in front of:

(*a*) With DAT., as: The chair *stands* before the window (**vor dem Fenſter**).

(*b*) With ACC., as: *Place* the chair **before** the window (**vors** Fenſter).

2. (of *order*) before (with DAT. ONLY), as: He came **before** me (**vor mir**).

3. (of *time*) before, ago (with DAT. ONLY), as:
He came **before** two o'clock (**vor** zwei Uhr).
He came two hours **ago** (**vor** zwei Stunden).

zwiſchen, between (of two objects):

(*a*) With DAT., as: The chair *stands* **between** the door and the window (**zwiſchen der** Thüre **und dem** Fenſter).

(*b*) With ACC., as: *Put* the chair **between** the door and the window (**zwiſchen die** Thüre **und das** Fenſter).

REMARK. — Observe the following contractions with the unemphasized Definite Article:

an dem = **am**	in dem = **im**
an das = **ans**	in das = **ins**
auf das = **aufs**	

Also the following, which are of less frequent occurrence:

hinter dem = hinterm	unter dem = unterm
hinter das = hinters	unter das = unters
über dem = überm	vor dem = vorm
über das = übers	vor das = vors

VOCABULARY.

please, lit., (I) beg, (I) pray, (ich) bitte	lay, legen
hang (trans.), hängen	put, place, set (down), ſetzen
fetch, bring, get, holen	put, place, set (upright), ſtellen
hear, hören	seek, look for, ſuchen
hunt, chase, pursue, jagen	kill, töten

wait (for), warten (auf + acc.)
strawberry, die Erdbeere
fire, das Feuer
Netherlands, die Niederlande
philosophy, die Philoſophie'
stove, der Ofen*
school, die Schule
door, die Thür(e)
difference, der Unterſchied
university, die Univerſität
dictionary, das Wörterbuch
open, offen
heavy, hard, ſchwer
ten, zehn
thereupon, on it, etc., darauf
first, not before, erſt
if you please, gefälligſt
no longer (lit., not more), nicht mehr.
where, wo
in order to, um (foll. by infin. with zu at end of clause)

EXERCISE XV.

A. 1. Jener Mann ſetzte ſich gegen meinen Willen auf die Bank. 2. Der Neffe des Profeſſors war lange Student, aber er iſt jetzt Doktor der Philoſophie. 3. Warum haben meine Vettern über (at) mich gelacht? 4. Mein Vater wird uns am Montag oder (am) Dienstag in die Schule ſchicken. 5. Der Sohn und die Tochter unſer(e)s Nachbars ſuchten Blumen und Erdbeeren im Walde. 6. Mein Vater und meine Mutter ſind ſeit drei Wochen auf dem Lande. 7. Die Banken werden erſt morgen um zehn Uhr offen ſein. 8. Legen Sie gefälligſt dieſe Bände neben mich auf die Bank. 9. Der König der Niederlande reiſte durch ſeine Staaten unter dem Namen eines Grafen. 10. Der Friede des Herrn ſei mit euch. 11. Der Graf ſchickte ſeinen Sohn auf die Univerſität. 12. Das Kind iſt ſehr krank und die Mutter hat zwei Doktoren geholt. 13. Weshalb warten Sie ſo lange vor der Thüre? 14. Die Herren jagten den Bären hinter den Wald, wo ſie ihn töteten. 15. Im Winter ſetzen wir uns oft vor das Feuer und bewundern die Funken. 16. Unſere Herzen werden immer traurig, wenn wir Nachricht vom Kriege hören. 17. Was iſt der Unterſchied zwiſchen den Wörtern Banken und Bänke? 18. Die Augen des Studenten ſind ſchwach, weil er zu viel ſtudiert hat. 19. Setzen Sie ſich auf dieſen Stuhl, denn Sie ſind müde. 20.

Bitte, ſtellen Sie mir dieſen Stuhl hinter den Ofen. 21. Die Studenten lernen vom Profeſſor die Namen der Götter der Römer.

B. 1. The children were playing before the house. 2. What is the name of this professor? His name is Schmidt. 3. Hang the picture of my father over the door. 4. Every human being has two eyes and two ears. 5. Why do the professors praise their students? 6. The professors praise the diligence of their students. 7. The difference between my brother and me is not great. 8. I laid the pens upon the table, but they are no longer there. 9. Our neighbours sent their children into the wood to search for flowers. 10. Our cousin lived happy and in peace with his neighbours. 11. The pupils would look for the words in a dictionary, if they had time. 12. Your eyes are tired, because you have studied too much. 13. These words are hard to learn, for every word has ten letters. 14. Place this chair, if you please, behind the stove for me. 15. If Charles is not ready, we shall go (reiſen) without him to Germany.

ORAL EXERCISE XV.

1. Wann wird Ihr Vater Sie auf die Universität schicken? 2. Weshalb hat die Mutter die Doktoren geholt? 3. Was lernten die Studenten von den Professoren? 4. Werden Sie ohne mich nach Chicago reisen? 5. Wo reiste der König der Niederlande? 6. Wann werden die Kirchen offen sein?

SUPPLEMENTARY LESSON B.

ANOMALIES OF DECLENSION.

66. SUBSTANTIVES WITHOUT PLURAL.

The following classes of substantives are used in the singular only:

1. Proper names, unless they denote a class (as: die Rafaele, painters *like* Raphael), or several individuals of the same name (as: die vier erſten Heinriche, the first four Henries, i. e., kings of that name).

2. Names of materials, etc., unless they denote different *kinds* of the same material (as: Gräſer, Salze, different *kinds* of grass, salt), or when they have a special meaning (as: Gelder, *sums* of money; Papiere, documents).

3. Abstract Substantives, unless they have a concrete (*particular*) meaning, as: Tugenden, virtues; Schönheiten, beauties, etc.

Note. — Many nouns of this sort, when used in a concrete sense, use the plurals of other words, generally compound, as: der Tod, death; die Todesfälle, deaths (i. e. cases of death).

A list of these is given in App. H.

For the plural of nouns of measure, etc., see Less. XXX.

67. Substantives without Singular.

The following classes of substantives are used in the plural only:

1. Names of certain *diseases:* Die Blattern, the small-pox; die Maſern or Röteln, the measles.

2. The following names of festivals, etc.: Weihnachten, Christmas; Faſten, Lent; Oſtern, Easter; Pfingſten, Pentecost (Whitsuntide).

3. Those plural by meaning, viz.: Alpen, Alps; Beinkleider, trousers; Briefſchaften, documents; Einkünfte, income, revenue; Eltern, parents; Ferien, holidays; Gliedmaßen, limbs; Hefen, dregs, yeast; Koſten, Unkoſten, expenses; Leute, people; Molken, curds.

68. Irregular Compounds. 1. Substantives having **-mann** as the last component form the plural:

(*a*) Regularly, when denoting *male individuals* or *occupations*, as: **Ehemänner**, husbands; **Ehrenmänner**, men of honour; **Staatsmänner**, statesmen.

(*b*) By changing **-mann** into **-leute**, when used *collectively* or in a *general* sense, or to include both sexes, as: **Arbeitsleute**, working-people; **Eheleute**, married people; **Handelsleute**, trades-people; **Landleute**, country-people; **Landsleute**, people of the same country; **Mietsleute**, lodgers (male and female).

Notes. — 1. With words of common occurrence, such as Kaufmann, merchant, Hofmann, courtier, the plur. with **-leute** only is used.

2. The form with **-leute** is the plur. of the fem. compound with **-frau** (e. g. **Ehefrau**, married woman), as well as of that with **-mann**.

2. Die Ohnmacht, the fainting-fit, and die Vollmacht, the power-of-attorney (from Macht, pl. Mächte), have the pl. **-machten**; die Antwort, the answer (from das Wort, pl. Worte and Wörter), has pl. **-en**.

69. Special Cases. 1. A few substantives in **-m**, viz.: Atem, Odem, Brodem, breath; Broſam, crumb; Eidam, son-in-law, follow the Maler model (§ 16) in the sing. The plur., if it occurs, ends in **-e** (Hund model, § 21, *b*, no Umlaut), except Broſam, which is more commonly *weak* in the plur. (**-en**).

2. Weak feminines are often found with the old weak gen. and dat. in **-en**, especially when used without article after a preposition, as: auf Erden, on earth (but auf der Erde, on the earth); zu Ehren, in honour of; in Gnaden, in mercy, etc.

LESSON XVI.

DECLENSION OF SUBSTANTIVES:—RECAPITULATION.—PROPER NAMES.—PREPOSITIONS GOVERNING THE GENITIVE.

70. Summary of Declension of Substantives.

The following tables show the endings of the various forms of Substantive Declension:

A. Strong Declension.

	I. Maler Model. (Contracted Form.)		II. Sohn Model. (Primary Form.)		III. Dorf Model. (Enlarged Form.)	
	Sing.	*Plur.*	*Sing.*	*Plur.*	*Sing.*	*Plur.*
Nom.	——	——	——	**—e**	——	**—er**
Gen.	**—s**	——	**—(e)s**	**—e**	**—(e)s**	**—er**
Dat.	——	**—(n)**	**—(e)**	**—en**	**—(e)**	**—ern**
Acc.	——	——	——	**—e**	——	**—er**

Remarks. — 1. The term '**Strong** Declension' is applicable to all the three forms given above.

2. The Sohn Model is sometimes called the **Primary** Form of the Strong Declension, and shows the **-s** of Gen. Sing. and **-e** of the Plur. From this are derived the other two forms, viz.:

3. By *contraction* (dropping –e of the termination), the Maler Model, hence called also the **Contracted** Form of the Strong Declension; and

4. By *enlargement* (adding –r in the Plur., the Sing. remaining the same), the Dorf Model, hence also called the **Enlarged** Form of the Strong Declension.

5. Feminines remain unchanged in the Sing.

6. The Umlaut may occur in any of these forms, viz.: *generally* in masc. monosyllables, *regularly* in feminines and in Enlarged Form; *never* in neuter monosyllables of Primary Form. (See Lists, App. A., B., C., E.)

B. Weak Declension.

Knabe, Graf, Blume Model.

Sing. Nom.	——(e)	*Plur.* ——(e)n
Gen.	——(e)n	——(e)n
Dat.	——(e)n	——(e)n
Acc.	——(e)n	——(e)n

Observe: 1. The persistent –n. 2. The absence of Umlaut. 3. Uniformity of Cases. 4. Feminines unchanged in Sing.

C. Mixed Declension.

I. Name Model.			II. Nachbar, Ohr Model.	
Sing. N.	—e	*Plur.* —n	*Sing.* ——	*Plur.* —(e)n
G.	—ns	—n	—(e)s	—(e)n
D.	—n	—n	—(e)	—(e)n
A.	—n	—n	——	—(e)n

Remarks. — 1. All three follow the Knabe Model in the Plur.

2. The Name Model is a Mixture of the Maler and Knabe models in the Sing., usually taking –s in the Gen., sometimes –n in the Nom.

3. The Nachbar Model follows the Maler Model in the Sing.

4. The Ohr Model follows the Sohn Model in the Sing.

71. The **Essential Parts** for the Declension of a Substantive are:

The **Nominative Singular,**
The **Genitive Singular,** and
The **Nominative Plural.**

These being given, the remaining cases of the noun can be formed from the above Tables, with the assistance of the following:

REMARKS. — 1. All Feminines are unchanged in the Sing.

2. The **Nom.** and **Acc. Sing.** are always alike, except in the Weak Declension (Knabe, Graf and Name models).

3. The **Gen. Sing.** ends in **-s** in Masculines (except in the Weak Declension) and in *all* Neuters.

4. The **Nom., Gen.** and **Acc. Plur.** are *always* alike.

5. The **Dat. Plur.** *always* ends in **-n**.

Decline the following substantives throughout:

Das Buch, die Schönheit, der Sturm, die Tochter, der Schwager, der Vetter, das Regiment, die Stadt, das Auge, der Mann, der Mensch, der Palast', der Planet', der Spaziergang, das Schaf, die Frau, das Fräulein, der Feiertag, die Schwester, der Glaube.

DECLENSION OF PROPER NAMES.

72. **Geographical** Proper Names:

1. If *never* used without an article, etc. (see § 44, 2, 3), are declined like common nouns, as: der Rhein, G. des Rhein(e)s, D. dem Rhein(e); die Schweiz, G. der Schweiz, D. der Schweiz, etc.

2. If *not generally* used with an article, etc., they take no ending except **-s** in the Gen. Sing. (unless they end in a

sibilant), as: Deutſchland, Germany, G. Deutſchlands; Frankreich, France, G. Frankreichs; Rom, Rome, G. Roms.

3. If they end in a *sibilant* (ſ, ſch, z, ß, x), the Gen. is replaced by the preposition **von**, as: Die Befeſtigungen **von** Paris', the fortifications of Paris.

4. **Von** may replace the Gen. with other names also, and is always used after titles, as: Die Königin **von** England, the Queen of England; der Bürgermeiſter **von** Toronto, the Mayor of Toronto.

5. When the Name of a Place is preceded by a common noun, they are in apposition to each other, but the proper name is not inflected, as: Die Stadt **London** (not **von** London), the City of London, G. **der** Stadt London. Das Königreich **Preußen**, the Kingdom of Prussia, G. des Königreichs Preußen.

6. Proper Names of Places are not used in the Plural.

73. Proper Names of **Persons** are now inflected in the Gen. Sing. only, as follows:

1. If preceded by an article, etc. (which shows the case), they remain unchanged, as: The letters of Cicero, die Briefe **des** Cicero.

2. If not preceded by an article showing case, etc., those ending in a sibilant, and Feminines in **–e**, add **–(e)ns** in the Gen.; all others add **–s** only, as: Max, G. Maxens; Louiſe, G. Louiſens; Karl, G. Karls.

Remark. — Surnames and classical names in a sibilant now commonly take an apostrophe instead of **–ens**, as: Opitz' Werke, Opitz's works.

74. Family Names are used in the Plural with added **–s**, as in English, but without article, as: the Schmidts, Schmidts (meaning the members of the Schmidt family).

Further Remarks on the Declension of Proper Names and of Foreign Substantives will be found in Supp. Less. C., below.

75. Prepositions Governing the Genitive.

1. **Wegen**, on account of, on behalf of, for the sake of (sometimes *follows* its case), as: I remained at home **on account of (for the sake of)** my child, (**wegen** meines Kindes).

Note. — Wegen always *follows* the Gen. of the Pers. Prons., which are then written in one word with the preposition, and have special forms ending in **-t**, as: meinetwegen, for my sake; ihretwegen, for her (their) sake; unſertwegen, for our sake, etc.; also with the Relative and Demonstr. **der**: dere(n)twegen (Sing. Fem. and Plur. = 'for the sake of whom, which, that,' etc.).

2. **Während**, during, as: We went out walking **during** the rain (**während des** Regens).

3. **Statt**, or **anſtatt**, instead of, as: He will come **instead of** his friend (**ſtatt**, or **anſtatt** ſeines Freundes).

The other PREPS. with GEN. will be found in Lesson XXXVIII.

Vocabulary.

give, preſént, make a present of (foll. by dat. of person and acc. of thing), ſchenken
library, die Bibliothek'
bookseller, der Buch'händler
cousin (fem.), die Couſine
Elizabeth, Eliſabeth
Europe, Euro'pa
festivity, die Feſtlichkeit
Frederick, Friedrich
Fred, Freddy, Fritz
poem, das Gedicht
George, Georg
Greece, (das) Griechenland
capital (city), die Hauptſtadt*
Henry, Heinrich
Ireland, (das) Irland
Margaret, Margarete
speech, oration, die Rede
St. Lawrence, der St. (Sanct) Lo'renz
Sarah, Sara
Scotchman, der Schotte
street, die Straße
Thames, die Themſe
work, das Werk
William, Wilhelm
broad, wide, breit
high, hoch
clear, klar

turbid, muddy (of water), trübe	soon, bald
	everywhere, überall'

Idioms: to be on a visit at (any one's), auf Beſuch ſein bei; as a birthday present, zum Geburtstag.

EXERCISE XVI.

A. 1. Der Kaiſer von Deutſchland iſt auch König von Preußen. 2. Die Berge Englands und Irlands ſind nicht hoch, aber die Berge der Schweiz ſind hoch und prächtig. 3. Wir ſtudieren die Briefe des Cicero. 4. Saras Couſine war bei ihr auf Beſuch, aber jetzt iſt ſie fort. 5. Müllers waren geſtern bei uns, aber wir waren nicht zu Hauſe. 6. Was iſt der Name des Bürgermeiſters von London? 7. Mein Vater hat mir Leſſings Werke und Heines Lieder zum Geburtstag geſchenkt. 8. Auf meiner Reiſe beſuchte ich die Städte London, Paris, Berlin und Rom. 9. Die Flüſſe Canadas ſind groß, aber die Flüſſe Griechenlands ſind klein und kurz. 10. Wir werden die Blumen für Sophie auf den Tiſch ſtellen. 11. Friedrichs Mutter ſchenkt ihm Klopſtocks Werke, denn heute iſt ſein Geburtstag. 12. Das Waſſer des Sanct Lorenz iſt klar, aber das Waſſer der Themſe iſt trübe. 13. Louiſe, hole Sophie und Eliſabeth und wir werden einen Spaziergang im Walde machen. 14. Dieſer Schotte redet viel von Burns' Gedichten. 15. Heinrichs Freunde werden bald nach England reiſen, und ſie werden auch Frankreich beſuchen. 16. Die Straßen Torontos waren während der Feſtlichkeiten ſehr ſchön. 17. Weshalb ſtudieren Sie die Reden des Demoſthenes? 18. Am Freitag oder Sonnabend werden wir nach Kingſton reiſen um Louiſe und Margarete zu beſuchen. 19. Georg iſt jetzt bei ſeinem Vetter Fritz auf Beſuch. 20. Am Sonntag waren wir wegen des Sturmes zu Hauſe. 21. Ich habe in der Schweiz nicht viel Vergnügen gehabt, weil ich auf der Reiſe krank war.

B. 1. Charles, bring Freddy and Max, and we shall play in the garden. 2. We have looked for William's book everywhere. 3. The streets of Paris are wide and beautiful. 4.

Who has bought these gloves for Emma? 5. The city of Ottawa is the capital of Canada. 6. We live in Canada, but our parents live in Germany. 7. We have presented flowers to Elizabeth and Mary. 8. You have Goethe's works in your library. 9. I bought Schiller's *William Tell* at (bei) a bookseller's in Hamilton. 10. We learn in this book the names of the gods of the Romans. 11. The Schmidts visited us yesterday. 12. What is the capital of Switzerland? 13. My father sent me instead of Max, because Max was too tired. 14. The city of Berlin is the capital of the kingdom of Prussia. 15. Would you be happy, if you were rich?

ORAL EXERCISE XVI.

1. Wer ist König von Preussen? 2. Wo war Saras Cousine? 3. Was hat Ihr Vater Ihnen zum Geburtstag geschenkt? 4. Sind die Strassen Torontos immer schön? 5. Weshalb waren wir am Sonntag zu Hause? 6. Was ist die Hauptstadt Canadas?

SUPPLEMENTARY LESSON C.

PROPER NAMES. — FOREIGN SUBSTANTIVES.

76. FURTHER REMARKS ON DECLENSION OF PROPER NAMES.

1. Proper names of towns, governed by a preposition in the genitive, do not take **-s**, as: unweit Hamburg, not far from Hamburg.

2. Names of persons, even if preceded by an article, etc., take **-s** in the genitive *before* a governing noun, as: des kleinen Karls Bücher (but die Bücher des kleinen Karl).

3. Feminine names frequently take **-(e)n** in the dat. and acc., especially if they end in **-e**, as: Louise, D. A. Louisen.

4. Family names (and even Christian names) formerly added **-(e)n** in the dat. and acc., and are usually so found in the classics, as:

Goethe,	D. A.	Goethen
Schiller,	"	Schillern
Karl,	"	Karln
Lessing,	"	Lessingen

NOTE. — This inflection is now obsolete and not to be imitated.

5. In the case of proper names in the *genitive*, preceded by a common noun as *title:*

(*a*) If the governing word *follows*, the proper name takes the genitive ending, the title remaining undeclined and having no article, as: König Heinrichs Söhne, King Henry's sons.

(*b*) If the governing word *precedes*, the title has the article and the genitive ending, the proper name remaining undeclined, as: die Söhne des Königs Heinrich.

NOTE. — The title Herr takes **-n** in the genitive in both these cases, as: Herrn Schmidts Haus, or das Haus des Herrn Schmidt.

6. In the case of a Christian name without article, connected with a family name preceded by von (indicating noble rank):

(*a*) When the governing word *follows*, the family name only is declined, as: Friedrich von Schillers Gedichte.

(*b*) When the governing word *precedes*, only the Christian name is declined, as: Die Gedichte Friedrichs von Schiller.

7. The names of the Saviour, Jeſus Chriſtus, usually both follow the Latin declension, thus: N. Jeſus Chriſtus, G. Jeſu Chriſti, D. Jeſu Chriſto, A. Jeſum Chriſtum, Voc. Jeſu Chriſte.

NOTE. — Other biblical names, if without article, also follow the Latin inflection, especially in the gen., as: Das Evangelium St. Matthäi, the Gospel of St. Matthew.

77. Declension of Foreign Substantives.

1. Most foreign substantives follow one or other of the regular forms of declension, *all* feminines being *weak*.

2. Most masculines and neuters from the Latin, ending in **-us**, have the classical plural, but with no case-inflection in either number, as: der Modus, the mood: N. G. D. A. *Sing.* Modus, *Plur.* Modi; der Caſus, the case: N. G. D. A. *Sing.* Caſus, *Plur.* Caſus; das Tempus, the tense: N. G. D. A. *Sing.* Tempus, *Plur.* Tempora.

NOTES. — 1. Others change **-us** to **-en** in the plur., as: Globus, *Plur.* Globen (such forms as Globuſſe should be avoided as barbarous).

2. Der Atlas has pl. die Atlanten.

3. The Hebrew words Cherub and Seraph have the Hebr. Pl. in **-im** and take **-s** in the gen. sing.

3. Neuters in **-a** from the Greek, and in **-um** from the Latin, take **-s** in the gen. sing., and change **-a** or **-um** into **-en** in the plur., as: das Drama, the drama, G. *Sing.* Dramas, *Plur.* Dramen; das Thema, the

theme, *Plur.* Themen; das Individuum, the individual, G. *Sing.* Individuums, *Plur.* Individuen; das Verbum, the verb, *Plur.* die Verben.

NOTE. — Das Klima, the climate, has pl. Klimata or Klimaten.

4. Neuters from Latin Substantives with plur. in *-ia* add *-s* in the gen. sing., often dropping the Latin sing. termination, and form the plur. in **-ien**, as: das Adverb(ium), the adverb, G. *Sing.* Adverb(ium)s, *Plur.* Adverbien; das Particip(ium), the participle, G. *Sing.* Particip(ium)s, *Plur.* Participien; das Fossil', the fossil, *Plur.* Fossilien; das Mineral', the mineral, *Plur.* Mineralien.

NOTES. — 1. These words formerly followed the full forms of Latin declension, *grammatical* terms (e. g. Verbum, etc.) retaining these forms longest.

2. The German word das Kleinod, the jewel, has Plur. Kleinodien as well as the regular Plur. Kleinode.

5. Masculines and neuters of recent introduction from *modern* languages take *-s* in the gen. sing., and add *-s* to form the plur., as: Lords, Clubs, Sofas, Banquiers, Portraits, Solos, etc.

NOTE. — Italian words are also found with their proper foreign plur., as Soli, Conti.

78. The Article with Names of Persons.

Besides the cases specified in § 73, 1, above, the article is used with names of persons:

1. *Colloquially* and *familiarly*, as: der Karl, die Louise.

2. When they denote a *class*, as: ein Wellington, a (*man like*) Wellington.

3. Before names of paintings, etc., named from a pers., etc, as: ein Rafael, a (*painting by*) Rafael; die Venus von Milo, the (*statue of*) Venus of Milo.

LESSON XVII.

GENDER OF SUBSTANTIVES. — INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS AND ADJECTIVES.

79. The **Gender** of Substantives is determined in German:

I. by **Meaning**; or

II. by **Form** (Ending, etc.).

80. I. Gender as determined by Meaning.

1. **Masculine** are names of:

(*a*) *Males*, as: der Mann, the man; der Held, the hero.

REMARK: But diminutives in **-chen** and **-lein** are neuter, as: **das** Männlein or Männchen.

(*b*) *Seasons*, *months* and *days*, as: **der** Herbſt, the autumn; **der** Januar, January; **der** Mittwoch, Wednesday.

(*c*) *Points of the compass*, as: **der** Nord(en), the north.

(*d*) *Precious stones* and *mountains*, as: **der** Diamant, the diamond; **der** Brocken, the Brocken.

2. **Feminine** are names of:

(*a*) *Females*, as: **die** Frau, the woman; **die** Tochter, the daughter.

REMARK: But **das** Weib, the woman, is neuter; also diminutives in **-chen** and **-lein**, as: **das** Töchterchen, the little daughter; **das** Mädchen, the girl; **das** Fräulein, the young lady.

(*b*) *Trees*, *plants*, *fruits* and *flowers* generally, as: **die** Eiche, the oak; **die** Neſſel, the nettle; **die** Birne, the pear (but **der** Apfel, the apple); **die** Roſe, the rose.

(*c*) *Cardinal Numerals* used as substantives, as: **die** Eins, the (number or figure) one; **die** Sechs, the six (at dice, etc.).

3. **Neuter** are names of:

(*a*) *Metals* almost always, as: **das** Blei, lead; **das** Eiſen, iron.

NOTE. — **Der** Stahl, steel, is Masc.

(*b*) *Collectives* almost always, as: **das** Volk, the people; **das** Heer, the army; especially when beginning with **Ge-**, as: **das** Gebirge, the mountain-chain.

(*c*) *Countries* and *provinces* almost always, as: (**das**) Europa, Europe; (**das**) Canada; islands, cities, towns, villages, etc., *always*, as: (**das**) Hamburg; (**das**) Rom, Rome.

REMARKS. — 1. Names of countries and provinces in **-ei**, **-au** and **-ʒ** are feminine, as: **die** Türkei, Turkey; **die** Schweiz, Switzerland.

2. Names of countries, etc., when not neuter, *always* have the definite article (see § 44, 3).

(*d*) Infinitives, letters of the alphabet, and other parts of speech (except Adjectives used of persons, and Cardinal Numerals; see 2, *c*, above), used as Substantives, as: **das** Lachen, the (act of) laughing; **das** A, the (letter) A; **das** Ich, the I; **das** Wenn und **das** Aber, (the) 'if' and (the) 'but.'

Give the gender of the following Substantives, assigning the rule in each case: April, Gold, Erdbeere, Tochter, Europa, Bischof, London, Jura, Rubin (ruby), Wallachei (Wallachia), Unrecht, Süden (South), Geld, Kaufen, Sommer.

81. INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS AND ADJECTIVES.

The **Interrogative Pronouns** are:

1. **welcher?** which? — DEFINITE.
2. **wer?** who? } — INDEFINITE.
3. **was?** what? }

82. Welcher? is declined after the dieser Model, but, *as Pronoun*, lacks the Gen., thus:

	Singular.			*Plural.*
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUTER.	ALL GENDERS.
Nom.	welcher	welche	welches	welche, which
Gen.	——	——	——	——
Dat.	welchem	welcher	welchem	welchen, (to, for) which
Acc.	welchen	welche	welches	welche, which

REMARKS. — 1. Welcher? asks 'which of a number?' of persons or things, and agrees in gender with the noun following it, as:

Welcher von diesen **Männern** ist hier gewesen?
Which of these men has been here?

Welches von diesen **Büchern** haben Sie gehabt?
Which of these books have you had?

2. The neuter sing. **welches** is used before the verb 'to be,' irrespectively of the gender or number of the subject (compare the similar use of es, § 39, 1), as:

Which is your sister (brother)?
Welches iſt Ihre Schweſter (Ihr Bruder)?
Which are the children of the count?
Welches ſind die Kinder des Grafen?

83. **Wer**? and **was**? are used in the Sing. only, and are declined as follows:

	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUTER.
Nom.	wer, who?	was, what?
Gen.	weſſen (or wes), whose, of whom	weſſen (or wes), of what
Dat.	wem, (to, for) whom	——
Acc.	wen, whom	was, what

REMARKS. — 1. **Wer** is used of persons only, for all genders and both numbers, as:

Sing. M. Wer iſt dieſer **Mann**? F. jene **Frau**? N. dieſes **Kind**?
Plur. Wer **ſind** dieſe **Männer**? etc.

2. **Was** is not used of persons.

3. **Was** is never used in the Dative. In the Dat. or Acc. with prepositions, was is replaced by **wo** (wor before vowels), placed *before* the preposition (compare § 38, Rem. 5, for similar use of **da**), as:

Worauf ſitzen Sie? On what (whereon) are you sitting?
Wovon ſprechen Sie? Of what (whereof) are you speaking?

NOTE. — **Warum**? = for what, wherefore, why? not **worum**.

4. With prepositions governing the Gen., **wes** is used before the preposition, as: **weshalb**, **weswegen**? on what account, wherefore, why?

5. The *neuter* Gen. weſſen? is rarely used, except as above.

6. **Was** is sometimes used (as interrog. *adv.*) for warum, why? (For the use of was for etwas, see under etwas, § 149, 1.)

84. The **Interrogative Adjectives** are:

1. **welcher, welche, welches?** which? what? — DEFINITE.
2. **was für ein, was für eine, was für ein?** / *Plur.* **was für?** } what kind of? — INDEFINITE.

85. Welcher, as Interrogative **Adjective,** follows the dieser Model throughout, as:

	Singular.			*Plural.*
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUTER.	ALL GENDERS.
Nom.	welcher	welche	welches	welche, which
Gen.	welches	welcher	welches	welcher, of which
Dat.	welchem	welcher	welchem	welchen, (to, for which)
Acc.	welchen	welche	welches	welche, which

EXAMPLES:

Which man was here?
Welcher Mann war hier?
What books have you?
Welche Bücher haben Sie?

REMARKS. — 1. Welcher is also used in exclamatory sentences (= **what**!), sometimes without termination, as:

Welch(es) Vergnügen! What pleasure!

2. The stem welch is also followed by ein, and is uninflected, as:

Welch ein Sturm! What a storm!

86. In declining was für ein, **was** remains unchanged, while **ein** agrees with the substantive, as:

N. M. Was für **ein** Hut? A. Was für **einen** Hut? What kind of (a) hat? D. Was für **einem** Hut? To what kind of a hat?

G. F. Was für einer Blume? Of what kind of (a) flower, etc.

In the Plur. **was für** is used without article, as:

N. A. **Was für** Kinder? What kind (sort) of children?

D. **Was für** Kindern? To what kind of children?

The **ein** is also omitted before names of materials and other words used partitively, as:

Was für Holz?	**Was für** Wetter?
What kind of wood?	What sort of weather?

87. Indirect Statements.

Direct Statement or Quotation:

He said: 'I am tired.'

Indirect Statement or Quotation:

He said (that) he was tired.

1. An Indirect Statement is always a *subordinate* clause.

2. In Indirect Statements, the Verb is usually in the Subjunctive (especially if the verb of the principal clause be in the Impf.), and has the same *tense* which it would have, if statement were made *directly*, as:

Sie sagten, daß es wahr sei (i. e., sie sagten: „Es **ist** wahr," *pres.*), They said that it **was** true.

Er antwortete, daß er gestern angekommen **sei** (i. e., er antwortete: „Ich **bin** gestern angekommen," *perf.*), He answered, that he **had** arrived yesterday.

NOTE. — In English, on the other hand, a past tense is always followed by a past tense, as in the above examples.

3. The conjunction **daß** may be omitted in such clauses, which then have the construction of a principal sentence (i. e., verb in *second* place), as:

Er sagte, **er sei** gestern angekommen.

88. Indirect Questions.

Direct Question:

Who is there?

Indirect Question:

He asked who was there?

1. In **Indirect** (or **Dependent**) **Questions** the construction is that of a *dependent* clause (verb *last*).

2. If the verb of the principal sentence be in the Impf., that of the question will be in the *subjunctive*, and have the same *tense* which it would have in the direct question, as:

Sagen Sie mir gefälligſt, wo jener Herr wohnt (Dir. Qu.: Wo wohnt jener Herr? *pres.*), Tell me, if you please, where that gentleman lives?

Er fragte mich, welcher von dieſen Herren mein Bruder ſei, He asked me which of those gentlemen was my brother (Dir. Qu.: Welcher, etc., iſt Ihr Bruder? *pres.*)

Vocabulary.

*** The article will be supplied by the pupil, according to preceding rules, where not given.

to use, brauchen
march, marſchieren
save, retten
answering, d— Antworten
paying, d— Bezahlen
jewel, precious stone, d— Edelſtein
asking (of questions), d— Fragen
Italy, Italien
fire-place, d— Kamin'
elm, d— Ulme
blue, blau
light, easy, leicht
useful, nützlich
buying, d— Kaufen
life, d— Leben
learning (act of), d— Lernen
lily, d— Lilie
market, der Markt
morning, der Morgen
afternoon, der Nachmittag
plum, d— Pflaume
emerald, d— Smaragd'
winter-month, der Wintermo'nat
valuable, precious, wertvoll
generally, usually, gewöhnlich
etc., u. ſ. w. (= und ſo weiter, i. e. "and so further")

Genitive with adverbial force. } in the morning, morgens or des Morgens
} in the afternoon, nachmittags or des Nachmittags

The Cardinal Points of the Compass (= die vier Himmelsgegenden): North, (der) Norden; South, (der) Süden; East, (der) Osten; West, (der) Westen.

Names of the Months: der Januar, der Februar, der März, der April', der Mai, der Ju'ni, der Ju'li, der Auguſt', der September, der Oktober, der November, der Dezember.

Idiom: **I saved his life,** lit. **I saved to or for him the life,** **Ich rettete ihm das Leben.** See § 44, 6 (*b*).

EXERCISE XVII.

A. 1. Wer hat das Bild von meinem Neffen über das Kamin gehängt? 2. Was für einen Tiſch hat Johann auf dem Markte gekauft? 3. Auf welche Bank werden wir uns ſetzen? 4. Welchem Knaben gehört dieſes Meſſer? Es gehört Wilhelm. 5. Jenes Mädchen auf der Straße iſt das Töchterchen unſeres Nachbars. 6. Was machen Sie gewöhnlich, wenn Sie einen Feiertag haben? 7. Des Morgens ſtudiere ich, und des Nachmittags rudre ich auf dem Fluſſe. 8. Welches ſind die Namen der ſieben Tage der Woche? Montag, u. ſ. w. 9. Wem ſchicken Sie dieſen Brief? 10. Ich ſchicke ihn dem Buchhändler. 11. Worüber haben die Herren gelacht? 12. Wer iſt die Frau neben meiner Tante auf der Bank? 13. Was für Augen hat der Student? Seine Augen ſind blau. 14. Woraus machen wir Schiffe? Wir machen ſie aus Eiſen und Stahl. 15. Karl iſt mit dem Lernen ſeiner Aufgabe nicht fertig. 16. Worauf haben die Schüler ſich geſetzt? Sie haben ſich auf die Brücke geſetzt. 17. Was für Edelſteine haben Sie da? 18. Ich habe einen Diamant(en), einen Rubin, und einen Smaragd. 19. Das Heer iſt von Frankreich nach Italien marſchiert. 20. Napoleon ſchickte dem Grafen einen Diamant(en), weil der Graf ihm das Leben gerettet hatte.

B. 1. Which of your sisters are learning German? 2. For whom is this diamond? It is for the countess. 3. Which

are your pens? 4. The asking of questions is very easy, but the answering is very difficult. 5. The north, the south, the east, and the west are the four cardinal points of the compass. 6. Which of these students is Mr. Braun? 7. The boy buys himself pears and plums in the market. 8. My uncle has three children — a girl and two boys. 9. June, July, and August are very hot in Canada. 10. Buying is pleasant, but paying is very disagreeable. 11. Iron and steel are very useful. 12. The rose and the lily are flowers, but the oak and the elm are trees. 13. I blame Mary because she wastes her money. 14. What would you do with your money, if you were rich? 15. We always hoped that William would learn German.

ORAL EXERCISE XVII.

1. Wo hängt das Bild von Ihrem Neffen? 2. Wer ist das Mädchen vor unserm Hause? 3. Weshalb schickte der König dem Bürgermeister einen Diamant(en)? 4. Was für Augen hat der Student? 5. Ist das Fragen leicht? 6. Was würden Sie machen, wenn Sie einen Feiertag hätten?

LESSON XVIII.

GENDER OF SUBSTANTIVES (concluded). — GENERAL REMARKS. — DOUBLE GENDER.

89. GENDER OF SUBSTANTIVES AS DETERMINED BY FORM.

1. **Masculine** are:

(*a*) Substantives in **-ich**, **-ig**, **-ing**, **-m**, *almost always*, as: **der Kranich**, the crane; **der Honig**, the honey; **der Fremdling**, the stranger; **der Atem**, the breath.

(*b*) Those in **-el**, **-en** (not infinitives), **-er**, *generally* (names of agents in **-er** *always*), as: **der Löffel**,

the spoon; **der Garten**, the garden; **der Gärtner**, the gardener.

(*c*) Monosyllables — *generally* (but with many exceptions), as: **der Krieg**, the war; **der Tag**, the day, etc.

2. **Feminine** are:

(*a*) Substantives in **–ei, –heit, –keit, –ſchaft, –ung, –in**, *always*, as: **die Schmeichelei**, flattery; **die Schönheit**, beauty; **die Dankbarkeit**, gratitude; **die Freundſchaft**, friendship; **die Hoffnung**, hope; **die Gräfin**, the countess; **die Freundin**, the (female) friend.

NOTE. — The termination **–in** is used to form feminine names from masculines, usually with Umlaut, always so in monosyllables.

(*b*) Those in **–t** (especially after a consonant), **–end**, *generally*, as: **die Kraft**, strength; **die Zukunft**, the future; **die Tugend**, virtue.

(*c*) Those in **–e**, *generally* (but with many exceptions), as: **die Höhe**, height; **die Größe**, size.

(*d*) Some in **–nis** (see also under neuters), as: **die Wildnis**, the wilderness.

(*e*) Foreign Substantives in **–age, –ie** (French); **–ik** (Greek); **–enz, –tät, –(t)ion, –ur** (Lat.), *always* as: die **Courage**, courage; die **Melodie'**, the melody; die **Muſik'**, music; die **Audienz'**, the audience; die **Univerſität'**, the university; die **Nation'**, the nation; die **Natur'**, nature.

3. **Neuter** are:

(*a*) Substantives in **–chen** and **–lein** (diminutives), *always* (without regard to sex), as: **das Männlein, das Fräulein, das Mädchen.**

(*b*) Those in **-tum**, *almost always*, as: **das Chriſtentum**, Christendom, Christianity.

(*c*) Those in **-nis, -ſal, -ſel**, *generally*, as: **das Ereignis**, the event; **das Schickſal**, fate, destiny; **das Rätſel**, the riddle.

(*d*) Those beginning with the prefix **Ge-**, unless otherwise determined by meaning, termination, or derivation, as: **das Gemälde**, the painting; **das Gemach**, the apartment; but: **der Gevatter**, the godfather; **die Gevatterin**, the godmother; **die Geſellſchaft**, the company; **der Gebrauch**, the usage (from **der Brauch**, masc. monosyll.).

Give the gender of the following substantives, assigning the rule in each case: Veilchen, Hut, Kirche, Künſtler, Landſchaft, Eſſig (vinegar), Blume, Geſchenk, Knäblein, Begräbnis, Furcht, Hafen, Gewitter, Finger, Apfel, Korb, Univerſität', Aſtrolog, Teppich, Philoſophie.

90. General Remarks on Gender.

1. Gender agrees, as in English, with sex, except in **das Weib**, in Diminutives in **-chen** and **-lein**, and in certain compounds (see below).

2. Inanimate objects, which in English are all alike neuter, may be of any gender in German, as determined by Meaning or Form, as: **der Hut, die Blume, das Buch.**

3. Each substantive of which the gender is not determined by the rules should be learnt **with the Definite Article** as the sign of its gender.

4. Compounds are of the gender of the last component (hence **das Frauenzimmer**, the woman, is neuter), except

der Abſcheu, disgust, from **die Scheu.**
die Antwort, the answer, from **das Wort.**
der Mittwoch, Wednesday, from **die Woche.**

Also certain compounds of Mut, which are given in Appendix I.

5. The exceptions to the foregoing lists will be found in Appendix I.

91. Double Gender.

The gender of the following substantives (with others given in App. J.), varies with their meaning:

Singular.	*Plural.*
der Band, volume	Bände }
das Band, { ribbon	Bänder } See § 64, above.
das Band, { bond, tie	Bande }
der Bauer, peasant	Bauern
das Bauer, bird-cage	Bauer
der Heide, heathen }	Heiden
die Heide, heath }	
der Schild, shield	Schilde
das Schild, sign (of an inn, etc.)	Schilder
der See, lake }	Seeen
die See, sea }	
der Thor, fool, G. des Thoren	Thoren
das Thor, gate, G. des Thores	Thore

Vocabulary.

(The pupil will supply the article in German where not given.)

to visit, study (at a university), beſuchen (+ Acc.)
collect, gather, ſammeln
peasant, country-man, d— Bauer
bee, d— Biene
relate, tell, erzählen
paint, malen
(female) neighbour, d— Nachbarin
orator, d— Redner
bedroom, d— Schlafzimmer

boat, das Boot
friendship, d— Freundſchaft
inn, d— Gaſthaus
district, locality, d— Ge'gend
history, story, d— Geſchichte
waiter, d— Kellner
piano, das Klavier'
vice, das Laſter
lesson, d— Lektion'
people, die Leute (pl.)
love, d— Liebe
mathematics, d— Mathematik (sing.)
little son, d— Söhnchen
sun, d— Sonne
city-gate, town-gate, d— Stadtthor
ingratitude, d— Undankbarkeit
way, road, d— Weg
wind, d— Wind
rage, fury, die Wut
sign, das Zeichen
terrible, terribly, fürchterlich
strong (heavily, of rain, etc.), ſtark
willingly, with pleasure, gern
so, ſo

Idioms: **1. I like to learn German, Ich lerne gern Deutſch. 2. A week ago to-day, Heute vor acht Tagen (Dat.). 3. A week from to-day, Heute über acht Tage (Acc.).**

EXERCISE XVIII.

A. 1. Ohne (die) Freundſchaft, (die) Hoffnung und (die) Liebe würde das Leben ſehr traurig ſein. 2. Unſere Vettern waren heute vor acht Tagen bei uns. 3. (Die) Schmeichelei iſt kein Zeichen der Freundſchaft. 4. Wilhelm, lerne deine Lektion. 5. Was für Bände ſind auf dem Tiſche in Ihrer Bibliothek? 6. Es ſind fünf Bände von Schillers Werken. 7. Die Wut des Sturmes iſt fürchterlich, aber das Schiff iſt ſchon im Hafen. 8. Lernt Ihr Bruder gern Mathematik? Nein, aber er lernt gern Deutſch. 9. Welchem Mädchen gehören dieſe Ringe, der Marie oder der Sara? 10. Die Dankbarkeit iſt eine Tugend, aber die Undankbarkeit iſt ein Laſter. 11. Karl Schmidt beſucht im Winter die Univerſität, aber im Sommer wohnt er bei ſeinen Eltern auf dem Lande. 12. Jenes Fräulein hat ihrer Freundin ein Band zum Geburtstag geſchenkt, und ihre Freundin iſt damit ſehr zufrieden. 13. Dieſe Handſchuhe gehören nicht mir, ſie gehören meinem

Schwager. 14. Der Maler hat ein Schild für das Gasthaus vor dem Thor gemalt. 15. Marie, hast du die Bänder für deine Mutter gekauft? Nein, aber ich werde sie morgen oder am Mittwoch kaufen. 16. Kellner, holen Sie mir gefälligst ein Messer und einen Löffel. 17. Er hat mir keine Antwort auf meinen Brief geschickt. 18. Was für eine Melodie spielt das Töchterchen unserer Wirtin auf dem Klavier? 19. Wenn ich Geld hätte, so würde ich einen Teppich und Vorhänge für mein Schlafzimmer kaufen. 20. Wenn Marie ihre Lektion nicht lernt, so wird sie in der Schule nicht gut antworten.

B. 1. This country-man lives on a heath near the lake. 2. The tempest is terrible, but the ship is already in the harbour. 3. The stranger praises this locality on account of the beauty of the landscape. 4. What kind of a flower is it? It is a violet. 5. We met a stranger on the way to the university. 6. Your aunt is my neighbour. 7. Who are these people? They are the parents of my cousin. 8. The mother relates to her little son the story of the little man in the wood. 9. Have you heard the words of the orator? 10. During the tempest the wind shook the house. 11. The girl hangs the bird-cage before the window in the sun (acc.). 12. The bees gather honey from the flowers upon the heath, and the peasant sells it in the town. 13. When we hastened home yesterday, it was raining heavily. 14. I shall not wait for George, because I have no time. 15. When I resided at (bei) my uncle's, I was always at home at ten o'clock in the evening.

ORAL EXERCISE XVIII.

1. Wer war heute vor acht Tagen bei Ihnen? 2. Was für Bücher haben Sie auf Ihrem Tische? 3. Lernen Sie gern Mathematik? 4. Was macht Karl Schmidt im Winter? 5. Wer spielt jetzt auf dem Klavier? 6. Was werden Sie heute über acht Tage machen?

LESSON XIX.

RELATIVE PRONOUNS. — IRREGULAR WEAK VERBS.

92. RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

The Relative Pronouns are:

1. **der, die, das,**
2. **welcher, welche, welches,**

} who (of *persons*), which (of *things*) — DEFINITE.

3. **wer**, who (= he who, whoever)
4. **was**, what (= that which, whatever)

} — INDEFINITE.

5. **desgleichen,**
6. **dergleichen,**

} the like of whom or which — INDECLINABLE.

93. **Der, die, das**, as Relative Pronoun, is declined as follows:

	Singular.			*Plural.*
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUTER.	ALL GENDERS.
Nom.	der	die	das	die, who, which, that
Gen.	deſſen	deren	deſſen	deren whose, of which
Dat.	dem	der	dem	denen, (to, for) whom, which
Acc.	den	die	das	die, whom, which, that

OBSERVE. — These forms are the same as those of the Definite Article, except the added **-en** of the Gen. Sing., Gen. Plur., and Dat. Plur.

94. **Welcher**, as Relative Pronoun, is declined after the dieſer Model, but, like the Interrogative welcher, lacks the Genitive.

95. Remarks on der and welcher.

1. **Der** and **welcher** refer alike to both persons and things, and are interchangeable, except that:

(*a*) In the gen., deſſen, deren, deſſen, *pl.* deren (not welches, etc.), are always used (see § 82, above).

(*b*) **Der** is used when the antecedent is of the First or Second Person, the relative being, in that case, always followed by the Personal Pronoun, as:

I, who am your friend,
Ich, **der ich** Ihr Freund bin,
(or: Ich, **die ich** Ihre Freundin bin).

O God, (thou) who art in Heaven,
O Gott, **der du** im Himmel biſt.

2. **Der** and **welcher**, referring to inanimate objects, are usually replaced by **wo** (wor– before a vowel) *before* a preposition (compare § 83, 3, above, for similar use of wo for was), as:

The table, on which (*whereon*) the book is,
Der Tiſch, auf welchem, or: **worauf** das Buch iſt.

3. The Gen. deſſen, etc., always precedes its case, as:

A tree, the leaves of which are green,
Ein Baum, **deſſen** Blätter grün ſind.

96. Remarks on wer and was.

1. **Wer** and **was** are declined like the Interrogative Pronouns wer? and was?

2. **Wer** is used of *persons* only, for all genders and both numbers; **was** *never of persons.*

3. **Wer** and **was**, as relatives, are *indefinite* and *compound* in meaning, and include the antecedent, as:

Wer nicht hören will, muß fühlen,
(He) **who** will not hear, must feel.

Was ich Ihnen geschickt habe, ist nicht viel,
What (= **that which**) I have sent you, is not much.

4. **Wer** never has an antecedent, since it includes the antecedent itself; therefore

never say: Der Mann, **wer** hier war,
but: Der Mann, **welcher** hier war,
(The man **who** was here).

5. **Was** never has an antecedent, unless the antecedent be a neuter adjective or pronoun, such as nichts, nothing; etwas, something; alles, everything; or a phrase, in which cases **was** always replaces **das**, as:

Nothing (**that**) I say, etc., Nichts, **was** ich sage, etc.
All (**that**) I have, etc., Alles, **was** ich habe, etc.
The best (**that**) I have, etc., Das Beste, **was** ich habe, etc.
He does not learn his lessons, **which** (i. e. 'the not learning') is a great pity, Er lernt seine Lektionen nicht, **was** sehr schade ist.

6. **Ever** = **auch** or **immer** after wer or was, as:

Wer es **auch** (**immer**) gesagt hat, Whoever has said it.

7. The Relative **was**, like the Interrogative, is not used after prepositions in the Dative or Accusative, but is replaced in the same way by **wo(r)**; with prepositions governing the Genitive, **wes** is used (see § 83, 3, above).

Observe. — The *relative must never be omitted* in German, as it so frequently is in English, hence:

(*Engl.*) The man I met,
(*Germ.*) Der Mann, **welchem** (dem) ich begegnete.

97. **Desgleichen** and **dergleichen** are indeclinable words, the former referring to a masc. or neuter noun in the sing., the latter to fem. or plural nouns, as:

Ein Mann, **des**gleichen (dat.) ich nie begegnete,
A man, the **like of whom** I never met.
Haben Sie jemals **des**gleichen gehört?
Have you ever heard the like of that?
Eine Frau, **der**gleichen, etc., A woman, the like of whom, etc.
Kinder, **der**gleichen, etc., Children, the like of whom, etc.

98. CONSTRUCTION OF RELATIVE SENTENCES.

1. Every relative sentence is of course a *dependent* sentence, and as such must have the **verb at the end**, as:

The wine, which I have sent you, is very good.
Der Wein, **den** ich Ihnen **geſchickt habe**, iſt ſehr gut.

2. When the antecedent is subject, the relative immediately follows it (as in the sentence given above); but if the antecedent be object, the sentence in which the object occurs should be completed before the relative is introduced, as:

I have not used the book which you sent me, Ich habe das Buch **nicht gebraucht**, welches Sie mir ſchickten.

I would have bought the book you showed me yesterday, if I had had money, Ich würde das Buch **gekauft haben**, welches Sie mir geſtern zeigten, wenn ich Geld gehabt hätte.

3. In sentences with wer or was, the relative clause will be counted as the first member of the principal sentence, which will therefore begin with the verb, e. g.:

Wer nicht hören will, **muß** fühlen,
He who will not hear, must feel.

NOTE. — In German, every dependent sentence or clause is separated from the sentence on which it depends by a comma. The relatives welcher and der must therefore always be preceded by a comma.

99. Irregular Weak Verbs.

1. A Few Weak Verbs, besides adding the termination **-te** to form the Impf., and **-t** to form the P. Part., also change the Stem Vowel in the Impf. Indicative and P. Part., but *not* in the Impf. Subjunctive. They are:

Infinitive.	Impf. Ind.	Impf. Subj.	P. Part.
brennen (intr.), to burn, be consumed with fire	brannte	brennte	gebrannt
kennen, to know, be acquainted with	kannte	kennte	gekannt
nennen, to name	nannte	nennte	genannt
rennen, to run (at full speed)	rannte	rennte	gerannt
senden, to send	sandte / sendete	sendete	gesandt / gesendet
wenden, to turn	wandte / wendete	wendete	gewandt / gewendet

Observe: 1. The double forms of the last two verbs, of which the shorter are in more general use.

2. The three following verbs have also a *consonant* change, *with* Umlaut in the Impf. Subj.:

Infinitive.	Impf. Ind.	Impf. Subj.	P. Part.
bringen, to bring	brachte	brächte	gebracht
denken, to think	dachte	dächte	gedacht
dünken, to seem (impers.) (deuchten, däuchten)	deuchte / (däuchte) / dünkte	deuchte / (däuchte) / dünkte	gedeucht / (gedäucht) / gedünkt

Remarks. — 1. Compare the English: bring, brought; think, thought.

2. The forms däuchte, gedäucht, are as yet more common than deuchte, gedeucht, but the latter are according to the new official orthography.

3. Besides the Inf. deuchten, there is also a Pres. Ind. 3. sing. deucht.

NOTE. — The German Perfect often replaces the English Past or Imperfect (see also Less. XLIII.), as:

I **sent** you the book yesterday,
Ich **habe** Ihnen gestern das Buch **geschickt.**
I **was** working yesterday the whole day,
Ich **habe** gestern den ganzen Tag **gearbeitet.**

VOCABULARY.

consider, bedenken (trans.)
order, bespeak, bestellen
think of, denken an (+ acc.) or denken (+ gen.)
recognize, erkennen
like to hear, gern hören
divide, share, teilen
burn, consume with fire (trans.), verbrennen
wish, wünschen
apply to, sich wenden an (+ acc.)
acquaintance, die Bekanntschaft
postman, der Postbote
title, der Titel
all, everything, Alles
unhappy, unfortunate, unglücklich
improbable, unwahrscheinlich
just now, eben, soeben
diligently, industriously, fleißig
easily, readily, leicht
really, wirklich

Idiom: **It is a pity, Es ist schade** (adj.).

EXERCISE XIX.

A. 1. Der Kaiser sandte einen Boten mit der Nachricht nach Berlin. 2. Wer nicht für mich ist, ist wider mich. 3. Die Leute, bei denen ich auf Besuch gewesen bin, sind Schotten. 4. Hat der Kellner Alles gebracht, was wir brauchen? 5. Der Postbote hat mir die Nachricht gebracht, worauf ich wartete. 6. Ich erkannte wirklich den Herrn nicht, der gestern mit meinem Vetter in der Kirche war. 7. Das Pferd des Generals rannte um den Preis. 8. Der Fremdling, dessen Bekanntschaft ich zu machen wünsche, wird morgen hier sein. 9. Das Feuer brannte im Ofen und ver-

brannte das Holz. 10. Wenn er unglücklich war, wandte er sich immer an mich, der ich sein Freund war. 11. Ich dachte heute an die Geschichte, die Sie mir gestern erzählten, und ich habe sehr darüber gelacht. 12. Hat der Diener die Bücher nach Hause gebracht, die ich beim Buchhändler gekauft habe? 13. Mensch, hast du je bedacht, was du bist? 14. Wir haben das Holz schon verbrannt, das wir vor acht Tagen gekauft haben. 15. Dieses Kind erzählt immer zu Hause, was es in der Schule hört. 16. Alles, was er hat, teilt er mit mir, der ich sein Freund bin. 17. Glauben Sie die Geschichte, die Herr Braun uns erzählt hat? 18. Die Frau, deren Töchterchen bei uns auf Besuch ist, wird morgen nach Hause reisen. 19. Was Sie in der Stadt gehört haben, ist sehr unwahrscheinlich. 20. Es regnete gestern, was sehr schade war, da wir auf dem Lande waren.

B. 1. Do you hear what I say to you? 2. My father always burnt the letters which were no longer useful. 3. He has not told me what he wishes. 4. The man, in whose house we lived, is the brother of our neighbour. 5. Here is the meat which you have ordered. 6. The honey which the countryman brought us yesterday is not good. 7. Do you know the artist who has painted this picture? 8. People who are not industrious do not become rich. 9. We readily believe what we hope and wish for. 10. What were you thinking of when you met me yesterday? 11. Have you all you need? 12. I believe that I know the man who is in front of the house. 13. I always burn the newspapers I do not need. 14. The students to whom these books belong do not study them diligently, which is a pity. 15. I do not know the song, the title of which you have just named. 16. What was burning? The gardener was burning leaves.

ORAL EXERCISE XIX.

1. Was machen Sie gewöhnlich mit den Zeitungen, die Sie nicht mehr brauchen? 2. Wer hat Ihnen diese Nachricht

gebracht? 3. Woran denken Sie? 4. Was machen Sie, wenn Sie einen Feiertag haben? 5. Glauben Sie jede Geschichte, die Sie hören? 6. Was erzählt das Kind?

LESSON XX.

DECLENSION OF ATTRIBUTIVE ADJECTIVES:—STRONG FORM. —CONJUGATION OF STRONG VERBS.

100. Declension of Attributive Adjectives.

The boy is **good** — **Predicative** Adjective.
The **good** boy — **Attributive** "

Remember: That Adjectives used as *Predicates* are **not varied** (see § 14).

101. Every **Attributive** Adjective either *is or is not preceded by a determinative word* (i. e., article or pronominal adjective), which shows gender, number and case **by distinctive endings.**

102. First Form. — If not preceded by any such determinative word, the Attributive Adjective follows the **Strong Declension**, which is the same as the dieſer Model throughout, thus:

Strong Declension of **gut, good.**

	Singular.			*Plural.*
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUTER.	ALL GENDERS.
Nom.	guter	gute	gutes	gute
Gen.	gutes	guter	gutes	guter
Dat.	gutem	guter	gutem	guten
Acc.	guten	gute	gutes	gute

SUBSTANTIVES WITH ADJECTIVES.

Singular.

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUTER.
	good wine	good soup	good glass
Nom.	guter Wein	gute Suppe	gutes Glas
Gen.	gutes (en) Wein(e)s	guter Suppe	gutes (en) Glases
Dat.	gutem Wein(e)	guter Suppe	gutem Glas(e)
Acc.	guten Wein	gute Suppe	gutes Glas

Plural.

ALL GENDERS.

Nom. gute Weine, Suppen, Gläser
Gen. guter Weine, Suppen, Gläser
Dat. guten Weinen, Suppen, Gläsern
Acc. gute Weine, Suppen, Gläser

OBSERVE: In this form, where there is no other word to show the gender, etc., of the noun, this work must be done by the adjective, which therefore has as full a set of endings as possible.

REMARKS. — 1. The Gen. Sing. Masc. and Neuter generally has **-en** instead of **-es** before strong substantives, as: guten Weines, guten Brotes.

2. Adjectives in **-e** drop the **-e** of the stem in declension, as: müde, tired: müd-er, müd-e, müd-es, etc.

3. If several Adjectives precede the same substantive, all follow the same form, as:

guter, alter, roter Wein, etc.,
good, old, red wine.

Decline throughout in German: sick child, high tree, long lesson, beautiful broad stream, young woman, lazy horse, tired boy.

103. Conjugation of Strong Verbs.

Verbs in German are either Strong or Weak. The **Weak** Verbs, which indicate change of tense by the **addition of a termination** (usually *without change of vowel*), as: lob–en, lobte, gelob–t, have been treated in Lessons IX, X.

104. The **Strong** Verbs, on the other hand, indicate the change of tense by a **change of the Root Vowel without adding a termination**, as: ſing–en, to sing, Impf. ſang; bleiben, to remain, Impf. blieb.

105. The Past Participle in Strong Verbs ends in **-en** (not –et), usually also with change of Vowel, as: ſing–en, P. Part. ge–ſung–**en**; bleiben, P. Part. ge–blieb–**en**; but **geben**, P. Part. ge–**geben**.

Remark. — This change of Root-Vowel is called 'Ablaut,' and is common to English and German. Compare Eng. sing, sang, sung; give, gave, giv–en.

106. Paradigm of Simple Tenses of **ſingen**, to sing.

Principal Parts.

Infin. ſing–en	Impf. ſang	P. Part. ge–ſung–**en**

Indicative.	Subjunctive.
Present.	
ich ſinge, I sing	ich ſinge, I (may) sing, etc.
du ſing(e)ſt, thou sing-est	du ſingeſt
er ſing(e)t, he sing-s	er ſinge
wir ſingen, we sing	wir ſingen
ihr ſing(e)t, ye sing	ihr ſinget
ſie ſingen, they sing	ſie ſingen
Imperfect.	
	(Ind. Stem with Umlaut, where possible.)
ich ſang, I sang	ich ſänge
du ſang(e)ſt, thou sangst	du ſängeſt

Indicative.	Subjunctive.
er ſang, he sang	er ſänge
wir ſangen, we sang	wir ſängen
ihr ſang(e)t, ye sang	ihr ſänget
ſie ſangen, they sang	ſie ſängen

Imperative.

ſing(e) [du], sing [thou]
ſinge er, let him sing
ſingen wir, let us sing
ſing(e)t [ihr], sing [ye]
ſingen ſie, let them sing

OBSERVE: The *Person* endings are the same throughout as in the paradigm of loben, in which -te of the Impf. is a **Tense** ending (see Lessons IX, X); this is shown by the following:

107. TABLE OF ENDINGS OF STRONG VERBS IN SIMPLE TENSES.

	Present.		Imperfect.		Imperative.
	INDIC.	SUBJ.	INDIC.	SUBJ.	
Sing. 1.	—e	—e	—	—e	
2.	—(e)ſt	—eſt	—(e)ſt	—eſt	—(e)
3.	—(e)t	—e	—	—e	—e
Plur. 1.	—en	—en	—en	—en	—en
2.	—(e)t	—et	—(e)t	—et	—(e)t
3.	—en	—en	—en	—en	—en

OBSERVE: 1. The changed Vowel of the Imperfect, and absence of person endings in 1. and 3. sing.

2. The Umlaut of the Imperfect Subjunctive.

3. The persistent -e of the Subjunctive (Imperf. as well as Pres.)

REMARKS. — 1. The **-e** of the termination in the 2. Sing. of the Pres. and Impf. Ind. is only retained in Strong Verbs after **d**, **t**, or a sibilant, as: ich reit-e, du reit-eſt; ich preiſ-e, du preiſ-eſt; and in the 3. Sing. Pres. Ind., and 2. Plur. Pres. and Impf. Ind. after **d**, **t**, as: er reit-et, ihr reit-et, ihr ritt-et; but er preiſ-t, ihr preiſ-t, ihr prieſ-t.

2. The compound tenses of a Strong Verb are formed precisely like those of a Weak Verb, some being conjugated with haben, others with ſein; hence it is only necessary to know the Inf., Impf. and P. Part., and in some cases the 2. Sing. Imper., in order to conjugate a Strong Verb throughout.

108. PARADIGM OF COMPOUND TENSES OF **ſingen, to sing** (with haben); **fallen, to fall** (with ſein).

Indicative.	Subjunctive.
PERFECT.	
(Pres. of { haben / ſein } + P. Part. of { ſingen / fallen })	
ich habe geſungen, I have sung	ich habe geſungen
du haſt geſungen, thou hast sung, etc.	du habeſt geſungen, etc.
ich **bin** gefallen, I have (am) fallen, etc.	ich **ſei** gefallen, etc.
PLUPERFECT.	
(Imperf. of { haben / ſein } + P. Part. of { ſingen / fallen })	
ich hatte geſungen, I had sung, etc.	ich hätte geſungen, etc.
ich **war** gefallen, I had (was) fallen, etc.	ich **wäre** gefallen, etc.
FUTURE.	
(Pres. of werden + Infin. of { ſingen / fallen })	
ich werde ſingen (fallen), I shall sing (fall)	ich werde ſingen (fallen)
du wirſt ſingen (fallen), thou wilt sing (fall), etc.	du werdeſt ſingen (fallen), etc.

Indicative.	Subjunctive.
FUTURE PERFECT.	
(Future of { haben / ſein } + P. Part. of { ſingen / fallen })	
ich werde geſungen haben, I shall have sung	ich werde geſungen haben
du wirſt geſungen haben, thou wilt have sung, etc.	du werdeſt geſungen haben, etc.
ich werde gefallen **ſein**, I shall have (be) fallen, etc.	ich werde gefallen **ſein**, etc.

Conditional.	
SIMPLE.	COMPOUND.
(Impf. Subj. of werden + Infin. of ſingen, fallen)	(Simple Cond. of { haben / ſein } + P. Part. of ſingen, fallen)
ich würde ſingen (fallen), I should sing (fall), etc.	ich würde geſungen haben, etc.
	ich würde gefallen **ſein**, etc.

Infin. Perf.

(P. Part. of { ſungen / fallen } + Pres. Infin. of { haben / ſein })

geſungen (zu) haben, to have sung
gefallen zu ſein, to have (be) fallen

109. Compound Verbs. — Compound Verbs are conjugated like the simple verbs from which they are derived; those having one of the inseparable particles **be–, er–, emp–, ent–, ge–, ver–, zer–**, do not take the prefix ge– in the P. Part., as: **be**–ſingen, P. Part. **be**–ſungen (compare **be**–zahlen, P. Part. **be**–zahlt, § 35, Rem. 6), and in the Inf. take zu *before* the prefix; other compounds take the prefix ge– and the particle zu *between* the prefix and the verb (Part. or Inf. respectively).

110. The Strong Verbs are divided into classes, according to the 'Ablaut,' or Vowel-changes, of the root (see § 105, Rem., above). These classes, with the verbs belonging to each, are given in the following Lessons (XXII–XXXI).

111. Shorter Forms of the Conditional.

The **Impf. Subj.** and **Plupf. Subj.** are frequently used in all Verbs instead of the Simple and Compound Conditional respectively, thus:

ich **hätte** = ich würde haben; ich **fänge** = ich würde fingen; ich **hätte gehabt** = ich würde gehabt haben; ich **hätte gefungen** = ich würde gefungen haben.

Note. — These shorter forms are always to be preferred in the Passive Voice (Less. XXI), and in the Modal Auxiliaries (Less. XXXIV).

Vocabulary.

help (serve) one's self, ſich bedienen
acknowledge, confess, bekennen
catch cold, ſich erkälten
nominate, appoint, ernennen
fill, füllen
spread out, ſich verbreiten
bough, branch, der Aſt*
ink, die Dinte or Tinte
company, die Geſellſchaft
governor, der Gouverneur'
concert, das Konzert'
queen, die Königin
paper, das Papier'
advice, counsel, der Rat
singer, der Sänger, die Sängerin
liberal, generous, freigebig
friendly, kind, freundlich
fresh, friſch
glad, froh
hard, hart
hoarse, heiſer
bad, ſchlecht
black, ſchwarz
brave, valiant, tapfer
true, faithful, treu
weighty, important, wichtig
at last, finally, endlich
yes (emphatic), yes indeed, ja wohl

Idioms: **To appoint (as) governor, zum Gouverneur ernennen; cheerfully, frohen Mutes** (genitive with adverbial force); **good morning, guten Morgen** (i. e., **Ich wünſche Ihnen einen guten Morgen**).

EXERCISE XX.

A. 1. Mein Meſſer iſt von gutem, hartem Stahle. 2. Hohe Bäume haben gewöhnlich große Äſte. 3. Was für Pferde haben

Sie gekauft? Ich habe schwarze und weiße Pferde gekauft. 4. Füllen Sie gefälligst mein Glas mit frischem Wasser. 5. Tapfere Soldaten eilen frohen Mutes in die Schlacht. 6. Zwei glückliche Menschen wohnen in jenem Hause. 7. Haben Sie etwas Neues in der Stadt gehört? Ja wohl, viel Neues, aber nichts Interessantes. 8. Hier ist guter Käse und frisches Brod; bitte, bedienen Sie sich. 9. Wer du bist zeigt deine Gesellschaft. 10. Guten Morgen, Herr Braun, ich hoffe, daß wir heute schönes Wetter haben werden. 11. In welchem Jahre ernannte die Königin den Grafen von Dufferin zum Gouverneur von Canada? 12 Ich habe gutes Papier, aber meine Feder ist schlecht. 13. Die Kinder liebten meinen Onkel, weil er nie müde wurde, ihnen schöne Geschichten zu erzählen. 14. Sie haben endlich bekannt, daß Sie Unrecht haben. 15. Ich habe mich erkältet; wenn ich jetzt sänge, würde ich heiser werden. 16. Ich habe schon oft das Lied gehört, welches die Sängerin im Konzert gesungen hat. 17. Gute Bücher sind treue Freunde, die immer Rat für uns haben. 18. Wenn wir fleißig sind, so werden unsere Lehrer uns loben.

B. 1. Have you black ink or red? I have black. 2. Rich people are not always generous, and generous people are not always rich. 3. What kind of neighbours have you? We have friendly neighbours. 4. Please fill my glass with pure fresh water. 5. High mountains and beautiful valleys spread out before our eyes. 6. I have something important to say to you. 7. New friends are not always good friends. 8. This mother buys her children something useful. 9. Have you white paper or blue? I have white, but my brother has blue. 10. I like to hear the singer, who sang at (in) the concert yesterday. 11. My sister did not sing at the concert, because she was hoarse. 12. If she had not been hoarse, she would have sung.

ORAL EXERCISE XX.

1. Weshalb liebten die Kinder meinen Onkel? 2. Wer wohnt in jenem Hause? 3. Was hat die Mutter ihren Kindern gekauft? 4. Was für Papier haben Sie für mich gekauft? 5. Warum sangen Sie nicht? 6. Womit haben Sie mein Glas gefüllt?

LESSON XXI.

THE PASSIVE VOICE.

112. The Passive Voice is formed by means of the various tenses of the auxiliary verb **werden**, to become (see § 19) + the **Past Participle** of the Verb to be conjugated, as in the Paradigm below.

Principal Parts of werden:

INFIN. **werden** IMPF. **wurde** (ward) PAST PART. **geworden**

NOTE. — The perfect tenses of werden are formed with ſein (see § 53, *a*), Perf. Ich **bin** geworden; Plupf. ich **war** geworden, etc. For the formation of the future and conditional, see ſein (§ 52).

PARADIGM OF THE PASSIVE VOICE OF **loben**, to praise.

Indicative.		Subjunctive.	
PRESENT.			
(Pres. of werden + P. Part. of loben.)			
I am (being) praised, etc.		I (may) be praised, etc.	
ich werde	**gelobt**	ich werde	**gelobt**
du wirſt		du werdeſt	
er wird		er werde	
wir werden		wir werden	
ihr werdet		ihr werdet	
ſie werden		ſie werden	

Indicative.	Subjunctive.

Imperfect.

(Imperf. of werden + P. Part. of loben.)

I was (being) praised, etc.	I might be (being) praised, [etc.
ich wurde (ward)	ich würde
du wurdeſt (wardſt)	du würdeſt
er wurde (ward)	er würde
wir wurden **gelobt**	wir würden **gelobt**
ihr wurdet	ihr würdet
ſie wurden	ſie würden

Perfect.

(Perfect of werden + P. Part. of loben.)

(Part. of werden omits ge-)

I have been praised, etc.	I (may) have been praised, [etc.
ich bin	ich ſei
du biſt	du ſeieſt
er iſt	er ſei
wir ſind **gelobt** worden	wir ſeien **gelobt** worden
ihr ſeid	ihr ſeiet
ſie ſind	ſie ſeien

Pluperfect.

(Plupf. of werden + P. Part. of loben.)

I had been praised, etc.	I might have been praised, [etc.
ich war **gelobt** worden	ich wäre **gelobt** worden
du warſt gelobt worden, etc.	du wäreſt gelobt worden, etc.

Future.

(Future of werden + P. Part. of loben.)

I shall be praised, etc.	I shall be praised, etc.
ich werde **gelobt** werden	ich werde **gelobt** werden
du wirſt gelobt werden, etc.	du werdeſt gelobt werden, etc.

Indicative.	Subjunctive.

FUTURE PERFECT.

(Fut. Perf. of werden + P. Part. of loben.)

I shall have been praised, etc.	I shall have been praised, etc.
ich werde **gelobt** worden ſein	ich werde **gelobt** worden ſein
du wirſt gelobt worden ſein, etc.	du werdeſt gelobt worden ſein
	etc.

Conditional.

(Cond. of werden + P. Part. of loben.)

SIMPLE.	COMPOUND.
I should be praised, etc.	I should have been praised
ich würde **gelobt** werden	ich würde **gelobt** worden ſein
du würdeſt gelobt werden, etc.	du würdeſt gelobt worden ſein
	etc.

Infinitive. (Infin. of werden + P. Part of loben.)	Participles. (Part. of werden + P. Part of loben.)
Pres. to be praised	*Pres.* being praised
gelobt (zu) werden	**gelobt** werdend
Perf. to have been praised	*Past.* been praised
gelobt worden (zu) ſein	**gelobt** worden

Imperative.

(Imper. of werden + P. Part. of loben.)

be praised, etc.
werde **gelobt**
werde er gelobt
werden wir gelobt
werdet gelobt
werden ſie gelobt

REMARKS. — 1. The shorter forms, i. e. Impf. and Plupf. Subj. (see § 111, and Note), are commonly used for the longer forms with würde in the conditional.

2. Observe the omission of the **ge–** in the P. Part. of werden (**worden** for ge–worden) when used as auxiliary of the passive voice.

3. The **personal agent** with the passive voice (which is the *subject* of the active verb) is denoted by the preposition **von** (Engl. **by**), as:

Der unartige Knabe wird **von** ſeinem Lehrer beſtraft,
The naughty boy is being punished **by** his teacher.

4. The auxiliary participle worden is omitted whenever the state of the subject may be regarded as still continuing, thus:

Das Haus **iſt** gebaut,
The house has been (is) built (**and is still standing**).

5. The Engl. '**I am**,' '**I was**,' etc., as part of the passive auxiliary 'to be,' must be rendered into German as follows:

(*a*) By the proper tense of **werden** when they are equivalent to 'I am **being**,' 'I was **being**,' **etc.**, as:

The child **is** (i. e., is **being**) punished by its parents,
Das Kind **wird** von ſeinen Eltern beſtraft;

The dinner was **being** served, when we arrived,
Das Mittagseſſen **wurde** ſerviert, als wir ankamen;

or when the verb, being turned into the active voice, is in the **present** or **imperf.** tense respectively, as:

Passive:
The boy **is** (**was**) always punished by the teacher, when he is (was) naughty,
Der Knabe **wird** (**wurde**) immer vom Lehrer beſtraft, wenn er unartig iſt (war);

Active:
The teacher always **punishes** (pres.) or **punished** (impf.) the boy, when he is (was) naughty,
Der Lehrer **beſtraft** (**beſtrafte**) immer den Knaben, wenn er unartig iſt (war).

(*b*) By the proper tense of **ſein** (with or without **worden**, see last Remark), when they are equivalent to '**I have been**,' '**I had been**,' etc., or when the verb, being turned into the active, would be **perf.** or **pluperf.** respectively, as:

Passive: { I am (= have been) invited to the party,
Ich **bin** zur Geſellſchaft **eingeladen** (worden);

Active: { They have invited (perf.) me to the party,
Man **hat** mich zur Geſellſchaft **eingeladen.**

Passive: { The dinner was (= had been) served, when we arrived,
Das Mittagseſſen **war ſerviert**, als wir ankamen;

Active: { They had served (plupf.) the dinner, etc.,
Man **hatte** das Mittagseſſen **ſerviert**, u. ſ. w.

The following examples will serve to show more clearly the proper use of the various forms of the passive:

1. (*a*) Die Läden **werden** jetzt geſchloſſen, The shops are being shut now (*present*).
(*b*) Die Läden **ſind** dieſe Woche früher geſchloſſen **worden**, The shops have been shut earlier this week (*perfect*).
(*c*) Die Läden **ſind** jetzt geſchloſſen, The shops are (and remain) shut (*past* state, *continuing* in the *present*).

2. (*a*) Der Soldat **wurde** von einer Kugel **verwundet**, The soldier was wounded by a ball (a ball wounded him, *impf.*).
(*b*) Der Soldat **war** von einer Kugel verwundet **worden**, The soldier had been wounded by a ball (*pluperf.*).
(*c*) Der Soldat **war** ſchwer verwundet, The soldier was severely wounded (and still suffered from his wound: *past* state, *continuing* in the *past*).

3. (*a*) Dieſe Brücke **wurde** vor zehn Jahren gebaut, This bridge **was** built ten years ago (they built it then, that is the date of its **being** built, *impf.*)

(*b*) Dieſe Brücke **war** vor zehn Jahren gebaut, This bridge **was** built ten years ago (and is still standing: *past* state, *continuing* in the *present*).

Exercise on the Preceding Rules.

A. Turn the following sentences into German: 1. This house was built by my father. 2. My window is broken (gebrochen). 3. The child is washed (gewaſchen). 4. This man is esteemed by everybody (jedermann). 5. The garden must be sold. 6. The enemy was beaten (geſchlagen).

B. Turn the following sentences into the passive: 1. Woraus machen wir Meſſer? 2. Robert Stevenſon hat die Victoria-Brücke bei Montreal gebaut. 3. Mein Bruder hat mir dieſe Uhr geſchenkt. 4. Die Feinde bombardierten die Stadt. 5. Der Lehrer hatte den Knaben beſtraft, weil der Knabe ſein Buch verloren (lost) hatte. 6. Dein Vater wird dich loben.

113. Limitations of the Passive Voice.

1. Only the **direct object** of a **transitive** verb can become the subject of the passive verb; thus we say in the

Active: Mein Vater liebt **mich**; and in the
Passive: **Ich** werde von meinem Vater geliebt.

But the sentence:

'I have been promised help by him' =
Hülfe iſt mir von ihm verſprochen (promised) worden,

since in the

Active: Er hat mir Hülfe verſprochen (promised),

Hülfe is the direct, but mir the indirect object. Hence it follows, that

2. Intransitive verbs can only be used *impersonally* in the passive, thus:

I am allowed = **Es wird mir erlaubt** (Lat. *mihi permittitur*);

He has been helped = **Es iſt ihm geholfen worden.**

This impersonal passive is also used in expressing an action without specifying any agent, as:

Es wurde geſtern Abend viel **getanzt,**

There **was** a great deal of **dancing** yesterday evening.

NOTE. — The pron. **es** in these constructions is omitted if any other member of the sentence precedes the verb, as:

Mir wird erlaubt; **Geſtern Abend wurde**, etc.

114. SUBSTITUTES FOR THE PASSIVE VOICE.

The passive voice is much less frequently used in German than in English, particularly in the longer forms. It is often replaced, especially with intransitive verbs:

(*a*) By the indefinite pronoun **man** (Fr. *on*, see Less. XXVII), with the verb in the active voice, as:

Man glaubt ihm nicht, He **is not believed**;
Man kann ihm nicht **trauen**, He **cannot** be **trusted.**

(*b*) By a reflexive verb, as:

Der Schlüſſel wird **ſich** finden, The key will be found;

and particularly with laſſen, as:

Das **läßt ſich** leicht machen, That can easily be done.

VOCABULARY.

to conquer, overcome, erо'bern
believe, glauben (intr., + dat. of person)
wait (for), warten (auf + acc.)
workman, der Ar'beiter
visit, visitors, der Beſuch
mill, die Mühle
beef, das Rindfleiſch
courage, die Tapferkeit
untruth, falsehood, die Un'wahrheit
as, als

once, ein'mal	carefully, ſorg'fältig
this evening, heute Abend	severely, ſtreng
as soon as, ſobald'	little, wenig

***Idioms*: As a child, when (I etc. was) a child, als Kind; This house is for sale** (lit., **to sell, to be sold**), **dieſes Haus iſt zu verkaufen; to have visitors, Beſuch haben.**

EXERCISE XXI.

A. 1. Dieſes Bild wurde von meiner Schweſter gemalt, und es iſt viel gelobt worden. 2. Die Stadt iſt vom General bombardiert und erobert worden. 3. Wir werden beſtraft werden, wenn wir unſere Lektion nicht ſorgfältig lernen. 4. Die Läden ſind geſchloſſen, denn heute iſt (ein) Feiertag. 5. Iſt das Haus neben der Mühle verkauft? 6. Jawohl, es wurde geſtern von Ihrem Neffen gekauft. 7. Von wem wurde das Kind gerettet, als das Haus brannte? 8. Es wurde von einem Arbeiter gerettet, welcher wegen ſeiner Tapferkeit von den Leuten gelobt wurde. 9. Wäre der Knabe nach Hauſe geſchickt worden, wenn er nicht unartig geweſen wäre? 10. Neben dem Hauſe unſeres Nachbars wird eine Kirche gebaut. 11. Es wurde geſtern Abend viel bei uns geſungen und geſpielt, denn wir hatten Beſuch. 12. Iſt das Rindfleiſch geſchickt worden, welches ich beſtellt habe? 13. Der Lehrer ſagte, daß er mit meiner Arbeit zufrieden ſei. 14. Das Bild wäre von den Künſtlern nicht gelobt worden, wenn es nicht ſehr ſchön geweſen wäre. 15. Als Kind wurde ich immer von meinem Vater ſtreng beſtraft, wenn ich eine Unwahrheit ſagte. 16. Wird es uns erlaubt ſein, unſere Aufgaben zu verbrennen, wenn wir damit fertig ſind? 17. Es wird heute viel geſpielt, aber wenig ſtudiert, weil wir morgen keine Schule haben. 18. Es iſt mir nichts davon geſagt worden. 19. Wir wurden nicht gelobt, weil wir nicht fleißig waren. 20. Sobald die Lektionen gelernt ſind, werden wir einen Spaziergang machen.

B. 1. Our parents love us. 2. We are loved by our parents. 3. By whom was this letter brought? 4. It was brought by a messenger. 5. Our house is built, and we are already living in it. 6. Is the dinner served? No, it is being served

now. 7. Was the soldier in the hospital wounded, or was he ill? 8. He had been wounded by a bullet. 9. The carriages of the count will be sold to-day. 10. His horses are already sold. 11. Why is this boy not believed? 12. He is not believed because he once told an untruth. 13. It is agreeable to be praised. 14. My sister is learning the song, which was sung at (in) the concert yesterday.

ORAL EXERCISE XXI.

1. Wer hat dieses Rindfleisch gebracht? 2. Wann wird uns erlaubt werden, im Garten zu spielen? 3. Ist das Haus neben der Kirche verkauft? 4. Wird heute Abend viel studiert werden? 5. Von wem wurde der Knabe nach Hause geschickt? 6. Ist dieses Bild zu verkaufen?

LESSON XXII.

DECLENSION OF ADJECTIVES: WEAK AND MIXED. — STRONG VERBS: beißen MODEL.

115. DECLENSION OF ADJECTIVES: SECOND FORM.

If preceded by the **Definite Article** or by any determinative word of the **dieſer** Model, the Attributive Adjective follows the **Weak Declension**, and takes **-e in the Nominative Sing. of all Genders**, and in the **Accusative Sing. Feminine** and **Neuter**; otherwise **-en** throughout, thus:

WEAK DECLENSION OF **gut, good.**

	Singular.			*Plural.*
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUTER.	ALL GENDERS.
Nom.	gute	gute	gute	guten
Gen.	guten	guten	guten	guten
Dat.	guten	guten	guten	guten
Acc.	guten	gute	gute	guten

SUBSTANTIVES WITH ADJECTIVES.

Singular.

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUTER.
	the good man	the good woman	the good child
Nom.	der gute Mann	die gute Frau	das gute Kind
Gen.	des guten Mannes	der guten Frau	des guten Kindes
Dat.	dem guten Manne	der guten Frau	dem guten Kinde
Acc.	den guten Mann	die gute Frau	das gute Kind

Plural.

ALL GENDERS.

Nom. die guten Männer, Frauen, Kinder
Gen. der guten Männer, Frauen, Kinder
Dat. den guten Männern, Frauen, Kindern
Acc. die guten Männer, Frauen, Kinder

OBSERVE: Words of the **dieſer** Model having (as far as possible) a full set of endings showing gender, etc., the adjective has as few of such distinctive endings as possible.

Further examples:

dieſer gute Mann, this good man
dieſes guten Mannes, of this good man, etc.

jene gute Frau, that good woman
jener guten Frau, of that good woman, etc.

welches gute Kind, which good child
welches guten Kindes, of which good child, etc.

REMARK. — Two or more adjectives qualifying the same substantive follow the same form (compare § 102, Remark 3, above), as:

der gute, alte, rote Wein,
guter, alter, roter Wein.

Decline throughout in German: the sick child; that high tree; which long lesson; this beautiful, broad stream; that young woman; this lazy horse; which tired boy.

116. Third Form. — If preceded by the **Indefinite Article** or by any determinative word of the **mein** Model, the Attributive Adjective follows the **dieſer** Model in the **Nominative** and **Accusative Sing. of all Genders**; otherwise, it takes **-en** (i. e., follows the **Weak** Declension) throughout, thus:

MIXED DECLENSION OF **gut, good.**

	Singular.			*Plural.*
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUTER.	ALL GENDERS.
Nom.	guter	gute	gutes	guten
Gen.	guten	guten	guten	guten
Dat.	guten	guten	guten	guten
Acc.	guten	gute	gutes	guten

SUBSTANTIVES WITH ADJECTIVES.

Singular.

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUTER.
	a good man	a good woman	a good child
Nom.	ein guter Mann	eine gute Frau	ein gutes Kind
Gen.	eines guten Mannes	einer guten Frau	eines guten Kindes
Dat.	einem guten Manne	einer guten Frau	einem guten Kinde
Acc.	einen guten Mann	eine gute Frau	ein gutes Kind

OBSERVE: This form differs from the weak form only in the **Nom. Sing. Masc.**, and **Nom.** and **Acc. Sing. Neut.**, where words of the mein Model have no distinctive endings. The adjective must consequently have the missing sign of gender and case.

The Plural of this form is the same as that of the Weak Declension, but, as ein has no Plur., the full declension of Substantives with mein is given here:

Singular.

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUTER.
	my good brother	my good sister	my good child
N.	mein guter Bruder	meine gute Schweſter	mein gutes Kind
G.	meines guten Bruders	meiner guten Schweſter	meines guten Kindes
D.	meinem guten Bruder	meiner guten Schweſter	meinem guten Kinde
A.	meinen guten Bruder	meine gute Schweſter	mein gutes Kind

Plural.

ALL GENDERS.

Nom. meine guten Brüder, Schweſtern, Kinder
Gen. meiner guten Brüder, Schweſtern, Kinder
Dat. meinen guten Brüdern, Schweſtern, Kindern
Acc. meine guten Brüder, Schweſtern, Kinder

117. COMPOUND VERBS WITH SEPARABLE PREFIX.

1. The prefixes **be–**, **er–**, etc. (see § 35, Rem. 6), hence called Inseparable Prefixes, are never separated from the verb; other prefixes (chiefly the Prepositions) are Separable, but **only in Principal Sentences with Simple Tense**, as:

Der König **ſchickte** zwei Boten **aus**,
The king **sent out** two messengers.

Mein Bruder **reiſt** morgen **ab**,
My brother **sets out** (= departs) to-morrow.

NOTE. — These Prefixes contain an idea distinct from that of the verb, and hence, if retained before the Verb in the cases above, would throw the verb out of its place as *Second Idea* of the Principal Sentence.

2. The **ge–** of the P. Part. and **zu** in the Infin. follow the prefix, making together but one word, as:

Die Boten des Königs ſind **abgereiſt**,
The messengers of the king have departed.

Mein Vater wünſcht morgen abzureiſen,
My father wishes to depart to-morrow.

3. The principal accent is on the *Verb* when the Prefix is *Inseparable;* on the *Prefix* when *Separable*, as: beſu'chen, verkau'fen; but aus'ſchicken, ab'reiſen.

4. The principal parts of Separable Compound Verbs should therefore be given as in the following examples:

Infin.	Impf.	P. Part.
an'greifen, to attack	griff ... an	angegriffen
ab'ſchneiden, to cut off	ſchnitt ... ab	abgeſchnitten

118. Strong Verbs: **beißen Model.**

	Infin.	Impf.	P. Part.
Germ. Model:	beißen	biß	gebiſſen
Engl. Analogy:	bite	bit	bitten
Ablaut:	ei	i	i

LIST.

Notes. — 1. Compounds are only given in the Lists when the simple Verb is not found in the strong form.

2. R. = Reflexive; N. = Neuter, i. e., conjugated with ſein only; N. A. = Neuter and Active, i. e., with ſein or haben; W. indicates that the Weak form is also used without difference of meaning.

beißen, bite	biß	gebiſſen
(er)bleichen (W. N.), turn pale	erblich	erblichen
(be)fleißen (R.), apply one's self	befliß	befliſſen
gleichen, resemble, be equal to	glich	geglichen
gleiten (N.), glide	glitt	geglitten
greifen, grasp, seize	griff	gegriffen
kneifen, pinch	kniff	gekniffen
leiden, suffer	litt	gelitten

pfeifen, whistle	pfiff	gepfiffen
reißen, tear	riß	gerissen
reiten (N. A.), ride	ritt	geritten
schleichen (N.), sneak	schlich	geschlichen
schleifen, grind	schliff	geschliffen
schmeißen, fling	schmiß	geschmissen
schneiden, cut	schnitt	geschnitten
schreiten (N.), stride	schritt	geschritten
streichen, stroke	strich	gestrichen
streiten, contend	stritt	gestritten
weichen, yield	wich	gewichen

REMARKS.—1. The root vowel being shortened in the Impf., the following consonant, if single, is doubled; and stems in **-d** (schneiden, leiden) change **d** into **tt**.

2. Those whose stem ends in **-ß** change **ß** into **ss** in the Impf. (unless final) and P. Part., as: beißen, ich biß, wir bissen, gebissen.

3. The following Verbs are weak when they have a different meaning, as below:

bleichen (trans.), bleach	bleichte	gebleicht
schleifen, drag; raze (to the ground)	schleifte	geschleift
weichen, soften, soak	weichte	geweicht

4. Begleiten, to accompany, is no compound of gleiten, to glide, but of leiten, to lead (weak, = be-ge-leiten); verleiden, to make disagreeable, spoil (not from leiden, but Leid) is weak.

VOCABULARY.

to set out, depart, ab'reisen	slip, slide, aus'gleiten
cut off, ab'schneiden	comprehend, understand, be-greifen
paint (not pictures), an'-streichen	seize, ergreifen

fear, ſich fürchten (vor + dat.)
tear (to pieces), zerreißen
pass (time, etc.), zu'bringen
Cinderella, Aſchenputtel
barber, der Barbier'
idea, notion, der Begriff
steamer, steam-boat, das Dampfſchiff
thief, der Dieb
grass, das Gras
hair, das Haar
hay, das Heu
huntsman, hunter, der Jäger
illness, die Krankheit
fever, das Fieber
slipper, der Pantoffel
rain, der Regen
rheumatism, der Rheumatismus
piece, das Stück
little piece, das Stückchen
traveller, der Wanderer
tooth, der Zahn*
toothache, das Zahnweh
evil, angry, cross, böſe
joyous, merry, fröhlich
smooth, slippery, glatt
golden, of gold, golden
violent, heavy (of rain), heftig
naughty, ill-behaved (of children), un'artig
true, wahr
furious, wü'tend
on that account, deswegen
of it, davon
the day before yesterday, vor'geſtern

Idioms: **To be on the point of (be about to), im Begriffe ſein. You are tired, are you not? Sie ſind müde, nicht wahr? So are we, Wir ſind es auch. George has torn my coat, Georg hat mir den Rock zerriſſen.**

EXERCISE XXII.

A. 1. Der General M. ritt auf einem ſchwarzen Pferde durch die Straßen Torontos (von Toronto). 2. Wie haben Sie die Zeit auf dem Lande zugebracht? 3. An was für einer Krankheit hat Ihr Vater ſo lange gelitten? 4. Sie ſind müde, nicht wahr? Wir ſind es auch. 5. Als mein Bruder jung war, hatte er ſchlechte Zähne und litt ſehr an Zahnweh. 6. Der ſchwarze Hund unſer(e)s Nachbars iſt böſe; er hat vorgeſtern ein kleines Kind gebiſſen. 7. Unſ(e)re alten Nachbarn begleiteten uns nach dem Hafen, als wir abreiſten. 8. Wo wohnt der Barbier, der Ihnen das Haar geſchnitten hat? 9. Mein altes Meſſer ſchneidet jetzt gut, denn der Diener hat es geſtern geſchliffen. 10. Als ich vor

der Schule über die glatte Straße schritt, glitt ich aus und zerriß mir den neuen Rock. 11. Als der Dieb im Begriffe war, ins Haus zu schleichen, ergriff ihn der Diener. 12. Unser alter Nachbar litt lange an (am) Rheumatismus, und war deswegen immer zu Hause. 13. Der General ritt mit seinen Offizieren über die Brücke. 14. Der böse Knabe auf dem Apfelbaum riß die reifen Äpfel vom Baume und schmiß sie auf die Erde. 15. Mein junger Neffe, der auf der Universität war, hat am Fieber gelitten, aber er ist jetzt wieder wohl. 16. Aschenputtels Schwester schnitt sich (dat.) ein Stück vom Fuße ab, weil er zu groß für den goldenen Pantoffel war. 17. Ich bin schnell nach Hause geritten, weil ich mich vor dem wütenden Sturme fürchtete. 18. Der Wanderer schritt frohen Mutes durch den grünen Wald und pfiff ein fröhliches Lied. 19. Dieses Messer ist nicht scharf; wann wurde es geschliffen? 20. Karls schöner, neuer Rock wurde vom Hunde zerrissen.

B. 1. Where is the old knife that you ground? 2. When Mary was young she resembled her mother. 3. The bears sneaked (perf.) into the wood, but the hunters followed (perf.) them. 4. Where does the painter live who painted (perf.) our house? 5. The industrious countryman cut (perf.) the grass yesterday, and is making hay to-day. 6. Why are you crying, Charles? I am crying because George pinched (perf.) me. 7. The rain spoiled my (dat. + def. art.) journey to the country. 8. The steamer has whistled already. Now I shall say farewell. 9. Little Charles is a naughty child; he has torn his (dat. of refl. pron. + art.) new dress. 10. Old people often suffer from rheumatism. 11. Have you understood what he said? 12. The gardener was burning the boughs, which he had cut from the trees. 13. I have quarrelled with my old friend, because he was wrong. 14. This blue ribbon is too long, please cut a little of it off for me. 15. Why is Charles crying? He has been bitten by a dog.

ORAL EXERCISE XXII.

1. Was für einen Hund hat Ihr Nachbar? 2. Wie würden Sie die Zeit zubringen, wenn Sie reich wären? 3. Was machte der Wanderer, als er durch den Wald schritt? 4. Wo wohnen Sie jetzt? 5. Wann werden Sie Heu machen? 6. Weshalb sind Sie so schnell nach Hause geritten?

LESSON XXIII.

POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS. — STRONG VERBS: bleiben MODEL.

119. POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

1. The Possessive Pronouns are used when no substantive is expressed, as:

The hat is **mine** (*Pronoun*); but:
It is **my** hat (*Adjective*).

2. They are formed from the stems of the corresponding Possessive Adjectives by adding certain endings, as follows:

(*a*) Endings of dieſer Model (without article), as:

	Singular.			*Plural.*
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUTER.	ALL GENDERS.
Nom.	meiner	meine	mein(e)s	meine, mine
Gen.	meines	meiner	meines	meiner, of mine
Dat.	meinem	meiner	meinem	meinen, (to, for) mine
Acc.	meinen	meine	mein(e)s	meine, mine

OBSERVE: In the Nom. and Acc. Neuter, **-e** of the ending may be omitted.

So for the other persons:

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUTER.
Sing.	deiner	deine	deines, thine
	ſeiner	ſeine	ſeines, his, its
	ihrer	ihre	ihres, hers (its)

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUTER.
Plur.	unſ(e)rer	unſ(e)re	unſ(e)res, ours
	eu(e)rer	eu(e)re	eu(e)res, yours
	ihrer	ihre	ihres, theirs
	(Ihrer	Ihre	Ihres, yours)

(*b*) Preceded by the Definite Article, and hence with endings of **Weak Adjective**, thus:

	Singular.			*Plural.*
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUTER.	ALL GENDERS.
N.	der meine	die meine	das meine	die meinen, mine
G.	des meinen	der meinen	des meinen	der meinen, of mine
D.	dem meinen	der meinen	dem meinen	den meinen, (to, for) mine
A.	den meinen	die meine	das meine	die meinen, mine

So: der, die, das deine, thine
der, die, das ſeine, his, its
der, die, das ihre, hers, (its)
der, die, das unſ(e)re, ours
der, die, das eu(e)re, yours
der, die, das ihre, theirs
(der, die, das Ihre, yours)

(*c*) Preceded by Definite Article, with ending **-ig** + Weak terminations, thus:

Singular.

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUTER.
Nom.	der meinige	die meinige	das meinige
Gen.	des meinigen, etc.	der meinigen, etc.	des meinigen, etc.

Plural.

ALL GENDERS.

Nom. die meinigen, mine
Gen. der meinigen, of mine, etc.

So: der, die, das deinige, thine
der, die, das ſeinige, his, its

and so on for the other persons.

NOTE. — 1. In unſrige and eurige the **-e** of the stem is always omitted.

REMARK. — 1. These forms are interchangeable, without difference in meaning, as:

I have my book, but I have not **yours**,

Ich habe mein Buch, aber ich habe nicht { **Ihr(e)s** / **das Ihre** / **das Ihrige.**

His letter is here, but **ours** is not here,

Sein Brief iſt hier, aber { **unſ(e)rer** / **der unſ(e)re** / **der unſrige** } iſt nicht hier.

2. When a Possessive Pronoun is used as *predicate*, it may be replaced by the Possessive Adjective *without ending*, as:

This book is **mine**, Dieſes Buch iſt **mein**.

3. Observe the following idiomatic uses of the Poss. Prons.:

(*a*) Ich werde **das Meinige** (neuter sing.) thun,
Is shall do **my part, my utmost.**

(*b*) **Die** Meinigen, **die** Seinigen (Plur.),
My, his friends, family.

(*c*) **A** friend **of mine** = **Einer von** meinen Freunden.
This friend **of mine** = **Dieſer mein** Freund.

120. STRONG VERBS: **bleiben Model.**

	INFIN.	IMPF.	P. PART.
Germ. Model:	bleiben	blieb	geblieben
Eng. Analogy:	wanting		
Ablaut:	**ei**	**ie**	**ie**

LIST.

bleiben (N.), stay, remain	blieb	geblieben
(ge)deihen (N.), thrive	gedieh	gediehen
leihen, lend, borrow	lieh	geliehen

meiden, avoid	mied	gemieden
preiſen, praise	pries	geprieſen
reiben, rub	rieb	gerieben
ſcheiden (N. A.), part (intr. and trans.)	ſchied	geſchieden
ſcheinen, shine; seem, appear	ſchien	geſchienen
ſchreiben, write	ſchrieb	geſchrieben
ſchreien, scream, shout	ſchrie	geſchrieen
ſchweigen, be silent	ſchwieg	geſchwiegen
ſpeien, spit	ſpie	geſpieen
ſteigen (N.), mount, ascend	ſtieg	geſtiegen
treiben, drive	trieb	getrieben
weiſen, show, point out	wies	gewieſen
zeihen, accuse	zieh	geziehen

Vocabulary.

to copy, ab'ſchreiben
hang up, auf'hängen
ascend, beſteigen (trans.)
prove, demonstrate, beweiſen
appear, erſcheinen
shine, glitter, glänzen
descend, herab'ſteigen
guard, keep, hüten
rule, reign, govern, regieren
write (to), ſchreiben (dat. or an + acc.)
climb, ſteigen (auf + acc.)
pardon, excuse, verzeihen
remain behind, zurück'bleiben
cold, die Erkältung
family, die Familie
herd, flock, die Herde
heat, die Hitze
last, der Leiſten
pepper, der Pfeffer
shepherd, der Schäfer
shoemaker, cobbler, der Schuſter
silence (act of keeping s.), das Schweigen
speaking (act of), das Sprechen
throne, der Thron
pasture, pasturage, die Weide
fifty, funfzig, fünfzig
bright, brightly, hell
loud, loudly, laut
correct, richtig
round, rund
bad, ſchlimm
strong, severe, ſtark

Idiom: **Up to the present time, still, noch immer.**

EXERCISE XXIII.

A. 1. Es ist nicht Alles Gold, was glänzt. 2. Sprechen ist Silber, Schweigen ist Gold. 3. Schuster, bleib' bei deinem Leisten. 4. Seit acht Tagen bin ich wegen einer starken Erkältung zu Hause geblieben. 5. Eine von meinen Cousinen ist jetzt bei uns auf Besuch, aber sie bleibt nicht lange. 6. Was für Tiere sind in jenem Walde? Es sind Bären. 7. Die Mutter und ihre Tochter weinten heftig, als sie von einander schieden. 8. Mein Oheim blieb wegen der großen Hitze mit seiner Familie auf dem Lande. 9. Karl hat an seinen Vater geschrieben, und ich bin im Begriffe an den meinigen zu schreiben. 10. Der König schwieg und schien traurig zu sein, als er die schlimme Nachricht hörte. 11. Bitte, verzeihen Sie mir, daß ich Ihnen noch nicht geschrieben habe. 12. Wo haben Sie Ihren Hut aufgehängt? Ich habe ihn neben den Ihrigen gehängt. 13. Als wir auf den Berg stiegen, schien die Sonne schon hell. 14. Welche von diesen Büchern wünschen Sie? Ich wünsche die meinen. 15. Wir würden auf dem Lande geblieben sein, wenn unsere Freunde auch geblieben wären. 16. Die Herden wurden auf die Weide getrieben, als wir vom Berg herabstiegen. 17. Es ist uns bewiesen worden, daß die Erde rund ist. 18. Vor funfzig Jahren bestieg die Königin Victoria den Thron, und sie regiert noch immer. 19. Würden Sie nach Europa reisen, wenn ich zurückbliebe, um Ihr Haus zu hüten? 20. Die Knaben pfiffen und schrieen, als sie auf den Berg stiegen.

B. 1. George has black ink, but mine is red. 2. Mary's sister and mine are learning German. 3. We have looked for William's books and ours everywhere. 4. Your exercise is not correct, copy it. 5. Whose gloves have you? I have mine and yours. 6. Why did the boy shout so loud? 7. To whom were you writing the long letter yesterday? 8. I have black eyes, but yours are blue. 9. In what year did Goethe's 'Faust' appear? 10. Waiter, please bring me the vinegar and the pepper. 11. This lead-pencil is mine, where is

yours? 12. Your aunt and mine are neighbours. 13. The professor seemed not to be at home, for his windows and shutters were not open. 14. I should write to him, if he wrote to me. 15. I was writing to my mother and Charles was writing to his when the postman brought us the letters.

ORAL EXERCISE XXIII.

1. Seit wann sind Sie schon zu Hause geblieben? 2. Was machten die Schäfer, als wir vom Berge herabstiegen? 3. Wann bestieg die Königin Victoria den Thron? 4. Was für Tinte haben Sie? 5. Für wen ist dieser lange Brief? 6. Welches sind die Namen der Monate?

LESSON XXIV.

DECLENSION OF ADJECTIVES (concluded): TABLE, GENERAL REMARKS.—STRONG VERBS: ſchießen AND fechten MODELS.

121. TABLE OF ADJECTIVE ENDINGS.

I. STRONG.

	Singular.			*Plural.*
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	M. F. N.
N.	—er	—e	—es	—e
G.	—es (en)	—er	—es (en)	—er
D.	—em	—er	—em	—en
A.	—en	—e	—es	—e

OBSERVE: -en for -es in Gen. Sing. Masc. and Neuter before strong substs.

II. WEAK.

	Singular.			*Plur.*
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	M. F. N.
N.	—e	—e	—e	—en
G.	—en	—en	—en	—en
D.	—en	—en	—en	—en
A.	—en	—e	—e	—en

OBSERVE: Persistent -n, except Nom. Sing. of all genders, and Acc. Sing. Fem. and Neuter.

III. Mixed.

	Singular.			*Plural.*
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUTER.	M. F. N.
Nom.	—er	—e	—es	—en
Gen.	—en	—en	—en	—en
Dat.	—en	—en	—en	—en
Acc.	—en	—e	—es	—en

Observe: Same as Weak (II), except Nom. Sing. Masc. and Nom. Acc. Sing. Neuter.

122. General Remarks on Adjectives.

1. Participles used attributively are employed and declined as Adjectives, as: geliebter Vater, beloved father; das weinende Kind, the weeping child; meine geehrte Mutter, my honoured mother.

2. Adjectives and Participles used as Substantives vary their declension according to the rules for Adjective Declension, but are spelt with capital letters, as: der Kranke, the sick man, patient; Fem. die Kranke, the sick woman; Plur. die Kranken; ein Kranker, a sick man, patient; pl. Kranke, sick people, patients.

Remarks.—1. Many words, the English equivalents of which are Substantives only, are Adjectives in German, as: der Fremde, the stranger, foreigner, Pl. die Fremden, but ein Fremder, Pl. Fremde; der Reisende, the traveller, ein Reisender, etc. These Adjective-Substantives, when Masc. and preceded by the Definite Article, have the same inflection as the Weak Declension.

2. Names of languages from Adjectives are not declined when used without the article, as:

Was ist dies auf Deutsch? What is this in German?

3. Adjectives of colour used substantively are indeclinable, or add **-s** in the Gen. Sing., as: das Grün, des Grün(s).

4. If the Substantive is not expressed, the Adjective shows by its ending the gender, number and case, as:

Ein kleiner Mann und ein großer,
A little man and a tall **one**.

NOTE. — The English 'one' is in these cases not to be translated into German.

5. If a Substantive is preceded by a succession of Adjectives, they all follow the same form, as: guter, alter, roter Wein; der gute, alte, rote Wein; eines guten, roten Weines.

6. Adjectives whose stem ends in **-el**, **-en**, **-er**, as: edel, noble; golden, golden; heiser, hoarse, drop **-e** of the **stem** when inflected; those in **-el**, **-er** may drop **-e** of the *termination* instead, unless the termination is **-e**, **-er**, or **-es**, as: das goldne Bauer; der edlen or edeln Frau; dem heisren or heisern Sänger.

7. The Adjective hoch, high, drops **e** when inflected, as: der hohe Baum, the high tree.

8. Adjectives can generally be used without change as adverbs, as: lustig, merry, merrily; angenehm, agreeable, agreeably; gut, good, well.

9. Adjectives (so-called) in **-er** from names of places are indeclinable, as: die Londoner Zeitung, the London newspaper; Hamburger Schiffe, Hamburg ships; ein Pariser Handschuh, a Paris glove.

NOTE. — These adjectives correspond to the English use of the proper names without inflection. They are really substantives in the Gen. Plur., thus: die Londoner Zeitung is strictly die Zeitung **der Londoner**, the newspaper *of the Londoners*. Hence they are spelt with a capital letter.

10. After personal pronouns, the Adjective follows the strong declension except in the Dat. Sing. and Nom. (and sometimes Acc.) Plur., as:

(for) me, poor man; you good people; us little children.
mir armen Manne; ihr guten Leute; uns kleine(n) Kinder.

11. The Indefinite Pronouns (see Less. XXVII) etwas, nichts, viel, are Substantives, and therefore not determinative words, and the following adjective has the *strong* declension, as: etwas Gutes, something good; nichts Angenehmes, nothing pleasant.

Observe: The Adjective is here used as substantive, and therefore spelt with a capital.

12. After the Indefinite Numerals in the Plural (see Less. XXIX) alle, all; einige (etliche), some; manche, many; mehrere, several; solche, such; viele, many; wenige, few, the Adjective may have either the weak or the strong ending.

13. After the interrogative welche in the plural, the strong declension is also found in the adjective; and the exclamatory welch is generally uninflected before an adjective, which then always has the strong form, as:

Welch großes Vergnügen! What (a) great pleasure!

123. Strong Verbs: **schießen Model.**

	Infin.	Impf.	P. Part.
Germ. Model:	schießen	schŏß	geschŏssen
Engl. Analogy:	(shoot)	shŏt	shŏt
Ablaut:	ie	ŏ	ŏ

LIST.

(ver)drießen, vex	verdroß	verdrossen
fließen (N.), flow	floß	geflossen
gießen, pour	goß	gegossen

glimmen, glow	glomm	geglommen
klimmen (W. N. A.), climb	klomm	geklommen
kriechen (N.), creep	kroch	gekrochen
genießen, enjoy	genoß	genoſſen
riechen, smell (tr. and intr.)	roch	gerochen
(er)ſchallen (W. N.), sound, resound	erſcholl	erſchollen
ſaufen, drink (of beasts)	ſoff	geſoffen
ſchießen, shoot	ſchoß	geſchoſſen
ſchließen, lock, shut	ſchloß	geſchloſſen
ſieden (W.), boil (intr.)	ſott	geſotten
ſprießen (N.), sprout	ſproß	geſproſſen
triefen (N.), drip	troff	getroffen

REMARKS. — 1. Observe, as under the beißen Model (§ 118, Rem. 1, 2) the doubling of consonants and the interchange of ß and ſſ; also the change of d into tt (as in leiden, ſchneiden, *ib.* Rem. 1).

2. Rächen, 'to avenge,' is weak but has also P. Part. gerochen.

3. Saufen has also ſäufſt, ſäuft in the Pres. Indic. 2. 3. Sing.

4. The *simple* verb ſchallen is usually weak (ſchallte, geſchallt).

5. In ſieden the weak P. Part. (geſiedet) is rare.

124. STRONG VERBS: fechten Model.

	INFIN.	2. 3. S. PR. IND. 2. S. IMPER.	IMPF.	P. PART.
Germ. Model:	fechten	fichtſt ficht ficht	focht	gefochten
Engl. Analogy:	wanting			
Ablaut:	e	i	o	o

LIST.

fechten, fight	fichtſt, ficht, ficht	focht	gefochten
flechten, weave, twine	flichtſt, flicht, flicht	flocht	geflochten

(er)löſchen (N.), become extinguished	(erliſcheſt) erliſcht (erliſch)	erloſch	erloſchen
melken (W.), milk	(milkſt, milkt, milk)	molk	gemolken
quellen, gush forth	(quillſt, quillt, quelle)	quoll	gequollen
ſchmelzen (N.), melt (intr.)	(ſchmilzeſt) ſchmilzt (ſchmilz)	ſchmolz	geſchmolzen
ſchwellen (N.), swell	(ſchwillſt) ſchwillt (ſchwill)	ſchwoll	geſchwollen

Remarks. — 1. Rare forms are enclosed in ( ).

2. The simple verb löſchen, 'to extinguish' (tr.), is weak (löſchte, gelöſcht), as are also its *separable* compounds, e. g., aus'löſchen.

3. Schmelzen (intr.) has also the forms (ſchmelzeſt), ſchmelzt (ſchmelze).

4. Schmelzen, 'to smelt' and ſchwellen, 'to cause to swell' (trans.), are weak.

Vocabulary.

extinguish, put out, aus'löſchen
water (flowers, etc.), begießen
prescribe, verſchreiben
flow past, vorü'berfließen
close, shut, zu'ſchließen
exhibition, die Aus'ſtellung
health, die Geſundheit
drink, beverage, das Getränk
cow, die Kuh*
maid, maid-servant, die Magd*
mid-day, noon, der Mittag
pain, der Schmerz
snow, der Schnee
eight, acht
celebrated, famous, berühmt
blind, blind
healthy, healthful, geſund
dear, lieb
Limburg (adj.), Limburger
dead, tot
Toronto (adj.), Torontoer
thereon, daran
past, by, vorüber

Idioms: **1. To go past the house, am Hauſe vorübergehen.**
2. In German, auf Deutſch or im Deutſchen.

EXERCISE XXIV.

A. 1. Wie würden Sie dieſe Wörter auf Deutſch ſchreiben? 2. Ich habe meinen Brief geſchloſſen und werde ihn jetzt nach der Poſt bringen. 3. Des Morgens ſteigen die kleinen Vögel zum Himmel auf und ſingen luſtig. 4. Welch großes Vergnügen, gute Geſundheit zu genießen! 5. Ein kleiner Strom floß luſtig an unſerem Hauſe vorüber. 6. Der Fuß des Kranken iſt geſchwollen und er leidet ſehr daran. 7. Unſer geehrter Profeſſor iſt ſeit acht Jahren tot. 8. Der Doktor hat dem Kranken guten, alten, roten Wein verſchrieben. 9. Die Zeitungen erzählen viel von der Torontoer Ausſtellung. 10. Der Regen quoll vom Himmel und löſchte das glimmende Feuer aus. 11. Unſere Soldaten ſchloſſen die Stadtthore und fochten tapfer gegen den Feind. 12. Die Mägde haben die Kühe gemolken und jetzt begießen ſie die Blumen. 13. Bitte, ſchweigt, ihr guten Leute, denn die Kranken leiden jetzt große Schmerzen. 14. Würde der Lehrer böſe werden, wenn der Schüler ſeine Aufgabe zerriſſe? 15. Der Schäfer hat dem Reiſenden den Weg nach der Stadt gewieſen. 16. Würde es Ihnen die Reiſe verleiden, wenn ich zurückbliebe? 17. Haben Sie die prächtigen Blumen geſehen, die wir dem Kranken ſchicken? 18. Der Schnee ſchmolz und das Waſſer troff von den Häuſern, als die Sonne gegen Mittag warm ſchien. 19. Der Blinde, der neben uns wohnt, flocht zwei Körbe für meine Mutter. 20. Der junge und der alte Fremde, die im Walde jagten, haben viele Vögel geſchoſſen. 21. Von wem ſind die Blumen begoſſen worden? Sie ſind vom Gärtner begoſſen worden.

B. 1. The golden slipper was too small for Cinderella's sisters. 2. Paris gloves and Limburg cheese are famous everywhere. 3. The huntsman shot a hare and brought it home. 4. Our neighbours are not at home, for their doors and windows are closed. 5. I do not believe every story I hear. 6. Please, dear mother, tell us little children something new and pretty. 7. If Charles tears his new book, his mother

will be very angry. 8. He seemed not to hear what I said to him. 9. These flowers are for the patients in the hospitals. 10. (The) green is agreeable for those who have weak eyes. 11. The horse is drinking the water which we have brought him. 12. Pure fresh water is a healthful beverage. 13. A week ago I was at (in) a concert, where this singer (*f.*) sang. 14. When the weather becomes cold, the dogs like to creep behind the stove. 15. The travellers enjoyed the beauty of the landscape, when they were ascending the high mountain. 16. Please tell me how this word is written in German.

ORAL EXERCISE XXIV.

1. Haben Sie Ihren Brief schon geschlossen? 2. Wie lange ist Ihr geehrter Professor schon tot? 3. Was hat der Doktor der Kranken verschrieben? 4. Weshalb wurde der Lehrer böse? 5. Wer hat diese Vögel geschossen? 6. Was hat der Jäger mit dem Hasen gemacht, welchen er im Walde geschossen hat?

LESSON XXV.

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES. — STRONG VERBS: frieren MODEL.

125. COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

In German, as in English, the degrees of comparison are formed by adding to the Positive:

-er to form the Comparative, and
-(e)ſt " " " Superlative, as:

neu, new — neuer, newer — neu(e)ſt, newest
reich, rich — reicher, richer — reichſt, richest
angenehm, agreeable — angenehmer, more agreeable — angenehmſt, most agreeable

REMARKS. — 1. Monosyllabic adjectives with **a**, **o**, **u** (not **au**) generally take Umlaut (but with many exceptions, given in App. K.), as:

lang	länger	längſt
kurz	kürzer	kürzeſt

2. The syllables **-er**, **(e)ſt** are added to *every* adjective, without regard to its length, as in the case of angenehm (given above, but see § 161, note).

3. Adjectives used attributively in the Comparative or Superlative degree are declined, and add the usual endings *after* the syllables **-er**, **-eſt** respectively, as:

der reichere Mann	ein reicherer Mann
mein älteſtes Kleid	liebſter Freund

4. Participles are compared like adjectives, as:

geliebt, beloved	geliebter	geliebteſt

5. **-e** of the Superlative ending is retained only after **d**, **t** or a sibilant (**ſ**, **ſch**, **z**, **ß**, **x**), as: alt, Superl. älteſt; but groß always has Superl. größt.

5. Adjectives in **-e**, **-el**, **-en**, **-er** drop **e** of the stem in the Comparative, as: träge, träger, trägſt; edel, edler, edelſt.

126. THE COMPARATIVE.

1. '**Than**' = **als** after the Comparative.

2. The compound form with mehr (Engl. 'more') is never (except with the adjectives given in § 161) used in German (as it is in Engl. with polysyllabic adjectives), unless when two *adjectives* (i. e., two qualities of the same object) are being compared, as:

Er iſt **mehr** ſchwach als krank,
He is **more** (i. e., **rather**) weak than ill.

3. Comparison of equality:

I am (just) as rich as he,
Ich bin (eben) **ſo** reich **wie** er.

4. 'The ... the' before comparatives = **je, deſto** or **um ſo — je (deſto** or **um ſo)**, as:

The longer the nights, the shorter the days,
Je (deſto) länger die Nächte, **je (deſto)** kürzer die Tage.

5. When the comparative is declined, the omission of **e** of the stem takes place just as in Adjectives in **–er**, as:

den reicher(e)n Mann, etc.

NOTE. — The syllable **–er** may occur three times successively at the end of the same adjective, viz.: 1° as part of the stem, e. g., heiſer, hoarse; 2° as inflection of comparison, e. g., heiſ(e)rer, hoarser; 3° as ending of strong adjective declension, e. g., ein heiſ(e)rerer Sänger, a hoarser singer.

127. THE SUPERLATIVE.

1. The Superlative is not used, even as *Predicate*, in the undeclined form, but:

(*a*) If the substantive is expressed, or if the substantive of the preceding clause can be supplied, the (weak) adjective form with definite article is used, as:

This river is the broadest in America (i. e., the broadest *river*), Dieſer Fluß iſt **der breiteſte** in Amerika (der breiteſte **Fluß**).

The days in June are the longest (days) in the whole year, Die Tage im Juni ſind **die längſten** (Tage, understood) im ganzen Jahre.

This earthquake was the most severe that we have had, Dieſes Erdbeben iſt **das heftigſte**, welches wir gehabt haben.

(*b*) If no substantive can be supplied, the *adverbial form* preceded by **am** is used, as:

The lake is broader than the river, but the sea is **the broadest** (observe *not* 'the broadest *lake*, *river* or *sea*'), Der See iſt breiter als der Fluß, aber die See iſt **am breiteſten.**

The days are longest (i. e., '*at* the longest,' not 'the longest days') in June, Im Juni ſind die Tage **am längſten.**

The earthquake was **most severe** on Monday, Am Montag war das Erdbeben **am heftigſten** (not 'the severest earthquake').

NOTE. — The superlative may be strengthened by prefixing **aller-**, as: das **allerheftigſte**, am **allerheftigſten.**

2. In the preceding examples, the superlative ascribes a quality to the object in the highest degree *in comparison* (expressed or implied) with, or *relatively* to, a number of other objects, and is hence called the **Relative** Superlative. But the English superlative with **most** often merely ascribes the quality *in an eminently high degree*, without instituting any comparison. When so used, it is called the **Absolute** Superlative, as:

Your father was **most** kind (i. e. = 'exceedingly kind,' not = 'kind*est*')

The Absolute Superlative is rendered in German by an adverb of eminence, such as ſehr, very; höchſt, äußerſt, exceedingly, prefixed to the adjective in the positive, as:

Ihr Vater war **ſehr (höchſt, äußerſt)** gütig,
Your father was **most** (very, exceedingly, extremely) kind.

3. The superlative is commonly used in German of two objects (which is not admissible in Engl.), as:

Der (größere or) **größte** von dieſen zwei Knaben,
The taller of these two boys.

128. Comparison of Adverbs.

Adverbs are compared like adjectives, the superlative form being that with **am**, as:

angenehm, agreeably angenehmer, more agreeably
am angenehmſten, most agreeably

129. Irregular Comparison.

gut, good	beſſer	beſt (different root)
hoch, high	höher	höchſt (drops **e** in *Compar.*)
nah(e), near	näher	nächſt (nearest, **next**; inserts **c** in *Superl.*)
viel, much	mehr	meiſt (different root)
wenig, little (of quantity)	minder	mindeſt (different root)

Notes. — 1. Mehr is used as adverb of quantity only. For the Subst. mehreres, Pl. mehrere 'some, several,' see §§ 152, 175.

2. Wenig also has the regular forms weniger, wenigſt.

130. Defective Comparison.

The following Comparatives and Superlatives are formed from adverbs, etc. (some of which are obsolete):

(außen, without, *adv.*)	äußer, outer	äußerſt, outermost utmost, extreme
(ehe, before, *conj.*)	(eher, sooner, *adv.*)	eheſt, soonest erſt, first
(hinten, behind, *adv.*)	hinter, hinder	hinterſt, hindmost
(innen, within, *adv.*)	inner, inner	innerſt, innermost

(laß, late, *obsolete*)	——	letzt, latest, last
(mittel, middle)	mittler, middle	mittelſt, middle
(nid, below, *obsolete*)	nieder, lower	niederſt, lowest
(oben, above, *adv.*)	ober, upper	oberſt, uppermost
(unten, below, *adv.*)	unter, lower	unterſt, lowest, undermost
(vorn, before, *adv.*)	vorder, fore	vorderſt, foremost

131. STRONG VERBS: **frieren** Model.

	INFIN.	IMPF.	P. PART.
Germ. Model:	frieren	frōr	gefrōren
Engl. Analogy:	freeze	frōze	frōzen
Ablaut:	ie, etc.	ō	ō

NOTE. — The long o is what distinguishes this Model from the ſchießen Model (§ 123).

LIST.

A. (INFIN. ie, ü.)

biegen, bend	bog	gebogen
bieten, bid, offer	bot	geboten
fliegen (N.), fly (on wings)	flog	geflogen
fliehen (N.), flee (escape)	floh	geflohen
frieren (N. A.), freeze, be cold	fror	gefroren
heben, lift, raise	hob, hub	gehoben
(er)kieſen, (er)küren, choose	erkor	erkoren
lügen, lie (tell a falsehood)	log	gelogen
(ver)lieren, lose	verlor	verloren
ſchieben, shove, push	ſchob	geſchoben
ſchwören, swear	ſchwor, ſchwur	geſchworen
(be)trügen, deceive, cheat	betrog	betrogen
wiegen, weigh, have weight (intr.)	wog	gewogen
ziehen (N. A.), pull (tr.); move (intr.)	zog	gezogen

REMARKS. — 1. Biegen, bieten, fliegen, fliehen, ziehen, have also the forms (now used only in poetry) with eu for ie in the

2. and 3. Sing. Pres. Ind. and 2. Sing. Imper., as: **beugſt, beugt, beug**; **fleuchſt, fleuch**; **zeuchſt, zeuch**.

2. Wiegen, to rock, is weak (wiegte, gewiegt).

3. Observe the change of **h** into **g** in ziehen, zog, gezogen.

B. (INFIN. **e**, **ä**.)

ſcheren, shear	ſchor	geſchoren
weben (W.), weave	wob	gewoben
wägen, weigh (trans.)	wog	gewogen
(be)wegen, induce, persuade	bewog	bewogen

REMARK. — Bewegen, 'to move (set in motion)' is weak (bewegte, bewegt).

VOCABULARY.

to offer, an'bieten	metal, das Metall'
abolish, annul, cancel, auf'heben	red (subst.), das Rot
put off, delay, postpone, auf'ſchieben	sparrow, der Sperling
remove (neut.), aus'ziehen	part, portion, der Teil
prefer, vor'ziehen (dat. of pers.)	shore, bank, das Ufer
fly away, weg'fliegen	on that account, therefore, deshalb
roof, das Dach	yet, still (in spite of all), doch
colour, die Farbe	straight, gerade (adj.)
hunger, der Hunger	exactly, just, gerade (adv.)
cook, der Koch *	as soon as, ſobald

Idioms: 1. **I prefer gold to silver, Ich ziehe das Gold dem Silber vor.**
2. **I like the winter in Canada, Ich habe den Winter in Canada gern.**

EXERCISE XXV.

A. 1. Ein Sperling in der Hand iſt beſſer als zwei auf dem Dache. 2. Marie iſt jünger als Louiſe, aber ſie iſt doch größer.

3. Hunger iſt der beſte Koch. 4. Der junge General B. iſt ein tapfrerer Held als ſein Vater. 5. Die Reiſenden ſchoben das Boot vom Ufer und ruderten über den Fluß. 6. Aufgeſchoben iſt nicht aufgehoben. 7. Welches von dieſen Mädchen iſt das größte? 8. Je höher ein Vogel fliegt, je kleiner ſcheint er zu werden. 9. Der Fremde hat mir mehr für mein Haus angeboten als Sie, aber ich glaube nicht, daß er ſo gut bezahlen würde. 10. Je fleißiger wir ſind, deſto mehr lernen wir. 11. Im Sommer habe ich das Land ganz gern, aber im Winter ziehe ich die Stadt vor. 12. Mir Unglücklichen iſt der Fuß erfroren, als ich nach Hauſe ritt. 13. Sobald wir unſer Haus verkauft hatten, zogen wir aus. 14. Als ich auf dem Lande war, wog ich mehr als ich jetzt wiege. 15. Es iſt wahr, daß die reichſten Leute nicht immer die glücklichſten ſind. 16. Der Regen, welcher uns die Reiſe verleidet hat, war mehr nützlich als angenehm. 17. Die Mutter hob die Stücke von dem Glas auf, welches ihr unartiges Kind auf die Erde geſchmiſſen hatte. 18. Dieſer Knabe hat ſeine Eltern betrogen, und deshalb iſt er unglücklich. 19. Frieren Sie, Herr Profeſſor? Jetzt nicht, aber ich fror, als ich auf der Straße war. 20. Der Jäger hat den Vogel geſchoſſen, gerade als er auf den Baum flog. 21. Von wem wurde Ihr Haus gekauft? 22. Von einem Fremden, der ſeit vierzehn Tagen bei meinem Vetter auf Beſuch iſt.

B. 1. Lead is a heavy metal, but gold is the heaviest. 2. This painter is not so famous as his father, but his pictures are just as fine. 3. George lost his parents when he was still very young. 4. Those students have lost a great deal of time, but now they are studying more industriously. 5. The bird flew away, just as the huntsman was on the point of shooting it. 6. When is the weather coldest in Canada? In the month of January it is coldest. 7. Which bird flies fastest? 8. The useful is better than the beautiful. 9. What kind of a dog has the huntsman lost? 10. Iron is heavy, lead

is heavier, but gold is heaviest of all. 11. Green is a more agreeable colour for the eyes than red. 12. If the stick is too long, cut a piece of it off. 13. The upper part of the city of Quebec is much finer than the lower. 14. The weather seems to be warmer to-day, but it froze (perf.) yesterday. 15. When I was younger, I weighed more than my brother, but now he weighs more than I. 16. The upper part of the city of Quebec was built earlier than the lower part.

ORAL EXERCISE XXV.

1. Ist der junge General ein tapferer Mann? 2. Ziehen Sie das Land der Stadt vor? 3. Weshalb ist der Knabe so traurig? 4. Wann hat der Jäger den Vogel geschossen? 5. Welche Studenten lernen am meisten? 6. Welches ist besser, reich und unglücklich oder arm und glücklich (zu) sein?

LESSON XXVI.

DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS. — STRONG VERBS: fingen MODEL.

132. DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

The Demonstrative Pronouns are:

1. **der, die, das**, that
2. **dieſer, dieſe, dieſes**, this, that
3. **jener, jene, jenes**, that, yonder
4. **derjenige, diejenige, dasjenige**, that
5. **der nämliche, die nämliche, das nämliche**, the same
6. **derſelb(ig)e, dieſelb(ig)e, dasſelb(ige)**, the same

7. **ſolch(er)**, **ſolch(e)**, **ſolch(es)**, such, such a
8. **desgleichen**, **dergleichen**, of that kind (of those kinds)

REMARK. — These may all be used either as Substantive or Adjective Pronouns, except desgleichen (see § 139, 1, below).

133. 1. **Der, die, das**, used adjectively (i. e., before a substantive), is declined like the Definite Article (which is merely the demonstrative adjective weakened and unemphasized), as:

Der' Mann, **that** man. Der Mann', the man'.

2. When used substantively it is declined thus:

	Singular.			*Plural.*
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUTER.	ALL GENDERS.
Nom.	der	die	das	die
Gen.	deſſen	deren	deſſen	derer (deren)
Dat.	dem	der	dem	denen
Acc.	den	die	das	die

NOTE. — The form deren (Gen. Pl.) is only used as = 'of them,' as:

How many children have you? I have seven **of them.**
Wie viele Kinder haben Sie? Ich habe **deren** ſieben.

134. **Dieſer** and **jener** both follow the dieſer Model (see § 6), but **dies** is used for dieſes in the Neuter Nom. and Acc. Sing. when used substantively, as:

Dies iſt mein Buch, Er hatte **dies** nicht gehört,
This is my book. He had not heard **this.**

dieſer = **this** (the *nearer* of two objects, hence also =) **the latter, as:**

jener = **that, yonder** (the *more remote* of two objects, hence also =) **the former;**

Dieſer Baum iſt groß, aber **jener** iſt größer,
This tree is large, but **that** (one) is larger.

Jener Baum, yonder tree (pointed out as *remote*).

Karl und Wilhelm ſind Brüder; **dieſer** iſt fleißig, **jener** iſt träge, Charles and William are brothers; the latter is diligent, the former is idle.

135. 1. **Derjenige** is declined in both parts, like the Definite Article followed by the adjective form jenig with weak endings, thus:

	Singular.			*Plural.*
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUTER.	ALL GENDERS.
Nom.	**derjenige**	**diejenige**	**dasjenige**	**diejenigen**
Gen.	**desjenigen**	**derjenigen**	**desjenigen**	**derjenigen**
	etc.	etc.	etc.	etc.

2. **Der** or **derjenige** is used:

(*a*) before a genitive case, as:

Ich habe Ihren Hut und **den(jenigen)** Ihres Bruders, I have your hat and **that of** your brother (your **brother's**);

NOTE. — The demonstrative may also be omitted in this construction, as in English; or the simple der may be used.

(*b*) before a relative clause, as:

Der(jenige), **welcher** zufrieden iſt, iſt glücklich,
He who is contented, is happy.

Die(jenige) Frau iſt am ſchönſten, **welche** gut iſt,
That woman is most beautiful, **who** is good.

Ihr Haus und **das(jenige)**, worin wir wohnen,
Your house and **that** in **which** we live.

NOTE.—In sentences like the first, where der(jenige) is used substantively, the demonstrative and relative together may be replaced by the compound relative wer, thus:

Wer zufrieden iſt, iſt glücklich.

136. **Derſelbe** (derſelbige) = 'the same,' as: **the same** hat, **derſelbe** Hut; and is declined like derjenige, in two parts, written as one word, thus:

	Singular.			*Plural.*
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUTER.	ALL GENDERS.
Nom.	**derſelbe**	**dieſelbe**	**dasſelbe**	**dieſelben**
Gen.	**desſelben**	**derſelben**	**desſelben**	**derſelben**
	etc.	etc.	etc.	etc.

(For examples of its use see § 143, 2–4, below).

NOTE. — Selbig is sometimes used without article, with strong endings: ſelbiger, -e, -es.

137. **Der nämliche** sometimes replaces derſelbe.

138. 1. **Solch**, when used alone, follows the dieſer Model, as: **ſolcher** Wein, **such** wine; **ſolches** Brot, **such** bread.

2. *After* ein, it follows the mixed declension of adjectives, as:

Nom. **ein ſolcher** Wein, **such a** wine
Gen. eines **ſolchen** Weines, of such a wine, etc.

3. *Before* ein, **ſolch** is always, and before an adjective, generally, uninflected, as:

Solch ein Wein; **ſolch** guter Wein, or ſolcher gute Wein.

NOTE. — The adjective has the *strong* endings when ſolch is uninflected, otherwise it has the *weak* endings, except in the plur., where it sometimes has the *strong*.

2. Solch with ein is often replaced by **ſo**, as:

So ein Wein; ein **ſo** guter Wein.

139. 1. **Desgleichen** is used as an indeclinable neuter substantive (never as adjective), thus:

Ich hatte **desgleichen** nie gehört,
I had never heard **that sort of thing** (anything **of that kind**).

NOTE. — Desgleichen is also used adverbially, = 'in the same way, also.'

2. **Dergleichen** is used both substantively (referring to a fem. or plur. noun) and adjectively. In the latter case it is invariable, standing before substantives of any gender and number, as:

Dergleichen Wein,	**Dergleichen** Weine,
Wine of that sort.	Wines of that sort.

NOTE. — The phrase: und dergleichen mehr (abbrev. u. dgl. m.) is used for und so weiter (u. s. w.) = *et cætera*.

General Remarks on Demonstrative Pronouns.

140. The English '**that**' is rendered in German:

1. As **Demonstrative** Pronoun:

   (*a*) Most generally by **der** or **dieser**, when there is no contrast with any other object, thus:

   That man, **der**' Mann or **dieser** Mann.

   (*b*) By **der** or **derjenige** before a **genitive case** or a **relative clause** (see § 135, 2, above).

   (*c*) By **jener**, when the object is distinctly pointed out as *remote* (= yon, yonder), or as more remote than another, thus:

   Jener Baum, **That** tree (over **yonder**).
   Dieses Haus und **jenes**, This house and **that** one.

2. As **Relative** by **der** or **welcher** (see § 95), thus:

   The book **that** I have, Das Buch, **das** (**welches**) ich habe.

3. As **Conjunction** by **daß**, thus:

   I shall tell your father **that** you are diligent,
   Ich werde deinem Vater sagen, **daß** du fleißig bist.

141. The neuter pronouns **das**, **dies**(**es**), **jenes** are used (like **es**, see § 39, 1, and **welches**, § 82, Rem. 2) before the verb

'to be,' representing the real subject, which follows the verb, and with which the verb agrees, as:

Das iſt mein Bruder, That is my brother.
Dieſ(es) iſt Ihre Schweſter, This is your sister.
Jenes ſind ſeine Bücher, Those are his books.

142. **Der** and **jener**, when referring to inanimate objects, are often replaced by the adverb **da(r)**, 'there,' before prepositions (compare § 38, Rem. 5) and dieſer by **hier**, as:

Ich habe nichts **damit** zu thun,
I have nothing to do with that (*there*with).

Hiermit muß ich ſchließen,
With this (*here*with) I must close.

NOTE. — This substitution is not made before a relative, as:

Ich dachte an **das** (*not* daran), **was** Sie ſagten,
I was thinking of that which (what) you were saying.

143. USE OF DEMONSTRATIVES TO REPLACE PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

1. The neuter gen. **deſſen** replaces that of the neuter pers. pron. (ſeiner) referring to things, as:

Ich erinnre mich **deſſen** nicht,
I do not recollect it (ſeiner = him, of him).

2. The genitive of **der** and that of **derſelbe** are frequently used to replace the possessive adjective of the 3. person, in order to avoid ambiguity, as:

Der Graf war mit **ſeinem** (des Grafen) Jäger und **deſſen** (des Jägers) Hunden (or mit den Hunden **desſelben**) auf der Jagd, The Count was at the hunt with his (the Count's) huntsman and his (the huntsman's) dogs.

NOTE. — Mit **ſeinen** Hunden would mean 'with the Count's dogs.'

3. **Derſelbe** is used in other cases also to prevent ambiguity (also **dieſer** in the same way), as:

Mein Bruder iſt bei meinem Freunde, und **derſelbe** (or **dieſer**) achtet **ihn** ſehr; or: er (mein Bruder) achtet **denſelben** ſehr, My brother is at my friend's, and he (the latter, the friend) esteems him (my brother) very much; or: he (my brother) esteems him (my friend) very much.

4. **Derſelbe** also replaces the personal pronouns, to prevent repetitions like ihn — Ihnen, Sie — ſie, etc., as:

Dieſer Wein iſt gut, ich kann Ihnen **denſelben** (for **ihn Ihnen**) empfehlen, This wine is good, I can recommend it to you.

144. STRONG VERBS: **ſingen** Model.

	INFIN.	IMPF.	P. PART.
Germ. Model:	ſĭngen	ſăng	geſŭngen
Engl. Analogy:	sĭng	săng	sŭng
Ablaut:	ĭ	ă	ŭ

LIST.

binden, bind	band	gebunden
dringen (N.), press	drang	gedrungen
finden, find	fand	gefunden
klingen, ring, sound	klang	geklungen
(ge)lingen (N.), succeed (impers., with dat. of pers.)	gelang	gelungen
ringen, wring (the hands, etc.)	rang	gerungen
ſchlingen, twine; swallow	ſchlang	geſchlungen
ſchwinden (N.), vanish	ſchwand	geſchwunden
ſchwingen, swing	ſchwang	geſchwungen
ſingen, sing	ſang	geſungen
ſinken, sink	ſank	geſunken
ſpringen (N. A.), spring, leap	ſprang	geſprungen
trinken, drink (of human beings)	trank	getrunken
winden, wind	wand	gewunden
zwingen, force	zwang	gezwungen

VOCABULARY.

to press in, penetrate, ein'=dringen
escape, entfliehen
invent, erfinden
remember, ſich erinnern (+gen. of thing)
drown, be drowned, ertrinken
spring upon, los'ſpringen (auf + acc.)
mean, suppose, meinen
oblige, verbinden
vanish, verſchwinden
on board, am Bord
grammar, die Gramma'tik
dealer, der Händler
lion, der Löwe
diver, der Taucher
telephone, das Telephon'
clever, geſchickt
prudent, cautious, vor'ſichtig
unfortunately, leider
below, unterhalb (+ gen.)
never yet, noch nie

EXERCISE XXVI.

A. 1. Dies iſt mein Vetter aus Montreal; kennen Sie ihn? 2. Jawohl, dieſen kenne ich ganz gut, aber nicht den, der mir geſtern den Brief gebracht hat. 3. Ein böſer Knabe ſchwang ſich auf den Apfelbaum im Garten ſeines Nachbars und ſchmiß die Äpfel auf die Erde. 4. In dieſem Felde haben die Bauern ſchon das Gras geſchnitten, aber in jenem werden ſie es erſt morgen ſchneiden. 5. „Liebet die, die euch haſſen." 6. Jenes ſind meine Hunde, aber dies ſind diejenigen, welche der Jäger vor acht Tagen verloren hat, und die ich gefunden habe. 7. Erinnern Sie ſich deſſen, was ich Ihnen vom alten Schloß am Ufer des Sees erzählt habe? 8. D e m würde ich keinen Thaler leihen; d e r würde nie bezahlen. 9. Die Schäfer trieben ihre Herden über denſelben Berg auf welchen wir ſtiegen. 10. Der Reiſende ſtieg vom Pferde und band dasſelbe an einen kleinen Baum. 11. Das Schiff ſtieß an einen Felſen, das Waſſer drang ein, und das Schiff ſank. 12. Ich habe mich befliſſen, Latein zu lernen, aber es iſt mir nicht gelungen. 13. Der Löwe war gerade im Begriffe auf den Reiſenden loszuſpringen, als der Jäger ihn ſchoß. 14. Kennen Sie Herrn Bell? Welchen Herrn Bell meinen Sie? 15. Denjenigen, der das Telephon erfunden

hat. 16. Was iſt aus meiner deutſchen Grammatik geworden? Sie ſcheint ganz verſchwunden zu ſein. 17. Das ſind ſchöne Erdbeeren; wo haben Sie dieſelben gekauft? 18. Sie ſind ſchön, nicht wahr? Solch prächtige Beeren finden Sie nicht bei jedem Händler. 19. So heißes Wetter haben wir noch nicht gehabt. 20. Was wurde dir geantwortet, als du nach dem Kranken fragteſt? 21. Man ſagte mir, er ſei ein wenig beſſer.

B. 1. The patient is just as weak to-day as he was yesterday. 2. Such happy days I have never yet passed! 3. Where do you generally pass the winter? 4. Where is my pen? Have you found it? 5. This is my neighbour of whom you have already heard so much. 6. The ship has sunk, and the people who were on board have been drowned. 7. I was looking for my coat, but found my father's. 8. I should be very much obliged to you, if you sang me a beautiful song. 9. Which is poorer, he who has no money, or he who has no friends? 10. How should we escape if the boat sank? 11. Charles has already finished (the) learning (of) his lesson; he is cleverer than I thought. 12. The diver that jumped from the bridge has unfortunately been drowned. 13. It will have been a good lesson for us, if it makes us more prudent in future. 14. Is that a new song? No, it is the same that I sang a week ago at your house. 15. The St. Lawrence River is the broadest in Canada; below the city of Quebec it is broadest. 16. The patient is better to-day; he will be allowed to go out to-morrow.

ORAL EXERCISE XXVI.

1. Was ist aus dem Taucher geworden? 2. Ist Karl geschickter als Johann? 3. Was hat der böse Knabe gemacht? 4. Ist der Reisende dem Löwen entflohen? 5. Ist es Ihnen gelungen, Latein zu lernen? 6. Wessen Hunde sind das?

LESSON XXVII.

INDEFINITE PRONOUNS. — STRONG VERBS: ſpinnen AND helfen MODELS.

145. INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

The **Indefinite Pronouns** are:

(*a*) *Substantive*:

1. **man** (indecl.), one, they, people (Fr. *on*)	of *persons* only
2. **jedermann**, everybody, everyone	
3. **jemand**, somebody, anybody / some one, any one	
4. **niemand**, nobody, no one, no person / not anybody, etc.	
5. **etwas**, something, anything	of *things* only
6. **nichts**, nothing, not anything	
7. **einer**, one, some one	(dieſer Model) persons *and* things
8. **keiner**, no one, none	

(*b*) *Adjective* (also used substantively):

1. **einige, etliche** (plur.), some, a few, several	(dieſer Model) persons *and* things
2. **jed(wed)er (jeglicher)**, each (one), every one	
3. **mancher**, many (a one)	
4. **mehrere** (pl.), several	
5. **viel**, much, pl. **viele**, many	
6. **wenig**, little, pl. **wenige**, few	
7. **welcher**, some	

REMARK. — The Indefinite Pronominal Adjectives are also used as Indefinite Numeral Adjectives (see Less. XXIX).

146. **Man** (spelt with small letter and *one* **n**, to distinguish it from der Mann, the man, from which it is derived) is the Indefinite **Personal** Pronoun, and is used to make a statement without specifying any particular person. It is equivalent to Engl. 'one, they, we, you (indef.), people,' etc., (French *on*), or to the impersonal use of the passive voice, as:

Man ſagt, **One** says; **they, people** say; or **it is said.**

Man kann Öl und Waſſer nicht zuſammen miſchen,
One (**we, you**) cannot mix oil and water.

Remarks. — 1. **One's self** (refl.) = **ſich**; **one's** = **ſein** (poss. adj.), as:

Man ſchämt **ſich ſeiner** Fehler,
One is ashamed of **one's** faults.

2. Man cannot be replaced by any other pronoun, as:

Man wird müde, wenn **man** (not er) zu lange arbeitet,
A man (one) gets tired, when **he** works too long.

147. **Jedermann** is used in the Sing. only; it takes **-s** in Gen., but is otherwise uninflected, as:

Jedermanns Sache iſt niemandes Sache,
Everybody's business is nobody's business.

Die Bibel iſt ein Buch für **jedermann** (acc.),
The Bible is a book for **everybody.**

148. **Jemand** and its negative **niemand** are used in the Sing. only, and are declined thus:

Nom.	jemand	niemand
Gen.	jemand**es**	niemand**es**
Dat.	jemand**em** / jemand(**en**)	niemand**em** / niemand(**en**)
Acc.	jemand(**en**)	niemand(**en**)

NOTE. — The uninflected forms are preferable for the Dat. and Acc., as:

Wir haben **niemand** (acc.) getadelt, We have blamed nobody.

Werden Sie es **jemand** (dat.) ſagen? Shall you tell it to anybody?

149. 1. **Etwas** is sometimes abbreviated to **was**, as:

Ich will **dir was** ſagen, I will tell you **something**.

2. After **etwas** and **nichts**, an adjective has the strong neuter ending **-es** (see § 122, Rem. 11, above).

3. **Etwas** and **nichts** are also used as Indefinite Numerals (see Less. XXIX, § 168).

150. Einer (dieſer Model), 'one, some one, any one,' is used:

1. In the Nom. Sing. Masc. = man.

2. To supply the missing cases of man, as:

Es thut **einem** (dat.) leid, von ſeinen Freunden zu ſcheiden.
One is sorry to part from one's friends.

3. Before a substantive, as:

Einer meiner Freunde (**von** meinen Freunden),
One of my friends.
Ein(e)s von dieſen Büchern, One of these books.

4. To represent a preceding substantive, as:

Haben Sie ein Buch? Ja, ich habe **ein(e)s**,
Have you a book? Yes, I have **one**.

NOTE. — The **e** may be dropped in the ending of the Nom. and Acc. Neut.

151. Keiner (dieſer Model) is the negative of einer, and is used:

1. As equivalent to niemand.

2. Before a substantive, as:

Keiner von meinen Freunden,
None (not one) of my friends.

3. To represent a preceding substantive, as:

Haben Sie ein Buch? Nein, ich habe **kein(e)s**.

NOTE. — Like einer, it may drop **e** in the Nom. and Acc. Neuter

152. **Einige (etliche), mehrere**, = 'some, a few, several,' as:

Einige von meinen Freunden, Some (a few) of my friends.
Mehrere dieſer Bücher, Several of these books.

153. **Jeder**, jedweder, jeglicher (dieſer Model) or **ein** jeder, etc. (def. art. + adj. with *mixed* declension) are used, especially in the Masc., for jedermann, as:

Die Bibel iſt ein Buch für **jeden.**

(Ein) jeder iſt ſeines Glückes Schmied,
Every man (one) is the architect (lit. smith) of his own fortune.

154. **Mancher**, 'many a one, many a person' (dieſer Model), is used to express indefinite plurality, as:

Mancher denkt, Many a one (person) thinks.

155. **Welcher** (dieſer Model) is used for 'some,' referring to a preceding substantive, as:

Haben Sie Brot? Ja, ich habe **welches.**

156. For **viel** and **wenig** see Less. XXIX, § 176.

157. When the Engl. 'anybody, anyone, anything,' = 'anybody, etc., *at all*' (indefinite and general), they are rendered by **irgend** jemand, **irgend** einer, **irgend** etwas, as:

Anybody (at all) will tell you, where I live,
Irgend jemand (or einer) wird Ihnen ſagen, wo ich wohne.

Ich bin mit **irgend** etwas zufrieden,
I am contented with anything (at all).

158. STRONG VERBS: **ſpinnen Model.**

	INFIN.	IMPF.	P. PART.
Germ. Model:	ſpinnen	ſpănn	geſpŏnnen
Engl. Analogy: (incomplete)	spin	spăn	(spŭn)
Ablaut:	i	ă	ŏ

LIST.

(NOTE. — The Impf. Subj. is also given, on account of variations occurring.)

(be)ginnen, begin	begann	begönne	begonnen
rinnen (N.), flow	rann	ränne	geronnen
ſchwimmen (N. A.), swim	ſchwamm	ſchwämme / ſchwömme	geſchwommen
ſinnen, think	ſann	ſänne	geſonnen
ſpinnen, spin	ſpann	ſpänne / ſpönne	geſponnen
(ge)winnen, win, gain	gewann	gewänne / gewönne	gewonnen

NOTE. — Observe the subjunctive forms with vowel of P. Part. + Umlaut, instead of vowel of Impf. Ind.

159. STRONG VERBS: helfen Model.

	INFIN.	Pr. Ind. 2. 3. Sing. / Pr. Imper. 2. Sing.	IMPF.	SUBJ.	P. PART.
Germ. Model:	helfen	hĭlfſt, hĭlft, hĭlf	hălf	hülfe	gehŏlfen
Engl. Analogy:	wanting.				
Ablaut:	e	ĭ	ă	ä, ŏ or ü	ŏ

LIST.

(NOTE. — The 2. 3. sing. Pres. Ind., 2. sing. Imper., and Impf. Subj. are also given.)

bergen, hide	birgſt, birgt, birg	barg	bärge	geborgen
berſten (N.), burst	(birſteſt, birſt, birſt)	barſt	bärſte / börſte	geborſten
(ver)derben (N.), spoil (intr.)	verdirbſt, etc.	verdarb	verdürbe	verdorben
dreſchen, thrash	driſcheſt, etc.	draſch / droſch	dräſche / dröſche	gedroſchen
gelten, be worth	giltſt, gilt, gilt	galt	gälte	gegolten

helfen, help	hilfſt, etc.	half	hülfe	geholfen
ſchelten, scold	ſchiltſt, ſchilt, ſchilt	ſchalt	ſchälte	geſcholten
ſterben, (N.), die	ſtirbſt, etc.	ſtarb	ſtürbe	geſtorben
werben, woo	wirbſt, etc.	warb	würbe	geworben
werden (N.), become	wirſt, wird, werde	ward / wurde	würde	geworden
werfen, throw	wirfſt, etc.	warf	würfe	geworfen

Remarks. — 1. Most of these verbs have ö or ü in the Impf. Subj. instead of ä, which cannot be distinguished in sound from the e of the Pres. Ind.; thus ſterbe and ſtärbe would sound alike.

2. Verderben, when trans., is both strong and weak (verderbte, verderbt).

3. Werden has ward or wurde in the sing.; wurden only in the plur. (see § 19).

4. The Imperative never has the final –e in these verbs, except werde.

5. Observe the omission of (e)t of 3. sing. Pres. Ind. in the verbs with stem in –t, –d.

Vocabulary.

to be or do (of health), ſich befinden
reflect, deliberate, ſich beſinnen
accomplish, leiſten
remain over, be left, ü'brig bleiben
hide, conceal, verbergen
requite, reward, vergelten
complete, finish, vollen'den
throw away, weg'werfen
run away, vanish, zerrinnen
the conduct, das Betragen
poet, der Dichter
barley, die Gerſte
oats, der Hafer
sailor, der Matroſe
musician, der Muſiker
need, necessity, die Not*
dove, pigeon, die Taube
plate, der Teller
loss, der Verluſt'*

embarrassment, perplexity, die Verle'genheit
wheat, der Weizen
evil, böse
thereto, dazu'
no longer, nicht mehr
as, wie

Idiom: I like the country, Ich bin ein Freund vom Lande.

EXERCISE XXVII.

A. 1. Wer zu viel redet, leistet wenig. 2. Derjenige, welcher zu viel redet, leistet wenig. 3. Dies sind meine Schuhe, aber jenes sind (die) Ihre(n). 4. Wer jedermanns Freund ist, ist niemandes Freund. 5. Ein guter Christ vergilt Böses mit Gutem. 6. Es ist so eben jemand hier gewesen. 7. Welches von diesen Bändern ziehen Sie vor, das rote oder das blaue? 8. Wen suchst du? Ich suche die arme Familie, deren Vater gestorben ist. 9. Haben Sie schon Ihren Weizen gedroschen? Man drischt heute den Hafer und die Gerste, aber man wird erst morgen den Weizen dreschen. 10. Es ist ein Verlust für das ganze Land, wenn ein großer und guter Mann stirbt. 11. Der große Knabe schämt sich seines Betragens und deshalb verbirgt er sein Gesicht. 12. „Wie gewonnen, so zerronnen," das ist, man verliert leicht, was man leicht gewinnt. 13. Die Erdbeeren, welche ich gestern kaufte, sind verdorben. 14. Man hilft gern einem, der sich selbst hilft. 15. Hiermit schicke ich Ihnen das Geld, welches Sie so freundlich gewesen sind, mir zu leihen. 16. Sind Sie ein Freund vom Schwimmen? Jetzt nicht mehr, aber ich schwamm gern, als ich jünger war. 17. Der Unglückliche besann sich lange, schritt aber endlich an den Rand des Bootes und sprang ins Wasser. 18. Ist er ertrunken? Nein, er wurde von den Matrosen gerettet.

B. 1. Good morning, Mr. Bell, how are you to-day? 2. Have you any money? Yes, to be sure, I have some, but not enough for my journey. 3. Where is the tree to which the traveller tied his horse? 4. People take cold easily when they are tired. 5. Schiller and Beethoven were Germans, the

latter was a great musician, the former a great poet. 6. Mr. A. is a lazy man; he would not work at all, if necessity did not force him to it. 7. We found the money we lost a week ago. 8. Many a one begins what he will never finish. 9. Mary, my child, throw that apple away; it is spoilt. 10. Have you shot many pigeons? We have shot only a few. 11. Except my brother and me nobody is at home. 12. The mother is scolding, because her naughty child has thrown a plate upon the ground. 13. Where is the River St. Lawrence broadest? 14. When the children had drunk, the cat drank the milk which remained over (was left). 15. The women on (an) the shore screamed and wrung their hands, when the boat sank in which their husbands were. 16. Has the money which was lost been found?

ORAL EXERCISE XXVII.

1. Wann wird man den Hafer dreschen? 2. Warum verbirgt der böse Knabe sein Gesicht? 3. Wem hilft man gern? 4. Sind Sie ein Freund vom Jagen? 5. Was für ein Mann ist Herr Bell? 6. Weshalb schilt die Frau?

SUPPLEMENTARY LESSON D.

ON CERTAIN ADJECTIVES AND PRONOUNS.

160. ADJECTIVES USED AS ATTRIBUTES ONLY.

The following classes of adjectives are not used as predicates:

1. Derivatives in **-en, -ern** (denoting material), as; golden, of gold, golden; ſilbern, of silver. These are replaced in the predicate by the substantive with von, as:

Dieſe Uhr iſt **von** Silber, This watch is of silver.

2. Many in **-iſch** and **-lich**, as: diebiſch, thievish; tieriſch, bestial; heuchleriſch, hypocritical; täglich, daily; jährlich, annual; wirklich, actual, real.

3. Those in **-ig** from adverbs of time and place, as: heutig, of to-day; hieſig, of this place.

161. Adjectives used as Predicates only.

The following classes of adjectives are not used as attributes:

1. Those that are really nouns (though spelt with a small letter), such as: **angſt**, afraid; **feind**, hostile; **freund**, friendly; **leid**, sorry; **not**, needful; **nütze**, useful; **ſchuld**, guilty.

2. The following among others:

bereit, ready	**getroſt**, confident
eingedenk, mindful	**gewahr**, aware
gar, cooked, done (of food)	**gram**, averse
gang und gäbe, current (of money, etc.)	**irre**, astray, wrong
teilhaft, partaking	

Note. — Both these classes of adjectives are incapable of comparison in the ordinary way, and form the comparative and superlative by prefixing **mehr** and **am meiſten** respectively, as:

Er wurde meinem Bruder immer **mehr gram**, He grew more and *more averse* to my brother.

Das that mir **am meiſten leid**, I was **most sorry** for that (*relative* superl.).

162. Remarks on certain Pronouns.

1. The pronouns **wer**, **was** are frequently followed by the demonstrative **der** in the *after* clause, and always so when the latter (the seeming antecedent) is in a different case from that of the relative, as:

Wer hat, **dem** wird gegeben, To him that hath shall be (is) given.

2. The neuter pronouns **es**, **das**, **was**, **jedes**, **alles** are often used in the Nom. and Acc. Sing. in reference to a *number* of persons or things, especially if of different gender, as:

Männer, Weiber, Kinder, **alles** ſchrie um Hilfe, ſo laut **es** konnte,
Men, women, children, **all** cried for help as loud as **they** could;
Früh übt ſich, **was** ein Meiſter werden will,
Those practice early, **who** would become masters.

Note. — Observe that the verb is *singular*.

3. **Was** is sometimes used for **warum**? ('why?'), as:

Was weinſt du? **Why** dost thou weep?

4. The relative adverb **wie** ('as') after **ſolch ein** or **ſo ein** ('such a') is usually followed by a personal pronoun, agreeing in gender and number with the antecedent, as:

Solch (ſo) ein Mann, (or ein Mann) **wie** wir **ihn** nie gekannt hatten,
Such a man **as** we had never known.

Note.—The demonstrative **ſolch** or **ſo** is often omitted, as indicated in the above example.

LESSON XXVIII.

NUMERALS: CARDINALS AND ORDINALS. — STRONG VERBS: **ſprechen** MODEL.

Numerals.

163. Cardinals.

1. eins; ein(**er**), –**e**, –(**es**)
2. zwei
3. drei
4. vier
5. fünf
6. ſechs
7. ſieben
8. acht
9. neun
10. zehn
11. elf
12. zwölf
13. drei**zehn**
14. vierzehn
15. fünfzehn or funfzehn
16. **ſech**zehn
17. **ſieb**zehn
18. achtzehn
19. neunzehn
20. **zwanzig**
21. **ein und** zwanzig
22. **zwei und** zwanzig
30. dreißig
40. vier**zig**
50. funfzig or fünfzig

164. Ordinals.

1st. der **erſte**
2nd. „ zwei**te**
3rd. „ drit**te**
4th. „ vierte
5th. „ fünfte
6th. „ ſechs**te**
7th. „ ſiebente
8th. „ ach**te**
9th. „ neunte
10th. „ zehnte
11th. „ elfte
12th. „ zwölfte
13th. „ dreizehnte
14th. „ vierzehnte
15th. „ funf- or fünfzehnte
16th. „ ſechzehnte
17th. „ ſiebzehnte
18th. „ achtzehnte
19th. „ neunzehnte
20th. „ zwanzigſte
21st. „ **ein und** zwanzigſte
22nd. „ zwei und zwanzigſte
30th. „ dreißigſte
40th. „ vierzigſte
50th. „ funfzigſte or fünf-zigſte

60. ſechzig	60th. der ſechzigſte
70. ſieb(en)zig	70th. „ ſieb(en)zigſte
80. achtzig	80th. „ achtzigſte
90. neunzig	90th. „ neunzigſte
100. hundert	100th. „ hundertſte
101. hundert (und) eins	101st. „ hundert und **erſte**
123. hundert (und) drei und zwanzig	123rd. „ hundert (und) **drei** und zwanzigſte

Cardinals.

200. zwei hundert
300. drei hundert
1000. tauſend
1001. tauſend und eins
1036. tauſend (und) ſechs und dreißig
1887. { tauſend (und) acht hundert (und) ſieben und **achtzig**
{ or achtzehnhundert ſieben und achtzig
10,000. zehn tauſend
100,000. hundert tauſend
1,000,000. eine Million'
2,567,849. zwei Millionen, fünf hundert (und) ſieben und ſechzig tauſend, acht hundert (und) neun und vierzig.

Interrogative Ordinal: der **wievielſte**? which (in order)? what day of the month? (See § 166, 3, Note 2).

165. Remarks on the Cardinal Numerals.

1. **Ein** only is declined throughout, thus:

(*a*) Before a substantive after the mein Model (§ 8), like the Indefinite Article, which is the same word unemphasized, as:

Ein' Mann, **one** man; ein Mann', a **man**.

NOTE. — The numeral ein is sometimes printed with a capital, or spaced out (= Engl. italics) to distinguish it from the Article, as:

Wir haben **Ein'** (**ein**) Buch, We have **one** book.
Wir haben ein Buch', We have a **book**.

(*b*) Used substantively (see also § 150, above) without article, after dieſer Model (§ 6), as:

Einer von meinen Freunden, **One** of my friends.
Unſer einer, **One** of us (*of our sort*).

(*c*) After an article or other determinative word, like an adjective, as:

Der **eine** Bruder, The **one** brother.
Mein **einer** Schuh, (The) **one** of my shoes.

NOTE. — With the definite article it may be used substantively also, as:

Der eine und der andere, (The) one and the other;

and even in the plural (= some, one party), as:

Die einen ſagten dies, die andern jenes,
Some (the one party) said this, **others** (the other party) that.

(*d*) **Eins** is the form used in counting.

2. **Zwei** and **drei** may have **-er** in the Gen. and **-en** in the Dat. when not accompanied by any article, etc., as:

Aus zweier oder dreier Zeugen Mund kommt die Wahrheit,
Out of the mouth of two or three witnesses cometh the truth.

Man kann nicht zweien Herren dienen,
One cannot serve two masters.

NOTE. — The Gen. **-er** is necessary to show the case, but may be replaced by von; but the Dat. **-en** before a substantive is rare, the **-n** of the substantive sufficiently showing the case.

3. **Beide** = 'both,' refers to two objects taken together, and is declined like an adjective in the Plur.: N. **beide**, G. **beider**, etc.; die beiden; meine beiden Brüder. It often

replaces zwei after determinative words, as in the last example. The neuter sing. form beides is also found, as:

Beides iſt wa x, Both (things) are true.

NOTES. — 1. Both of us = wir beide(n) (we two).

2. 'Both' as conjunction = ſowohl, etc. (See Less. XL.)

4. Other cardinals are not declined unless used substantively (see next section).

5. The numbers from 13 to 19 are formed by adding **-zehn** (Engl. **-teen**) to the units (but ſechzehn drops **-s**).

6. The multiples of ten (20—90) add **-zig** to the units, zwanzig, dreißig being irregular, and ſechzig dropping **-s**.

7. The *units* always precede the *tens* in compound numbers from 21 upwards, both being joined by the conjunction und 'and'; hence 25 = fünf und zwanzig (Engl. 'five and twenty'); 156 = hundert ſechs und funfzig, etc.

8. **Hundert** and **Tauſend** are generally used without ein before them, and the conjunction und may be omitted after them.

9. 'One by one, two by two,' etc. = je einer, je zwei (or je zwei und zwei), etc.

10. The Cardinals may be used as substantives:

(*a*) With a substantive understood (as *simple* numbers only), with **-e** in Nom. Acc., **-en** in Dat., as:

Alle viere, All fours.
Mit ſechſen, With [a coach and] six [horses].

(*b*) As feminine substantives, of the spots on dice, etc., or of the figures 1, 2, 3, etc., see § 80, 2, (*c*), with plur. in **-en**, as:

Die Eins, the one-spot, figure one, plur. Einſen.

(*c*) Hundert and Tauſend are used as collective substantives, declined after the Hund Model, § 21, (*b*), as:

Im erſten **Hundert**, In the first **hundred**.
Tauſende von Menſchen, **Thousands** of men.

(*d*) Million is a fem. subst. of the weak declension.

166. Remarks on Ordinal Numerals.

1. The Ordinals are formed from the Cardinals by adding:

(*a*) Up to 19, **-te**, except der **erſte**, **dritte**, **achte**.

(*b*) From 20 upwards, **-ſte**, which in compound numbers is added to the *last component only*.

Note. — Der **andere** is the older ordinal for 'second.'

2. The ordinals after proper names (of sovereigns, etc.) are spelt with a capital letter, and must (with the article) be declined throughout, the proper name being undeclined, as:

Karl **der Erſte**, Charles the First.

Georg **des Vierten**, *Of* George the Fourth, etc.

Note. — The Roman Numerals I., II., etc., after names of sovereigns must always be read as def. art. + ord. num. in the proper case. Thus: Heinrich IV. = Heinrich **der Vierte** (Nom.); or Heinrich **den Vierten** (Acc.); but: der Thron Heinrich IV. = der Thron Heinrich **des Vierten** (Gen.); unter Heinrich IV. = unter Heinrich **dem Vierten**.

3. The ordinals are used adjectively before the names of the months, as:

Der achtzehnte Auguſt', The 18th [of] August.

Am zwei und zwanzigſten Juni, On the 22d [of] June.

Notes. — 1. The figures 1, 2, etc., before the months are to be read as ordinals, thus:

Am 1. Januar = am erſten Januar.

Toronto, (d.) 25.(ſten) April = Toronto, **den** (acc. of time, see § 184, 1) fünf und zwanzigſten April.

2. 'What day of the month is it?'
Der **wievielſte iſt** heute? or: **den** wievielſten **haben** wir heute?
'It is the fifth,'
Es iſt heute **der** fünfte, or: Wir haben heute **den** fünften.

167. STRONG VERBS: ſprechen Model.

	INFIN.	PR. IND. 2. 3. Sing. / " IMPER. 2. "	IMPF.	P. PART.
Germ. Models:	ſprĕchen	ſpriĕchſt, ſpriĕcht, ſprĭch	ſprāch	geſprŏchen
	ſtēhlen	ſtiēhlſt, ſtiēhlt, ſtiēhl	ſtāhl	geſtōhlen
Engl. Analogy:	speak	wanting	spāke	spōken
Ablaut:	ĕ	ĭ, iē	ā	ŏ

LIST *A*. (i, a, o.)

brechen (N. A.), break	brichſt, etc.	brach	gebrochen
nehmen, take	nimmſt, etc.	nahm	genommen
(er)ſchrecken (N.), be frightened	erſchrickſt, etc.	erſchrak	erſchrocken
ſprechen, speak	ſprichſt, etc.	ſprach	geſprochen
ſtechen, sting (trans.)	ſtichſt, etc.	ſtach	geſtochen
treffen, hit	triffſt, trifft, trifft	traf	getroffen

REMARKS. — 1. Erſchrecken, to frighten (trans.), is weak (erſchreckte, erſchreckt).

2. Observe the dropping of h and doubling of m in nehmen, and the single consonant in the Imperfect of erſchrecken and treffen.

LIST *B*. (ie, a, o.)

(The Imperf. Subj. is also given.)

(ge)bären, bear, bring forth	gebierſt, etc.	gebar	gebäre	geboren
(be)fehlen, command	befiehlſt, etc.	befahl	beföhle	befohlen

(emp)fehlen, recommend	empfiehlſt, etc.	empfahl	empfähle	empfohlen
ſtehlen, steal	ſtiehlſt, etc.	ſtahl	ſtähle / ſtöhle	geſtohlen

Also:

kommen (N.), come	kommſt, kommt / kömmſt, kömmt	komm	kam	käme	gekommen

Remarks. — 1. The simple verb fehlen, to be wanting, to make a mistake, is weak (fehlte, gefehlt).

2. Kommen drops one **m** in Impf.

3. All verbs of this Model (A. and B.) drop the final **-e** of the 2. sing. Imper.

Vocabulary.

to add, addieren
arrive (at), an'kommen (in + dat.)
obtain, get, bekommen
divide, dividieren
celebrate, feiern
multiply, multiplicieren
subtract, ſubtrahieren
happen upon, meet with, treffen
care, attention, die Acht
railway-station, der Bahnhof *
holidays, die Ferien (pl.)
fishing, das Fiſchen
prison, das Gefängnis
hunting, das Jagen
James, Jakob
mile (German), league, die Meile
minute, die Minute
government, reign, die Regierung
Reformation, die Reformation'
second (of time), die Sekunde
voyage, die Seereiſe
far, weit
about, ungefähr
twice, zweimal
as far as, bis zu (dat.)

Idioms: 1. **He was born twenty-five years ago, Er iſt vor fünf und zwanzig Jahren geboren.**

2. **Please take another apple (i. e., yet one more), Bitte, nehmen Sie noch einen Apfel.**

3. **Take care, Nehmen Sie ſich in Acht.**

EXERCISE XXVIII.

A. 1. Wie alt ſind Sie? Ich bin in meinem neun und zwanzigſten Jahre. 2. Dieſes Jahr bekamen wir am acht und zwanzigſten Juni Ferien. 3. Jeder Monat außer dem Februar hat entweder dreißig oder ein und dreißig Tage. 4. Den vier und zwanzigſten Mai war ich bei meinem Vater auf Beſuch, denn an dieſem Tage feiern wir den Geburtstag der Königin. 5. Karl der Erſte von England war der Vater Karl II. und Jakob II. 6. Das war eine ſchlechte Nachricht, nicht wahr? Unſere Mutter erſchrak, als Sie dieſelbe hörte. 7. Den fünf und zwanzigſten trafen wir Herrn Bell auf dem Bahnhofe, gerade als er im Begriffe war abzureiſen. 8. In der Stadt London ſind mehr als drei Millionen Einwohner. 9. Die einen empfahlen ihm zu bleiben, die andern abzureiſen. 10. Wie weit iſt es von hier bis zum nächſten Dorfe? Ungefähr fünf und zwanzig engliſche Meilen. 11. Er nahm die Fiſche je zwei aus dem Korbe und legte dieſelben auf den Tiſch. 12. Das Eis bricht, nehmen Sie ſich in Acht. 13. Hunderte von Menſchen haben während des Erdbebens das Leben verloren. 14. Unter der Regierung Heinrich VIII. begann die Reformation in England. 15. Meine beiden Brüder reiſten am fünf und zwanzigſten Juni von Liverpool ab und kamen erſt am achtzehnten Juli in Quebec an. 16. Wann kommt Ihr Geburtstag? Am ein und zwanzigſten November. 17. Die Regierung Heinrich VIII. war eine der berühmteſten in der Geſchichte Englands. 18. Als wir einen Spaziergang machten, haben wir mehrere unſerer Freunde angetroffen. 19. Von wem iſt Ihnen geraten worden, eine Seereiſe zu machen? Es iſt mir von mehreren Ärzten geraten worden.

B. 1. One general commands thousands (dat.) of soldiers. 2. Mary has broken her pen, but she has taken Louisa's. 3. The ice is breaking; take care, Fred. 4. This is my lead-pencil, not William's. 5. You have taken only one apple, please take another. 6. When do we celebrate the Queen's Birthday? On the 24th of May. 7. What day of the month is it to-day?

To-day is the 31st of March. 8. The thief was thrown into (the) prison, because he had stolen five hundred dollars. 9. Which do you prefer, (the) hunting or (the) fishing? I like both. 10. A bee stings, but a dog or a cat bites. 11. The days are longest in the month of June, and shortest towards Christmas. 12. When our neighbours were at church, a thief went (kommen) into the house and stole several hundred dollars. 13. In the year eighteen hundred and eighty-seven Queen Victoria celebrated the fiftieth year of her reign. 14. The eldest son of the Queen of England was born the ninth of November one thousand eight hundred and forty-one. 15. Tell me how much thirty-two and eighty-eight make. 16. There are sixty seconds in a minute, sixty minutes in an hour, twenty-four hours in a day, seven days in a week, four weeks in a month, and twelve months in a year. 17. Would you make a voyage to Europe if you were advised to do so? 18. Yes, I should like very much to make a voyage to Europe.

Read in German: 2 mal 11 iſt 22, 3 mal 12 iſt 36, 4 mal 8 iſt 32, 5 mal 9 iſt 45, 6 mal 7 iſt 42, 7×10 iſt 70, 8×11 iſt 88, 9×12 iſt 108, 10×10 iſt 100, 11×11 iſt 121, 12×12 iſt 144. Addiert 2,342, 25,891 und 989,346. Subtrahiert 27,763 von 31,551. Multipliciert 591 mit 478. Dividiert 2,581,640 mit 61.

ORAL EXERCISE XXVIII.

1. Wie weit iſt es von Hamilton nach Toronto? 2. Wann ſind die Tage am kürzeſten? 3. Wie viel macht das, wenn man 337 mit 2 multipliciert? 4. Wie viele Tage ſind in einem Jahre? 5. Wann bekommt ihr Ferien? 6. Weſſen Bleiſtift haben Sie?

LESSON XXIX.

INDEFINITE NUMERALS. — STRONG VERBS: **eſſen** MODEL.

168. INDEFINITE NUMERALS.

The **Indefinite Numerals** are:

1. **all**, all
2. **ganz**, whole, all
3. **jeder**,
4. **jedweder**, } each (**dieſer** Model)
5. **jeglicher**,
6. **kein**, none, not one
7. **einige**,
8. **etliche**, } some, a few
9. **manche**, many
10. **mehrere**, several
11. **viel**, much (pl. many)
12. **wenig**, little (pl. few)
13. **etwas**, some
14. **genug**, enough } (indeclinable)
15. **mehr**, more

REMARK. — All these, except all and ganz, are used as Indefinite Pronouns (see Less. XXVII).

169. 1. **All** expresses *number* as well as quantity, and denotes that *every individual part* of a whole is present.

2. When declined, it follows the dieſer Model, whether used with or without a substantive, as:

aller Käſe;	**alle** Arbeit war vergeblich;	**alles** Brot;
all [the] cheese;	**all** labour was useless;	**all** [the] bread.

3. Unless used substantively, it always *precedes* the determinative word, and then generally remains uninflected in the sing., and often in the plur., as:

All mein Geld, **All** my money.
All(e) meine Freunde, **All** my friends.

4. When used substantively and preceded by a determinative word, it still follows the *strong* declension, as:

Dieſes (das) **alles**, **All** this (that).
Bei dem **allem**, With **all** that.

5. It is not (as in English) followed by the definite article, but may be followed by the *demonstrative* der, die, das, as:

Alles Geld, All [**the**] money.
All(es) **das** Geld, All **that** money.
Alle Menſchen, **All** [the] men.
Alle die Menſchen, All **those** men.

170. 1. **Ganz** expresses *quantity*, not number, and represents an object as *complete* and *undivided*, without reference to its parts. When therefore the Engl. 'all' = 'whole' it must be rendered by **ganz**, not by all, as:

I have been working **all** (the **whole**) day long,
Ich habe den **ganzen** Tag gearbeitet.

2. **Ganz** is declined like an adjective, and always follows the determinative word, as:

Der **ganze** Tag, The **whole** day.
Mein **ganzes** Eigentum, [The] **whole** [of] my property.

3. Before names of countries and places it may remain uninflected, if unaccompanied by an article, etc., as:

All (the **whole** of) America does not belong to the United States, **Ganz** (or **das** ganze) Amerika gehört nicht zu den Vereinigten Staaten. — But:

Die ganze Schweiz, **All** Switzerland.

171. 1. **Jeder** (dieſer Model) is used to denote each *individual* belonging to a whole, as:

Jeder Baum hat Äſte, **Every** tree has branches.

2. It is sometimes preceded by ein, and then follows the *mixed* adjective declension. Jedweder and jeglicher are less common forms, used in the same way.

172. **Kein** is the negative of ein.

173. 1. **Einige** (plur., dieſer Model) = 'some, a few,' denotes a *small* number taken *collectively*, and is used without article, as:

Einige Vögel können nicht ſingen, **Some** birds cannot sing.

Vor **einigen** Jahren, **A few** years ago.

2. It is used in the sing. only before names of materials to denote a *limited quantity*, as:

Ich habe einiges Geld, I have **some** money (but *not much*).

3. **Etliche** is a less usual word with the same meaning and use.

NOTE. — **Ein paar** 'a pair, couple' (with small p) is also used in the sense of 'a few,' the ein being then indeclinable, as:

Mit **ein paar** Thalern, With **a few** dollars.

174. **Mancher** (dieſer Model), 'many(a),' denotes *indefinite plurality*, as:

Mancher Vogel kann nicht ſingen,
Many a bird cannot sing.

Ich habe **manches** Unglück gehabt,
I have had **many a** misfortune.

Manche Leute glauben, **Many** people believe.

It may remain uninflected, especially before an adj., as:

Mancher gute, or manch guter Mann.

175. **Mehrere** = 'several, a few,' taken *individually*, as:

Mehrere Leute wurden krank, **Several** people became ill.

176. **Viel** and **wenig**, in the sing., are inflected (dieſer Model) when they denote *number*, and uninflected when they denote *quantity*, as:

Lerne nicht vieles, ſondern **viel**, Do not learn **many** (a *great number* of) **things**, but **much** (a large *quantity*).

They are usually, though not always, declined in the plural.

NOTE. — The Engl. 'little' = 'small' is rendered by **klein**.

177. **Etwas** is used before names of material, etc., in the sing., like einiges (see § 173, 2, above), of a *small quantity*, as:

Etwas Brot, **Some** bread (but not much).

178. **Genug** may precede or follow its substantive, as:

Geld **genug**, or **genug** Geld, money **enough**.

NOTE. — As adverb, it always *follows* its adjective, as:

Das Band iſt nicht lang **genug**, The ribbon is not long enough.

179. **Mehr** is the comparative of viel, and is indeclinable, as:

Ich habe **mehr** Freunde als er,
I have **more** friends than he.

180. The Engl. '**some, any**' are generally omitted before substantives, unless a *small quantity* (*some*, but *not much*) is denoted (see § 157, above). In answer to a question, without a substantive, they are rendered by einiges (sing.), einige (plur.) or welch (sing. or plur.), not by etwas (which = 'something'), as:

Haben Sie Geld? Ich habe **einiges** (welches).
Haben Sie Freunde? Ich habe **einige** (welche).

181. STRONG VERBS: eſſen Model.

	INFIN.	Pres. Ind. 2. 3. Sing. Imper. 2. Sing.	IMPF.	P. PART.
Germ. Model:	eſſen	iſſeſt, ißt, iß	āß	ge(g)eſſen
Engl. Analogy: (incomplete)	eat	wanting	āte	eaten
Ablaut:	e / i	i, ie	ā	ĕ

LIST.

bitten, beg, ask	bitteſt, bittet, bitte	bat	gebeten
eſſen, eat (of man)	iſſeſt, ißt, iß	aß	gegeſſen
freſſen, eat (of beasts)	friſſeſt, frißt, friß	fraß	gefreſſen
geben, give	gi(e)bſt, gi(e)bt, gi(e)b	gab	gegeben
(ver) geſſen, forget	vergiſſeſt, vergißt, vergiß	vergaß	vergeſſen
leſen, gather; read	lieſeſt, lieſt, lies	las	geleſen
liegen, lie down	liegſt, liegt, liegn	lag	gelegen
meſſen, measure	miſſeſt, mißt, miß	maß	gemeſſen
(ge)neſen (N.), recover (from illness)	geneſeſt, geneſt, geneſe	genas	geneſen
(ge)ſchehen (N.), happen (impers.)	—— geſchieht ——	geſchah	geſchehen
ſehen, see	ſiehſt, ſieht, ſieh	ſah	geſehen
ſitzen, sit	ſitzeſt, ſitzt, ſitz(e)	ſaß	geſeſſen
treten (N. A.), tread	trittſt, tritt, tritt	trat	getreten
(weſen, N., obsolete), to be	— — —	war	geweſen

OBSERVE. — 1. The changes from ſſ to ß; also that ß of the Impf. is retained through that whole tense, the vowel being long, as: wir aßen, ich äße.

2. That geneſen does not change e into ie.

3. The change in ſitzen of ʒ into ß and ſſ.

4. That the long e of the root is changed into ie, the short e into short i.

5. The inserted g in the P. Part. of eſſen (gegeſſen).

6. The doubling of t in 2. sing., etc., of treten, and omission of final –t in 3. sing. (tritt).

Vocabulary.

to experience, feel, empfinden	telegraph, der Telegraph′
intend, contemplate, vor′haben	misfortune, das Unglück
	world, die Welt
absence, die Abweſenheit	pardon, die Verzeihung
Francis, Franz	thin, dünn
century, das Jahrhun′dert	almost, nearly, beinahe, faſt
cherry, die Kirſche	immediately, (ſo)gleich
province, die Provinz′	lately, not long ago, neulich
romance, novel, der Roman′	late, ſpät
swallow, die Schwalbe	while, während

Idioms: **1. There is, there was,** etc. (general statement), **es giebt, es gab,** etc. (obj. in acc. see Less. XXXVII).

2. To cut one's hand, ſich in die Hand ſchneiden (lit., **to cut one's self into the hand**).

3. To beg pardon, um Verzeihung bitten.

4. To speak to (with), ſprechen + acc. of person.

EXERCISE XXIX.

A. 1. Das ganze Land empfindet den Verluſt eines guten und großen Mannes. 2. Es giebt ſchöne Vögel, welche gar nicht ſingen. 3. Bitte, geben Sie mir noch einen Thaler; ich habe nicht Geld genug. 4. Ißt Georg den Apfel, den er gekauft hat, oder denjenigen, welchen ich ihm gegeben habe? 5. Der Fremde trat mir auf den Fuß, aber gleich bat er mich um Verzeihung. 6. Während Ihrer Abweſenheit ſind mehrere Leute gekommen, um Sie zu

sprechen. 7. Georg sagte mir neulich, daß er Fritz vor einigen Wochen gesehen habe. 8. Nimm dich in Acht, das Eis, worauf du trittst, ist sehr dünn. 9. Ich bitte um Verzeihung, daß ich so spät gekommen bin. 10. Wenn du meinen Onkel siehst, so sage ihm, bitte, daß ich vorhabe, ihn zu besuchen. 11. Es liegt ein Roman von Sir Walter Scott auf dem Tische; lesen Sie denselben? 12. Was ist geschehen? Meine kleine Schwester ist auf Glas getreten und hat sich in den Fuß geschnitten. 13. Dieses Unglück geschah in den Ferien, und sie genas sehr langsam, weil das Wetter so heiß war. 14. Eine Schwalbe macht keinen Sommer. 15. Ein Tier frißt und säuft, aber ein Mensch ißt und trinkt. 16. Durch den Telegraphen hört fast die ganze Welt in vier und zwanzig Stunden von dem, was in irgend einem Lande geschieht. 17. Als ein Reicher aus seinem Hause kam, bat ihn ein Armer um ein wenig Geld, aber er gab dem Armen keins. 18. Das Pferd des Reisenden fraß ein wenig Heu und Hafer, während sein Herr das Mittagsessen im Gasthause aß. 19. Das Kind hat schon alles Brod und Fleisch gegessen, es hat auch alle Milch getrunken, die im Glase war. 20. Einem Lügner wird nicht geglaubt, selbst wenn er die Wahrheit spricht.

B. 1. The whole of England is not so large as the Province of Manitoba. 2. Henry VIII. of England, Francis I. of France, and Charles V. of Germany were the greatest monarchs of the 16th century. 3. Where did you find the money? It lay in the grass. 4. Every summer the birds eat the cherries in our garden. 5. The sick man lay seven weeks in the hospital, but he has now recovered. 6. The rich (man) gave the poor (man), who sat before the house, some money. 7. This youth has read all the books in the library of his father, but unfortunately he forgets just as fast (as) he reads. 8. Napoleon I. died on the 5th May 1821; he was 52 years old. 9. Have you forgotten what I told you two months ago? 10. During the rain we sat under a tree and

told stories. 11. One forgets easily what one reads too quickly. 12. If you have more paper than you need, please give me some. 13. Nineteen hundred years ago the Romans possessed almost the whole world. 14. Many young people read hundreds of novels, and forget after some time almost all they have read. 15. Twenty-five years ago our neighbour possessed only a few hundred dollars, but now he is one of the richest men in the city. 16. Speak the truth, whether you are believed or not.

ORAL EXERCISE XXIX.

1. Giebt es in Amerika Vögel, die nicht singen? 2. Ist jemand während meiner Abwesenheit gekommen? 3. Was haben Sie meinem Onkel gesagt, als er hier war? 4. Was sagen Sie vom Lesen der Romane? 5. Welchen Apfel iszt Georg? 6. Ist das Telephon eine neue Erfindung?

LESSON XXX.

DERIVATIVE NUMERALS. — TIME, MEASURE, DATE. — STRONG VERBS: **ſchlagen** MODEL.

182. Derivative Numerals.

From the Cardinal and Indefinite Numerals are formed the following **Derivative Numerals**:

(*a*) By adding **-mal**, *adverbs* denoting 'so many **times**,' as: **einmal**, once; **viermal**, four **times**; **einundzwanzigmal**, twenty-one **times**; **manchmal**, many a **time**.

Notes. — 1. Mal is neuter, hence jedesmal, each time; and with Indef. Numerals sometimes adds -s, as: vielmal(s), mehrmals.

2. Ein'mal = 'on one (single) occasion,' as:

Ich habe ihn nur **einmal** gesehen, I have seen him only **once**.

Einmal' (einsmals, einst) = 'once upon a time,' as:

Es war **einmal'** ein König, etc. (GRIMM.)

3. Nicht **ein'mal**, 'not **once**,' as:

Er ist nicht **ein'mal** hier gewesen, He has not been here **once**.

Nicht **einmal'** (or nicht **mal'**), 'not **even**,' as:

Er ist nicht (ein)**mal'** hier gewesen, He has not **even** been here.

(*b*) By adding **-fach** or **fältig**, *adjectives* denoting 'so many **fold**,' as: **einfach**, simple; **zweifach** (**zwiefach**), two**fold**, double; **vierfach** (=**fältig**), quadruple; **vielfach**, **mannich**fach, manifold.

NOTE. — **Einfältig** = 'foolish, silly.'

(*c*) By adding **-lei** to the gen. fem. sing. or plur., *indeclinable adjectives* denoting 'of so many kinds,' as: **einerlei**, of one **kind**; **dreierlei**, of three kinds; **vielerlei**, **mancherlei**, of many kinds, etc.

NOTE. — Es ist mir einerlei = 'It is (all) **the same** to me.'

183. From the **Ordinals** are formed:

(*a*) By adding **-l**, the *fractional* Numerals. as: ein **Drittel** = $\frac{1}{3}$; das **Viertel**, the quarter; drei **Zwanzigstel** = $^3/_{20}$, etc.

NOTES. — 1. These are substantives formed from the ordinal + **Teil** (= **part**), and are therefore neuter, thus:

Das **Drittel** = das dritte **Teil**, 'the **third part**,' etc.

2. '**Half**' as substantive = **die Hälfte**; as adjective or adverb = **halb**, which is declined like **ganz** (see § 170, 2), as:

Ich habe **die Hälfte** meines Eigentums verloren,
I have lost **half** (of) my property.

Der Knabe war **halb** tot, als man ihn fand,
The boy was **half** dead when he was found.

Halb Waſhington, or **das halbe** Waſhington,
(The) half (of) Washington.

Halb or das halbe Frankreich, half France; but

Die halbe Schweiz, half Switzerland.

(*b*) By adding **-halb**, *Mixed Numbers* with the Fraction '**half**,' as: drittehalb $=2\frac{1}{2}$; viertehalb Meilen, three miles **and a half**; fünftehalb Ellen, four **and a half** yards.

Remarks. — 1. Observe that the ordinal is one higher than the cardinal of the Engl. idiom; thus 'two and-a-half' is a number consisting of three parts, of which the first and second parts are **wholes**, but the **third** is only **a half**, hence **dritte-halb**.

2. $1\frac{1}{2}$ = **anderthalb** (not **zweitehalb**; see § 166, 1, Note), as:
Anderthalb Flaſchen (pl.), A bottle **and a half**.

3. These are invariable adjectives.

(*c*) By adding **-ens**, ordinal adverbs denoting **in what place** or **order**, as:

erſtens, firstly; zweitens, secondly; drittens, thirdly, etc.

184. Expressions of Time.

1. Both **point** and **duration of time** are expressed by the **Accusative** without a preposition, as:

Den erſten Januar, (On) the first of January.

Er kam letzten Montag an, He arrived last Monday.

Ich war letzte Woche krank, I was ill last week.

Ich war eine ganze Woche krank, I was ill (for) a whole week.

2. **Point** of time is also expressed:

(*a*) By the preposition **an** with the Dat. (always contracted with the article), of *date*, as:

Am erſten Januar, **On** the first of January.

Am Sonntag, **On** Sunday.

Am Morgen dieſes Tages, On the morning of this day.

(*b*) By the *Genitive* case, with **Tag**, days of the week, or divisions of the day, when denoting indefinite time or habitual action, as:

Des Tages, **In** the day time, by day.

Sonntags, **On** Sundays.

(**Des**) Abends, **In** the evening.

2. The **Time of Day** is thus expressed:

(*a*) The **quarters** of the hour, with reference to the **following** hour (not the *past* hour, as partly in English), thus:

It is a quarter **past twelve** = Es iſt (ein) Viertel **auf eins** (i. e., *one* quarter *towards*, or *on the way to*, one).

It is **half** past **twelve** = Es iſt **halb eins** (i. e., *half* one).

It is a quarter **to** one = Es iſt **drei** Viertel **auf** eins (i. e., *three* quarters *towards* one).

(*b*) The **minutes past** by **nach**, as: Es iſt zwanzig Minuten **nach** zwei, It is twenty minutes **past** two.

The minutes **to** by **vor**, as: Zehn Minuten **vor** drei, ten minutes **to** three.

(*c*) **at** = **um**; **o'clock** = **Uhr**, as:

Um ein **Uhr**, **At** one **o'clock**.

Um ein Viertel **auf fünf** Uhr, At a quarter **past four o'clock.**

Es iſt **drei** Viertel **auf** fünf (Uhr), It is a quarter **to** five (o'clock).

Es **hat ſechs** (Uhr) **geſchlagen**, It has struck six (o'clock).

NOTE. — The impersonal Verb 'to be,' in expressing the time of the day, is always *singular*, as in English.

185. EXPRESSIONS OF QUANTITY.

1. A substantive expressing **Quantity** (Measure, Weight or Number), if *Masculine* or *Neuter*, retains the form of the singular, as:

Vier und zwanzig **Zoll** machen zwei **Fuß**, 24 inches make two **feet.**

Zwei **Pfund**, Two pounds.

Tauſend **Mann**, A thousand **men.** — But:

Zwei Flaſchen (fem.), Two bottles.

Zwölf Ellen (fem.), Twelve yards.

2. The substantive, the quantity of which is expressed, is generally put **in apposition** with that expressing the quantity, as:

Zwei Buch **Papier**, Two quires **of** paper.

Dreitauſend Mann **Infanterie**, Three thousand infantry soldiers.

Fünf Glas **Bier**, Five glasses of beer.

Mit zwei Paar Schuhen (dat.), With two pairs of shoes.

3. But if a determinative word precedes the substantive measured, etc., use the Gen. case, or von with Dat., as:

Ich habe ſechs Pfund dieſes guten Zuckers (or: **von** dieſem guten Zucker) gekauft.

4. The **measure** (of weight, distance, etc.) is put in the accusative, as:

Dieſer Bleiſtift iſt nur einen Zoll lang,
This lead-pencil is only an inch long.

Ich habe eine ganze Meile (acc.) marſchiert,
I have been marching a whole mile.

Dieſes Paket' wiegt ein halbes Pfund (acc.),
This parcel weighs half-a-pound.

186. STRONG VERBS: ſchlagen Model.

	INFIN.	PR. IND. 2. 3. sing.	IMPF.	P. PART.
Germ. Model:	ſchlagen	ſchlägſt, ſchlägt	ſchlug	geſchlagen
Engl. Analogy: (incomplete)	slay	wanting	slew	slain
Ablaut:	a	ä	u	a

LIST.

backen (W. N. A.), bake	bäckſt, bäckt	buk	gebacken
fahren (N. A.), ride (in a conveyance), drive	fährſt, fährt	fuhr	gefahren
graben, dig	gräbſt, gräbt	grub	gegraben
laden (W.), invite; load	lädſt, ladt	lud	geladen
ſchaffen, create	ſchaffſt, ſchafft	ſchuf	geſchaffen
ſchlagen, strike	ſchlägſt, ſchlägt	ſchlug	geſchlagen
tragen, carry	trägſt, trägt	trug	getragen
wachſen (N.), grow	wächſeſt, wächſt	wuchs	gewachſen
waſchen, wash	wäſcheſt, wäſcht	wuſch	gewaſchen

Also the irregular:

ſtehen, stand	ſtehſt, ſteht	(ſtund) / ſtand	geſtanden

and the usually weak:

fragen, ask	frägſt, frägt / fragſt, fragt	frug / fragte	gefragt

REMARKS. — 1. Backen is usually weak in the Impf. (backte), but strong in the P. Part. (gebacken). Observe also the single f in Impf.

2. Fahren is conjugated with ſein when intr., with haben when trans.

3. Schaffen 'to work' and (ver)ſchaffen 'to procure' are weak. Observe the single f in the Impf.

VOCABULARY.

to set out, depart, leave, ab'fahren
rise, auf'ſtehen
invite, ein'laden
understand, verſtehen
dine, zu Mittag eſſen
go for a drive, ſpazieren fahren
absence, die Ab'weſenheit
little tree, das Bäumchen
dozen, das Dutz'end
yard, die Elle
multiplication-table, das Einmaleins
thread, der Faden*
driving, das Fahren
driver, coachman, der Kutſcher
hole, das Loch
night, die Nacht*
minute-hand, der Minutenzeiger
pound, das Pfund
post-office, die Poſt
riding, das Reiten
sentence, der Satz*
hour-hand, der Stundenzeiger
cup, die Taſſe
tea, der Thee
clock, watch, die Uhr
train, der Zug*
two weeks, a fortnight, vierzehn Tage
then, dann
early, früh
slow, slowly, langſam
at least, wenigſtens
first, first of all, zuerſt

Idioms: 1. **The Boston train, Der Zug {von / nach} Boſton.**
2. **What time (o'clock) is it? Wie viel Uhr iſt es?**

EXERCISE XXX.

A. 1. Ein dreifacher Faden bricht nicht leicht. 2. Der Kutſcher fährt ſo langſam, daß wir nicht vor drei Viertel auf zwölf ankommen werden. 3. In der einen Hälfte der Welt iſt es Tag,

während es in der andern Hälfte Nacht iſt. 4. Was giebt es heute Neues? 5. Weshalb haben Sie mich geſtern nicht beſucht? Erſtens weil es regnete, und zweitens weil ich ſelbſt Beſuch hatte. 6. Du haſt gut geleſen, lies noch einen Satz. 7. Wie viel wiegen Sie? Ich wiege ungefähr hundert und fünfzig Pfund. 8. Der Zug kommt um drei Viertel auf neun an und fährt um ſieben Minuten nach zehn ab. 9. Haben Sie Ihre Uhr bei ſich? Ja, aber die Feder iſt gebrochen. 10. Ich habe zwei Dutzend Gläſer beſtellt, aber ſie ſind noch nicht angekommen. 11. Wir haben unſere Vettern eingeladen, während der Ferien vierzehn Tage bei uns zuzubringen. 12. Wir eſſen im Sommer um halb zwei zu Mittag. 13. Ich würde gern mit Ihnen ſpazieren fahren, wenn Sie mich einlüden. 14. Der Hund verbarg den Knochen in ein Loch, welches er hinter dem Apfelbaum grub. 15. Die Magd ſteht früh (des) Morgens auf, wäſcht die Kleider und bäckt Brot. 16. Johann iſt ein ſehr einfältiger Knabe; er hat noch nicht das Einmaleins gelernt. 17. Wie viel Uhr war es, als der Minutenzeiger auf ſechs und der Stundenzeiger zwiſchen drei und vier ſtand? 18. Der Bauer frug den Reiſenden, wie viel Uhr es ſei (wäre), und dieſer zog ſeine Uhr aus der Taſche und ſagte ihm, es ſei halb eins. 19. Addiere drei Viertel, vier Siebentel, neun Dreizehntel und elf Zwanzigſtel; wie viel iſt (macht) das? 20. Der Hund würde den Knaben gleich beißen, wenn derſelbe ihn ſchlüge. 21. Gehen Sie zur Geſellſchaft der Frau B.? 22. Ich bin nicht eingeladen; mein Bruder wurde eingeladen, aber ich nicht.

B. 1. In six days God created Heaven and earth. 2. The patient drank two glasses of wine and three cups of tea yesterday. 3. This silly boy has not even understood what I said to him. 4. Here is good, strong cloth; it costs two and a half dollars a (the) yard. 5. This tree grows quickly; it is at least four times as high as it was three years ago. 6. This exercise is very easy; we shall have finished (with) it in half an hour. 7. The dealer showed us many kinds of ribbon,

red, blue, yellow, etc. 8. Which do you prefer, (the) riding or (the) driving? It is all the same to me. 9. Please tell me what time it is? It is exactly thirteen minutes after eleven. 10. It is nine o'clock, for the hour-hand is (stands) at (auf) nine and the minute-hand at twelve. 11. These three school-boys bought themselves a melon, which weighed almost five pounds. 12. The coachman drove first to the post-office and then to the bank. 13. Between April and September the little tree grew a foot and a half. 14. Precisely at five o'clock the Boston train left, and at 9.45 we arrived. 15. Was this house built before you came here? 16. Add $^{31}/_{40}$, $^{42}/_{51}$ and $^{82}/_{99}$.

ORAL EXERCISE XXX.

1. Wie viel macht drittehalb, fünftehalb und neuntehalb? 2. Um wie viel Uhr kommt der Zug von Boston an? 3. Was sagte der Reisende, als der Bauer ihn fragte, wie viel Uhr es sei? 4. Wie viel Uhr ist es nach Ihrer Uhr? 5. Wie viele Sätze hast du schon gelesen? 6. Ist jemand während meiner Abwesenheit gekommen?

LESSON XXXI.

ADVERBS. — STRONG VERBS: fallen MODEL.

187. ADVERBS.

Adverbs may be arranged according to their meaning as follows, with examples of the simpler and more commonly occuring ones under each class:

I. Time.

(*a*) *Past:*

damals, at that time
eben, just, just now
geſtern, yesterday
neulich, the other day, lately
vorgeſtern, the day before yesterday
vorher', before

(*b*) *Present:*

heute, to-day
jetzt, nun, } now

(*c*) *Future:*

bald, soon
hernach', afterwards
morgen, to-morrow
nachher', afterwards
nimmer, nevermore
ü'bermorgen, the day after to-morrow

(*d*) *Interrogative:*

wann? when?

(*e*) *General:*

dann, then (past or fut.)
einſt, once upon a time (past); some day (fut.)
endlich, at last
erſt, only (not sooner than)
(ſo)gleich, at once, directly
indeſſen, unterdeſſen, } in the meanwhile
immer, always, at all times
je(mals), ever, at any time
nie(mals), never, at no time
noch, still, yet
oft(mals), often
ſchon, already
ſelten, seldom, rarely

II. Place and Direction.

(*a*) *Demonstrative:*

da, daſelbſt, } there, in *that* place
(da)hin, thither, *to* that place
dort, there, in *that* place
(da)her, thence, *from* that place
hier, here, in *this* place
hie(r)her, hither, *to* this place

(*b*) *Negative:*

nirgends, nowhere

(*c*) *Interrogative and Relative:*

wo, where, in *what* place
wohin, whither, *to* what place
woher, whence, *from* what place

(*d*) *General:*

ir'gendwo, anywhere
überall', everywhere

III. Measure and Degree.

auch, also, ever
etwa, about, nearly
beinahe, faſt, } nearly, almost

ganz, gänzlich, } wholly, altogether
gar, at all, very
genug, enough
gerade, just, exactly
kaum, hardly, scarcely, no sooner
noch, still, more
nur, only
sehr, very
so, so
ungefähr, about
überhaupt', generally
wie? how?
zu, too
ziemlich, tolerably

IV. Affirmation.

ja, yes; to be sure
jawohl, certainly
freilich, to be sure, indeed
fürwahr, truly, really
gewiß, certainly
natürlich, of course
wirklich, to be sure, indeed
zwar, it is true, certainly

V. Negation.

nein, no
nicht, not

VI. Possibility.

etwa, vielleicht, } perhaps
wahrscheinlich, probably
wohl, perhaps

VII. Necessity.

allerdings, certainly
durchaus, absolutely, entirely

VIII. Cause.

daher, darum, deshalb, } therefore
warum, weshalb, } wherefore, why (interrog. or rel.)

Note. — These last, as well as many of the others, are also used as Conjunctions. See Less. XL.

188. STRONG VERBS: fallen Model.

	INFIN.	PR. IND. 2. 3. Sing.	IMPF.	P. PART. (same as Inf.)
Germ. Model:	fallen	fällſt, fällt	fiel	gefallen
Engl. Analogy: (incomplete)	fall	wanting	fell	fallen
Ablaut:	a	ä	ie	a

(NOTE. — This is only a *seeming* Ablaut; see § 192, Rem. 4.)

LIST.

blaſen, blow	bläſeſt, bläſt	blies	geblaſen
braten, roast (tr. and intr.)	brätſt, brät	briet	gebraten
fallen (N.), fall	fällſt, fällt	fiel	gefallen
fangen, catch	fängſt, fängt	fi(e)ng	gefangen
halten, hold	hältſt, hält	hielt	gehalten
hangen, hang	hängſt, hängt	hi(e)ng	gehangen
hauen, hew	haueſt, haut	hieb	gehauen
heißen, bid; be called	heißeſt, heißt	hieß	geheißen
laſſen, let	läſſeſt, läßt	ließ	gelaſſen
laufen (N. A.), run	läufſt, läuft	lief	gelaufen
raten, advise (gov. dat.)	rätſt, rät	riet	geraten
rufen, call	rufſt, ruft	rief	gerufen
ſchlafen, sleep	ſchläfſt, ſchläft	ſchlief	geſchlafen
ſtoßen, push	ſtößeſt, ſtößt	ſtieß	geſtoßen

Also the irregular:

gehen (N.), go	geheſt, geht	gi(e)ng	gegangen

REMARKS. — 1. Observe in braten, halten, raten the contracted forms of the 3. sing. Pres. Ind.

2. Hangen is the strong verb (hieng, gehangen) and is properly intr. (= 'to be suspended'); hängen is weak (hängte, gehängt) and trans., but the distinction is not strictly observed.

3. Observe that heißen and ſtoßen, having the root vowel long, retain ß throughout; whereas laſſen varies according to rule, thus: ich laſſe, gelaſſen, but er läßt, ließ, wir ließen.

Vocabulary.

to begin, commence, an'fangen	man-of-all-work, (farm-) servant, der Knecht
receive, get, erhalten	beef, das Rindfleiſch
please, gefallen	skate, der Schlitt'ſchuh
leave, leave behind, laſſen	skating, das Schlitt'ſchuhlaufen
skate, Schlitt'ſchuh lau'fen	bacon, der Speck
kick, strike, bump, ſtoßen	language, die Sprache
cut down, um'hauen	study, das Studium
butter, die Butter	last, preceding, vorig
play-mate, der Geſpiele	
mouse, die Maus *	

Idioms: 1. **What is the name of? Wie heißt?**

2. **What is your name? Wie heißen Sie?**

3. **My name is Henry, Ich heiße Heinrich.**

4. **I think highly of him (i. e., esteem, value him highly), Ich halte viel von ihm.**

5. **How do you do? (How are you?) Wie geht es Ihnen?**

6. **He has not been here for a long time, Er iſt lange nicht hier geweſen (Er iſt nicht lange hier geweſen = He has not been here long).**

EXERCISE XXXI.

A. 1. Mit Speck fängt man Mäuſe. 2. Der Knabe fiel, als er Schlittſchuh lief, und ſtieß ſich den Kopf aufs Eis. 3. Ein ſchlafender Fuchs fängt kein Huhn. 4. Im Herbſt bläſt der Wind kalt, und pfeift durch den Wald. 5. Eſſen, trinken und ſchlafen, heißt (iſt) das leben! 6. Im Winter ſchläft man gewöhnlich länger als im Sommer. 7. Man läßt jetzt die Fenſter offen, denn das Wetter iſt warm geworden. 8. Ich laufe nicht gern Schlittſchuh, aber meine Geſpielen ſind große Freunde davon. 9. Die Magd ging zum Laden und kaufte drei Pfund Thee, zwei Pfund Butter,

zehn Pfund Zucker und zwei Flaschen Bier. 10. Dort stand der Baum, den der Knecht neulich umgehauen hat. 11. Sagen Sie mir, wohin Sie vorgestern gingen, als ich Sie in der Königsstraße traf. 12. Der Schüler ließ seine Bücher zu Hause, aber er ist gleich nach Hause gelaufen und hat dieselben geholt. 13. Vorige Woche erhielt meine Schwester einen Brief von ihrer Freundin; fast jede Woche erhält sie einen. 14. Dieselbe schrieb, daß sie den ganzen Winter in Boston zubringen würde, wenn es ihr daselbst gefiele. 15. Der Wind blies den Tag so heftig, daß Georgs Vater ihm riet, nicht aufs Wasser zu gehen. 16. Ich bitte um Verzeihung, daß ich Sie so lange allein gelassen habe. 17. Das kranke Kind würde besser geschlafen haben, wenn die andern Kinder weniger Lärm gemacht hätten. 18. Vor zwanzig Jahren hing das Bild meines Vaters an der Wand über dem Kamin, und es hängt noch immer da. 19. Wenn er nicht so früh gegangen wäre, so hätte ich ihn zum Mittagsessen eingeladen. 20. Guten Morgen, Frau Bell; wie geht es Ihnen? 21. Es geht mir ganz gut; wie geht es Ihrer Familie? 22. Friedrich II. von Preußen wurde Friedrich der Große genannt.

B. 1. My father speaks German almost as well as English. 2. Good evening, my little friend; how do you do? 3. I have not seen you for a long time. 4. A cold, cutting wind blew through the open window. 5. When I was young, I liked to skate. 6. Do you like (to eat) beef? 7. It was a quarter past eight when the concert began. 8. That horse kicks; take care. 9. At what o'clock will you be at home? I shall not be at home before half past ten. 10. When we were going home, we met our friends, who were coming out of church. 11. What is the name of the long street, which runs from King Street towards (nach) the north? 12. My friend, of whom I thought so highly, died in his nineteenth year. 13. In September we began to learn German, and the study of that language pleases us very much. 14. A lost child was crying

upon the street, and calling after its mother. 15. Some one asked it what its name was. 16. The poor child answered that its name was William, and that it lived in Frederick-Street. 17. I wrote to my cousin a month ago, but I think he is angry, for the letter has not yet been answered.

ORAL EXERCISE XXXI.

1. Was ist geſchehen, während die Knaben Schlittſchuh liefen? 2. Weshalb ſind dieſe Fenſter offen gelaſſen worden? 3. Was kaufte die Magd auf dem Markte? 4. Weshalb iſt der Schüler ſo ſchnell nach Hauſe gelaufen? 5. Wann haben Sie Nachricht von Ihrem Bruder erhalten? 6. Sprechen Sie Deutſch?

LESSON XXXII.

ADVERBS (continued): — FORMATION AND COMPARISON. — TABLE OF STRONG VERBS AND GENERAL REMARKS ON THE SAME.

189. FORMATION OF ADVERBS.

1. From *Adjectives* (including most adverbs of **manner**):

(*a*) Most adjectives may be used without change as adverbs, as:

Er läuft ſchnell, He runs quickly.

(*b*) By adding **-lich** (Engl. -ly), sometimes with Umlaut, as:

freilich, of course, to be sure
gänzlich, entirely
kürzlich, recently
neulich, lately, the other day
ſchwerlich, hardly, scarcely

Also to participles, as:

hoffentlich, it is to be hoped
wiſſentlich, knowingly

(*c*) By adding **-lings**, as:

blindlings, blindly

(*d*) By adding **-s**, **-ens**, as:

anders, otherwise
bereits, already
besonders, especially
links, to (on) the left
rechts, to (on) the right
übrigens, moreover

Also to participles, as:

eilends, hastily

2. From *Substantives*, by the use of the genitive case (sometimes with article), to express:

(*a*) *Time*, as:

abends (or des Abends), in the evening
morgens (or des Morgens), in the morning
nachts (or des Nachts), by night (anomalous, Nacht being fem.)
anfangs, in the beginning

(*b*) *Manner*, as:

flugs, in haste
teils, in part

3. From *Prepositions*, by adding **-en**, sometimes with **d(a)r-** prefixed, as:

außen, draußen, } outside, out of doors
innen, drinnen, } within, in-doors
hinten, behind
vorn(e), before
oben, above
unten, below
drüben, over there

NOTE. — Prepositions in composition with verbs are really adverbs (also the particles ab, ein, empor, weg, zurück).

4. By *combination*. For these see Part III.

190. COMPARISON OF ADVERBS.

1. Some adverbs are compared, as:

bald, **ehe**, }	soon	eher	am ehesten
oft, often		öfter	am öftesten
gern, willingly		lieber	am **liebsten** (*different root*)
wohl, **gut**, }	well	besser	am **besten** (" ")

2. Adjectives are used as adverbs in the *comparative*, as in the positive, without change, as:

Er läuft **schneller** als sein Bruder,
He runs **more quickly** than his brother.

3. In the *superlative* degree, the form with **am** is used for the *relative* superlative (see §§ 127, 2, and 128), as:

Er läuft **am schnellsten** von allen,
He runs **most quickly** of all.

4. The *absolute* superlative (see § 127, 2) is usually formed by prefixing an adverb of eminence (such as sehr, höchst, äußerst, etc.), as:

Er schreibt **äußerst** schön,
He writes **most** (i. e., *very*) beautifully.

5. Adverbs from adjectives in **-ig**, **-lich**, **-sam** use the uninflected form for the superlative *absolute*, as:

Er läßt freundlichst grüßen,
He desires to be **most kindly** remembered.

Also a few monosyllables, as: längst, long ago; höchst, most highly.

6. The superlative absolute may also be expressed by **auf das** (aufs) prefixed to the superlative adjective, to express the *highest possible degree*, as:

Er beſorgt ſeine Geſchäfte **auf das** (aufs) **Gewiſſenhafteſte**, He attends to his business in the most conscientious manner (possible).

7. A few superlative adverbs end in **-ens**, with special meanings, as:

höchſtens, at most
meiſtens, for the most part
wenigſtens, at least
nächſtens, shortly

Also the ordinal adverbs, **erſtens**, etc., see § 183, (*c*).

191. POSITION OF ADVERBS.

Adverbs generally precede the word they modify (except genug, see § 178, Note).

For further particulars as to their position in the sentence, see § 45, Rule 5.

192. TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION OF STRONG VERBS.

Class.	Div.	German Model.	English Analogy.	Ablaut.				Lesson.
				INFIN.	IMPF.	P. PART.	2.3. sing. PR. IND. 2. s. IMP.	
I.	*a*	beißen	bite	ei	ĭ	ĭ	—	XXII.
	b	bleiben	(wanting)	ei	ī	ī	—	XXIII.
II.	*a*	ſchießen	shoot	ie, etc.	ŏ	ŭ	—	XXIV.
	b	frieren	freeze	ie, etc.	ō	ō	—	XXV.
III.	*a*	ſingen	sing	ĭ	ă	u	—	XXVI.
	b	ſpinnen	*spin*	ĭ	ă	ŏ	—	XXVII.
	c	helfen	(wanting)	ĕ	ă	ŏ	ĭ	
IV.	—	ſprechen	*speak*	e, etc.	ā	ō	ĭ, ī	XXVIII.
V.	—	eſſen	*eat*	e, etc.	ā	e	ĭ, ī	XXIX.
VI.	—	ſchlagen	*slay*	a	u	a	Umlaut	XXX.
VII.	—	fallen	*fall*	various	ī	same as Infin.	Umlaut	XXXI.

Remarks. — 1. The Umlaut of classes VI., VII. does not occur in the Imperative.

2. The varying vowels of the Imperf. Subj. are given in the lists, where necessary.

3. The English Analogies printed in Italics are incomplete.

4. The vowel-change of class VII. is not an Ablaut, but the result of reduplication.

5. The lists of the various classes contain only the verbs of common occurrence; all others will be found in App. L.

193. Distinguish between the verbs of the following groups:

(*a*)	bitten, beg, ask	bat	gebeten
	beten, pray (intr.)	betete	gebetet
	bieten, bid, offer	bot	geboten
(*b*)	liegen, lie (be recumbent, intr.)	lag	gelegen
	legen, lay (trans.)	legte	gelegt
	lügen, lie, tell a falsehood	log	gelogen
(*c*)	ziehen, pull (trans.), move (intr.)	zog	gezogen
	zeihen, accuse	zieh	geziehen
	zeigen, show	zeigte	gezeigt

194. Remember the irregularities of:

eſſen (P. Part. gegeſſen)	ſtehen, ſtand (or ſtund), geſtanden
hauen (Impf. hieb)	
gehen, ging, gegangen	ziehen, zog, gezogen

Also the double forms in the Impf. of:

heben (hub, hob)	ſchwören (ſchwur, ſchwor)

Note. — There are a few strong P. Parts. from verbs now otherwise weak, as: gemahlen, from mahlen, to grind (Impf. mahlte); geſalzen, from ſalzen, to salt (Impf. ſalzte); geſpalten, from ſpalten, to split (Impf. ſpaltete); also some strong participles used only as adjectives, viz.:

erhaben (from erheben), exalted, sublime
bescheiden (" bescheiden), modest
verworren (" verwirren), confused

VOCABULARY.

to wind up (a clock, etc.), auf'ziehen
pass (an examination), bestehen
greet, salute, grüßen
go (or be) too slow (of a clock, etc.), nach'gehen
run after, nach'laufen (+ dat.)
cry, rufen
go (or be) too fast (of a clock, etc.), vor'gehen
command, der Befehl
visit, visitors, der Besuch
examination, das Examen
kitchen, die Küche
place, spot, die Stelle
employed, busy, beschäftigt
then (conj.), denn
hungry, hungrig
left, link
right, recht
salt (adj.), gesalzen
in spite of, trotz (+ gen.)
improbable, unwahrscheinlich
like, wie

Idioms: **1. I saw your friend to-day; he wishes to be remembered to you, Ich habe heute Ihren Freund gesehen; er läßt Sie grüßen.**

2. How do you like Boston? Wie gefällt es Ihnen in Boston?

EXERCISE XXXII.

A. 1. Geht Ihre Uhr vor, oder geht sie nach? 2. Sie geht ganz richtig. 3. Haben Sie Ihre Uhr aufgezogen? 4. Ein kleines Mädchen fragte, wie viel Uhr es sei. 5. Ein Herr zog seine Uhr aus der Tasche und zeigte sie dem Kinde mit den Worten: „Sage du mir selbst, wie viel Uhr es ist." 6. Wo sind deine Schwestern? Marie ist oben in der Bibliothek und Sophie ist unten in der Küche. 7. Anfangs wohnten wir nicht gern in dieser Straße, aber jetzt gefällt uns dieselbe ganz gut. 8. Ich glaube, wir werden einen heißen Sommer haben; was meinen Sie? 9. Die meisten Leute essen lieber frisches Fleisch als ge-

ſalzenes. 10. Trotz des Befehls des Königs betete Daniel jeden Tag dreimal. 11. Meine Tante, die in Berlin wohnt und deren Bruder Sie kennen, iſt ſehr krank. 12. Grüßen Sie freundlichſt Ihre Eltern für mich, wenn Sie nach Hauſe kommen. 13. Hoffentlich wird Fritz ſein Examen gut beſtehen, denn er hat aufs gewiſſenhafteſte ſtudiert. 14. Er wird es ſchwerlich beſtehen, da er erſt ſeit zwei Jahren in der Schule iſt. 15. Der lügt, welcher wiſſentlich eine Unwahrheit ſagt. 16. Ich eſſe gern gebratenes Rindfleiſch, beſonders wenn ich recht hungrig bin. 17. Rechts von der Schule ſteht eine Kirche, links ſteht der Markt. 18. Wir haben lieber abends Beſuch als morgens, denn morgens ſind wir gewöhnlich beſchäftigt. 19. Dieſes Kind wird nächſtens krank werden, denn es hat ſeit drei Tagen faſt gar nichts gegeſſen. 20. Es ſtand früher eine Kirche auf der Stelle wo wir jetzt ſind, aber ſie iſt ſchon längſt verſchwunden. 21. Von wem wurde die Kirche gebaut, wovon Sie ſprechen? 22. Ich weiß es nicht, es iſt mir nie geſagt worden.

B. 1. Please show me the way to the post-office. 2. If George is up-stairs, tell him that I am down-stairs. 3. I do not like London; I prefer to live in a smaller city. 4. The pen still lies on the book upon which I laid it. 5. Please tell me who lives over the way. 6. This boy has been stung by a bee. 7. Of all animals the horse runs quickest. 8. Give me what you have in your (the) left hand. 9. Lessing died on the fifteenth of February 1781. 10. The soldiers ran blindly into the battle and fought like lions. 11. The train for (nach) Montreal leaves (ab'fahren) at twelve o'clock at night, and arrives in Montreal at ten o'clock in the morning. 12. A little beggar ran after a gentleman, and asked him for some money. 13. 'My father is dead,' cried he, 'my mother is dead, and all her children are dead!' 14. 'Who are you then?' asked the gentleman. 15. What answer was given to the beggar by the gentleman, when he was asked for money?

ORAL EXERCISE XXXII.

1. Was würden Sie sagen, wenn ich Sie fragte, wie viel Uhr es sei? 2. Gefällt Ihnen die Strasze, worin Sie jetzt wohnen? 3. Hat Fritz sein Examen gut bestanden? 4. Wo ist meine Feder? 5. Was für Sprachen haben Sie studiert? 6. Glauben Sie, dasz der Herr dem Bettler etwas gegeben hat?

LESSON XXXIII.

ADVERBS (continued): IDIOMS. — IRREGULAR STRONG VERBS.

195. Idiomatic Uses of Certain Adverbs.

1. **nun, well.**

Nun, es iſt mir einerlei,
Well (why), it is all the same to me.

Note. — **Nun** is here really an interjection, and hence does not throw the subject after the verb.

2. **eben, just, exactly.**

Das iſt **eben** derſelbe Mann,
That is the **very** (exactly the) same man.

Wir ſind (**ſo**)**eben** angekommen, We have **just** arrived.

Das kann man **eben** nicht ſagen, One cannot **exactly** say that.

3. **gern, lieber, am liebſten.**

Ich eſſe **gern** Fiſch, I am **fond of** (eating) fish.

Ich eſſe **lieber** Fiſch als Fleiſch, I **prefer** (eating) fish to meat.

Er würde es **gern** thun, He would be **glad** to do it. would do it **with pleasure.**

Welche Sprache **ſprechen** Sie **am liebſten**?
Which language do you **prefer** (speaking)?

4. **erſt, first, only, not before, etc.**

Man muß **erſt** denken, dann ſprechen,
One must think **first** and then speak.

Mein Bruder wird **erſt** morgen kommen,
My brother will **not** come **before** to-morrow.

Wir hatten **erſt** zwei Meilen marſchiert,
We had **only** marched two miles.

Mein Bruder iſt **erſt** zwei Jahre alt,
My brother is **only** (**not more than**) two years old.

5. **zuerſt, first of all; for the first time.**

Dieſes Schiff iſt **zuerſt** (vor allen andern) im Hafen angekommen, This ship arrived in the harbour **first** (i. e., **before any other**).

Ich werde **zuerſt** (or **erſt**) zum Schneider, dann zum Buchhändler gehen, I shall go **first** (of all) to the tailor's, then to the bookseller's.

Ich habe ihn geſtern **zuerſt** (zum erſten Mal) geſehen, I saw him **for the first time** yesterday.

NOTE.— **Zuerſt** refers to *time* only, as above; **erſtens** = 'firstly, in the first place,' refers to *order* only, as in enumerations, thus:

Ich konnte nicht kommen, **erſtens**, weil es regnete, **zweitens**, weil ich krank war, I could not come, first (in the first place) because it rained, secondly, because I was ill.

6. **ſchon, already, as early as, etc.**

Sind Sie **ſchon** da? Are you there **already**?

Iſt Ihr Bruder **ſchon** in Frankreich geweſen?
Has your brother **ever** been in France?

Ich bin **ſchon** drei Tage in der Stadt,
I have been in the city **for the last** three days.

Das Schiff iſt **ſchon** geſtern angekommen,
The ship arrived (**as early as**) yesterday.

Er wird **ſchon** kommen, He will **be sure to** come (he will come, **no doubt**).

NOTE. — Schon is often, as in the fourth of the above sentences, to be left untranslated in English.

7. noch, yet, still, more.

(*a*) Of *Time:*

Sind Sie **noch** hier? Are you **still** here?

Ich bin **noch** nie in Deutſchland geweſen,
I have never **yet** been in Germany.

Er war **noch** vor einer Stunde hier,
He was here **only** an hour ago.

Noch heute, **Even** to-day (while it is **yet** to-day, **not later than** to-day).

NOTE. — Observe that noch *precedes* the negatives nie, nicht, etc.

(*b*) Of *Number:*

Noch eine Taſſe Thee, **Another** cup of tea.

Noch zwei, Two **more**.

Noch (ein)mal ſo viel, As much **again**.

8. doch, yet, after all.

(*a*) *Adversative:*

Er wird **doch'** kommen, He will come **after all** (emphasis on doch).

Er wird **doch** kommen', He will come, **I hope** (emphasis on kommen).

Habe ich es Ihnen **doch** geſagt! I told you so (did **I** not tell you so?).

NOTE. — Observe that in the last example the verb is at the *beginning* of the principal sentence.

(*b*) With *Imperatives:*

Kommen Sie **doch** herein, **Pray** come in (*urgent*).

(*c*) In answer to a *negative question* or *statement:*

Haben Sie ihn **nicht** geſehen? (Ja), **doch**.
Have you not seen him? **Yes, I have.**

Ich habe es **nicht** gethan. Sie haben es **doch** gethan.
I did not do it. Yes, you did.

(For doch and noch as Conjunctions, see Less. XL.)

NOTE. — Doch gives an affirmative answer, where a negative one is expected.

9. **auch, also, even, etc.**

Auch ſein Vater war gegen ihn, **Even** his father was against him.

Mein Bruder war nicht müde, und ich war **auch nicht** müde, My brother was not tired, and I was **not** tired **either.**

Haben Sie **auch** bedacht', was Sie ſagen, **Are you sure** you have considered, what you say? (emphasis on bedacht).

10. **wohl, indeed, etc.**

Er leugnet es **wohl**, aber es iſt doch wahr, He denies it **indeed** (**to be sure**) but yet it is true.

Sie ſind **wohl** ein Fremder? **I suppose** (presume) you are a stranger (**no doubt** you are, etc.).

NOTE. — **Gut**, not wohl, is the adv. of the adj. gut, good, when modifying a transitive verb.

11. **ja, yes, to be sure, etc.**

Thun Sie es **ja**', **Be sure** to do it, do it by all means (emphasis on ja).

Er iſt **ja** mein Vater', He is my father, **you know** (emphasis on Vater).

12. **nur.**

(With the Imperative.)

Kommen Sie **nur** herein, **Just** come in (rëassuringly).

196. Irregular Strong Verbs.

I. Thun, to do, Impf. that, P. Part. gethan.

That, like Engl. 'did,' is a relic of the old Impf. by reduplication, the old form being te–ta, i. e., the stem ta– with reduplicating syll. te– prefixed, then te–te, tet, that. Thun rejects e of the termination throughout, except in 1. Sing. Pres. Ind., and in the Pres. Subj.

II. Imperfect-Present Verbs.

Infin.	Pres. Ind. 1. Sing.	Pres. Ind. 1. Plur.	Pres. Subj.	Imperfect Ind.	Imperfect Subj.	P. Part.
wiſſen, know	weiß	wiſſen	wiſſe	wußte	wüßte	gewußt
dürfen, dare	darf	dürfen	dürfe	durfte	dürfte	gedurft
können, can	kann	können	könne	konnte	könnte	gekonnt
mögen, may	mag	mögen	möge	mochte	möchte	gemocht
müſſen, must	muß	müſſen	müſſe	mußte	müßte	gemußt
ſollen, shall	ſoll	ſollen	ſolle	ſollte	ſollte	geſollt

III. Wollen, will, Pres. Ind. 1. Sing. will, 1. Plur. wollen, Pres. Subj. wolle, Impf. Ind. wollte, Subj. wollte, P. Part. gewollt.

Remarks. — 1. Observe the following peculiarities in the verbs under II. and III.:

(*a*) All have the *same* vowel (mostly with Umlaut) in the Inf. and the *Plur.* of the Pres. Ind.; but (except ſollen) a *different* vowel in the *Sing.* of the same tense.

(*b*) The *Impf. Ind.* and *P. Part.* have the weak endings –te, –t, but the vowel is without Umlaut; wiſſen changes i to u; mögen changes g into ch.

(*c*) The *Impf. Subj.* has Umlaut, except in ſollen and wollen.

(*d*) The Sing. of the Pres. Ind. of these Verbs is as follows, the Plural being regular:

wiſſen	ich weiß du weißt er weiß	dürfen	ich darf du darfſt er darf	können	ich kann du kannſt er kann
mögen	ich mag du magſt er mag	müſſen	ich muß du mußt er muß	ſollen	ich ſoll du ſollſt er ſoll
		wollen	ich will du willſt er will		

Observe here the *different* vowel of the Inf. and Indic. (except ſoll); also the want of the *person-ending* in the 1. and 3. Sing. (ich, er weiß, darf, kann, etc., not weiß–t, darf–t, kann–t; compare Engl. can, may, etc., not can–s, may–s, etc.).

2. The forms of the Present in the verbs under II. were originally *Strong Imperfects* (hence their want of person-endings), which came to be used with a *Present* meaning; the new (weak) Imperfects were formed from these, with vowel-change.

3. The Present of wollen was originally a Pres. Subj., used as Indic., and therefore also without full person-endings.

4. The Imperative is wanting in all under II., except wiſſen, Imper. wiſſe.

NOTES. — 1. Wiſſen (= Fr. *savoir*) is used of knowledge, and of *things* only; kennen (= Fr. *connaître*) of *acquaintance*, of persons *and* things, thus:

Wiſſen Sie den Weg? Do you know the road? (i. e., do you know which is the right road?)

Kennen Sie den Weg? Are you acquainted (familiar) with the road?

Kennen Sie meinen Bruder? Do you know my brother?

Wiſſen Sie, was er geſagt hat? Do you know what he said?

2. All these verbs, except wiſſen, govern another Verb in the Infin. without zu (see Less. XLV), as:

Ich darf **gehen**, I am permitted to go.

Vocabulary.

to put on (a hat), auf'ſetzen	watch-key, der Uhrſchlüſſel
expression, der Aus'druck *	dwelling-house, das Wohn-haus
French (language), Franzö'ſiſch	
building, das Gebäude	clear(ly), distinct(ly), deutlich
commandment, das Gebot'	although, obgleich'

Idioms: 1. **Will you be so kind as to lend me your pen? Wollen Sie ſo gut ſein und mir Ihre Feder leihen?** (lit., **will you be so kind and**, etc.)

2. **I am sorry** (**I regret**), **Es thut mir leid** (leid to be treated as a separable particle).

3. **What is that in German? Wie heißt das auf Deutſch?**

4. **I do not need to go to school to-day, Ich brauche heute nicht zur Schule zu gehen.**

5. **He knows French, Er kann Franzöſiſch.**

EXERCISE XXXIII.

A. 1. Ich kann dich nicht verſtehen; ſprich doch deutlicher. 2. Kommen Sie nur herein, wenn Sie wollen. 3. Iſt es Ihnen ſchon gelungen, Franzöſiſch zu lernen? 4. Ich werde noch heute dieſe Lektion lernen müſſen, und es iſt ſchon drei Viertel auf zehn. 5. Noch vor vierzehn Tagen liefen wir Schlittſchuh, und heute iſt das Eis geſchmolzen. 6. Das erſte Gebot heißt (is): „Du ſollſt keine andern Götter neben mir haben." 7. Es thut mir leid, daß wir erſt morgen abreiſen; ich wäre lieber heute abgereiſt. 8. Thut es Ihnen nicht auch leid, daß Sie bis morgen bleiben müſſen? 9. Wie heißt der engliſche Ausdruck 'Do you know my friend?' auf Deutſch? „Kennen Sie meinen Freund?" 10. Mein Onkel und meine Tante ſind ſchon geſtern angekommen, aber meine Vettern und Couſinen werden erſt übermorgen kommen können. 11. Weißt du, daß deine Mutter angekommen iſt? 12. Ich will dieſen Hut nicht aufſetzen, weil er mir zu klein iſt. 13. Heute darf ich länger

hier bleiben; ich brauche nicht vor zehn Uhr zu Hause zu sein. 14. Wollen Sie sich nicht setzen? 15. Ich werde mehr Geld haben müssen; ich habe nicht genug zur Reise. 16. Je mehr man hat, desto mehr will man. 17. Dieses unartige Kind weiß nicht, was es will. 18. Ich habe eben gehört, daß meine Mutter krank ist, aber ich werde sie nicht vor morgen besuchen können. 19. Wollen Sie gefälligst meinen Brief zur Post bringen? 20. Wilhelm wird den ganzen Tag zu Hause bleiben müssen, weil er sich erkältet hat. 21. Mein Bruder spricht gut Deutsch, obgleich er erst in in seinem siebzehnten Jahre das Studium dieser Sprache angefangen hat. 22. Wollen Sie so gut sein und mir sagen (mir zu sagen), wie viel Uhr es ist?

B. 1. A stranger wants to speak to (sprechen + acc.) you. 2. That building was first a bank, then a shop, but it is now a dwelling-house. 3. How do you know that? I know it because I have heard it from my father. 4. What shall I do? I have lost all my money. 5. Do you know who has torn this book? 6. No, I do not know who has torn it. 7. Can you write the name of that stranger? 8. Do you know German? No, but I know French. 9. Do you know the difference between the words 'kennen' and 'wissen'? 10. I had already put on my hat, and was just on the point of going out, when the rain began. 11. These two ships set sail (abfahren) at the same time, but the smaller arrived first. 12. I could not wind up my watch yesterday evening; I had no watch-key about me. 13. I cannot remain now any longer; I must be at home at ten o'clock. 14. I know this street, but I do not know the name of it (say: how it is called). 15. A brave man is esteemed by everybody. 16. Of what is bread made?

ORAL EXERCISE XXXIII.

1. Wie heiszt 'I am sorry' auf Deutsch? 2. Weshalb bleiben Sie heute nicht länger? 3. Können Sie Deutsch?

4. Sollte man gegen jedermann freundlich sein? 5. Wie gefällt Ihnen Paris? 6. Wie viel Uhr ist es, wenn der Stundenzeiger zwischen vier und fünf und der Minutenzeiger auf zehn steht?

LESSON XXXIV.

THE MODAL AUXILIARIES.

197. The Verbs **dürfen, können, mögen, müſſen, ſollen, wollen** (see last Lesson), with the Verb **laſſen** (Class VII, Less. XXXI) are called **Modal Auxiliaries**, or Auxiliary Verbs of Mood, since they are used to form combinations equivalent to various **Moods**. Thus: **laſſet** uns gehen, 'let us go,' is really equivalent to an *Imperative Mood* 1. Pl. of gehen; ich **kann** gehen, 'I can go,' to a *Potential Mood*, etc.

198. These Modal Auxiliaries differ from the English Auxiliaries *can*, *may*, *must*, *shall*, *will*, in having an Infinitive and a Past Participle, and in the consequent ability to form a complete set of **compound tenses**, which are wanting in the English Verbs, and must therefore be supplied in that language by equivalent phrases, as shown in the following partial paradigms (see also Less. XXXV).

dürfen, to be permitted	**können**, to be able (can)	**mögen**, to like, be allowed (may)
	PRESENT INDICATIVE.	
ich darf, I am permitted, may	ich kann, I can, am able	ich mag, I like, may
	PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE.	
ich dürfe, I (may) be permitted,	ich könne, I (may) be able	ich möge, I (may) like

Imperfect Indicative.

ich durfte, I was permitted	ich konnte, I could, was able	ich mochte, I liked, might

Imperfect Subjunctive.

ich dürfte, I might be permitted	ich könnte, I could, might be able	ich möchte, I might like

Perfect Indicative.

ich habe gedurft, I have been permitted	ich habe gekonnt, I have been able	ich habe gemocht, I have liked

Perfect Subjunctive.

ich habe gedurft, I (may) have been permitted	ich habe gekonnt, I (may) have been able	ich habe gemocht, I (may) have liked

Pluperfect Indicative.

ich hatte gedurft, I had been permitted	ich hatte gekonnt, I had been able	ich hatte gemocht, I had liked

Pluperfect Subjunctive.

ich hätte gedurft, I might have been permitted	ich hätte gekonnt, I might have been able	ich hätte gemocht, I might have liked

Future Indicative and Subjunctive.

ich werde dürfen, I shall be permitted	ich werde können, I shall be able	ich werde mögen, I shall like

FUTURE PERFECT.

ich werde gedurft haben, I shall have been permitted	ich werde gekonnt haben, I shall have been able	ich werde gemocht haben, I shall have liked

SIMPLE CONDITIONAL.

ich würde dürfen, I should be permitted	ich würde können, I should be able	ich würde mögen, I should like

COMPOUND CONDITIONAL.

ich würde gedurft haben, I should have been permitted	ich würde gekonnt haben, I should have been able	ich würde gemocht haben, I should have liked

---

müſſen, to be compelled (must)	**ſollen**, to be obliged (shall)	**wollen**, to be willing (will)

PRESENT INDICATIVE.

ich muß, I am compelled, must	ich ſoll, du ſollſt, I am (obliged) to, thou **shalt**	ich will, I will, intend to, am about to

PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE.

ich müſſe, I (may) be compelled	ich ſolle, I (may) be obliged	ich wolle, I (may) be willing

IMPERFECT INDICATIVE.

ich mußte, I was compelled	ich ſollte, I was (obliged) to, **ought**	ich wollte, I was willing

Imperfect Subjunctive.

ich müßte, I might be compelled	ich ſollte, I might be obliged	ich wollte, I might be willing, would

Perfect Indicative.

ich habe gemußt, I have been compelled	ich habe geſollt, I have been obliged	ich habe gewollt, I have been willing

Perfect Subjunctive.

ich habe gemußt, I (may) have been compelled	ich habe geſollt, I (may) have been obliged	ich habe gewollt, I (may) have been willing

Pluperfect Indicative.

ich hatte gemußt, I had been compelled	ich hatte geſollt, I had been obliged	ich hatte gewollt, I had been willing

Pluperfect Subjunctive.

ich hätte gemußt, I might have been compelled	ich hätte geſollt, I might have been obliged, ought to have	ich hätte gewollt, I might have been willing

Future Indicative and Subjunctive.

ich werde müſſen, I shall be compelled	ich werde ſollen, I shall be obliged	ich werde wollen, I shall be willing

Future Perfect.

ich werde gemußt haben, I shall have been compelled	ich werde geſollt haben, I shall have been obliged	ich werde gewollt haben, I shall have been willing

SIMPLE CONDITIONAL.

ich würde müſſen, I should be compelled	ich würde ſollen, I should be obliged	ich würde wollen, I should be willing

COMPOUND CONDITIONAL.

ich würde gemußt haben, I should have been compelled	ich würde geſollt haben, I should have been obliged	ich würde gewollt haben, I should have been willing

199. FURTHER PECULIARITIES OF MODAL AUXILIARIES.

1. They govern an Infinitive without zu, as:

Er muß **gehen**, He must go.

2. In the compound tenses, when a governed Infin. occurs, the weak P. Part. is replaced by the Infinitive (really the old strong P. Part. without prefix **ge-**, which coincides in form with the Infin.), as:

Ich habe **gemußt**, I have been obliged; — but

Ich habe es **thun müſſen**, I have been obliged to do it.

3. In subordinate sentences, their auxiliary of tense does not come last, but precedes both the governed infinitive and the participle of the Modal Auxiliary, as:

Er ſagte, daß er es **habe** thun müſſen, He said, that he had been obliged to do it.

NOTE. — The foregoing peculiarities are all shared by the verbs heißen, helfen, hören, laſſen, machen, ſehen; for other verbs governing an Infin. without zu, see Less. XLV.

4. The *shorter* (and older) forms of the Conditional (viz.: Impf. and Plupf. Subj., see § 111) are preferred to the longer ones (with würde), thus:

SIMPLE CONDITIONAL.

ich dürfte = I should be permitted
ich könnte = I " " able
ich möchte = I " like
ich müßte = I " be compelled
ich ſollte = I " " obliged
ich wollte = I " " willing

COMPOUND CONDITIONAL.

ich hätte	gedurft, dürfen	I should have	been permitted
	gekonnt, können		" able
	gemocht, mögen		liked
	genußt, müſſen		been compelled
	geſollt, ſollen		" obliged
	gewollt, wollen		" willing

REMARKS. — 1. The Engl. auxiliaries also use by preference shorter forms of the Comp. Condit., but differently constructed thus:

ich hätte es thun	können	= I	could
	mögen		might
	müſſen		must
	ſollen		should
	wollen		would

have done it

Observe that the Engl. Verbs have the *Modal Auxiliary* ('could,' 'might,' etc.) in the *Simple* Tense (**Impf.**), and the *governed verb* ('have done') in the *Compound* Tense (**Perf.** Inf.); whereas the Germ. Verbs have the *Modal Auxiliary* (hätte . . . können, etc.) in the *Compound* Tense (**Plupf.** Subj.), and the *governed verb* (thun) in the *Simple* Tense (**Pres.** Inf.).

2. Distinguish carefully between 'could,' *Indic.* (= **was** able, konnte) and 'could,' *Conditional* (= **would** be able, könnte); and so with the other verbs, thus:

Er konnte es nicht thun = He could not (was not able to) do it (*Indic.*).

Er könnte es thun, wenn er **wollte** = He could (**would** be able to) do it, if he **were** willing (*Conâit.*).

VOCABULARY.

to remain up, sit up, auf'bleiben	fellow-creature, neighbour, der Nächste
go out, aus'gehen	disaster, das Un'glück
thank, danken (+ dat.)	untruth, falsehood, die Un'wahrheit
bow to, greet, grüßen (trans.)	over again, noch (ein)mal'
depend, rely (upon), sich verlassen (auf + acc.)	whether, if, ob
moment, der Au'genblick	else, otherwise, sonst
railway, die Ei'senbahn	

Idioms: 1. **Will you have a cup of tea? No, thank you, Wollen Sie eine Tasse Thee? Ich danke (Ihnen).**

2. **In fine weather, Bei schönem Wetter.**

3. **I have heard (it) said,** etc., **Ich habe sagen hören,** u. s. w.

EXERCISE XXXIV.

A. 1. Du hast deine Aufgabe sehr schlecht gemacht; du wirst sie gewiß noch (ein)mal' machen müssen. 2. Darf ich einen Augenblick Ihren Bleistift brauchen? Ich habe den meinen verloren. 3. Wir müssen gleich zur Schule gehen, sonst kommen wir zu spät. 4. Man sollte seinen Nächsten lieben, wie sich selbst. 5. Vorige Woche hätte mein Vater sein Haus verkaufen können, aber er hat es nicht gewollt. 6. Jetzt möchte er es gern verkaufen, aber niemand will es. 7. Deine Vettern lassen dich freundlichst grüßen. 8. Wissen Sie, wie der Herr heißt, der mich soeben gegrüßt hat? 9. Du sollst zu deinem Vater gehen; er will dich sprechen. 10. Der Knabe mag sagen, was er will; ich weiß, daß er eine Unwahrheit gesagt hat. 11. Möchten Sie nicht bei diesem schönen Wetter spazieren fahren? 12. Hast du den Zug von Buffalo ankommen sehen? 13. Ja wohl, ich habe ihn ankommen sehen, aber es war niemand darauf, den ich kannte. 14. Er hat gedurft, aber

er hat nicht gewollt. 15. Ich habe in der Stadt sagen hören, daß ein großes Unglück auf der Eisenbahn geschehen ist. 16. Er soll von diesem Baum gesprungen sein, aber ich kann es kaum glauben. 17. Ich darf nicht so spät aufbleiben als mein älterer Bruder; ich muß jeden Abend um zehn Uhr zu Bette gehen. 18. Ich will thun, was ich kann; darauf können Sie sich verlassen. 19. Von wem wurde das Buch geschrieben, das Sie soeben lasen? 20. Es thut mir leid, daß Sie so lange auf mich haben warten müssen; ich konnte meine Handschuhe nicht finden.

B. 1. By whom was this picture painted? 2. I should like to know what time it is. 3. May you go out, if you want to? No, we are obliged to stay at home the whole day. 4. I do not like (I like no) tea; I prefer (the) coffee. 5. Could you help me with my lesson? 6. I should certainly help you with it, if I could. 7. He may say, what he will; it is all the same to me. 8. My father could have sold his house last year, but now it is impossible, for nobody wants to buy it. 9. Charles has beaten his dog with a stick; he should not have done that. 10. May I offer you a piece of meat? No, thank you. 11. Have (let) the messenger wait, till I write an answer. 12. I should like to read this French book, but I do not know any French. 13. I am sorry that I have not been able to come sooner. 14. He will be obliged to study another year, if he does not pass his examination. 15. Sophia should not have gone for a walk, since the weather is so cold. 16. The horse I wanted to buy was already sold.

ORAL EXERCISE XXXIV.

1. Wie heiszt das erste Gebot? 2. Wissen Sie, ob wir morgen zur Schule gehen müssen? 3. Darf ich Ihnen eine Tasse Thee anbieten? 4. Weshalb haben Sie mir mit meiner Aufgabe nicht helfen wollen? 5. Wie lange werden wir auf Fritz warten müssen? 6. Sollte man seinen Nächsten lieben?

LESSON XXXV.

MODAL AUXILIARIES (continued): — IDIOMS.

200. The following are the most important of the various meanings of the Modal Auxiliaries:

1. **Dürfen** denotes **permission**, as:

Darf ich fragen? **May** I ask?

Sie **dürfen** jetzt nach Hause gehen, You **may** go home now.

Er hat nichts sagen **dürfen**, He has not been **permitted** (allowed) to say anything.

2. **Können** denotes:

(*a*) **ability** (of *persons*), as:

Er **konnte** schön schreiben, He **could** (was **able** to, **knew how** to) write beautifully.

Ich **hätte** nicht kommen **können**, I **could** not have (would not have been **able** to) come.

(*b*) **possibility** (of *events*), as:

Es **kann** sein, It **may** be (so), it is **possible**.

3. **Mögen** denotes:

(*a*) **preference, liking** (of *persons*), as:

Ich **mag** dieses Gedicht nicht, I do not **like** (care for) this poem.

Er **mochte** nicht arbeiten, He did not **like** to work.

Ich hätte Ihren Bruder sehen **mögen**, I should have **liked** to see your brother.

NOTE. — This is the usual meaning in the *first person;* also in the 3rd pf. (Indic. and Condit.) throughout.

(*b*) **concession, possibility** (in 2. and 3. person only), as:

Er **mag** gehen, He may go (as far as I am concerned), or: Let him go.

Das **mag** ſein, That may be (for all I know).

NOTE. — The Engl. 'may' denoting permission must be rendered by **dürfen** in the first person, as:

May I accompany you? **Darf** ich Sie begleiten?

(*c*) Observe this idiom:

Ich werde morgen ausgehen, **mag** es regnen oder nicht, I shall go out to-morrow, whether it rains or not.

4. **Müſſen** denotes necessity, as:

Alle Menſchen **müſſen** ſterben, All men must die.

Es **muß** geſtern geſchehen ſein, It must have happened yesterday.

Wir werden ausgehen **müſſen**, We shall be compelled (or 'obliged,' or 'shall have') to go.

NOTE. — 'To be obliged, compelled' after a negative is rendered by brauchen, as:

I am not obliged to go, Ich **brauche** nicht zu gehen.

5. **Sollen** denotes duty or obligation, imposed on the subject *by the will of another*.

(*a*) Imposed by the speaker, as:

Du **ſollſt** nicht ſtehlen, Thou shalt not steal.

(*b*) Imposed by some person other than, but recognised by, the speaker, as:

Ich **ſoll** gehen, I am to go.
Er hätte gehen **ſollen**, He ought to have gone.
Was **ſoll** geſchehen? What is to be done?
Was **ſollte** ich thun? What was I to do?

(*c*) It also denotes a statement on the part of another as to the subject, as:

Er **ſoll** ſehr reich ſein, He is said to be very rich.

6. **Wollen** denotes

(*a*) the exertion of the **will** on the part of the subject, as:

Er **will** nicht gehorchen, He **will** not (refuses to) obey.

(*b*) **intention** or **impending action**, as:

Er **will** morgen abreiſen, He **intends** (means) to depart.

Das Eis **will** brechen, The ice **is about** to break (**threatens** to break).

Er **wollte** eben gehen (= war eben im Begriff zu gehen), He was just **on the point of** going.

(*c*) a **statement** or **claim** on the part of the subject, as:

Er **will** in Indien geweſen ſein, He **asserts** that he has been (**pretends** to have been) in India.

7. **Laſſen** is used

(*a*) as auxiliary of the **Imperative Mood**, as:

Laſſen Sie uns hier bleiben, Let us remain here.

(*b*) to express **permission**, etc., as:

Man hat den Dieb entſpringen **laſſen**, The thief has been **allowed** to escape.

(*c*) to express the **agency** of another, as:

Der Offizier **ließ** den Soldaten **beſtrafen**, The officer **ordered** the soldier **to be** punished.

Aſchenputtels Vater **ließ** den Baum **umhauen**, Cinderella's father **had** the tree cut down.

NOTE. — The infin. in the former of these examples is rendered by the *passive* infinitive in English, the object of the verb laſſen being understood. Supply the ellipsis as follows:

Der Offizier hat **jemand** (obj. of laſſen), den Soldaten (obj. of beſtrafen), beſtrafen **laſſen**, The officer has ordered *somebody* to punish the soldier.

(*d*) **reflexively**, as:

Er **ließ sich** leicht betrügen, He **suffered** himself to be deceived easily.

Ich **ließ** es **mir** gefallen, I **submitted** to it.

Es **läßt sich** nicht leugnen, It cannot be denied.

201. How to render SHALL and WILL.

1. The Engl. '**shall**' and '**will**' must *both* be rendered by **werden** when they express *mere* futurity, as:

I **shall** be drowned and nobody **will** save me,
Ich **werde** ertrinken und niemand **wird** mich retten.

2. But if they express **more** than mere futurity (e. g., *obligation* or *determination*), they must be rendered by **sollen** and **wollen** respectively, as:

I **will** be drowned and nobody **shall** save me,
Ich **will** ertrinken und niemand **soll** mich retten.

202. Observe the following parallel idioms:

(*a*)
- Er **hat** es nicht **thun können**, He **has** not **been able** to do it.
- Er **kann** es nicht **gethan haben**, He **cannot** (possibly) **have done** it.

(*b*)
- Er **hat** es nicht **thun mögen**, He **did** not **like to** do it.
- Er **mag** es **gethan haben**, He **may** (possibly) **have** done it.

(*c*)
- Er **hat** es **thun müssen**, He **has been obliged to** do it.
- Er **muß** es **gethan haben**, He **must have done** it.

(*d*)
- Er **hat** es **thun sollen**, He **should** (**ought to**) **have** done it.
- Er **soll** es **gethan haben**, He **is said to have** done it.

(*e*) Er **hat** es **thun wollen**, He intended to have done it.
Er **will** es **gethan haben**, He pretends (claims) to have done it.

VOCABULARY.

to put on, draw on (coat, etc.) anziehen
expect, erwarten
chat, talk, plaudern
reap, ſchneiden
disturb, interrupt, ſtören
try, verſuchen
last, continue, währen
American, der Amerikaner
physician, doctor, der Arzt*
beggar-woman, die Bettlerin
steam-engine, die Dampfmaſchine
Englishman, der Engländer
naught, cipher; zero, die Null
shoemaker, der Schuhmacher
proverb, das Sprichwort
studying, das Studieren
lesson, die Stunde
bunch of grapes, die Traube
thermometer, der or das Thermome'ter
overcoat, der Überzieher
as far as, bis nach
dangerous(ly), gefährlich
sour, ſauer

Idioms: **1. A doctor has been sent for, Man hat einen Arzt holen laſſen.**
2. Every other day (every alternate day), Einen Tag um den andern.
3. Every week, Alle acht Tage.
4. I should think so! Das ſollte ich meinen!
5. In the right way, Auf die richtige Weiſe (acc.).

EXERCISE XXXV.

A. 1. Der Telegraph ſoll von einem Amerikaner erfunden worden ſein. 2. „Wer im Sommer nicht mag ſchneiden, muß im Winter Hunger leiden," heißt ein deutſches Sprichwort. 3. Wolle nur, was du kannſt, ſo wirſt du können, was du willſt. 4. Nächſte Woche ſollen wir einen Feiertag haben, wenn bis Sonnabend fleißig ſtudiert wird. 5. Marie wollte ihre Lektion in einer halben Stunde lernen, aber ſie hat es nicht gekonnt. 6. Wir würden alle glücklicher leben, wenn wir immer thäten, was wir thun ſollten. 7. Ich werde die

Lektion nie lernen können. 8. Du wirst sie lernen können, wenn du es nur auf die richtige Weise versuchst. 9. Man darf nicht in der Schule plaudern; das stört den Lehrer und die Schüler. 10. Weshalb hat Aschenputtels Vater den Baum umhauen lassen? 11. Sollte Herr B. während meiner Abwesenheit kommen, so lassen Sie ihn auf mich warten. 12. Ich möchte nur wissen, warum Georg auf sich warten läßt! 13. Ich möchte Sie nicht stören, aber sagen Sie mir gefälligst, wie dieser Satz auf Englisch heißt. 14. Georgs Vater soll gefährlich krank sein; man hat zwei Ärzte holen lassen. 15. Der Vogel wollte eben vom Baume fliegen, als der Jäger ihn schoß. 16. Guten Morgen, Herr Braun, mein Vater läßt Ihnen sagen, daß er Sie heute Abend erwartet. 17. Habe ich Sie sagen hören, daß Sie jeden Tag eine deutsche Stunde nehmen? 18. Nein, ich nehme einen Tag um den andern eine Stunde. 19. Was mich betrifft, so möchte ich lieber alle drei Tage meine Stunden nehmen. 20. Das sollte ich meinen, denn Sie würden mehr Zeit zum Studieren haben. 21. Ehrlich währt am längsten, und Unrecht schlägt seinen eigenen Herrn.

B. 1. Let us take a walk; I cannot work any longer. 2. The beggar-woman, who has just asked us for money, says that she is (claims to be) a hundred years old. 3. She is not quite so old, but she is said to be at least above (über + acc.) ninety years old. 4. The fox said: 'The grapes are sour; I do not like them.' 5. The fox said the grapes were sour, and that he did not like them. 6. Might I ask you how far you are going? As far as Montreal. 7. Should I put on my overcoat? 8. I should think so! The thermometer is (stands) below zero. 9. Is it true that this traveller knows three languages? It may be [so], but I do not believe it. 10. If you should see little Freddy up-stairs, let him come to me. 11. By which shoemaker do you have your shoes made? 12. The steam-engine is said to have been invented by an Englishman. 13. Lazy boys learn only because they are obliged

to learn. 14. He must have been very ill, as (da) he is still so weak. 15. This house is said to have cost four thousand dollars, but I should not like to give two thousand for it. 16. He has not been able to come on account of the storm, otherwise he would be here already.

ORAL EXERCISE XXXV.

1. Möchten Sie nicht eine Reise nach Europa machen? 2. Gehen Sie alle Tage nach der Stadt, oder nur alle zwei Tage? 3. Was machen Sie, wenn Sie nicht mehr studieren können? 4. Wer soll das Telephon erfunden haben? 5. Hat man einen Arzt holen lassen? 6. Haben Sie das Geld bezahlen müssen?

LESSON XXXVI.

COMPOUND VERBS.

203. The Prefixes of Compound Verbs may be either **Inseparable** or **Separable**.

204. *A.* INSEPARABLE PREFIXES.

REMEMBER: The omission of **ge-** in the P. Part.

The prefixes **be-, er-, emp-, ent-, ge-, ver-, zer-, miß-, wider-** are always *inseparable* and *unaccented*, the principal accent falling on the **verb**.

REMARKS. — 1. The particle **miß-** varies in usage, as shown in the Supplementary Lesson E., § 209, 1, below.

2. Remarks on the force and meaning of these particles are given in Part III.

205. *B.* SEPARABLE PREFIXES.

REMEMBER: 1. The Prefix is separated from the Verb only in **Simple Tenses** and **Principal** (including **Direct Interrogative** and **Imperative**) **Sentences**.

2. The **ge–** of the P. Part. and **zu** of the Infin. come between prefix and verb.

3. The principal accent is on the **prefix**.

206. The **Separable** Prefixes are:

1. The **simple prepositional** and other **adverbs**, **ab–**, **an–**, **auf–**, **aus–**, etc.; **da(r)–**, **fort–**, **empor–**, **her–**, **hin–**, etc.

2. The **compound adverbs**, such as: **davon–**, **dazu–**, etc.; **voran–**, **voraus–**, etc.; **entgegen–**, **entzwei–**, **zurück–**, etc.

NOTES. — 1. Observe that these compound adverbs are all accented on the *second* syllable.

2. The use of the compound prefixes with **her–** and **hin–** is defined in the Supplementary Lesson E., § 210, below.

EXAMPLES OF VERBS WITH PREFIXES.

(*a*) Simple Verbs.	(*b*) Inseparable Compounds.	(*c*) Separable Compounds.
gehen, go	**vergehen**, pass away	**ausgehen**, go out **zurückgehen**, go back
reißen, tear	**zerreißen**, tear to pieces	
kommen, come	**bekommen**, obtain	**entgegenkommen**, come to meet
finden, find	**erfinden**, invent	**ausfinden**, find out

Other Separable Prefixes are:

3. **Substantives**, forming one idea with the verb,

(*a*) as *objects* of the verb, as:

achtgeben, pay attention (attend); **dankſagen**, return thanks (thank); **ſtattfinden**, take place (occur); **teilnehmen**, take part (interest one's self).

NOTE. — The substantives in these combinations are usually spelt with a small letter, and written in one word with the verb when they precede it.

(*b*) with **prepositions** (= *adverbial phrases*), as:

ſich **in Acht** nehmen (refl.), take care (be careful); **zu Leide** thun, injure, hurt; **zu Stande** bringen, complete; **zu Stande** kommen, be completed; **im Stande** ſein, be able; **zum Vorſchein** kommen, make one's appearance (appear); **zu Mute** ſein, feel.

REMARK. — These substantives occupy the same position in the sentence as separable prefixes, thus:

Ich habe auf ſein Betragen **achtgegeben**,
I have observed his conduct.

Ich ſagte ihm für ſeine Freundlichkeit **dank**,
I thanked him for his kindness.

NOTE. — Observe that in the above sentences the simple objects without preposition (acht, dank) *follow* the prepositional phrases (auf ſein Betragen, für ſeine Freundlichkeit), contrary to rule, on account of their character as separable prefixes.

4. **Adjectives** as prefixes are usually *separable*, as:

freilaſſen, set free (liberate); **feſthalten**, hold fast (detain); ſich **losſagen** (refl.), renounce.

But many are inseparable, of which fuller particulars are given in the Supplementary Lesson E., § 212.

For **voll-** as prefix see § 208, below.

207. *C.* DOUBLE PREFIXES.

1. **Separable + Separable** prefix; these are compound adverbs, and both **separable** (see § 206, 2, above).

2. **Separable + Inseparable**; the former alone is separated, as:

an'erkennen, acknowledge, ich **erkenne an** (but see Suppl. Less. E., § 213).

3. **Inseparable + Separable**; both inseparable, as:

beauf'tragen, authorize, ich **beauf'tragte** ihn, I authorized him; **veranſtalten**, arrange, ich **veranſtaltete** dies, I arranged this.

NOTE. — These are really not compound but *derivative* verbs, from compound nouns (Auf'trag, An'ſtalt); hence also the verb (as in the former example) is always weak, not strong — beauftragte, beauftragt.

208. *D.* PREFIXES SEPARABLE AND INSEPARABLE.

The prefixes **durch–, hinter–, über–, unter–, um–, voll–** are sometimes separable, sometimes inseparable. They are:

(*a*) **Separable** as long as both prefix and verb retain more or less of their *literal* or concrete meaning;

(*b*) **Inseparable** when both have lost this meaning, and form together **one new idea.** A compound of the same verb and prefix may therefore be **both separable and inseparable** according to its meaning, as in the following examples:

(*a*) **Separable** and **Literal.**
(Accent on Prefix, Trans. and Intr.)

durch'reiſen, pass (travel) **through**, as:

Er iſt geſtern hier **durch'gereiſt**, He **passed through** here yesterday.

hin'tergehen, go behind

ü'berſetzen (tr. or intr.), **cross**; jump **over**, ferry **across**, as:

Er **ſetzte** mit einem Sprunge **über**, He **jumped over** at a bound.

Fährmann, bitte, **ſetzen** Sie mich **über**, Ferryman, please **ferry** me **across**.

(*b*) **Inseparable** and **Figurative.**
(Accent on Verb, always Trans.)

durchrei'ſen, **traverse**, travel **over**, as:

Er hat das ganze Land **durchreiſt'**, He has **traversed** (travelled **over**) the whole country.

hintergе'hen, **deceive**, as:

Er **hinterging'** ſeinen Freund, He **deceived** his friend.

überſetz'en, **translate**, as:

Ich **überſetz'e** ein deutſches Buch, I am **translating** a German book.

un'terſchreiben, write under, subscribe, as:

Schreiben Sie Ihren Namen hier **unter**, Subscribe your name here.

um'gehen, go round, as:

Sie müſſen **um'gehen**, You must go round.

voll'gießen, pour full, as:

Er **goß** das Glas **voll**, He poured the glass full.

unterſchrei'ben, sign, as:

Ich habe den Brief noch nicht **unterſchrie'ben**, I have not yet signed the letter.

umge'hen, evade, as:

Man **umging'** das Geſetz, They evaded the law.

vollen'den, complete, as:

Ich habe meine Arbeit **vollen'det**, I have completed my work.

NOTES. — 1. These separable prepositional prefixes are only rarely used with the verbs given above, except as *prepositions* proper, governing a case, as:

Er ging **hinter** den Ofen (**um** das Haus),
He went behind the stove (around the house).

2. The adverb **wieder** is separable, except in **wiederho'len**, repeat (but **wie'derholen**, fetch again).

3. Many compounds with these prefixes are used as inseparable compounds only; others as separable only.

VOCABULARY.

to meet with, an'treffen
give up, auf'geben
cease, stop, auf'hören
open, auf'machen
leave out, omit, aus'laſſen
pronounce, aus'ſprechen
assist, aid, bei'ſtehen
go away, fort'gehen
come out, heraus'kommen
come in, herein'kommen
set (of the sun, etc.), un'tergehen
read to, vor'leſen (+ dat. of [pers.)
leave, verlaſſen
promise, verſprechen
present', introduce, vor'ſtellen (+ acc. and dat.)
go past, pass by, vorbei'gehen
close, shut, zu'machen
come back, zurück'kommen

collide, zuſam'menſtoßen
send to, zu'ſchicken (+ dat.)
coffee, der Kaffee
Northern Railway, die Nord'-eiſenbahn
slave, der Sklave
marriage (-ceremony), die Trauung
pale, bleich
by heart, aus'wendig
since, ſeitdem' (adv. and conj.)
closed, shut (predicate), zu
even if, wenn ... auch

Idioms: 1. **What is the matter with him? Was hat er?**
2. **He feels ill, Ihm iſt ſchlecht zu Mute;** or: **Es iſt ihm ſchlecht zu Mute.**
3. **To translate into German, Ins Deutſche überſetzen.**
4. **In fine weather, Bei ſchönem Wetter.**
5. **If you please, Wenn ich bitten darf** (lit., **If I may ask**).

EXERCISE XXXVI.

A. 1. Vergiß nicht, das Fenſter zuzumachen, wenn du das Zimmer verläßt. 2. Was man aufſchiebt, kommt ſelten zu Stande. 3. Können Sie mir ſagen, wie dieſes Wort auf Deutſch ausgeſprochen wird? 4. Meine Schweſtern kamen mir entgegen, aber leider haben ſie mich nicht angetroffen. 5. Viele haben verſprochen, uns beizuſtehen, aber nur wenige haben uns wirklich beigeſtanden. 6. Wir ſind jetzt mit dem erſten Teile des Buches beinahe fertig; nächſte Woche fangen wir an, den zweiten Teil zu überſetzen. 7. Zwei Züge ſind auf der Nordeiſenbahn zuſammengeſtoßen. 8. Ich hörte auf zu ſingen, weil ich heiſer wurde. 9. Mein Vater machte den Brief auf und las denſelben der Familie vor. 10. Wer einmal lügt, dem glaubt man nicht, und wenn er auch die Wahrheit ſpricht. 11. Haben Sie die Zeitung bekommen, die ich Ihnen aus der Stadt zugeſchickt habe? 12. Eſſen Sie gewöhnlich in der Stadt zu Mittag? 13. Ja wohl, ich gehe jeden Tag um neun Uhr fort und komme erſt um ſechs Uhr zurück. 14. Mancher hat angefangen, was er nicht vollendet hat. 15. Unſere Nachbarn müſſen wohl fort ſein, denn alle Laden ſind bei ihnen zu. 16. Kommen Sie doch herein; ich will Sie Herrn Braun vorſtellen. 17. Ich danke vielmals, aber ich bin ihm ſchon vorgeſtellt worden. 18. Bei

ſchönem Wetter gehen wir unſerm Vater entgegen, wenn er nach Hauſe kommt. 19. Findet die Trauung Ihres Vetters morgen oder übermorgen ſtatt? 20. Wollen Sie eine Taſſe Thee? Geben Sie mir lieber eine Taſſe Kaffee.

B. 1. The Reformation took place in the sixteenth century. 2. Have you closed all the doors and windows? 3. What is the matter with you? You look so pale. 4. I do not know; since I have come back, I do not feel at all well. 5. In the year 1865 all slaves in the United States were set free. 6. Have you opened the letters which have just arrived? 7. The sun sets earlier now, and the weather begins to grow colder. 8. Mary is learning a poem by heart; she has already repeated it ten times. 9. Have you found out at what o'clock the meeting takes place? 10. Do you know the gentleman who has just gone past? 11. When we were going past the church, the people were just coming out. 12. Pay attention to your work; you always leave out words, when you are copying. 13. Why have you closed the window? I was beginning to catch cold. 14. I have tried to learn this poem, but it is too hard for me, and I have given it up at last. 15. Goethe's 'Faust' has been translated into English by Bayard Taylor. 16. The marriage of my brother takes place to-morrow at eleven o'clock.

ORAL EXERCISE XXXVI.

1. In welchem Jahre wurden die Sklaven in den Vereinigten Staaten freigelassen? 2. Lernst du gern Gedichte auswendig? 3. Glauben Sie, dass unsere Nachbarn fort sind? 4. Kennen Sie den Mann, der am Hause vorbeigeht? 5. Wer hat diesen Brief aufgemacht? 6. Wie sprechen Sie das Wort G-o-e-t-h-e aus?

SUPPLEMENTARY LESSON E.

ON CERTAIN PREFIXES.

209. The Inseparable Prefix miß-.

The particle **miß-** is inseparable, but:

(*a*) With certain verbs it takes the **ge-** of the P. Part. and **zu** of the Infin. after it, as:

miß'handeln, act amiss miß'gehandelt miß'zuhandeln

With other verbs **miß-** either;

(*b*) Has **ge-** *before* it, as:

miß'han'deln, ill-treat P. Part. **gemiß'handelt** — or:

(*c*) Drops **ge-** altogether, as:

miß'fal'len, displease P. Part. miß'fal'len

Note. — Observe that the principal accent:

under (*a*) is on the *prefix* throughout;

" (*b*) is on the *prefix* in the P. Part. only, otherwise on the *verb*;

" (*c*) is on the *verb* throughout.

210. Use of the Prefixes her- and hin-.

1. The particles **her** ('hither') and **hin** ('hence') are prefixed to verbs, both simple and compound, to indicate the direction towards or from the speaker respectively, as:

Kommen Sie her, Come here (hither, to me).

Gehen Sie hin, Go (there) thither (hence, from me).

Hence, a person standing *up-stairs* would say to one *below:*

Kommen Sie **herauf**, Come up here (up-stairs);

but to one *up-stairs:*

Gehen Sie **hinunter**, Go down there (down-stairs).

2. The simple prepositional adverbs **ab-, an-, auf-, aus-, ein-, nieder-, über-, unter-, um-, vor-** are only used with verbs of motion, when the compound verb denotes motion in a general way, without specified direction, or when it has lost the idea of motion altogether.

3. (*a*) When, with **aus**- and **vor**-, also with **ab**- in the sense of 'down,' the place from which the motion proceeds is implied, but not specified, the direction to or from the speaker is further indicated by prefixing **her**- and **hin**- respectively.

(*b*) When, with the remaining prefixes (**an**-, **auf**-, etc.), the place to which the motion is directed is implied, but not specified, **her**- or **hin**- is similarly prefixed.

4. The following examples will serve to show more clearly the difference between verbs with the simple prefixes and those with **her**- or **hin**-:

(*a*) With Simple Prefix:	(*b*) With **her**- or **hin**-:
ausgehen, go out (for a walk, on business, etc.)	**hin**ausgehen, go out (from the house)
vorziehen, prefer	**her**vorziehen, draw forth
abſteigen, dismount	**her**abſteigen, descend
ankommen, arrive	**her**ankommen, come up to, approach
übergehen, desert [perish	**hin**übergehen, go over, across
untergehen, set (of the sun); sink;	**hin**untergehen, go down (stairs, etc.)

5. When the place from or to which respectively is specified, these words are used as *prepositions proper*, governing a substantive, but may be repeated as adverbial prefixes with **her** or **hin**, as:

Er ging **aus** dem Zimmer (**hinaus**).
Er zog den Brief **aus** der Taſche (**heraus**).

Notes. — 1. **Ab**-, meaning 'off, away,' does not require these prefixes, as:

abreiſen, **ab**gehen, to depart, go off; — but: **hin**abgehen, to go down.

2. **Ein**- is replaced, when the place to which is specified, by the preposition **in** with the accusative, as:

Er ritt **in** die Stadt **hinein**.

3. Sometimes other prepositions are used to indicate the place from or to which, in which case the compound prefix is used, as:

Ich werde **nach** Europa **hinüber**gehen, I shall go over to Europe.
Er iſt **vom** Dache **herab**gefallen, He has fallen down from the roof.

Other Prefixes.

211. Verbs derived from compound substantives are treated as simple Verbs, as:

Das Früh'ſtück, the breakfast, früh'ſtücken, to breakfast; ich **früh'**ſtückte, **ge**früh'ſtückt.

Die Hand'habe, the handle, hand'haben, to handle; **hand'habte, gehand'habt.**

Der Rat'ſchlag, the counsel, rat'ſchlagen, to take counsel; **rat'ſchlagte, gerat'ſchlagt.**

NOTE.— Observe that all such verbs are **weak**, as in the case of the last two of the above verbs, which are not compounds of haben or ſchlagen respectively.

212. Adjective Prefixes are frequently inseparable, but retain the principal accent and require **ge-** *before* them in the P. Part., as:

weiß'ſagen, to prophesy, **weiß'ſagte, geweißſagt**; **recht'fertigen**, to justify, **recht'fertigte, gerecht'fertigt**; **lieb'koſen**, to caress, **lieb'koſte, geliеb'koſt**;

also the substantive compound:

luſt'wandeln, to walk for pleasure, **geluſt'wandelt.**

213. Some verbs with Separable + Inseparable Prefix are used only in constructions which do not require the separation of the former particle from the verb; thus we may say:

Chriſtus iſt **auferſtanden**, Christ is risen from the dead, — or:

Als Chriſtus **auferſtand**, — but instead of:

Er **erſtand auf**, — we say: Er ſtand **von den Toten** auf.

Similarly with **auserleſen, vorenthalten**, and a few others.

EXERCISE E.

1. Have you answered all the letters? I have answered all except this one. 2. I have asked my sister, if (whether) she is ready, but she has not answered. 3. She has gone up-stairs; perhaps she has not heard. 4. Let her come down, for I cannot wait for her any longer. 5. I should like to speak to your father; is he at home? 6. Yes, he is up-stairs in his study: please go up. 7. Some one is shouting in the street; go out and see what is the matter. 8. Are you going out to-day? I am going out, as soon as I have breakfasted. 9. George, go out of the room; you have been behaving badly. 10. Many people say that Mr. B. has acted amiss in this affair, but he has justified himself. 11. We started so early yesterday morning that we had no time to breakfast. 12. Several people were standing on (auf) the street before a burning house, and were looking up. 13. A poor woman with her child was on the point of jumping down. 14. At last a fireman went up and saved both [of them]. 15. The boy has abused his dog, and therefore he was punished by his father. 16. The dog was howling in the street, but some one went out and brought him in.

LESSON XXXVII.

REFLEXIVE AND IMPERSONAL VERBS.

Reflexive Verbs.

214. 1. All Reflexive Verbs are conjugated with **haben**. For an example of their conjugation see § 41, and observe the use of **ſich** as special reflexive of the third person for all genders and both numbers.

2. The reflexive pronoun is introduced as near to the beginning of the sentence as possible, sometimes even before the subject, when the latter follows the verb and is not a pronoun, and especially if the subject has adjuncts, as:

Geſtern hat **ſich** mein lieber, alter Vater beſchädigt,
My dear old father injured himself yesterday.

215. 1. Any transitive verb may be used reflexively, when the action of the verb is on the subject; but Reflexive Verbs proper are:

(*a*) Those which are used *only* reflexively, especially such as indicate a *state of mind* or *feeling*, as:

ſich befleißen (gen.), } apply
„ **befleißigen**, } one's self
„ **begnügen** (mit), be contented
„ **beſinnen** (gen.), recollect
„ **erbarmen** (gen.), take pity, have mercy
„ **erkälten**, catch cold
ſich grämen (gen., or **über** + acc.), grieve
„ **ſchämen** (gen., or **über** + acc.), be ashamed
„ **ſehnen** (nach), long (for), yearn
„ **wundern** (über + acc.), be astonished

(*b*) Those which, though used also as transitive verbs, have a *special meaning* as reflexives, as:

freuen (impers.), rejoice (tr.), make glad
ſich freuen (gen., or **über** + acc.), rejoice (intr.), be glad

fürchten, fear	**ſich** fürchten (vor + dat.), be afraid
hüten, protect	„ hüten (vor + dat.), beware
ſtellen, place	„ ſtellen, pretend
verlaſſen, leave	„ verlaſſen (auf + acc.), rely (upon)
zutragen, carry (to)	„ zutragen (impers.) happen, occur

2. Transitive verbs are often used in English with the direct (personal) object unexpressed, e. g., 'change, turn, open, spread,' etc.; such verbs have the object expressed in German as the reflexive pronoun, e. g.:

The weather has **changed**, Das Wetter hat **ſich** geändert.

The wind is **turning** to the east, Der Wind dreht **ſich** nach Oſten.

The door **opened**, Die Thür öffnete **ſich**.

The disease was **spreading** over the whole town, Die Krankheit verbreitete **ſich** über die ganze Stadt.

3. For the use of Reflexive Verbs for the Passive Voice, see § 114, (*b*).

4. From what has been said above, it will be evident that Reflexive Verbs are used to a much greater extent in German than in English, which indeed has no Reflexive Verbs in the strict sense defined above.

216. Government of Reflexive Verbs.

1. All *true* reflexives take the reflexive (*personal*) object in the **accusative**; the remote object (the **thing**) is in the **genitive**, or is governed by a preposition, as shown in the examples given in § 215, 1, above, thus:

Ich ſchäme **mich** meines Betragens, I am ashamed **of my behaviour.**

Erinnerſt du **dich deſſen** nicht? Do you not remember **it?**

Wir ſehnten **uns nach** unſerer Mutter, We longed **for** our mother.

Ich erbarmte **mich ſeiner**, I had pity **upon** him.

2. Some spurious reflexives have the reflexive (*personal*) object in the **dative**, and the **thing** in the **accusative**, as:

Ich kann **mir** das denken, I can imagine that.

Ich bildete **mir** dies nur ein, I only imagined this.

NOTE. — Sich ſchmeicheln takes the **dative** of the person with a *clause* as direct object, thus:

Ich ſchmeichelte **mir, daß** ich es thun könnte, I flattered **myself, that** I could do it.

217. IMPERSONAL VERBS.

Impersonal Verbs Proper are those used only in the third person sing., with the neuter pronoun **es** as subject.

1. Those expressing **Natural phenomena**, as:

es ſchneit, **it** snows	es blitzt, **it** lightens
es regnet, **it** rains	es donnert, **it** thunders, etc.

also with the verbs ſein or werden, as:

Es iſt (wird) **kalt**, warm, dunkel, etc., **It** is (grows) **cold**, warm, dark, etc.

Es iſt (ſchlägt) fünf, **It** is (strikes) five.

2. Those expressing bodily or mental affections

(*a*) with *accusative* of person.

Es friert **mich**, I am (feel) cold.

Es verlangt mich (nach), I am (feel) desirous.

Es freut mich, I am glad (it rejoices me).

Es wundert mich, I wonder (it makes me wonder).

Es jammert mich (gen.), I pity (it moves me to pity).

Es reut mich (gen.), I repent (it rues me), etc.

(*b*) with *Dative* of person.

Es dünkt (deucht) **mir**, Methinks.

Es gelingt mir, I succeed, etc.

(*c*) with sein or werden (*Dative* of person), as:

Es ist (wird) **mir** übel, wohl (zu Mute), I feel ill, well (it is ill, well to or with me in spirit).

Es ist **mir** lieb, leid, I am glad, sorry (it is dear, sad to me).

NOTE. — In this class of verbs the subject **es** is omitted when the personal object precedes the verb, as: mich wundert, etc.

3. Verbs used impersonally with a special sense, as:

Wie **steht's** mit Ihnen? How fares it with you?

Es **geht** mir gut, I am well.

Was **giebt's**? What is the matter?

Was **fehlt** Ihnen? What ails you?

Also sein and werden, as under 1 and 2, (*c*), above.

4. For the impersonal use of the passive voice, see § 113.

NOTE. — Of the above classes, those alone are strictly impersonal which admit only of es as subject; others, which are used with other subjects, but only in the third person (sometimes plur. as well as sing.) are properly called unipersonal.

218. CONJUGATION OF IMPERSONAL VERBS.

1. Impersonal Verbs form their various tenses, moods, etc., in precisely the same way as other verbs, but are used only in the third person singular.

2. Some are weak, others strong, as:

frieren, to freeze, Impf. es **fror**, ge**froren**; schneien, to snow, Impf. es schneite, P. Part. geschneit.

3. Most of them are conjugated with haben, as:

Es **hat** geſchneit, gefroren, etc.;

but some take ſein, e. g., gelingen, glücken, to succeed; geſchehen, to happen (compare § 53), as:

Es **iſt** geſchehen, It has happened.

219. GOVERNMENT OF IMPERSONAL VERBS.

1. Impersonal Verbs expressing bodily or mental affections, etc., take the immediate (personal) object (= Engl. subj.) in the *Dative* or *Accusative* (see § 217, 2, 3, above).

2. Those under § 217, 2, (*a*), denoting a *mental* affection may be used

(*a*) impersonally, with the *thing* (*cause* of emotion) in the genitive, as:

Es jammert **mich ſeiner**, I pity him (it moves me to pity of him).

Es reuet **mich** meiner Sünden, I repent (it makes me repent) of my sins.

(*b*) personally, with the thing (cause of emotion) as subject, as:

Er jammert **mich**, I pity him (he moves me to pity).

Meine Sünden reuen (pl.) **mich**, I repent of my sins (my sins move me to repentance).

REMARK. — Observe that the English *subject* is *object* in German, the verb remaining always in the *third* person, as:

Es freut **mich**, I am glad.

Es freut **dich**, Thou art glad.

Es freut **ihn**, He is glad.

Es freut **uns**, We are glad, etc.

220. THERE IS, THERE ARE, etc.

1. The English **there is, there are** (*was, were, has been, will be*, etc.) must be rendered in German by **es gibt** (gab, hat ... gegeben, wird ... geben, etc.), when an *indefinite* existence is expressed, or in *general* assertions, as:

Es gab früher viele Leute, welche glaubten, etc., **There were** formerly many people who believed, etc.

Es wird dieses Jahr viele Pflaumen **geben, There will be** a great many plums this year.

REMARKS. — 1. The English *subject* is **object** of giebt in German, and is in the *accusative*, as:

Es giebt **einen** Roman (acc.) von Dickens, welcher „Nikolas Nickleby" heißt, **There is a novel** (nom.) by Dickens, called 'Nicholas Nickleby.'

2. The verb (geben) is always in the *singular* in German, being a true impersonal; and es is never omitted, as:

Dieses Jahr giebt **es**, etc.

2. **There is**, etc., must be rendered into German by **es ist, es sind** (es war, etc.), when *definite* existence is expressed, or in *particular* assertions, as:

Es ist ein Vogel in diesem Bauer, **There is** a bird in this cage.

Es sind zwei Vögel auf diesem Baume, **There are** two birds on this tree.

REMARKS. — 1. The English subject is also subject (*nominative*) in German, as:

Es ist **ein Roman** (nom.) von Dickens auf dem Tisch, **There is a novel** (nom.) by Dickens on the table.

2. The verb (sein) agrees in number with the *real* subject, and es is omitted, unless it begins the sentence, as:

Ein Vogel **iſt** in dieſem Bauer, There is a bird, etc.

NOTE. — This shows that es is the *indefinite* es, replacing the real subject (see § 39, 1), and *not* the impersonal es.

VOCABULARY.

to dress (trans.), an'kleiden	lightning, der Blitz
dress (intr.), ſich ankleiden	thirst, der Durſt
resolve, decide, ſich entſchließen	lemonade, die Limonade
explain, erklären	caterpillar, die Raupe
be mistaken, ſich irren	sleighing, die Schlittenbahn
turn around (intr.), ſich um'drehen	way, mode, die Weiſe
	successful(ly), glücklich
get married, marry (intr.), ſich verhei'raten	now-a-days, heutzutage
	long (adv.), längſt
marry (trans.), hei'raten	past, vorbei
hurt (wound), verletzen	in all ages, zu allen Zeiten

Idioms: **1. I feel well, Mir iſt wohl zu Mute.**

2. He has married the daughter of the doctor, Er hat ſich mit der Tochter des Doktors verheiratet.

3. In this way, Auf dieſe Weiſe (acc.).

4. I was hungry (thirsty), Ich hatte Hunger (Durſt).

EXERCISE XXXVII.

A. 1. Es donnert, und ich fürchte, es wird bald regnen. 2. Um wie viel Uhr wird bei Ihnen zu Mittag gegeſſen? 3. Es hat während der Nacht gefroren und heute werden wir Schlittſchuh laufen können. 4. Weshalb donnert es, wenn es blitzt? Das läßt ſich nicht leicht erklären. 5. Ich habe meinen beſten Hund verloren; ſo ein Hund findet ſich nicht leicht wieder. 6. Es freut uns ſehr, daß Heinrich ſein Examen glücklich beſtanden hat. 7. Ich fürchte, es wird dieſes Jahr nur wenige Äpfel geben; die Raupen haben faſt alle Blätter von den Bäumen gefreſſen. 8. Guten Morgen, Herr Braun; giebt's heute etwas Neues? 9. Mein älteſter Bruder hat ſich verheiratet. 10. Mit wem hat er ſich verheiratet? 11. Mit der Tochter des Doktor B.; erinnern Sie ſich

nicht ihrer? 12. Schmeicheln Sie sich, daß es Ihnen auf diese Weise gelingen wird? Sie haben nicht Geld genug. 13. Ich habe viel mehr Geld als ich brauche; ich würde mich mit der Hälfte begnügt haben. 14. Es würde mich gar nicht wundern, wenn wir noch heute Regen bekämen. 15. Als ich an dem Hause vorüberging, öffnete sich die Thür, und ein alter Herr kam heraus. 16. Dich friert; du solltest deinen Überzieher anziehen. 17. Es waren noch viele Leute auf der Straße, als ich nach Hause kam. 18. Es wird dich bald deines Betragens reuen, wenn ich mich nicht irre; du solltest dich schämen. 19. Es giebt heutzutage Thoren, und leider hat es zu allen Zeiten Thoren gegeben. 20. Sie können sich denken, daß es mich wunderte, als ich mich umdrehte und meinen längst verlornen Freund vor mir sah.

B. 1. Are you afraid when it lightens? 2. Yes, I am always afraid of the lightning. 3. What is the matter with you? You do not look at all well. 4. I do not know what ails me; I do not feel well, perhaps I have caught cold. 5. It has been snowing the whole night, and to-day we have fine sleighing. 6. Have you hurt yourself? Yes, I have cut my finger. 7. There are two gentlemen at the door; do you know them? 8. I know one of them, but I cannot remember his name. 9. I must dress immediately, or else I shall not be ready at seven o'clock. 10. If you do not dress more warmly, you will catch cold. 11. I am thirsty; please give me a glass of lemonade. 12. I am glad that the thunder-storm is past; the lightning is dangerous. 13. Do you remember whether he was here on the 15th or on the 16th of January? 14. Have you decided to leave (the) town, and to pass the summer in the country? 15. I hear somebody shouting in the street; what is the matter?

ORAL EXERCISE XXXVII.

1. Sollte man sich vor dem Donner fürchten? 2. Wie lange wohnen Sie schon in dieser Strasze? 3. Stehen Sie

gewöhnlich früh des Morgens auf? 4. Weshalb hast du die Fenster zugemacht? 5. Wie gefällt es Ihnen in diesem Hause? 6. Wird es dieses Jahr viele Pflaumen geben?

LESSON XXXVIII.

PREPOSITIONS.

221. The Prepositions with the **Dative** only have been given in §§ 46, 51; those with the **Accusative** only in §§ 34, 50; those with Dative **or** Accusative in § 65.

Prepositions with the Genitive.

222. The Prepositions governing the **Genitive** are chiefly nouns used adverbially. The following lines contain the principal ones, and will aid the memory:

Unweit, mittelſt, kraft und **während,**
Laut, vermöge, ungeachtet,
Oberhalb und **unterhalb,**
Innerhalb und **außerhalb,**
Diesſeit, jenſeit, halben, wegen,
Statt, auch **längs, zufolge, trotz**
Stehen mit dem **Genitiv**;
Doch iſt hier nicht zu vergeſſen,
Daß bei dieſen letzten drei
Auch der **Dativ** richtig ſei.

223. The meanings of these prepositions are as follows:

1. **halb(en),** halber, } for the sake of, on account of
2. **wegen,** }

Remarks. — 1. Halb(en), halber, always *follows* the case; wegen may follow or precede a noun, but always follows a *personal* pronoun.

2. **Halb** is used only in **deshalb** and **weshalb**; **halben** after the *personal pronouns* or substantives with a determinative or attributive word; **halber** after a substantive used alone, as:

Des Friedens **halben**, For the sake of peace.
Beispiels **halber**, For the sake of example.

3. The personal pronouns have a special form ending in **-t** before **halben** and **wegen**, thus:

meinethalben, for my sake
unsertwegen, on our account, etc.

3. **außerhalb**, (on the) outside of
4. **innerhalb**, (on the) inside of
5. **oberhalb**, above
6. **unterhalb**, below

Examples:

Unser Garten ist **außerhalb** (**innerhalb**) **der** Stadt,
Our garden is **outside** (**inside**) **of** the town.

Montreal liegt **unterhalb des** Ontario-Sees,
Montreal lies **below** Lake Ontario.

Remark. — Innerhalb in expressions of time may be followed by the *dative* of a substantive without article, as:

Innerhalb zwei Tagen, Within two days.

7. **kraft**, by virtue of
8. **laut**, in accordance with
9. **(ver)mittelst**, } by means
10. **vermöge**, } of
11. **zufolge**, in consequence of

Remark. — Zufolge governs the *genitive* when it precedes its case, but the *dative* when it follows, as:

Er that dies zufolge meines Befehls, or meinem Befehle zufolge, He did this in consequence of my order.

12. **diesseit**, on this side
13. **jenseit**, on that (the other) side

REMARK. — Diesſeit and jenſeit are *prepositions* (governing a noun); diesſeits and jenſeits *adverbs* (without a case), as:

Ich wohne **diesſeit**, er **jenſeit** des Fluſſes, I live on this, he on that (the other) side of the river, — but:

Wir wohnen beide nahe am Fluſſe; ich diesſeits, er jenſeits, We both live near the river; I on this, he on the other side.

14. **ſtatt, anſtatt**, instead of

REMARK. — Anſtatt is sometimes divided, thus:

Anſtatt meines Bruders, Instead of my brother, — or:

An meines Bruders **Statt**, (In my brother's stead).

15. **ungeachtet**, notwithstanding

16. **trotz**, in spite of

REMARKS. — 1. Ungeachtet may precede or follow its case.

2. Trotz governs the *dative* in the phrase **trotzdem**, 'in spite of that,' and with the meaning of 'as well as,' as:

Dieſer Knabe reitet trotz **einem** Manne, This boy rides as well as a man.

17. **während**, during

18. **längs**, 19. **entlang**, } along

REMARKS. — 1. Längs also governs the *dative*, and always *precedes* its case, as:

Längs **des** Ufers, or **dem** Ufer, Along the shore.

2. Entlang governs the *genitive* when it precedes its case: but it more commonly *follows* its case, and governs the *accusative*, as:

Er ging **den** Fluß **entlang**, He went along the river.

To these may be added:

20. **angeſichts**, in presence of

21. **inmitten**, in the midst of

22. **um ... willen**, for the sake of

REMARKS. — 1. Um . . . willen takes the case between um and willen, as:

Um **meines Vaters** willen, For my father's sake.

2. The *personal pronouns* have the same forms with um . . . willen as with halben and wegen, thus:

um ſeinetwillen, for his sake
um Ihretwillen, for your sake, etc.

23. **unfern,** } not far from
24. **unweit,** }

224. GENERAL REMARKS ON PREPOSITIONS.

1. An Adverb of direction is frequently placed after an accusative, like a preposition after its case, as:

Den Berg **hinauf,** Up the mountain.

2. (*a*) Some prepositions may govern a substantive clause with **daß**, as:

Ehre Vater und Mutter, **auf daß** es dir wohl gehe,
Honour father and mother, that it may go well with thee.

NOTES. — 1. Such are auf, außer (also used with **wenn**), bis, ohne, (an)ſtatt, ungeachtet, während.

2. Bis, ungeachtet, während are also used as *conjunctions* without daß.

(*b*) Um, ohne, and (an)ſtatt may govern an infinitive with zu, as:

Er kam geſtern, **um** dich **zu beſuchen,**
He came yesterday (in order) to visit you.

Ich kann nie daran denken, **ohne zu lachen,**
I can never think of that without laughing.

Dieſer Mann ſollte arbeiten, **anſtatt zu betteln,**
This man ought to work, instead of begging.

REMARK. — But if the subject of the infinitive clause is different from that of the sentence on which it depends, **daß** must be used, as:

Ich konnte nicht vorbeigehen, **ohne daß er** mich **ſah** (not ohne mich zu ſehen), I could not pass by **without his seeing** me.

3. Prepositions may govern adverbs, as: nach oben, upward; nach hinten, to the rear; auf immer, forever; von fern, from afar; and the compounds with da(r)– and wo(r)– (see § 38, Rem. 5; 83, 3; 96, 7).

4. A substantive governed by a preposition may be followed by an adverb, for nearer definition, as:

Nach einer Richtung **hin**, In one direction.

Von allen Seiten **her**, From all sides.

Er ritt **hinter** dem Feinde **her**, He rode **in pursuit of** the foe.

Um das Haus **herum**, Round (about) the house.

Von nun **an**, From hence**forth**.

Von Jugend **auf**, **From** youth **up**.

VOCABULARY.

to observe, remark, bemerken
elect, erwählen (+ zu)
permit, allow, erlauben
inquire (about), ſich erkundigen (+ nach)
go about, around, herum'gehen
ring (a small bell), klingeln
go for a walk, ſpazieren gehen
divide, teilen
let (of houses, etc.), vermieten
go away, weggehen
the opposite, das Ge'genteil
custom, habit, die Gewohnheit
microscope, das Mikroſkop'
(the) little Red (Riding) Hood, das Rotkäppchen
umbrella, der Regenſchirm
drop, der Tropfen
drunkard, der Trunkenbold
will, testament, das Teſtament'
stairs, staircase, die Treppe
deceased, der (die) Verſtorbene
warning, die Warnung
living, leben'dig
loose, slack, los
in time, punctually, recht'zeitig
except that, außer daß

Idioms: 1. For all I care, Meinetwegen.

2. This house is for sale, Dieſes Haus iſt zu verkaufen (lit., to be sold).

3. He was elected mayor, Er wurde zum Bürgermeiſter erwählt (lit., to or for a, etc.. — zum = zu einem).

4. I have been here for a week, Ich bin ſeit acht Tagen hier.

5. To laugh (at), make sport (of), Sich luſtig machen (über + acc.).

6. What is the matter? Was iſt los?

7. There is a ring (at the door, etc.), Es klingelt.

EXERCISE XXXVIII.

A. 1. Das Haus, welches zu verkaufen iſt, ſteht außerhalb der Stadt, nicht weit vom See. 2. Wenn es nur innerhalb der Stadt ſtünde, ſo würde ich gern tauſend Thaler mehr dafür geben. 3. Gefällt es Ihnen beſſer diesſeit des Fluſſes zu wohnen, oder jenſeits? 4. Trotz des Sturmes kam das Schiff rechtzeitig in New York an. 5. Dieſer Trunkenbold hat um ſeiner Familie willen das Trinken aufgegeben. 6. Er fürchtete, daß ſeine Söhne die ſchlechte Gewohnheit lernen möchten. 7. Der hungrige Wolf ging mehrmals um das Haus und ſuchte Rotkäppchen. 8. Vermittelſt ſeines großen Einfluſſes bei den Reichen hat ſich Herr A. zum Bürgermeiſter erwählen laſſen. 9. Seit wann wohnen Sie in dieſer Straße? Seit drei Jahren. 10. Um meinetwillen will er nicht mit mir gehen; vielleicht würde er um Ihretwillen gehen. 11. Iſt Georg oben? Ja, er iſt ſoeben die Treppe hinaufgegangen. 12. Laſſen Sie uns lieber nach oben gehen; es wird uns beſſer gefallen oben zu ſitzen als unten. 13. Es hat vor einigen Minuten geklingelt; wer war da? 14. Es war jemand, der ſich erkundigen wollte, ob dieſes Haus zu vermieten ſei. 15. Dem Teſtamente zufolge wurde das Eigentum unter die beiden Söhne des Verſtorbenen geteilt. 16. Meinetwegen mag er gehen, ſobald es ihm gefällt. 17. Außer daß Georg ein wenig größer iſt, bemerkt man gar keinen Unterſchied zwiſchen den beiden Brüdern. 18. Herr D. iſt einer meiner beſten Freunde; er geht faſt nie am Hauſe vorüber ohne hereinzukommen. 19. Unweit der Stadt B. ſteht das Haus, worin ich geboren bin.

B. 1. I shall take my stick instead of my umbrella; I am not afraid of the rain. 2. Have you been taking a walk along the shore? Yes, in spite of the bad road. 3. Not far from the school I let my new knife fall into the snow, and could not find it again. 4. Do you know what was the matter? I heard a great noise down-stairs. 5. I do not know (it), but I shall inquire. 6. Were you allowed (perf.) to stay? No, we had (perf.) on the contrary to go away again immediately. 7. We have been here since yesterday, and we must wait three days more for the ship. 8. One part of the city lies on this side, the other on that side of a broad river. 9. I do not think much of this gentleman; he would do anything for money. 10. By means of a microscope living animals can be seen in a drop of water. 11. In consequence of this bad news we must be back inside of a week. 12. Should we make sport of other people? 13. No, that is a bad habit. 14. Yonder is the river; on this side stands my house, on that side his. 15. Notwithstanding the warning of his father the youth often went on the water in bad weather. 16. Instead of taking the large boat he always took the small one.

ORAL EXERCISE XXXVIII.

1. Weshalb hat der Trunkenbold das Trinken aufgegeben? 2. Auf welche Weise hat sich Herr B. zum Bürgermeister erwählen lassen? 3. Haben Sie klingeln hören? Wer war da? 4. Wo sind Sie geboren, und in welchem Jahre? 5. Fürchten Sie, es könnte regnen? 6. Kannst du mir sagen, was auf der Strasze los war?

LESSON XXXIX.

PREPOSITIONS (continued):—IDIOMS.

225. Prepositions vary more, perhaps, as to idiomatic usage in different languages than any other part of speech. Their proper use must be acquired chiefly by practice and memory, but below are given the German equivalents, in various idioms, of the most commonly occurring English Prepositions, more particularly in cases where the usage of the two languages differs.

226. About.

(*a*) In the sense of 'around' = **um**, as:

Sie verſammelten ſich **um** ihn, They assembled **about** him.

(*b*) Of **time** = **ungefähr um** (um alone = 'at'; see § 227, (*b*) 1, below), as:

Ungefähr um zehn Uhr, **About** ten o'clock.
Ungefähr um Weihnachten, **About** Christmas.

(*c*) In the sense of 'nearly' (of *number*) = **etwa, ungefähr** (adverbs), as:

Er hat **etwa** (**ungefähr**) tauſend Thaler übrig, He has **about** a thousand dollars left.

(*d*) In the sense of 'with,' 'about' (the *person*) = **bei**, as:

Ich habe kein Geld **bei** mir, I have no money **with** me, **about** me.

227. At.

(*a*) Of *locality*:

1. = **in**, when the action, etc., is *within* a building, etc., as:

In der Schule, **in** der Kirche, **im** Theater, **im** Konzert,
At school, **at** church, **at** the theatre, **at** the concert.

2. = **an**, when the action, etc., is *adjacent* to the object of the preposition, as:

Am Fenſter, **an** der Thür, **am** Tiſche, At the window, at the door, at *the* table (but **bei Tiſche**, at table).

3. = **auf**, when the action is *on the surface*, or on an *elevation*, as:

Auf dem Markte, **auf** dem Balle, **auf** der Poſt, **auf** der Univerſität, **auf** dem Schloſſe, At market, at the ball, at the post-office, at the university, at the castle.

4. = **zu** or **in** with proper names of *towns* (also with Haus, 'home'), etc., as:

Zu (in) Paris, At Paris.
Zu Hauſe, At home.

(*b*) Of *time:*

1. = **um** (most usually), as:

Um halb vier Uhr, At half past 3 o'clock.
Um Oſtern, At Easter.

2. = **zu**, with Zeit and Stunde, as:

Zur rechten Zeit, At the right time.
Zu dieſer Stunde, At this hour.

NOTE. — Um with the acc. is also admissible with these words.

3. = **bei**, as:

Bei Tagesanbruch, At day-break.

(*c*) Of *price* = **zu**, as:

Dieſer Zucker wird **zu** zwei Thalern das Pfund verkauft, This sugar is sold **at** two dollars a pound.

228. **By.**

(*a*) Expressing the *personal agent* after the passive voice = **von**, as:

Das Kind wird **von** ſeinen Eltern geliebt, The child is loved **by** its parents.

(*b*) Of a part of the body, etc. = **bei**, as:

Er nahm das Kind **bei** der Hand, He took the child **by** the hand.

(*c*) Unclassified:

Bei Licht, **By** candle-light.
Bei Nacht, **By** night.
Mit Gewalt, **By** force.
Mit der Eisenbahn, **By** the railway.
Zu Land, **zu** Wasser, **By** land. **by** water.

229. **For.**

Rendered usually by **für**, but:

(*a*) Of **purpose** = **zu** (*never* für), as:

Dies ist schönes Wetter **zum** Spazierengehen, This is fine weather **for** taking a walk.

Er reist **zum** Vergnügen, He travels **for** pleasure.

(*b*) Of **time**:

1. *Past* = **seit**, as:

Seit einem Monate, **For** a month (past).

2. *Future* = **auf** + acc., as:

Ich werde **auf** einige Tage verreisen, I shall go away **for** a few days.

3. *Duration* = acc. without preposition, as:

Er war **einen** ganzen Monat hier, He was here **for** a whole month.

(*c*) Of *cause* = **aus**, as:

Er that es **aus** Furcht, He did it **for** fear.

(*d*) Unclassified:

Für's Erste, **For** the present.
Zum ersten (zweiten, etc.) Mal, **For** the first (second, etc.) time.

Zum Geburtstage, **zu** Weihnachten, For (as) a birthday-present, for a Christmas-present.

230. In.

Rendered usually by **in**, but:

(*a*) = **auf**, as:

In the street, **Auf** der Straße.
In the country, **Auf** dem Lande.
In this manner, **Auf** dieſe Weiſe (acc.).
In German, **Auf** Deutſch.

(*b*) = **unter**, as:

Unter Eliſabeths Regierung, In Elizabeth's reign.

(*c*) = **zu**, as:

Zu Wagen, In a carriage.

231. Of.

(*a*) By the genitive without preposition, to express the relation of the *possessive* case, as:

Der Wille unſers Vaters, The will of our father (i. e., our father's will).

(*b*) = **von**:

1. After *verbs*, etc., as:

Ich ſpreche **von** ihm, I speak of him.

2. Between *titles* and names of *places*, as:

Die Königin **von** England, The Queen of England.

3. After *numerals* and other *partitives*, as:

Einer **von** meinen Freunden, One of my friends.
Der älteſte **von** meinen Brüdern, The eldest of my brothers.

4. Replacing a genitive *plural* without article, as:

Er iſt der Vater **von** vier Knaben, He is the father of four boys.

5. To avoid a succession of several genitives, as:

Die Frau vom Vetter meines Onkels, The wife of my uncle's cousin.

(*c*) Of **cause**, when the cause is a *disease* = **an**, as:

Er ſtarb **an** der Cholera, He died **of** the cholera.

(*d*) Of *place*, with names of *battles:*

1. = **bei**, if named after a *town*, *village*, etc., as:

Die Schlacht **bei** Leipzig, The battle **of** Leipzig.

2. = **an**, if named after a *river*, as:

Die Schlacht **an** der Alma, The battle **of** the Alma.

(*e*) Unclassified:

Mangel **an** Geld, Want **of** money.
Liebe **zum** Gelde, Love **of** money.
Was ſoll **aus** mir werden? What is to become **of** me?

232. **On.**

Rendered usually by **auf**, but:

(*a*) Of *time* or *date* = **Acc.** without preposition, or = **an** + Dat., as:

Den (or **am**) zwölften Januar, **On** the twelfth of January.

(*b*) Of *modes of progression* = **zu**, as:

Zu Pferde, On horseback.
Zu Fuße, On foot.

(*c*) Of *situation*, **on** a river, sea, etc.:

1. When it means on the *water* = **auf**, as:

Viele Schiffe fahren **auf** dem Hudſon, Many ships ply **on** the Hudson; — but:

2. When it means on the *shore* = **an**, as:

Hamilton liegt **am** Ontario-See, Hamilton lies **on** Lake Ontario.

(*d*) Unclassified:

Mit Fleiß, On purpose.
Bei dieſer Gelegenheit, On this occasion.
Unter (or **mit**) dieſer Bedingung, On this condition.
Im Begriffe, On the point of.

233. **To.**

(*a*) When replacing the indirect object = **Dative** without preposition, as:

Ich habe meiner Schweſter ein Buch gegeben, I have given a book to my sister (i. e., my sister a book).

(*b*) Of motion or direction to **persons** = **zu**, as:

Ich will zu meinem Vater gehen, I will go to my father.

(*c*) Of motion to **places**:

1. With proper names of countries, towns, etc. = **nach**, as:

Ich gehe **nach** Paris, **nach** Deutſchland, I am going to Paris, to Germany.

2. With common nouns (i) = **in**, **an**, or **auf** respectively, with the *Accusative*, in various idioms, where these prepositions with the Dative = 'at' (see § 227, (*a*), above), as:

In die Schule, Kirche, **ins** Theater, Konzert u. ſ. w. gehen,
To go to school, church, the theatre, concert, etc.

Ans Fenſter, **an die** Thür gehen,
To go to the window, door.

Auf den Markt, Ball, **auf die** Poſt, Univerſität gehen,
To go to market, to the ball, post-office, university.

(ii) Frequently = **zu**, which may usually replace the prepositions in the above idioms also, as:

Er iſt **zur** Stadt, **zur** Kirche u. ſ. w. gegangen,
He has gone to town, church, etc.

234. With.

Observe the following Idioms:

Von ganzem Herzen, **With** all my heart.

Er zittert **vor** Kälte, He trembles **with** cold (*cause*).

Das ist **bei** uns nicht Sitte, That is not the custom **with** (= *among*) us.

In dieser Absicht, **With** this intention.

Remark. — For the proper use of prepositions after particular adjectives and verbs, see Less. XLIX.

Vocabulary.

to intend, gedenken	account, bill, die Rechnung
be enough, suffice, hinreichen	dressing-gown, der Schlafrock*
bring with (one), mit'bringen	evil, das Übel
sign, unterzeich'nen	relative, der Verwandte
bring back, zurückbringen	treaty, der Vertrag*
excursion, pleasure-trip, der Ausflug*	root, die Wurzel
	this evening, heute Abend
harvesting, das Ernten	thorough(-ly), gründlich
favour, der Gefallen	fortunately, glücklicherweise
Louis, Lewis, Ludwig	possible, möglich
measles, die Masern (f. pl.)	absent (on a journey), verreist

Idioms: 1. **To be accustomed. Die Gewohnheit haben** (+ infin. with zu).

2. **In the middle of summer, Mitten im Sommer.**

3. **To take a pleasure-trip** (**excursion**), **Einen Ausflug machen.**

4. **It looks like rain, Es sieht nach Regen aus.**

5. **Two or three, Zwei bis drei.**

6. **He sprang out of the window, Er sprang zum Fenster hinaus** (point of ingress or exit denoted by **zu** + dat.).

Note: It is customary, in referring to the relatives of the person addressed, to prefix Herr, Frau or Fräulein, as the case may be, but this is not done in speaking of one's own relatives, thus:

Wie geht es **Ihrem Herrn** Vater? — But: **Mein** Vater ist ganz wohl.

EXERCISE XXXIX.

A. 1. Auf welche Weise haben Sie die französische Sprache so gut gelernt? 2. Ich habe zuerst die Grammatik gründlich studiert, und dann habe ich anderthalb Jahre in Frankreich zugebracht. 3. Wie lange bleibt Ihr Herr Vater noch fort? Er kommt erst übermorgen nach Hause. 4. Was gedenkst du heute Abend zu thun? Ich weiß es nicht; für's Erste muß ich meine Aufgaben machen. 5. Wo hast du den hübschen Schlafrock bekommen? Ich habe ihn zum Geburtstage bekommen, und ziehe ihn heute zum ersten Male an. 6. Es klingelt; wer ist an der Thür? Es ist jemand, der den Herrn sprechen will, aber er ist bei Tische und läßt sich nicht stören. 7. Du sitzest am Fenster; sieh doch einmal zum Fenster hinaus, und du wirst ihn vielleicht sehen können. 8. Zu welcher Zeit lebte Molière? Er lebte unter der Regierung Ludwig XIV. von Frankreich. 9. Ist es möglich, zu derselben Zeit von einer Sache zu sprechen und an eine andere zu denken? 10. Die Liebe zum Gelde ist die Wurzel alles Übels. 11. Unser Haus steht am St. Lorenz-Fluß, und von den Fenstern sieht man die Dampfschiffe vorbeigehen. 12. Willst du mir deine Grammatik leihen? Ja wohl, mit der Bedingung, daß du dieselbe vor morgen zurückbringst. 13. Ist Herr B. zu Hause? Nein, er ist auf drei Wochen verreist. 14. Bei Tagesanbruch singen die Vögel am schönsten. 15. Alle Fenster und Thüren werden des Nachts aus Furcht vor Dieben bei uns zugeschlossen. 16. Weshalb sind die Kinder nicht zur Schule gegangen? 17. Es sind mehrere Kinder in der Schule, die an den Masern gelitten haben, und die Mutter fürchtet sich vor dieser Krankheit. 18. Reisen Sie lieber zu Land oder zu Wasser? Im Sommer ziehe ich es vor, zu Wasser zu reisen. 19. Mein Vater hatte die Gewohnheit, uns Kinder um sich zu versammeln und uns Geschichten zu erzählen. 20. Mitten im Sommer, und dann wieder um Weihnachten, gehe ich aufs Land, um meine Verwandten zu besuchen. 21. Vorigen Sommer blieb ich mehr als vierzehn Tage bei denselben.

B. 1. Good morning; you have come just at the right time; I was on the point of going to your house (say: going to you). 2. There is a ring at the door; go to the door and see who is there. 3. When you go to the market, do not forget to go to the post also. 4. Do you intend to take a pleasure-trip this summer? Yes, I intend to leave the town for three or four weeks. 5. Last summer we stayed away only a week. 6. Does it not look like rain? 7. Yes, I am afraid it might rain, but fortunately I have brought my umbrella with [me]. 8. Have you any money about you? I should like to pay this bill, and have left my purse at home. 9. I have about seven dollars and a half with me; would that be enough (suffice)? 10. Would you do me the favour to lend me the half of it (davon) for two or three days? 11. What magnificent weather for harvesting; it has not rained for two weeks [past]. 12. Is the servant going to (the) market? No, she was at (the) market (already) two hours ago. 13. The battle of Waterloo took place on the 18th of June in the year 1815. 14. Some months afterwards the treaty of Paris was signed. 15. When (at what time) and in what war did the battle of the Alma take place? 16. It took place in the year 1855, during the war between England and Russia.

ORAL EXERCISE XXXIX.

1. Wann gedenken Sie die Stadt zu verlassen? 2. Wo steht das Haus Ihres Herrn Vaters? 3. Auf welche Weise gedenken Sie diesen Sommer zuzubringen? 4. Wollen Sie einmal' zu mir kommen und den Nachmittag bei mir zubringen? 5. Es hat geklingelt; wer ist da? 6. Was für Wetter bekommen wir heute Abend?

LESSON XL.

CONJUNCTIONS.

235. Conjunctions are either :

A. **Coördinating**, or those which connect sentences of the *same rank* or *order* (principal with principal, or dependent with dependent), or :

B. **Subordinating**, or those which connect one sentence with another, on which it depends, or to which it is *subordinate*.

A. Coördinating Conjunctions.

236. I. **Conjunctions Proper.** — The Coördinating Conjunctions *proper* merely *connect* sentences without affecting their structure. They are :

und, and (*general connective*)
oder, or (*general disjunctive*)
denn, for (*causative*)
aber, **allein**, **auch**, **sondern**, } but (*adversative*)

Remarks. — 1. **Sondern** is used *after negative sentences* only, and introduces a sentence *correcting* or *contradicting* the statement contained in the preceding sentence, in whole or in part, as :

Ich bin **nicht** krank, **sondern** ganz gesund,
I am not ill but (**on the contrary**) quite well.

But if there is no inconsistency or contradiction between the two statements, **aber** is used, as :

Er hat es nicht gethan, **aber** er wird es thun,
He has not yet done it, but he will do it.

2. **Aber** does not necessarily begin the sentence and often comes after the verb. When **aber** does not begin the sentence, it has rather the sense of 'however,' as :

Das böſe Weib **aber** ging vor den Spiegel,
The wicked woman, **however**, went to the mirror.

NOTE. — When there is any other conjunction present, aber seldom begins the sentence.

237. II. **Adverbial Conjunctions.**— Many adverbs and adverbial phrases have the function of conjunctions, when they are used to express the relation between sentences, rather than to modify any particular member of the sentence in which they occur.

The principal coördinating adverbial conjunctions are:

- **auch**, also, too
- **außerdem**, besides
- **dann**, then
- **ſogar**, even

} *connective* (related to **und**)

- **dennoch**, } still
- **doch**, }
- **jedoch**, }
- **denn**, unless
- **deſſenungeachtet**, } nevertheless
- **nichtsdeſtoweniger**, }
- **indeſſen**, however
- **ſonſt**, else, otherwise
- **wohl**, indeed
- **zwar**, it is true, to be sure

} *adversative* (related to **aber**)

- **daher**, } therefore
- **darum**, }
- **deshalb**, }
- **deswegen**, }
- **alſo**, } accordingly
- **folglich**, }
- **mithin'**, }

} *causative* (related to **denn**)

ſo, so
alſo, so, thus
ebenſo, just as
deſto, } the
je, }
} *comparative*

inſofern, }
inſoweit, } inasmuch as, as far as — *restrictive*

unterdeſſen, }
indeſſen, } meanwhile
darauf, afterwards
ſeitdem, since then
} *time*

REMARKS.— 1. Unlike the conjunctions proper, these adverbial conjunctions, if they *introduce* a sentence, throw the subject *after* the verb; but they may also follow the verb, thus:

Er iſt krank; **deſſenungeachtet** wird er kommen (or: er wird **deſſenungeachtet** kommen), He is ill; nevertheless he will come.

Es regnete, **darum** (daher, deswegen) konnte **ich** (or: **ich** konnte **darum**, etc.) nicht ausgehen.

2. **Auch** and **ſogar**, when they refer specially to the subject or any other member of the clause preceding the verb, do not throw the subject after the verb, as:

Auch ſein Vater **war** zugegen, His father, too, was present.

Sogar ſeinen Feinden **hat** er vergeben, He has pardoned even his enemies.

3. The verb often comes first in a sentence with **doch**, to express a strong affirmation, as:

Habe ich es **doch** geſagt, Did I not say so?

238. III. Correlative Conjunctions. These are:

entweder . . . oder, either . . . or } *disjunctive*
weder . . . noch, neither . . . nor }
nicht nur . . . ſondern auch, } not only . . . } *connective*
ſowohl . . . als auch, } but also }
nicht ſowohl . . . als, not so much . . . as
bald . . . bald, now . . . now (again), at one time . . . at another
teils . . . teils, partly . . . partly
einerſeits . . . anderſeits, on the one hand . . . on the other.

Remark. — The last three are *adverbial* conjunctions, and either follow the verb, or throw the subject after it, unless they modify a particular member of the sentence. (compare § 237, Remarks 1, 2, above).

239. *B.* Subordinating Conjunctions.

1. Sentences introduced by subordinating conjunctions are always *dependent*, and therefore have the verb *last* (see § 32).

2. Some of these also are adverbial, but, as this distinction does not affect the construction, they are not separately arranged.

3. The principal subordinating conjunctions are as follows

(*a*) Introducing *substantive* clause:

daß, that
ob, if, whether

(*b*) Introducing *adverbial* clause:

als, **da**, **wenn**, } when } *time*
bis (daß), **ehe (daß)**, **bevor**, } before } *time*

indeſſ'en,
indem',
unterdeſſ'en,
während (daß), } while, whilst
ſeit(dem), since
ſobald', as soon as
ſo lange, as long as
(ſo)wie, as soon as
wie, how — *manner*
} *time*

denn, than
als,
wie, } than, as
inwieſern', inasmuch as
je nachdem', according as
} *degree*

da, since
daß, that
weil, because
} *cause*

daß, that
auf daß,
um daß, } in order that
damit', in order that
} *purpose*

wenn, if
als ob,
als wenn, } as if
falls,
wofern, } in case
} *condition*

obgleich, wenn gleich,
obſchon, wenn ſchon,
ob auch, wenn auch,
obwohl,
wiewohl,
ungeachtet (daß), } although
wenn . . . nicht, if not, unless
} *concessive*

REMARKS. — 1. **Wenn** and **ob** take the *subjunctive* when the verb of the principal clause is in the impf., plupf., or conditional, as:

Ich **würde** kommen, wenn ich wohl genug **wäre**, I should come, if I were well enough.

Ich **wußte** nicht, ob er gekommen **wäre** (**sei**), I did not know, whether he had come.

2. **Wenn** may be omitted in conditional sentences; the verb then *begins* the clause, as in the question order (compare § 59). This construction is much more common than in English, and is generally used when the dependent clause, containing the *condition*, precedes the principal clause, containing the consequence, as:

Hätte ich Geld, **so** würde ich Freunde haben, If I had (had I) money, I should have friends.

NOTE. — The particle **so** should not be omitted in the latter clause when the former is without wenn.

3. In the compound conjunctions **obgleich**, **obschon**, **obwohl**, etc., the two parts may be separated, and the latter part placed after the subject, as:

Obgleich (**obschon**, etc.) er krank war, etc.; or:
Ob er **gleich** krank war, Although he was ill.

NOTE. — With wenn the particles gleich, etc., always follow the subject.

4. The ob or wenn may also be omitted in these conjunctions and in **als ob**, **als wenn** ('as if'); the verb then *begins* the sentence, or immediately follows als, as:

Ist er **gleich** krank, Although he is ill.

Es scheint mir, **als ob** (wenn) ich Sie irgendwo gesehen **hätte**; or: als **hätte ich**, etc., It seems to me, as if I had seen you somewhere.

240. Interjections.

1. **Interjections** proper are not, strictly speaking, members of the sentence, and consist of sounds expressing either:

(*a*) Independent outbursts of natural feeling, as: **o, oh,** of various emotions; **ah, hei, heisa, juchhe** (hurrah), joy; **ei, ha, potz,** surprise; **ach, au,** pain; **pfui** (fie), disgust; **hah,** contempt; or

(*b*) Intimations of will, as: **pst, sch** (hush), enjoining silence; **he, heda', ho, halloh, hollah,** to call attention.

2. Various parts of speech, and even whole phrases, are employed interjectionally, as: heil, hail; weh, woe (subst.) hoch, hurrah; brav, bravo; leider, alas; fort, weg, away (adverbs); gottlob, thank God; also in oaths and adjurations.

3. Akin to Interjections are imitations of natural sounds, as: **hui, husch,** whizz; **piff, paff, puff,** shot; **bauz,** fall; **plumps,** splash.

4. (*a*) The Interjections **o, ach, pfui,** are sometimes followed by a genitive, as:

O! (ach! pfui!) **der Schande!** Oh! (ah! fie!) what disgrace;

or by über + accusative, as:

Pfui! über dich Feigen! Fie on thee for a coward!

(*b*) The substantives used interjectionally, as under 2, above, are sometimes followed by a dative, as:

Weh mir! Woe's me!

Heil dem Könige! Hail to the king!

Vocabulary.

to call for, abholen	wear (intr.), sich tragen
go in, hineingehen	prepare, vor'bereiten

lay up, lay by, zurücklegen
old age, das Alter
joy, delight, die Freude
Lord, der Herr
price, der Preis
tortoise, die Schildkröte
guilt, debt, die Schuld
to be to blame (for), schuld (adj.) sein (an + dat.)
cheap, billig
certainly, in any case, jedenfalls
in vain, vergebens
even if, although, wenn auch

Idioms: 1. I am studying (preparing) for an examination, Ich bereite mich auf ein Examen (acc.) vor.

2. Do you consider that good? Halten Sie das für gut?

3. To make calls, Besuche machen.

4. In the world, Auf der Welt.

EXERCISE XL.

A. 1. Wir sollten alle Menschen lieben, wenn sie uns auch hassen. 2. Sie versprachen, mich abzuholen; allein ich wartete vergebens, denn Sie kamen nicht. 3. Wenn ich an Ihrem Hause vorübergehe, so gehe ich gewöhnlich hinein. 4. Als ich aber gestern Abend vorüberging, sah ich kein Licht und daher bin ich nicht hineingegangen. 5. Je mehr wir lernen, desto mehr sind wir im Stande zu lernen. 6. Die Schüler bekommen morgen Ferien, darum springen und singen sie vor Freude. 7. Wie sehr ich mich auch bemühe, es gelingt mir leider doch nicht, alle Sätze dieser Aufgabe richtig zu schreiben. 8. Du tadelst mich, als ob ich schuld daran wäre. 9. Ein vorsichtiger Mann legt in seiner Jugend Geld zurück, auf daß er in seinem Alter nicht Mangel leide. 10. Außer wenn ich krank oder sehr beschäftigt bin, gehe ich jeden Tag spazieren. 11. Er ist nicht nur reich, sondern auch freigebig, und deshalb hat er so viele Freunde gewonnen. 12. Hätten wir gewußt, daß Sie heute Besuch haben, so wären wir erst morgen gekommen. 13. Wollen Sie sich erkundigen, ob Frau G. noch in demselben Hause wohnt? 14. Es giebt noch viele Leute auf der Welt, die weder lesen noch schreiben können. 15. Sie hätten mir helfen können, wenn Sie es gewollt hätten, allein Sie wollten es nicht.

16. Falls Sie des Nachmittags nicht kommen können, so kommen Sie doch des Abends. 17. Obgleich Karl schon zehn Jahre alt ist, kann er weder gut lesen noch gut schreiben. 18. Die Schildkröte lief, indem der Hase schlief, deshalb ist sie auch zuerst angekommen. 19. Hätte der Hase nicht geschlafen, so wäre er jedenfalls zuerst angekommen. 20. Du sollst deinen Vater und deine Mutter ehren, auf daß du lange lebest im Lande, das dir der Herr dein Gott giebt.

B. 1. We shall come, even if it rains. 2. Before I leave the town, I must make some calls. 3. Shall we go without him, or shall we wait till he comes back? 4. Whilst we were away, a thief came and stole the money. 5. Do you sit up late when you are studying? 6. Not generally; however, when I was preparing for my last examination I used to sit up late. 7. Do you consider this cloth dear? The price is not high to be sure, but it will not wear well. 8. Here is cloth, which is dear, but I believe that it is good. 9. I do not, on the contrary, consider it dear, but cheap, since it is good cloth. 10. Since I have been ill, I am allowed neither to read much nor to write much. 11. It seems to me that it is colder to-day than yesterday. 12. It is all the same to me, whether I travel by the steamer or by the railway. 13. [If] I had thought of that, I should have gone to meet you. 14. The hare slept, and in the meanwhile the tortoise arrived. 15. If the hare had not slept, he would have arrived first.

ORAL EXERCISE XL.

1. Die Fenster sind alle auf, wer ist daran schuld? 2. Legen Sie viel Geld zurück? 3. Weshalb haben Sie mich nicht abgeholt? 4. Können Sie mir sagen, in welcher Richtung von hier der Fluss liegt? 5. Hast du dein letztes Examen bestanden? 6. Halten Sie diesen Hut für teuer?

SUPPLEMENTARY LESSON F.

ADDITIONAL REMARKS ON CERTAIN CONJUNCTIONS.

241. 1. **Allein** follows and limits, or corrects, *affirmative* statements, as ſondern does negative, thus:

Er iſt reich, **allein** er iſt nicht glücklich, He is rich, **but** he is not happy.

2. **Deſto** or **um ſo** (but not je) may be used with a *single* comparative, as:

Eilen Sie, damit Sie **deſto** (um ſo) früher ankommen, Make haste, so that you may arrive *all the* sooner.

3. **Daß** is the most general in meaning of all the conjunctions. It may be omitted when it introduces a *substantive* clause, as in indirect statements. The sentence then has the construction of a principal clause (verb *second;* see § 87, 3). But daß cannot be omitted when it expresses *purpose* or *consequence.*

4. The Engl. *if* must be rendered by **ob** (not wenn) when it = **whether**, as:

I asked him *if* he could come, Ich fragte ihn, **ob** er kommen könne.

5. For the distinction between als, wenn (as conjunctions of time) and wann, see § 58.

6. 'Than' should be rendered by **als** after an adjective in the comparative degree, not by wie.

7. **Denn** = 'than' is obsolete, except when used to prevent the repetition of als, as:

Er iſt größer als Dichter, **denn** als Menſch, He is greater as a poet, **than** as a man.

8. In comparisons of *equality*, as . . . as = **(eben)ſo** . . **wie**, or als, **wie** being more common, as:

He is as tall as I, Er iſt **(eben)ſo** groß **wie** ich.

After a negative, eben is omitted, as:

Er iſt **nicht ſo** groß wie ich.

9. **So** . . . **ſo** are used with correlative clauses, containing adjectives compared together in the *positive* degree (compare the use of je or deſto with the compar. degree, § 126, 4), as:

So groß er iſt, **ſo** feige iſt er auch, He is **as** cowardly **as** he is big; or: 'equally big and cowardly'; lit.: Big **as** he is, he is just **as** cowardly.

NOTE. — In the first clause of the above example ſo is *subordinating*; in the second *cöordinating*, but does not throw the subject after the verb.

Observe also the following construction, where the clauses cannot be rendered as correlative in English:

So gern ich Ihnen (auch) helfen möchte, **ſo** unmöglich iſt es mir, However glad I should be to help you, it is quite impossible for me (or: Glad **as** I should be, etc.).

10. **As**, when denoting *cause* (= 'since') must be rendered by **da**, as:

I could not come, **as** I was not well, Ich konnte nicht kommen, **da** ich nicht wohl war.

11. **As**, in the sense of 'while' = indeſſen, as:

He fell asleep, **as** I was reading to him, Er ſchlief ein, **indeſſen** ich ihm vorlas.

12. Distinguish carefully between the following uses of Engl. **since**:

(*a*) **Since** as *preposition* = **ſeit** (not ſeitdem), as:

Since last Tuesday, **Seit** letztem Dienſtag.

(*b*) **Since** as *adverb* or *cöordinating* adverbial conjunction = **ſeitdem** (not ſeit), as:

He was here the day before yesterday, but I have not seen him **since**, Vorgeſtern war er hier, **ſeitdem** habe ich ihn aber nicht geſehen.

(*c*) **Since** as *subordinating* conjunction of *time* = **ſeitdem** or **ſeit**, as:

I have not seen him **since** he recovered from his illness, Ich habe ihn nicht geſehen, **ſeit(dem)** er geneſen iſt.

(*d*) **Since** as conjunction of *cause* = **da**, as:

Since I have no money, I cannot pay you, **Da** ich kein Geld habe, kann ich Sie nicht bezahlen.

13. After **ehe**, **bevor** and **während**, **daß** may be omitted.

14. **Bevor** expresses time only, **ehe** may also express preference (= 'rather'), as:

Ehe ich das thue, will ich ſterben, **Rather** than do that, I will die.

15. Observe that the adverbial conjunctions **indeſſen, unterdeſſen** are *cöordinating* when they = 'meanwhile' (the pronoun deſſen being *demonstrative*), but *subordinating* when they = 'whilst, while' (the pron. being *relative*), as:

Sie ſprachen mit einander; indeſſen (unterdeſſen) **ging ich** auf und ab, They were speaking to each other; (in the) **meanwhile** I was walking up and down; but:

Sie ſprachen mit einander, indeſſen (unterdeſſen) ich auf und ab **ging**, They were speaking to each other, **while** I was walking up and down.

In the sense of 'however,' indeſſen is *cöordinating* only.

16. **Indem** is subordinating only, and denotes *cause* as well as time, as:

Ich brauche mehr Geld, **indem** ich viele Schulden zu bezahlen habe, I need more money, **since** I have many debts to pay (**having** many debts to pay).

Indem er mir die Hand gab, lächelte er, **As** he gave me his hand (giving me his hand), he smiled.

17. **Weil** must be used (not da) in answer to the question *why?* or *wherefore?* as:

Warum kamen Sie nicht? **Weil** ich krank war.
Why did you not come? **Because** I was ill.

18. 'Unless' is rendered by **wenn ... nicht** (*if ... not*), or by **denn** (*cöordinating* adv. conj.), as:

Wir werden nicht ausgehen können, **wenn** ſich das Wetter **nicht** ändert, We shall not be able to go out, **unless** the weather changes.

Ich laſſe dich nicht, du ſegneſt mich **denn**, I will not let thee go, except (**unless**) thou bless me.

Note. — Denn in this sense always follows the verb.

19. 'But' after a negative = **als**, as:

Ich hatte nichts **als** Unglück auf meiner Reiſe, I had nothing **but** misfortune on my journey.

Note. — Nichts weniger als = '**anything but**' (not 'nothing less than'), as:

Er iſt **nichts weniger als** reich, He is **anything but** rich.

20. Distinguish between:

(*a*) **Da** = 'there': adverb of *place*, as:

Ich war **da**, I was **there**.

(*b*) **Da** = 'then': adverb of *time*, as:

Der Dieb ſchlich ins Haus; **da** ergriff ich ihn, The thief sneaked into the house; **then** I seized him.

(*c*) **Da** = 'since,' 'as': subordinating conjunction, as:

Ich konnte nicht kommen, **da** ich krank war, I could not come, **since** (as) I was ill.

21. Distinguish between **deſſenungeachtet**, '*nevertheless*' (*cöord.* adv. conj.) and **ungeachtet**, '*although*,' '*notwithstanding that*' (*subord.* conj.).

EXERCISE F.

1. Our neighbour has failed, but he is only the richer on that account, since he has not paid his creditors. 2. The hare was sleeping, whilst the tortoise crept slowly towards the goal. 3. Rather than accept your conditions, I will give up my position. 4. He has not been here since last week, and I have not seen him since. 5. Since you have not seen him, I must either go and see him (say: go to him), or write to him. 6. I consider him an ignorant man; he is anything but learned. 7. Have you been at the railway-station? Yes, I was there as the train arrived. 8. We shall not go out this afternoon, because it looks like rain. 9. We shall not go out to-morrow either (auch), if the weather does not change. 10. The whole family was absent yesterday from eight o'clock till twelve o'clock at night; meanwhile the house took (fangen) fire.

PART SECOND.

SYNTAX.

LESSON XLI.

SYNTAX OF THE CASES: — NOMINATIVE AND GENITIVE.

242. NOMINATIVE.

1. The **Nominative** is the case of the *subject*, or of a word in apposition to the subject, or of a predicate noun qualifying it. The nominative is also used in address, there being no special form for the vocative.

2. Neuter verbs indicating a state or transition, such as ſein, to be; werden, to become; bleiben, to remain; ſcheinen, to seem, appear; heißen, to be called, take a *predicate* nominative, as:

Er iſt **Soldat** geworden (geblieben), He has become (remained) a **soldier**.

3. Verbs of *calling* take a predicate nominative, verbs of *considering* a nominative with als, in the *passive*, as:

Kaiſer Heinrich I. wurde **der** Vogler genannt, Emperor Henry was called the Fowler.

Mein Vater wurde immer von mir **als** mein beſter Freund betrachtet, My father was always regarded by me (**as**) my best friend.

NOTE. — Verbs of *choosing* generally take the preposition zu instead of the English nominative.

243. Genitive.

The Genitive is used chiefly as the complement of substantives, its use in this respect being much the same as the English objective with 'of,' and also covering that of the *possessive*. Thus we have:

1. The Genitive of **Origin**, as:

Die Früchte des Baumes, The fruits **of** the tree.

2. The **Subjective** Genitive, indicating the *agent* or *cause*, as:

Der Glaube eines Chriſten, The faith **of** a Christian.

3. The **Objective** Genitive, indicating the *thing affected*, as:

Die Entdeckung Amerikas, The discovery **of** America.

4. The **Possessive** Genitive, as:

Der Garten des Königs, The garden **of** the king (the king's garden).

5. The Genitive of **Quality**, as:

Zwei Kinder eines Alters, Two children **of** one age.

Note. — This genitive is frequently replaced by von, as:

Ein Mann von hohem Alter, A man **of** great age.

6. The **Partitive** Genitive, as:

Einer meiner Freunde, One **of** my friends.

Der jüngſte meiner Brüder, The youngest **of** my brothers.

Note. — This genitive is commonly replaced by von after numerals and other partitives.

244. Genitive after Adjectives.

Adjectives denoting *possession* and *interest*, *plenty*, *knowledge*, *desire*, *guilt*, or their *opposites*, govern the genitive, as:

bedürftig, needing, in need	bewußt, conscious
begierig (also + nach), desirous	eingedenk, mindful
	fähig (also + zu), capable

froh, glad
gewiß, certain
gewohnt (also + an with acc.), accustomed
leer, empty
los (also + acc.), rid
müde (also + acc.), tired
ſatt (also + acc.), satisfied
ſchuldig, guilty
ſicher, certain
überdrüſſig, weary
verdächtig, suspected
voll (also + acc., or + von), full
wert (also + acc.), worth
würdig, worthy

Remarks. — 1. The neuter pronoun 'it' after most of these adjectives may have the form **es**, which is the old *genitive*, and is the origin of the later use of the accusative, first with the pronouns das, was, and then, by analogy, with substantives, as:

Ich bin **es** (**das**) müde, I am tired of it (that).

2. With los, müde, wert the Accusative is more usual than the genitive.

245. Genitive after Verbs.

1. Verbs of meanings similar to those of the adjectives under the previous section take a genitive of the **nearer** object, as:

achten (also + auf with acc.), pay attention
bedürfen, need
begehren, desire
brauchen, want
entbehren, miss, do without
erwähnen, mention
(also + acc.)
denken (generally + an with acc.), think
gedenken, mention
genießen (generally + acc.), enjoy
vergeſſen (generally + acc.), forget

Also the following:

harren (also + auf with acc.) wait
warten (also + acc.), tend, nurse
lachen, laugh at
ſpotten, mock
ſchonen (also + acc.), spare

2. Transitive Verbs of *accusing*, *condemning*, *acquittal*, *deprivation*, *emotion*, take a genitive of the remoter object, as:

anklagen, accuse
berauben, rob
beſchuldigen, accuse
entbinden (also + von), relieve
entkleiden (also + von), disrobe
losſprechen, acquit
überführ'en, convict
überzeu'gen (also + von), convince
verſichern, assure
würdigen, deem worthy
zeihen, accuse

3. Also many reflexive and impersonal verbs (see §§ 215, 216, 219).

246. ADVERBIAL GENITIVE.

For the use of the genitive in forming adverbs from substantives, see § 189, 2. The adverbial genitive may express *place*, *time* or *manner*, as:

Linker Hand, On the left hand.

Seiner Wege gehen, To go one's way.

Dieſer Tage, During these (last) days.

Abends, In the evening.

Morgens, In the morning, etc.

Alles Ernſtes, In all seriousness.

Trocknen Fußes, Dry-shod.

And particularly with Weiſe, 'manner,' after an adjective, as:

Glücklicher Weiſe, — or: **Glücklicherweiſe**, } Fortunately (lit., in a fortunate manner)

247. For **Interjections** followed by a genitive, see § 240, 4, (*a*).

For the genitive after prepositions, see §§ 222, 223.

EXERCISE XLI.

A. 1. Guten Morgen, Karl; was hast du für Eile, mein Junge? 2. Guten Morgen, Herr B.; es ist bald neun Uhr und ich gehe jetzt in die Schule. 3. So, hast du noch weit zu gehen? 4. Bis nach der Friedrichstrasze; Herr G., unser Lehrer, besteht sehr auf Pünktlichkeit. 5. Steige nur ein, du kannst mit mir fahren, da mein Weg durch die Friedrichstrasze führt. 6. Ich bin Ihnen sehr dankbar; das ist sehr freundlich von Ihnen. 7. Sitzt du da bequem? 8. Ja, aber sind meine Bücher Ihnen nicht im Wege? 9. Nicht im geringsten, aber was für eine Menge Bücher hast du da! Du hast gewiss viel zu studieren. 10. Ich arbeite jetzt sehr fleissig, da das Examen nächstens stattfindet. 11. Auf welches Examen bereitest du dich vor? 12. Auf das Eintrittsexamen der Universität. 13. Was für Sprachen studierst du? 14. Ich studiere Englisch, Latein, Deutsch und Französisch. 15. Natürlich studierst du auch die Mathematik? 16. Wir müssen Rechnen, Algebra und Geometrie lernen. 17. Bist du ein Freund von der Mathematik, oder ziehst du die Sprachen vor? 18. Ich lerne sehr gern Mathematik, besonders Algebra; mein Lehrer glaubt, ich habe nicht viel Sprachtalent. 19. Deshalb solltest du desto fleissiger die Sprachen studieren, (auf) dass deine Bildung nicht einseitig werde. 20. Mein Vater ist auch derselben Meinung. 21. Hoffentlich wirst du dein Examen glücklich bestehen; da sind wir aber schon bei der Schule. 22. Ich danke Ihnen vielmals für den freundlichen Wunsch, wie auch für die Fahrt.

B. 1. "An honest man is the noblest work of God." 2. A pound of iron is about as large as two pounds of silver. 3. Mr. Cleveland was elected president of the United States in the year 1884. 4. I was to have taken (made) a journey to Europe this summer, but my father needs me in his busi-

ness and I shall be obliged to remain at home. 5. I have been offered five thousand dollars for my house, and I shall sell it, for I am glad of the opportunity of getting (to get) rid of it. 6. The Duke of Wellington, a great English general (Feldherr), was called the "Iron Duke," as Prince Bismarck, the great German statesman, is called the "Iron Chancellor." 7. He (the former) has deserved that title not only as a soldier but as a man. 8. My neighbour, the merchant, has been accused of forgery, but I do not believe that he is capable of such a crime. 9. He was in need of money, and is said to have done it on that account. 10. I hope that he will be acquitted of this accusation, for I am convinced of his innocence. 11. The discovery of America by (durch) Columbus was perhaps the greatest undertaking of any man or of any age (Zeitalter). 12. Columbus was a man of great bodily as well as mental power. 13. His whole fleet consisted of three small ships, of which two were very old. 14. Have you seen your brother the lawyer? 15. Excuse [me]; my brother is not a lawyer, but a doctor. I have not seen him since Christmas. 16. As a student he always used (pflegen) to say he meant to be (werden) a lawyer. 17. We are tired of studying; let us go out. 18. Shall I send for (nach) a carriage? 19. No, it is not worth while (der Mühe wert), I would rather walk. 20. Unfortunately it has rained and the roads are bad. 21. We can try (the) walking, and if we get tired of it, we can take the street-cars (Pferdebahn, sing.).

LESSON XLII.

SYNTAX OF THE CASES (continued).—DATIVE AND ACCUSATIVE.

248. DATIVE.

The **Dative** is the case of the **Indirect Object.**

The Dative is used to denote the person for whose *advantage* or *disadvantage* a thing is or is done, as:

Er hat **mir** ein Buch gekauft, He has bought **me** a book.

249. The Dative is very freely used in German to denote the person who has some *interest* in an action or thing. This is called the **ethical dative** or dative of **interest**, and must usually be left untranslated in English, in which language its use is obsolete, thus:

Ich habe **mir** die Sache angesehen, I have considered the thing (for my own satisfaction).

Thu **mir** das nicht wieder, Don't do that again (I tell you).

For the *possessive* dative replacing, with the definite article, a genitive case or (with pronouns) a possessive adjective, see § 44, 6.

250. DATIVE AFTER VERBS.

1. The Dative stands as the *Indirect Object of transitive* verbs, as:

Er giebt **mir** das Buch, He gives **me** the book (the book **to** me).

2. It stands as the *sole* object after verbs which express a *personal* relation only, such as verbs of:

(*a*) *Approach* or *removal*, etc., as:

begegnen, meet	gleichen, resemble
entgehen, escape	nachgehen, follow
entsprechen, correspond to	nachstehen, be inferior
fehlen, be wanting	nahen, approach
folgen, follow	zusehen, watch

(*b*) *Pleasure* or *displeasure*, as:

behagen, please	drohen, threaten
danken, thank	fluchen, curse

gefallen, please
genügen, suffice
grollen, be angry
mißfal'len, displease
ſchmeicheln, flatter
ſtehen, suit, become

(*c*) *Advantage* or *disadvantage*, as:

beiſtehen, assist
dienen, serve
helfen, help
mangeln, be wanting
nützen, be useful
ſchaden, harm

(*d*) *Command*, *resistance* and their *opposites*, as:

befehlen, command
gebieten, order
gehorchen, obey
verbieten, forbid
trotzen, defy
weichen, yield
widerſte'hen, oppose
widerſtre'ben, resist

(*e*) After verbs expressing *possession*, *trust*, and various other *personal* relations, as:

antworten, answer
beiſtimmen, agree with
erwidern, reply
gehören, belong
glauben, believe
ſcheinen, seem
trauen, trust
zureden, encourage

Also with ſein and werden, expressing a state of feeling (with zu Mute expressed or understood), as:

Wie iſt **Ihnen?** How do you feel?

Observe also the idiom: Wenn **dem** ſo iſt, 'If that is the case,' in which **dem** is dat. neut.

(*f*) After many verbs expressing similar relations, compounded with the inseparable prefixes **er–**, **ent–**, **ver–**, **wider**; with the separable prefixes **an–**, **auf–**, **bei–**, **entgegen–**, **nach–**, **vor–**, **zu–**, etc., and with adjectives, nouns or adverbial phrases, such as:

leid thun, be sorry
wohlwollen, be well-disposed
zu Statten kommen, be of use
zu Teil werden, fall to one's share
das Wort reden, defend

Remarks. — 1. The great majority of these verbs have become transitive in English, on account of the loss of distinction between the dative and accusative; their construction in German should be carefully observed.

2. Many of the verbs under (*d*), (*e*) above take a *direct* object, particularly in the shape of a clause or of a neuter pronoun, as:

Er hat mir verboten **zu gehen**, He has forbidden me **to go**.

Ich erwiderte, **daß ich kommen wolle**, I replied **that I would come**.

Mein Vater hat **es** mir befohlen, My father has ordered me (to do) **it**.

For the Dative with *Reflexive* Verbs, see §§ 215, 216; with *Impersonal* Verbs, see §§ 217, 219.

251. Dative after Adjectives.

The Dative stands after adjectives similar in meaning to the Verbs given in the foregoing section, such as:

(*a*) *Approach*, etc.:

ähnlich, similar
fremd, strange
gleich, equal, like
ungleich, unequal, unlike
nahe (also + bei), near
verwandt, related

(*b*) *Pleasure*, etc.:

angenehm, pleasant
gnädig, gracious
lieb, dear
willkommen, welcome

(*c*) *Advantage*, etc.:

heilsam, wholesome
schuldig, indebted
treu, faithful

(*d*) *Command*, etc.:

folgsam, gehorsam, } obedient
ungehorsam, disobedient
widrig, repulsive

(*e*) *Possession*, etc.:

eigen, belonging gemein(ſam), common

NOTE. — Almost any adjective modified by zu or genug may take a dative, as:

Dieſe Handſchuhe ſind **mir** zu groß (groß **genug**), These gloves are **too** large (large **enough**) **for** me.

For the Dative after Prepositions, see §§ 46, 51.

252. ACCUSATIVE.

The **Accusative** is the case of the **Direct Object**, **Time** and **Measure**.

All transitive verbs take the direct object in the accusative.

REMARK. — Many verbs that are transitive in English are intransitive in German (see § 250, Rem. 1, above), and *vice versa*.

253. DOUBLE ACCUSATIVE.

The verb lehren, 'to teach,' governs two accusatives, one of the person and the other of the thing; the verb fragen, 'to ask,' takes the latter accusative only when it is a neuter pronoun, as:

Ich werde **dich die deutſche Sprache** lehren, I shall teach **you the German language.**

Ich wollte **dich** gerne **etwas** fragen, I should like to ask **you something.**

Verbs of *calling*, etc., have a second accusative as **factitive predicate**, as:

Ich nannte **ihn einen** Narren, I called **him a fool.**

Of Verbs of *considering*, etc., some, such as: betrachten, 'to regard'; anſehen, 'to look upon'; darſtellen, 'to represent,' take a *factitive* accusative with **als**, as:

Ich ſehe den Regen **als** eine Wohlthat an, I regard the rain **as** a benefit.

Other verbs of considering, with those of choosing, etc., which take a second accusative of this sort in English, are followed by a preposition (für, zu) in German (see Less. XLIX).

254. Accusative after Intransitive Verbs.

1. Intransitive Verbs may sometimes be followed by an accusative of a meaning akin to their own, called the *cognate* accusative, as:

Ich habe einen ſchönen **Traum geträumt**, I have **dreamt** a beautiful **dream**.

2. Intransitive Verbs may take an accusative of that which is effected or produced by the action they express, as:

Petrus **weinte** bittere **Thränen**, Peter **wept** bitter **tears**.

3. Intransitive Verbs may take an accusative followed by an adjective, etc., as *factitive* predicate, as:

Ich habe **mich ſatt** gegeſſen, I have eaten enough (lit., have eaten **myself satisfied**).

Das Kind weinte **ſich in den Schlaf**, The child has cried **itself to sleep**.

Remark. — The Accusative in all these constructions, except the last, which is not used in the passive, becomes a *nominative* in the passive construction; that of the *thing* after lehren remains accusative; with fragen and bitten, the acc. of the thing is not used in the passive.

For the accusative after *Reflexive* Verbs, see § 216; after *Impersonal* Verbs, see § 219; after *Prepositions*, see §§ 34, 50; after some Adjectives, it replaces the Genitive (see § 245, and Remarks).

255. Adverbial Accusative.

1. The Accusative is used adverbially to express *time* (see § 184, 1) and *measure* (see § 185, 4); also *distance* and *way* after verbs of motion, as:

Ich bin **sechs gute Meilen** gefahren, I have driven **six full miles.**

Welchen **Weg** werden Sie gehen? Which **way** will you go?

The Accusative is used also in absolute constructions, especially with participles, as:

Er kam zu mir, **den** Hut in der Hand, He came to me **hat** in hand.

Er stand da, **die** Augen in die Höhe **gerichtet**, He stood there [with] eyes uplifted.

EXERCISE XLII.

A. 1. Also, Sie haben sich entschlossen, uns morgen früh zu verlassen? 2. Ich muss wohl, da meine Geschäftsangelegenheiten mir keinen längeren Aufenthalt erlauben. 3. Sie reisen natürlich mit dem zweiten Zug ab? 4. Wissen Sie, um wie viel Uhr derselbe in B. ankommt? 5. Ich kann es Ihnen nicht ganz genau sagen, aber er kommt gegen vier Uhr (des) Nachmittags an. 6. Das ist mir viel zu spät. Man erwartet mich schon um halb zwölf auf meinem Bureau. 7. In *dem* Falle müssen Sie wohl den Schnellzug nehmen, der schon um drei Viertel auf sieben abfährt. 8. Es lässt sich nicht ändern. 9. Gut, ich werde Sie Punkt sechs Uhr wecken lassen. 10. Ich danke Ihnen; das wird durchaus nicht nötig sein, da ich meine Weckuhr bei mir habe. 11. Wie viel Zeit brauchen Sie, sich anzukleiden? 12. Zwanzig bis fünfundzwanzig Minuten; aber ich werde noch mehreres einzupacken haben. 13. Dann wäre es jedenfalls besser, die Weckuhr auf halb sechs zu stellen. 14. Bitte, sagen Sie mir genau, wie viel Uhr es jetzt ist: ich fürchte, meine Uhr geht nach. 15. Es ist gerade neun Minuten vor elf. 16. Ist es möglich! Dann geht meine Uhr ja vor, anstatt nach. Sind Sie gewiss, dass Ihre Uhr richtig geht? 17. Jawohl; ich habe sie heute nach der Stadtuhr gestellt. 18. Es wird spät;

ich muss mich schlafen legen, um morgen früh aufstehen zu können. 19. Also machen wir es auf diese Weise: Sie stehen um halb sechs auf, um fünf Minuten nach sechs frühstücken Sie, um fünfundzwanzig Minuten nach sechs wird der Wagen vorfahren und in zehn Minuten sind Sie auf dem Bahnhofe. Dann haben Sie noch zehn Minuten übrig, um Ihr Billet' zu lösen und Ihr Gepäck einschreiben zu lassen. Jetzt, gute Nacht! 20. Gute Nacht, schlafen Sie wohl!

B. 1. Do not trust those who flatter you. 2. Do not believe them, for flatterers are liars. 3. I always considered my father as my truest friend. 4. The general commands the soldiers: the soldiers obey the general. 5. What is the name of the gentleman whom we have just met? His name has escaped me. 6. You should never forget to thank those who help you. 7. How does this hat, which I bought myself yesterday, please you? 8. It does not become you very well; it is too large for you. 9. When I was going to the railway-station, a boy met me and gave me a telegram. 10. May I ask you if Mr. H. is related to you? 11. He resembles me very much, but he is not related to me. 12. Mr. B. has been ordered, on account of ill-health, to go to a warmer climate. He has been forbidden to pass the winter in the North. 13. How long does he remain absent? 14. He is to remain absent at least four months. 15. Last week I ordered (myself) an overcoat at the tailor's, which he was to bring me to-day. 16. The Niagara Falls are considered (one considers, etc.) as one of the greatest wonders of the world. 17. People say of one who sleeps very soundly that he sleeps the sleep of the righteous. 18. May I ask you to assist me, or at least to advise me? 19. I should be very glad to be able to help you. 20 I am in need of money, and should not like to ask any one else for it.

LESSON XLIII.

THE INDICATIVE MOOD:—SYNTAX OF ITS TENSES.

256. The **Indicative** is the mood of **reality** and **direct statement.** As the tenses are used with reference to time in the Indicative only, their proper use is given here.

257. THE PRESENT.

The **Present Tense** answers to all the English forms of that tense (e. g., ich lobe = I praise, am praising, do praise), and is used:

1. To denote action **now** going on, as:

   Das Kind **ſchläft**, The child **is sleeping (now)**.

2. To state a **general** fact or custom, as:

   Der Schnee **iſt** weiß, The snow **is** white.
   Der Ochſe **frißt** Gras, The ox **eats** grass.

3. For the **imperfect** in *historical narrative*, to give greater vividness, as:

   Geſchwind **hebt** er einen Stein auf und **wirft** denſelben dem Hunde, der ihn beißen **will**, an den Kopf, Quickly he **picks** up a stone, and **throws** it at the dog, who **is** about to attack him.

4. For the English **perfect** (as in French), when the action or state continues *in the present*, the past being inferred and the present alone expressed, as:

   Wie lange **iſt** er ſchon krank? How long **has** he **been** ill? (N. B. — He is still ill.)

   Ich **gehe** ſeit acht Tagen wieder zur Schule, I have been going to school again for the last week (and am still going).

NOTE. — This construction is very common with ſeit.

5. For the **future** very commonly, where no ambiguity would arise, particularly to replace the English form 'am going to,' as:

Ich **ſchreibe** morgen einen Brief an meinen Vater, I **am going to write** a letter to my father to-morrow.

258. The Imperfect.

The **Imperfect** is used:

1. As the **historical** (*narrative*) **preterite**, when an event is told in connection with others, as:

Im Anfang **ſchuf** Gott Himmel und Erde, und Alles **war** wüſte und leer u. ſ. w., And in the beginning God created heaven and earth, and all **was** waste and void, etc.

2. To denote **customary, continued** or **contemporaneous** action, replacing the English forms 'was doing,' 'used to do,' as:

Er **ging** jeden Tag um vier Uhr aus, He **used to** go out every day at four o'clock.

Wir **fuhren** an der Kirche vorbei, als die Uhr elf **ſchlug**, We **were** driving past the church, as the clock **struck** eleven.

259. The Perfect.

1. The **Perfect** indicates a past event as **complete and no longer continuing**, thus:

Ich **habe gelebt** und **geliebet**, I **have** lived and loved (and both my life and my love are ended).

2. The Perfect is used of an event as a **separate** and **independent** fact, simply asserted as true without reference to any other, as:

Gott **hat** die Welt **erſchaffen**, God created the world;

but in the sentence :

Gott **ſchuf** die Welt in ſechs Tagen und **ruhte** am ſiebenten, God created the world in six days, and rested on the seventh,

the *imperfect* is used, because the two events are connected.

3. The Perfect is used (apart from historical narrative), in preference to the Imperfect, of an event which has not been witnessed or participated in by the speaker, as :

Geſtern **iſt** ein Kind **ertrunken** (*Perf.*), A child **was** drowned yesterday ; — but :

Geſtern **ertrank** (*Impf.*) ein Kind, als ich am Ufer **ſtand**, A child **was** drowned yesterday, when I **was** standing on the shore.

REMARK. — This distinction between the use of the Perfect and Imperfect is not accurately observed, but it is always better to render the English forms 'was doing,' 'used to do,' by the Imperfect.

4. The Perfect replaces the Future-Perfect, as the Present does the Future, as :

Ich werde kommen, ſobald ich meine Geſchäfte **abgemacht habe**, I shall come, as soon as I have (i. e., **shall** have) finished my business.

260. THE PLUPERFECT.

The **Pluperfect** is used, as in English, of a past action completed before another was begun, thus :

Er **hatte** ſeine Aufgabe **vollendet, ehe** Sie kamen, He **had** finished his exercise, **before** you came.

261. THE FUTURE.

The **Future** is used :

1. Of an action **about** to take place, as :

Unſer Vater **wird** uns **loben**, Our father will praise us.

2. To denote **probability** or **supposition**, as:

Es **wird** mein Bruder **ſein**, der angekommen iſt, It is **probably** my brother who has arrived.

262. The Future-Perfect.

The **Future-Perfect** is the Perfect in the Future, and expresses *probability* even more frequently than the simple Future, as:

Der Brief **wird** ſchon geſtern **gekommen ſein**, The letter **probably** arrived yesterday.

EXERCISE XLIII.

A. 1. Diese Hitze ist unerträglich; ich glaube, nie einen so heissen Sommer erlebt zu haben. 2. Und wie schwül es ist! Sieht es nicht sehr nach Regen aus? 3. Richtig, da sind schon die ersten Regentropfen, und ich meine, vor einigen Minuten Donner in der Ferne gehört zu haben. 4. Das macht mir einen Strich durch die Rechnung. Bei diesem Wetter kann ich unmöglich zur Stadt gehen. 5. Für's Erste allerdings nicht, aber das Gewitter wird nicht lange anhalten. 6. Das ist ein wahrer Platzregen; so ein Regen ist dem Lande sehr nötig. 7. Ja, wir haben diesen Sommer überhaupt sehr wenig Regen gehabt, aber vorigen Winter desto mehr Schnee. 8. Hören Sie, das war ein Knall! 9. Ja, und wie schnell der Donner auf den Blitz folgte! Fürchten Sie sich vor dem Blitze? 10. Seitdem es voriges Jahr in unserer Nähe eingeschlagen hat, bin ich ein wenig ängstlich. 11. Das glaube ich schon, aber sehen Sie doch, jetzt hagelt es noch sogar! 12. Das braucht das Land gewiss nicht, aber die Hagelkörner sind nicht grosz genug, um viel Schaden anzurichten. 13. Es fängt schon an, sich aufzuhellen; das schlimmste ist vorbei. 14. Wie sich die Luft abgekühlt hat! 15. Und wie schnell! Das ist oft der Fall hier zu Lande. 16. Jawohl; erinnern Sie sich nicht des

wechselhaften Wetters, das wir vorigen Frühling gehabt haben? 17. Besonders im März und Anfang April. 18. Einen Tag thaute es, den nächsten fror es, und am dritten Tage regnete oder schneite es gar. 19. Dann gab es wieder eine Hitze wie mitten im Sommer; schon im April hatten wir fast achtzig Grad Fahrenheit. 20. Da scheint die Sonne wieder; ich sagte Ihnen ja, dass das Gewitter nicht lange anhalten würde. 21. Da haben Sie Recht; jetzt muss ich mich auf den Weg machen.

B. 1. A misfortune seldom comes alone. 2. Schlegel translated Shakespeare's works into German. 3. Is your father at home? No, he has been away for three weeks, but he is (probably) coming back to-morrow morning. 4. As soon as I have news of his arrival, I shall come again. 5. During my illness I used to go for a drive two hours every day. 6. Are you going (to go) to the concert this evening? I do not think I shall go. 7. Have you an engagement elsewhere? No, but I am going to bed immediately, as I start for Boston to-morrow morning at seven o'clock. 8. People (man) are often conscious of bad habits, which they cannot get rid of. 9. Have you been long in America? I have been here since my fifteenth year. 10. This is probably a letter from my mother, for that is her hand-writing. 11. We had hardly been at home half an hour, when it began to rain. 12. Shakespeare is considered the greatest poet of the English nation. 13. He was born at Stratford-on-Avon, and passed his youth in that place. 14. As a young man he went to London, became celebrated there, and died in the year 1616 in his native town. 15. The sun was setting, and the long [and] desperate combat was not yet decided. 16. For the third time our brave soldiers throw themselves upon the batteries of the enemy. 17. Nothing could resist this attack; the enemy wavers, and the victory is ours. 18. But what a dearly-bought victory! 19. He, who

led the soldiers into the combat, comes not back with them. 20. Yonder he lies cold and silent, and our triumph becomes bitter mourning.

LESSON XLIV.

THE CONDITIONAL AND SUBJUNCTIVE.

263. THE CONDITIONAL.

1. The **Conditional** tenses are, in form, subjunctive *past* tenses, answering to the Future as a present.

2. They indicate *possible futurity*, and coincide with the Impf. and Plupf. Subj. in their use in conditional clauses, and will therefore be treated conjointly with them (see § 267, below).

NOTE. — The Tenses of the Conditional are a new formation; the Impf. and Plupf. Subj. having, in the older stages of the language, performed the function of the Conditional.

264. The **Subjunctive Mood** is used much more frequently in German than in English, the distinction between Indicative and Subjunctive being almost entirely obliterated in the latter language.

265. THE SUBJUNCTIVE IN INDIRECT STATEMENTS.

The Subjunctive is used in **Indirect Statements or Quotations** (see also § 87), i. e., when the words used are quoted in *substance only*, and not as they were spoken, especially after a verb in the principal clause signifying:

(*a*) *Imparting of information* (statement, report, confession, reminding, etc.), as:

antworten, answer	erzählen, relate
behaupten, assert	geſtehen, confess
berichten, report	ſagen, say

(*b*) *Apprehension*, as:

denken, think	meinen, be of opinion
erinnern (refl.), remember	merken, observe
fühlen, feel	ſchließen, conclude
hören, hear	wiſſen, know

(*c*) *Contemplation* with various emotions, as:

fürchten, fear	wundern (refl.), wonder
freuen (refl.), rejoice	wünſchen, wish
glauben, believe	zweifeln, doubt
hoffen, hope	

(*d*) *Request, command, advice*, etc., as:

befehlen, command	raten, advise
bitten, ask	verlangen, demand
ermahnen, admonish	

266. The Tense in Indirect Statements.

The verb of the Indirect Statement is, as a rule, in the same tense as it would have, if the statement were made directly (see § 87, 2), i. e., the tense of the Indirect Statement is the same as that of the Direct.

Remarks. — 1. An Indirect Statement is always a *subordinate* clause.

2. The conjunction daß may be omitted in such clauses, which will then have the construction of a *principal sentence* (i. e., verb second; see § 87, 3).

3. The Indicative may replace the Subjunctive in Indirect Statements, when the speaker wishes to represent his own belief in the correctness of the statement, as:

> Ich habe gehört, daß mein Bruder krank **iſt**, I have heard that my brother is ill (*and he is ill*).
>
> Sie **wußte**, daß der Spiegel keine Unwahrheit **ſprach**, und merkte, daß der Jäger ſie betrogen **hatte**, etc. (Grimm,

Sneewittchen, p. 52, l. 1), She **knew** that the mirror did not tell a lie, and saw that the huntsman had deceived her (*and he had deceived her*).

But the Subjunctive is used, when the truth of the statement is not vouched for, or when any doubt is cast upon it, as:

Das boshafte Weib aß ſie auf und **meinte**, ſie **hätte** Sneewittchens Lunge und Leber gegeſſen (*ibid.*, p. 49, l. 8), The malicious woman devoured them, and **thought** she had eaten Sneewittchen's lung and liver (whereas she had *not* eaten them).

4. The tense of the Indirect Statement does not depend on that of the principal clause, and the *sequence of tenses* which is observed in English is not found in German, as:

(*Engl.*) He **said** he **was** not ill.
(*Germ.*) Er **ſagte**, er **ſei** nicht krank.

NOTES. — 1. The Subjunctive is unusual after the verbs under (*b*) and (*c*) in the previous section (except hören), if the principal clause has a *present tense*.

2. The rule as to tense is not always strictly observed, the tense used being sometimes determined by the want of distinctive subjunctive forms. Thus in the following sentence two different tenses are used:

Auch ſchloß er, es **müſſe** die Sage vom Glasmännlein nicht ſehr bekannt ſein, und den Spruch **müßten** nur wenige wiſſen (HAUFF, *Das kalte Herz*, p. 8, l. 7), Further, he concluded that the legend of the Glass-manikin could not be very well known, and only a few people could know the verse.

3. After an Impf. in the principal clause, the Subjunctive is usual in the Indirect Statement, except as in the second example under Remark 3, above.

4. The verb of the principal sentence sometimes remains unexpressed, or is replaced by a noun of kindred meaning, as:

Er ließ mich abweiſen, weil er krank **ſei**, He refused to see me, because (*as he asserted*) he was ill.

Ich lief so schnell wie möglich, aus **Furcht**, ich **möchte** zu spät kommen, I ran as quickly as possible, from fear that I might come too late.

Das **hätte** ich gesagt? (Do you mean to say that) I said that?

This last construction is very frequent in German, to express emphatically a doubt as to the truth of a statement.

267. The Subjunctive and Conditional in Hypothetical Periods.

Example of a Hypothetical Period:

If I had followed your advice, I should have been happy.

1. The above sentence consists of two parts. Of these the one expresses a *condition*, conceived, in this instance, as unreal or impossible, viz.:

If I had followed your advice (*which I did not*);

the other expresses a *result*, also unreal or unrealized, which *would have* followed, had the condition been realized, viz.:

I should have been happy (*which I am not*).

2. In both parts of the above period (in the condition and in the result), the verb is in a *past tense* (Impf. or Plupf.) of the Subjunctive Mood, as:

Wenn ich Ihren Rat **befolgt hätte** (Plupf. Subj.), so **wäre** ich glücklich **gewesen** (Plupf. Subj.).

Remarks. — 1. Either of the two clauses may stand first; thus, the sentence given above may have the form:

Ich wäre glücklich gewesen, wenn u. s. w.

2. The conjunction wenn may be omitted, especially when the condition precedes the result, in which case the verb will begin the sentence, as:

Hätte ich Ihren Rat befolgt, so wäre ich glücklich.

3. If the result clause follows the conditional clause, it is usually introduced by the particle **ſo**, and *always* when **wenn** is omitted in the preceding conditional clause (see § 59, and Note).

4. The conditional tenses may replace the Impf. and Plupf. Subj. in the apodosis, result or conclusion only, as:

Wenn ich Ihren Rat befolgt hätte, ſo **würde** ich glücklich **geweſen ſein**.

5. If the condition is stated without its unreality being implied, the verb is in the Pres., Perf., or Fut. *Indicative*, as:

Wenn er **kommt**, ſo werde ich fortgehen, If he comes, I shall go away.

6. A condition may be introduced by **als wenn** or **als ob**, 'as if,' thus:

Er ſieht aus, **als wenn** (**ob**) er krank **wäre**, He looks as if he were ill.

NOTE. — In clauses of this kind, wenn or ob may be omitted, and the construction is then inverted accordingly (see § 239, 4), as:

Er ſieht aus, als **wäre er** krank.

268. OTHER USES OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE.

1. The Pres. Subjunctive replaces the missing persons (1. and 3.) of the *Imperative* Mood, the subject being then put after the verb, except in the 3. person, where it may also precede, unless the pron. Sie is used for the 2. person, as:

Gehe er (or er gehe) nach Hauſe, Let him go home.

2. The Impf. and Plupf. Subjunctive are used to express a wish, as:

Wäre ich bei Ihnen! Would that I were with you!

NOTE. — This is really an elliptical *conditional* clause, with the result unexpressed; the full form may be supplied thus:

Wäre ich bei Ihnen, (ſo wäre ich glücklich).

3. The Subjunctive is used in clauses expressing *purpose*, with the conjunctions daß, auf daß, damit, as:

Er eilte, **daß** (auf daß, damit) er zur rechten Zeit **ankäme**, He hastened, (in order) that he might arrive in good time.

4. It is also used after a *negative* or an *indefinite relative*, as:

Hier iſt **niemand**, der mich nicht **kennte**, There is nobody here, who does not know me.

Ich werde es thun, **was auch** davon kommen **möge**, I shall do it, no matter what may come of it.

NOTE. — The Indicative is also admissible in these constructions.

5. The Impf. Subjunctive is sometimes used to express *possibility*, as:

Das **ginge** wohl, That might (possibly) do.

Ich **dächte**, das **wäre** gut, I should think that might be good;

and especially with the Modal Auxiliaries, as:

Das **möchte** (**könnte**, **dürfte**) wahr ſein, That may (possibly) be true.

6. Observe the following idiom:

Wie **dem** auch ſei, However that may be.

EXERCISE XLIV.

A. 1. Ich habe gehört, dass Sie Ihr Haus verkauft haben; ist das wahr? 2. Ja, meine alte Wohnung gefiel mir nicht mehr. 3. Wie kommt das? Ihr Haus schien mir immer eine sehr elegante und bequeme Wohnung zu sein. 4. Ein besseres lässt sich nicht leicht finden; allein, seit(dem) die vielen Fabriken in der Nähe gebaut worden sind, gefällt mir die Umge'bung nicht mehr. 5. Das kann ich mir schon denken. Der Rauch von den Fabriken muss sehr unangenehm sein. 6. Das ist nicht das Schlimmste; das fortwährende Geräusch

bringt einen oft zum Verzweifeln. 7. Haben Sie ein anderes Haus gekauft? 8. Nein, vorläufig habe ich mir ein Haus in der Schillerstrasze gemietet, sobald ich aber einen passenden Bauplatz finden kann, werde ich bauen. 9. Haben Sie sich schon nach einem Bauplatz umgesehen? 10. Ich habe die ganze Stadt durchsucht, aber ohne Erfolg. 11. Sie müssen sehr schwer zu befriedigen sein. 12. Das gerade nicht, nur bestehe ich auf drei Bedingungen: Frische Luft, eine ruhige Strasze und eine schöne Aussicht. 13. Warum bauen Sie nicht auf der Anhöhe in der Vorstadt, jenseit des Flusses? 14. Daran habe ich schon gedacht, nur sind mir die Preise ein wenig zu hoch. 15. Das würde *mich* nicht abhalten, so lange ich nur bekäme, was ich wünschte. 16. Es wird mir wohl nichts übrig bleiben, als mich dort anzukaufen. 17. Beabsichtigen Sie, mit Backstein oder mit Quaderstein zu bauen? 18. Ich muss das erst mit meinem Architekten besprechen. 19. Welchen Architekten haben Sie gewählt? 20. Herrn Kalk, der den Plan meines alten Hauses entworfen hat. 21. Dann bekommen Sie jedenfalls ein gutes Haus. Ich wünsche Ihnen Glück zu Ihrem Unternehmen. 22. Danke vielmals.

B. 1. An old beggar-man said: "When I was young, I could have worked if I had wished (wollen), and now I should be glad to work, if I could, but I cannot. Alas! had I only been more industrious." 2. A certain French king is said to have died of hunger, for fear that he might be poisoned. 3. I wish my house were not so far from yours. 4. I too; if the way were not so long, we could visit each other oftener. 5. We were astonished to see Mr. B. on the street this morning, as we thought he was still in England. 6. They say he intended to remain three months longer in England, but that he was obliged to come home on account of business matters. 7. What did the gentleman whom we just met ask

you? He asked me how far it was to the town-hall. 8. The messenger asserted that he could not wait longer because he had no time, but I believe it was for (aus + dat.) another reason. 9. A certain gentleman wanted to set his watch, and asked his servant what o'clock it was. 10. The servant answered that he had no watch, but that he had seen a sun-dial in the neighbour's garden. 11. To this the gentleman replied absent-mindedly: "Go immediately and ask him for permission to bring it up here." 12. Do you believe that the German language is as difficult as the French? 13. When I began to study German, I thought it was not so difficult as French, but now I believe otherwise. 14. I should be very sorry, if the news were true which I heard this morning. 15. The boys must not skate to-day; the ice is too thin, and they might break through and be drowned. 16. Please tell me who translated Shakespeare's works into German. 17. Would it be worth while to take a carriage to drive to the bank? No, I do not think so. 18. *He* said that of us! I should never have believed it. 19. I asked the bookseller: "Have you Schiller's works?" He answered: "I have not a single copy of them left. 20. I asked the bookseller if he had Schiller's works, and he answered that he had not a single copy of them left.

LESSON XLV.

THE IMPERATIVE AND INFINITIVE MOODS.

269. THE IMPERATIVE MOOD.

The **Imperative** expresses a *command* and corresponds precisely to the English Imperative. The Imperative proper occurs only in the 2. person, the other persons being supplied by the Pres. Subjunctive (see § 268, 1, above).

REMARKS. — 1. The pronoun of the 2. Pers. is only expressed for the sake of emphasis or contrast, as:

Singe **du**, Do *you* sing.

Geht **ihr**, wir werden bleiben, *You* go, we shall remain.

NOTE. — The pronoun, if expressed, always *follows* the verb, as above.

2. Where no definite person is addressed (e. g., when an author is addressing his readers), **man** should be used with the Pres. Subj., as:

Man denke sich meinen Schrecken, Imagine my fright.

3. The Modal Auxiliaries sollen, müssen, lassen are used with imperative force, as:

Du **sollst** nicht töten, Thou **shalt** not k

Er **muß** schreiben, He **must** write.

Laß (laßt, lassen Sie) uns gehen, **Let** us go.

4. The Present and Future Indicative are sometimes used with emphatic imperative force, as:

Du **bleibst** hier! You are to stay here!

Sie **werden** die Güte **haben**, morgen früher zu kommen, You will have the goodness to come earlier to-morrow.

5. The Past Participle and Infinitive are also used in exclamatory clauses with the force of an Imperative, as:

Zugefahren, Kutscher! Drive on, coachman!

Still **stehen**! Stand still!

Einsteigen! All aboard!

6. In elliptical and exclamatory clauses a command is frequently expressed by an adverbial prefix or prepositional phrase, without a verb, as:

Frisch auf! Kameraden, **aufs Pferd**! **aufs Pferd**!
Up! comrades, **to horse**! **to horse**! (SCHILLER.)

Drauf und dran! Up and at them!

Her zu mir! (Come) hither to me! (GOETHE, *Faust.*)

THE INFINITIVE MOOD.

270. The Infinitive as Substantive.

The Infinitive is a verbal substantive, and any infinitive may be used as a substantive of the neuter gender, declined after the Maler Model (§ 16).

Remarks. — 1. The Infin. as Subst. indicates *action*, as: Das Lefen, '(the act of) reading,' — but: gute Lectüre, 'good reading, good literature.'

2. Some Infinitives have become substantives entirely, as: das Leben, life; das Entfetzen, horror.

3. The Infinitive, either with or without zu, is often used as subject of a verb, and as such may have an object by virtue of its verbal character, as:

Gute Freunde (zu) **haben** ift beffer als reich (zu) fein.

271. The Infinitive without zu.

The Infinitive *without* zu follows:

(*a*) The Modal Auxiliaries (see Lesson XXXIV); also werden in the formation of the future tense.

(*b*) The following verbs:

bleiben, remain	laffen, let, allow, permit
finden, find	lehren, teach
heißen, order, bid	lernen, learn
helfen, help	machen, make
hören, hear	fehen, see

and, in certain phrases, haben, as:

Ich habe nicht viel Geld auf der Bank **liegen**, I have not much money lying in the bank.

(*c*) After gehen and other verbs of motion in such phrases as fpazieren gehen, reiten, fahren, 'to go for a walk, ride, drive';

ſchlafen gehen, 'to go to bed' (not = 'go to sleep,' which is einſchlafen), etc.

(*d*) As *predicative subject*, with heißen, and as *object* with nennen, heißen, as:

Das heißt ſchnell **fahren**, That is quick driving.

Das nenne (heiße) ich ſchlecht **anfangen**, I call that beginning badly.

NOTE. — The Past Participle is also admissible in this construction; see § 281, 6, below.

REMARKS. — 1. After haben, bleiben, finden, hören, ſehen, gehen, in the constructions given above, the German Infin. corresponds to a *Present Participle* in English, as:

Er blieb **ſtehen**, He remained standing, etc.

2. The verbs under (*b*), except bleiben and heißen, also admit of a **daß** clause after them, as:

Ich habe gehört (geſehen), **daß** er angekommen ſei, I have heard **that** he is come.

3. The verbs helfen, lehren, lernen also take an Infin. *with* **zu** after them, as:

Ich habe gelernt, **zu** gehorchen, I have learnt to obey.

4. For the use of the Infin. for the **P. Part.** with these verbs, see § 199.

NOTE. — The verbs helfen, lehren, lernen do not substitute the Infin. for the P. Part. when followed by an Infin. *with* **zu** (see Rem. 3, above, and example).

5. For the Infin. with *passive sense* after laſſen, see § 200, 7 (*c*), Note.

272. THE INFINITIVE WITH **zu**.

The Infinitive with **zu** is used after other verbs, such as:

(*a*) Those implying something to be *attained*, *done* or *left undone*, as:

anfangen, beginnen, } begin
befehlen, command
bitten, beg
erlauben, allow
fürchten, fear
hoffen, hope
raten, advise
ſuchen, verſuchen, } try
unterneh'men, undertake
verbieten, forbid
wagen, venture
warnen, warn
wünſchen, wish

(*b*) Those implying a *suspension of judgment*, as:

beſchuldigen, accuse
einbilden, (refl.), imagine
glauben, believe
leugnen, deny
ſcheinen, seem
ſchmeicheln (refl.), flatter one's self.

(*c*) Those indicating various *states of mind*, as:

bereuen, repent
freuen (impers.), freuen (refl.), } rejoice
lieb ſein, be acceptable (be glad)
leid ſein (thun), be unacceptable (be sorry)

Remarks. — 1. With most of these verbs the Infinitive may be replaced by a daß clause, and *must* be so replaced unless the subject of the action in the dependent clause is either *subject* or *direct object* of the principal clause, as:

Er glaubt, ſehr geſchickt **zu ſein**, He believes himself to be very clever; — or:

Er glaubt, **daß** er ſehr geſchickt iſt.

Er hoffte, **zu kommen**, He hoped to come; — but:

Er hoffte, **daß** ſein Vater kommen werde, (see § 265, *c*), He hoped that his father would come.

Es that mir leid, Sie nicht geſehen **zu haben**, I was sorry not to have seen you; — or:

Es that mir leid, **daß** ich Sie nicht geſehen hatte; — but:

Es ist mir lieb, daß Sie gekommen sind, I am glad that you have come.

2. The Infinitive clause as *direct object* is often represented in the principal clause by the neut. pron. **es** (with prepositions by **da**, see § 277, below), as:

Ich wage **es** nicht, allein zu kommen, I do not venture to come alone.

Observe the idiomatic use of the Infinitive with zu after haben, sein, stehen, in the following examples:

Ich **habe** ihm einen Brief **zu** übergeben, I have a letter *to* deliver to him.

Es ist (steht) **zu** erwarten, It is *to be* expected.

NOTE. — In the latter example, the infin. has a *passive* signification.

EXERCISE XLV.

A. 1. Guten Morgen, alter Freund; nichts könnte mir gelegener sein, als dich anzutreffen. 2. Ich freue mich herzlich, dich zu sehen; ich habe schon lange einen Besuch von dir erwartet. 3. Du solltest doch wissen, dass man wenig Zeit hat, Besuche zu machen, wenn man sich auf ein Examen vorbereitet. 4. Das ist wahr, aber lass dir gratulieren; du hast ja ein glänzendes Examen bestanden. 5. Es ist mir freilich viel besser gelungen, als ich erwartete. 6. Was gedenkst du jetzt zu thun, da du promoviert hast? 7. Gerade das wollte ich mit dir besprechen; du kannst mir vielleicht mit gutem Rate beistehen. 8. Ich habe mich entschlossen, auf ein Jahr nach Europa zu gehen; wäre es nicht auch für dich sehr vorteilhaft, ein Jahr dort zuzubringen? 9. Sehr vorteilhaft, besonders wegen meines Sprachstudiums, aber ich fürchte meine Verhältnisse erlauben es mir nicht. 10. Das sehe ich nicht ein, es wird nur wenig mehr kosten dort zu leben als hier. 11. Bist du deiner Sache gewiss? 12. Ja wohl, weisst du, ein Vetter von mir ist kürzlich von Europa zurückgekommen, und ich habe

mich bei ihm genau nach Allem erkundigt. 13. Wo hat er die Zeit zugebracht? 14. Teils in England, teils in Frankreich (und) teils in Deutschland, und er behauptet, dass man in Europa wenigstens ebenso billig leben kann wie in Amerika. 15. Aber du hast die Reisekosten nicht mit eingerechnet. 16. Natürlich nicht, aber man reist jetzt viel billiger als man früher reiste. 17. Hast du dein Billet schon gelöst? 18. Noch nicht, aber ich habe mich darnach erkundigt und finde, dass man für hundert Thaler oder weniger über New York nach Liverpool reisen kann. 19. Zweite Klasse natürlich. 20. O nein, erste Klasse, und mit einer sehr guten Dampferlinie. 21. Ist es möglich? Du hast mich fast überredet, die Reise zu unternehmen. 22. Komm nur heute Abend zu mir und wir werden die Sache weiter besprechen. 23. Gut; also bis Abend.

B. 1. Have the goodness to read this letter for me; I have left my spectacles up-stairs, and cannot see very well. 2. Please read pretty loud, for my hearing is bad. 3. Help me to do my work, and I will help you to learn your lessons. 4. When you (man) do not know what to say (what you shall say), say nothing. 5. You will now close your books; we have read enough for the present. 6. "To err is human; to forgive, divine," is a verse from a poem by the English poet Pope. 7. I have so much work to do that I do not know where to begin. 8. Show the child how it is to learn its lesson. 9. I am tired of reading, and must now retire to rest. 10. "Eat, little bird, eat," said a child to her bird. 11. "Thou shalt not steal" is (called) the eighth commandment. 12. The habit of rising early is of great importance when one has a great deal of work to do. 13. If one wants to rise early, one should go to bed early. 14. An old, well-known proverb says: "Man does not live to eat, but eats to live." 15. Another proverb says: "Speaking is silver; silence is gold.' 16. When I arrived at the railway-station I found that I had no money with me; imagine my

embarrassment. 17. The art of making glass was already known to the ancients. 18. Are there any houses to sell or to rent in your neighbourhood? 19. I wish to speak to Mr. Bell. 20. Have (laſſen) John black my shoes, for I am in a hurry. 21. I have heard say that the celebrated bishop of G. is coming; would you not like to hear him preach? 22. Yes, I should like very much to hear him preach; when is (ſollen) he to come here? 23. We have had the good fortune to shoot three hares. 24. Some people would rather die than beg.

LESSON XLVI.

THE INFINITIVE MOOD (continued).

273. INFINITIVE OF PURPOSE.

The Infinitive with **zu** is used to express *purpose*, as:

Mein Freund kam, mich **zu warnen**, My friend came **to** warn me.

REMARKS. — 1. The Infin. expressing purpose is generally governed by the preposition **um** (see § 276, 1, below), which begins the clause, as:

Ich komme, **um** Sie nach Hauſe **zu** bringen, I come to fetch you home.

2. An Infin. clause with **zu** is always preceded by a comma in German.

3. This Infin. is also used, with or without **zu**, after adjectives preceded by **zu**, 'too,' or **genug**, 'enough,' as:

Ich war **zu** müde, (um) auszugehen **zu können**, I was **too** tired **to be** able to go out.

Er iſt reich **genug**, (um) viele Diener halten **zu können**, He is rich **enough to keep** many servants.

NOTE. — After an adjective with **zu**, a clause introduced by **als daß** may be used, as:

Ich war zu müde, **als daß** ich ausgehen **konnte**, I was too tired to be able to go out.

274. THE INFINITIVE AFTER SUBSTANTIVES.

The Infinitive with **zu** is used after substantives, nouns and adjectives, akin to the verbs in § 272, to express purpose, etc., as:

Ich habe **Luſt**, einen Spaziergang **zu machen**, I have *a mind* to take a walk.

Ich hatte keine **Zeit**, mich nach ihm **umzuſehen**, I had no *time* to look after him.

Er iſt ſtets **bereit**, den Armen **zu helfen**, He is always *ready* to help the poor.

275. THE ACCUSATIVE WITH THE INFINITIVE.

The Accusative with the Infinitive is inadmissible in modern German; hence verbs denoting statement, knowledge, perception, etc., must be followed by a **daß** clause, as:

(*Engl.*) I know **him to be** a good man,
(*Germ.*) Ich weiß, **daß er** ein guter Mann **iſt**.
(*Engl.*) I perceived **her to be** inattentive,
(*Germ.*) Ich merkte, **daß ſie** unaufmerkſam **war**.

REMARKS. — 1. In such sentences as those in the examples given in the above section, the passive construction with the Infin. is also inadmissible in German except impersonally, as:

(*Engl.*) He **is known** to be a good man.
(*Germ.*) **Man weiß, daß er** ein guter Menſch **iſt**; — or: **Es** iſt bekannt, **daß er** u. ſ. w.

2. Observe the different relations of the accusatives in the following sentences:

(*Engl.*) I begged **him** (*obj.* of 'begged') to come,
(*Germ.*) Ich bat **ihn** zu kommen.
(*Engl.*) I wish tc see **him** (*obj.* of 'see'),
(*Germ.*) Ich wünsche, **ihn** zu sehen.
(*Engl.*) I wish **him** (*subj.* of 'come') to come,
(*Germ.*) Ich wünsche, **daß er** komme.

3. After glauben, the Infin. is admissible in German, but not in English, when the subject of the action is the same in both clauses, as:

(*Germ.*) Ich glaubte, recht gehört **zu** haben,
(*Engl.*) I believed **that** I had heard aright.

When, on the contrary, the subjects are different, the Infin. (with accus.) is admissible in English, but not in German, as:

(*Engl.*) I believe **him to be** an honest man,
(*Germ.*) Ich glaube, **daß er** ein ehrlicher Mensch **ist**.

4. The English Infin. in objective indirect questions is unusual in German, and should be replaced by a finite clause, as:

(*Engl.*) He did not know where **to go**,
(*Germ.*) Er wußte nicht, wohin er gehen **sollte**.
(*Engl.*) He told me what **to do**,
(*Germ.*) Er sagte mir, was ich thun **sollte**.

276. The Infinitive governed by Prepositions.

1. Only three prepositions can govern an infinitive (with zu) directly, viz.: **um**, 'in order,' **ohne**, 'without,' and **(an)statt**, 'instead of,' as:

Er kam, **um** mich von diesem Unfall **zu benachrichtigen**,
He came, *in order to inform* me of this accident.

Ich konnte ihn nicht ansehen, **ohne** herzlich **zu** lachen,
I could not look at him, *without* laugh*ing* heartily.

Anſtatt mich geduldig anzuhören, unterbrach er mich beſtändig, *Instead of* listen*ing* to me patiently, he kept constantly interrupting me.

Remarks. — 1. Observe that in each of these examples the preposition stands at the beginning of the clause, the Infinitive at the *end*, with the words dependent on the Infinitive between.

2. The Infinitive after ohne and (an)ſtatt may be replaced by a **daß** clause. This is always the case when the subject of the action is different in the two clauses (compare § 224, 2, *b*, Rem.). Thus we may say:

Ich ſuchte vorbeizukommen, ohne geſehen **zu werden** (or: ohne daß ich geſehen wurde), I tried to go past without being seen;

but we *must* say:

Ich ſuchte vorbeizukommen, ohne **daß** man mich **ſah**, I tried to go past without *any one's* seeing me,

because the subjects of the two clauses are different.

277. With other prepositions, the Infinitive or **daß** clause is represented in the principal clause by the adverb **da** prefixed to the preposition, as:

Ich begnügte mich **damit**, ihn meine Unzufriedenheit merken **zu laſſen**, I was contented with showing him my dissatisfaction.

Wir verlaſſen uns **darauf, daß** Sie kommen, We rely on your coming.

Ich konnte ihn nicht **daran** verhindern, **auszugehen**, I could not prevent him from going out (or: his going out).

Er war eiferſüchtig **darauf, daß** wir eingeladen worden waren, He was jealous of our having been invited.

Wir ſehnen uns **danach**, Sie **wiederzuſehen**, We long **to** see you again.

Er findet Vergnügen **daran, Kinder zu necken**, He finds pleasure **in** teasing children.

Sie ärgerte ſich **darüber, daß** wir ſo ſpät kamen, She was angry **at our** coming so late.

REMARKS. — 1. The preposition 'of' is often omitted, as:

Die Nachricht, **daß** der Friede unterzeichnet worden war, The news **of** the peace **being** (having been) signed.

2. The Infin. clause is only admissible when the subject of the action is the same as in the principal clause (compare § 276, Rem. 2, above).

3. The English **Infinitive in -ing**, or **Gerund**, must be carefully distinguished from the Present Participle, with which it has no connection.

4. The genitive or possessive adjective in English before this Gerund will become the *subject* of the **daß** clause in German, as:

She was angry at **our** coming late, Sie war böſe darüber, daß **wir** zu ſpät kamen.

He insisted on **his sister's** learning Latin, Er beſtand darauf, daß **ſeine Schweſter** Latein lernte (lernen ſollte).

5. In an *indirect question*, **ob** takes the place of daß, as:

Es geht mich nichts an, **ob** er kommt oder nicht, It does not concern me, **whether** he comes or not.

6. When the Gerund expresses an *adverbial* relation (time, cause, etc.), it must be expanded into an *adverbial* clause, as:

Before concluding, I shall make one more observation, **Ehe ich ſchließe**, werde ich noch eine Bemerkung machen.

On seeing me, he held out his hand to me, **Als er mich ſah**, hielt er mir die Hand hin.

In persuading others we persuade ourselves, **Indem wir** andere **überreden**, überreden wir uns ſelbſt.

278. The Infinitive in Elliptical Constructions.

1. The Infinitive is used, as in English, in various elliptical constructions, without being dependent on any other word, as:

Warum mich wecken? Why waken me?

Nach ſeinem Ausſehen zu urteilen, To judge from his appearance.

2. For the Infinitive with the force of an Imperative, see § 269, Rem. 5, above.

EXERCISE XLVI.

A. 1. Nicht war, Fräulein B., Sie waren gestern Abend im Konzert? 2. Ja, waren Sie auch dort? Ich habe Sie nicht gesehen. 3. Das ist gern möglich; unter so vielen Menschen findet man sich nicht leicht. 4. Der Saal war gedrängt voll, wahrscheinlich weil das Konzert zum Besten des neuen Waisenhauses gegeben wurde. 5. Nicht allein das, sondern auch weil die neue Sängerin, Fräulein M., zum ersten Male auftrat. 6. Das Publikum schien von ihr ganz entzückt zu sein, und die Zeitungen sind heute Morgen voll ihres Ruhmes. 7. Ich habe nie eine so klare und starke Stimme gehört. 8. In der Arie aus Lohengrin hat sie sich besonders ausgezeichnet. 9. Das Lied von Schubert mit Harfen-Begleitung gefiel mir am besten. 10. Frau S. sang auch sehr gut, aber Sie schien ein wenig heiser zu sein. 11. Trotz dem, was die Kritiker sagen, gefiel mir ihr Gesang besser als der von Frl. M. 12. Ich finde auch, dass sie mit mehr Gefühl singt und dass ihre Stimme geschulter ist. 13. Was halten Sie vom Geigenspiel des Herrn K.? 14. Es muss sehr gut sein, dem Beifall nach zu urteilen, aber ich ver-

stehe mich nicht auf die Geige. 15. Ich ziehe die Geige jedem andern Instrumente vor. 16. Spielt Ihr ältester Bruder nicht die Geige? 17. Nein, aber er spielt die Flöte und begleitet mich oft, wenn ich auf dem Klavier spiele. 18. Ihre Familie ist überhaupt sehr musikalisch. 19. Ja wohl, wir spielen fast alle mehr oder weniger. 20. Selbst Ihre kleinen Geschwister? 21. Ja, Marie spielt die Guitarre, Anna die Geige und Friedrich nimmt seit einigen Monaten Stunden auf dem Violoncell. 22. Wissen Sie, ob viel für das Waisenhaus übrig bleibt, nachdem alle Kosten bestritten sind? 23. Etwa fünf hundert Thaler, doch beabsichtigt man, ein zweites Konzert im Laufe des Winters für denselben Zweck zu geben.

B. 1. Let us (indef.) not return evil for evil. 2. Do what is right, let it cost what it may. 3. The eighth commandment says that we are not to steal. 4. He was punished for having neglected his duty. 5. The teacher told us we should close our books, we had read enough for the present. 6. Freddy, do you stand, and give your little brother your chair. 7. In German they say of one who buys anything without seeing it that he buys a cat in a bag. 8. Do you care to go for a drive with us? 9. No, thank you. Do you ride (fahren); I prefer to walk. 10. Who has left these books lying on the table? 11. John; and he says he forgot to take them up. 12. Bid him carry them up immediately into the study, and then let him come down here. 13. Every one thought Mr. N. to be a rich man, but he failed (perf.) lately. 14. I have not a single pen fit to write with, and I have a dozen letters to write. 15. Do not allow yourself to be disturbed by my coming; do not stop writing. 16. The beggar, of whom we were speaking in another exercise, passed his youth in idling instead of working. 17. Little Frederick had the misfortune to break an arm while skating, and he was obliged to remain lying in bed a week. 18. Alfred the Great divided the day

into three parts: one part was devoted to business, the second to reading, praying and studying, and the third to eating, sleeping and pleasure. 19. We wished our friends to come in, but they had no time. 20. I am glad to have made your acquaintance. 21. If you go hunting without your father knowing it, he will be very much displeased. 22. Our teacher used to insist on our writing a German exercise every day, and it was impossible for us to neglect this duty without his knowing it. 23. Before going home we must go to visit your old friend L. If you went away without his seeing you, he would be very sorry. 24. We heard some one coming behind us on the street, and we remained standing at the corner to see who it was. 25. Our old neighbour has three sons, but instead of their supporting him, he is obliged to support them. Is he not very much to be pitied?

LESSON XLVII.

THE PARTICIPLES.

279. The Participles are properly Verbal Adjectives, and their uses and constructions are those of Adjectives. There are three Participles, the Present, the Past and the Future-Passive or Gerundive. The English compound Perfect Participle (e. g., 'having praised') has no corresponding form in German, and must be rendered by a clause (see § 284, below).

280. THE PRESENT PARTICIPLE.

The **Present Participle** has active force, and, like the Present Indic., marks a *present* or *continuing* state or action, the substantive which it qualifies being the subject of the action, as:

Das **ſchlafende** Kind, The **sleeping** child (= 'the child that sleeps').

Eine **haarſträubende** Geſchichte, A story **that makes** one's hair stand on end.

The Present Participle is for the most part used only *attributively*, as in the above examples. It is used predicatively only:

(*a*) When it is a true adjective in function, without any idea of *time*, as:

Seine Krankheit iſt nicht **bedeutend**, His illness is not **serious**.

Die Schönheit dieſer Landſchaft iſt **entzückend**, The beauty of this landscape is **enchanting** (i. e., delightful).

(*b*) In **apposition** with the *subject* (sometimes also with the *direct* object) of the sentence in which it occurs, when the action of the Participle is *simultaneous* with that of the principal verb, as:

Sich ſchnell nach mir **umwendend**, ſah er mir ins Geſicht, **Turning** quickly around, he looked into my face.

Errötend ſchlug ſie die Augen nieder, **Blushing** she dropped her eyes.

Preiſend mit viel ſchönen Reden
Ihrer Länder Wert und Zahl,
Saßen viele deutſche Fürſten
Einſt zu Worms im Kaiſerſaal. (KERNER.)

Praising with many fine speeches the worth and number of their territories, many German princes were sitting one day in the Imperial Hall at Worms.

REMARKS. — 1. This construction is more usual in poetic or exalted diction than in ordinary language, where it is generally replaced by an adverbial clause (see § 284, below).

2. The Present Participle is not used in German, as it is in English, with the auxiliary 'to be' (see § 31, Rem. 3).

281. THE PAST PARTICIPLE.

The **Past Participle** of a *transitive* verb has passive force, not necessarily with any distinct reference to past time, as:

Das **geliebte** Kind, The **beloved** child (i. e., the child that *is* or *was* beloved).

But when the participle indicates a single action, it has perfect force, as:

Das **geſtohlene** Pferd, The horse **which has been stolen.**

The Past Participle of an *intransitive* verb has active force, as:

Die Muſik hat **aufgehört**, The music has **ceased.**

REMARKS. — 1. The Past Participle of transitive verbs may be used attributively as well as predicatively, as in the first two examples above.

2. The Past Participle of intransitive verbs conjugated with ſein is sometimes used attributively and denotes a *state* produced by the action of the verb, as:

Das **weggelaufene** Pferd, The horse **which had run away**; but not: Das **gelaufene** Pferd.

3. The Past Participle, like the Present (compare § 280 *b*, above), may be used predicatively in *apposition* to the subject (or sometimes to the *direct* object) of the sentence in which it occurs, as:

Das Volk, vom Fürſten **unterdrückt**, empörte ſich gegen ihn, The people, **oppressed** by the prince, revolted against him.

4. For the Past Participle with Imperative force, see §269, 5.

5. The Past Participle replaces the English *Present* Participle after kommen to specify the manner of the motion, as:

Er kam **gegangen, gelaufen** u. ſ. w., He came **walking, running**, etc.

6. After verbs of *calling*, it is used for the Infinitive, as:

Das heißt (nenne ich) für die Zukunft **geſorgt**, That is (I call that) **caring** for the future.

7. It also replaces an Infinitive in such phrases as the following:

Ich muß fort! Lieber hier Alles im Stiche **gelaſſen**! I must go! Rather (would I) **leave** everything in the lurch here. (LESSING.)

8. It is used in a few *absolute* constructions, with or without a substantive, which is usually in the accusative when present, as:

Zugegeben, daß dies wahr iſt, **Granted** that this is true.

Meinen Bruder **ausgenommen**, waren alle zugegen, **Except** my brother, all were present.

282. THE FUTURE PASSIVE PARTICIPLE.

This Participle, also called the **Gerundive**, has the form of the Present Part. preceded by **zu**. It is formed from *transitive* verbs only, and is only used attributively, being replaced in the predicate by an infinitive with zu, as:

Eine **zu lobende** Handlung, An act **to be praised**; but: Eine Handlung, welche **zu loben** iſt.

283. GENERAL REMARKS ON THE PARTICIPLES.

1. Many words with the form of Participles have the value of adjectives. Some occur as adjectives only (see also § 194, Note), others with a special meaning, as: gelehrt, learned; bekannt, acquainted; verſchieden, different; bejahrt, aged, etc.

2. All Participles (except the Past Part. of some intransitive verbs, see § 281, Rem. 2, above) may be used as pure adjectives, and as such may be compared or used as adjectival substantives (see § 122), frequently with concrete meaning, as: der Reiſende, the traveller; der Leſende, the man who reads; der Vorſitzende, the chairman; das Geleſene, what one has read.

3. Participles, unless they have become pure adjectives, are used sparingly as adverbs; but the Participle in *apposition* (see §§ 280, *b*; 281, 3, above) may sometimes be construed as an adverb, e. g.:

Schweigend drückte er mir die Hand, **Silently** (in silence) he pressed my hand.

Remark. — This participial adverb of manner may be replaced by an adverbial clause with indem.

4. The Participle, when used attributively, *always* follows all words qualifying or modifying it, and immediately precedes its substantive; as predicate, it sometimes, especially in poetry, precedes them (see § 280 *b*, above), but generally and more correctly follows, as:

Das von ſeinen Eltern innig **geliebte** Kind, The child, dearly **beloved** by its parents.

Mit der einen Hand **ſchwimmend**, mit der andern das Kind über dem Waſſer **emporhaltend** u. ſ. w., **Swimming** with one hand, with the other **holding** the child above water, etc.

Das Volk, vom Fürſten **unterdrückt** u. ſ. w., The people, **oppressed** by the prince, etc.

284. English Participial Constructions.

1. The Present Participle is never used in German, as it so frequently is in English, to express adverbial relations of time

or cause, and must be replaced, where so used, by a regular adverbial clause, introduced by the proper adverb or conjunction, as follows:

(*a*) To express **time**, the conjunctions **da**, **als**, 'when,' **indem**, **während**, 'while,' must be used, as:

Seeing him turn pale, I hastened to his assistance, **Da** (**als**) ich ihn erbleichen **ſah**, eilte ich ihm zur Hilfe herbei.

Recovering himself, the orator continued, **Indem** er ſich ſammelte, fuhr der Redner fort.

Remarks. — 1. The English Perfect Participle is replaced by a clause with **nachdem** (or **als**), with the Pluperfect, as:

Having examined his papers, they let him go, **Nachdem** man ſeine Papiere unterſucht **hatte**, ließ man ihn gehen.

2. The clause with **indem**, indicating simultaneous action, may be replaced by a participial clause in the case specified in § 280, *b*, above.

(*b*) To express **cause**, the conjunctions **da**, **indem**, 'as,' 'since,' or **weil**, 'because,' must be used, as:

Being an honest man, he may be trusted, **Weil** er ein ehrlicher Mann iſt, ſo kann man ihm trauen.

Hoping to see you soon, I remain ever yours, **Indem** ich hoffe, Sie bald zu ſehen, verbleibe ich ſtets der Ihrige.

Not **having found** him at home, I went away, **Da** ich ihn nicht zu Hauſe **gefunden hatte**, ging ich fort.

2. The Present Participle *qualifying* a preceding substantive or pronoun is changed:

(*a*) Into a regular *relative* clause with finite verb, as:

A loaf was found at Herculaneum, **still retaining** its form, Ein Brot wurde zu Herculanum gefunden, **welches** noch die Form **beibehielt**.

The ship, **having** come straight towards us, showed the black flag, Das Schiff, **welches** gerade auf uns **zugekommen war**, zeigte die schwarze Flagge.

NOTE. — The tense of the verb in the adverbial clause will correspond with that of the principal verb, as shown above, the Pluperfect, however, generally replacing the English Perfect Participles.

(*b*) Into an *attributive* participial clause, in which the Participle will immediately precede the substantive (see § 283, 4, above), as:

A man **passing** on the street, Ein auf der Straße **vorbeigehender** Mann.

3. A Participle preceded by an adverbial conjunction is replaced by a finite clause with the corresponding conjunction, as:

While travelling in Europe, we met a great many Americans, **Als** wir in Europa reisten, trafen wir mit vielen Amerikanern zusammen.

For the Infinitive in **–ing**, or Gerund, and its German equivalents, see § 276, above.

EXERCISE XLVII.

A. 1. Haben Sie Ihr Billet schon gelöst? 2. Nein, noch nicht. 3. Dann müssen wir uns beeilen; wir sollten erst etwas geniessen, ehe wir abreisen. 4. Hier ist der Schalter; soll ich auch ein Billet für Sie nehmen? 5. Danke, ich habe meins schon gelöst. 6. Jetzt bin ich fertig, aber wir haben kaum drei Viertelstunden Zeit, bis der Zug abfährt. 7. Dann müssen wir nach der ersten besten Restauration gehen. 8. Dort drüben ist eine. 9. Das trifft sich gut; gehen wir gleich hinein. 10. Kellner, wir haben es sehr eilig. 11. Nehmen Sie Platz, meine Herren; ich werde Sie sofort bedienen; hier ist die Speisekarte. 12. Geben Sie mir gefälligst einen Teller Suppe. 13. Und Sie, mein Herr? 14. Bringen Sie mir zuerst eine Serviette. 15. Entschuldigen Sie, hier ist sie. 16. Ich nehme

eine Forelle. 17. Bedaure, es ist keine mehr da. 18. Nun, dann bringen Sie mir ein Stück Lachs. 19. Hier ist die Weinkarte; trinken die Herren Wein? 20. Bringen Sie eine Flasche Rotwein und Gläser. 21. Wie schmeckt Ihnen der Fisch? 22. Ausgezeichnet. 23. Diese Suppe schmeckt mir gar nicht. 24. Lassen Sie sich doch Fisch kommen. 25. Ich mache mir nichts aus Fisch; — Kellner! 26. Zu Befehl. 27. Eine Portion Entenbraten mit grünen Erbsen. 28. Wünschen Sie keine Kartoffeln? 29. Jawohl, gebratene Kartoffeln. Bringen Sie auch Brot. 30. Noch etwas? 31. Nein. Was wünschen Sie, Herr B.? 32. Bitte, reichen Sie mir die Speisekarte. Ich bestelle mir Kalbskoteletten mit Kartoffeln und gelben Rüben. 33. Sonst noch Gemüse? 34. Etwas Blumenkohl. 35. Erinnern Sie sich schon früher hier gespeist zu haben, Herr B.? 36. Nicht dass ich wüsste; die Restauration scheint neu zu sein. 37. Deshalb wird man vielleicht so gut bedient. 38. Ist den Herren etwas gefällig? 39. Bringen Sie mir eine Portion Eis und eine Tasse Kaffee. 40. Und mir eine Tasse Chocolade und eine Portion Erdbeeren mit Sahne, und schreiben Sie alles auf meine Rechnung. 41. Hier ist die Rechnung, mein Herr. 42. Wie viel beträgt sie? 43. Sieben Mark fünfzig Pfennig. 44. Hier sind acht Mark; das Übrige ist Ihr Trinkgeld. 45. Jetzt müssen wir fort; es hat soeben auf dem Bahnhofe zum ersten Male geläutet.

B. 1. A sleeping fox catches no chicken. 2. Sleeping dogs do not bite. 3. The past cannot be helped (changed); let us rather think of what is to come. 4. It is much better to think without speaking than to speak without thinking. 5. Man is a speaking animal, a fire-using animal, a laughing animal: these are some of the definitions which have been proposed by philosophers. 6. We learn to speak German in speaking German. 7. Well hit (treffen)! I call that well played! 8. I wanted to show you an article in yesterday's

paper, but it is nowhere to be found. 9. Let me know when you think of coming to town. 10. The skill of ants in the building of their nests is astonishing. 11. Smiling, he began to read the letter, but before having read the half of it, he threw it furiously on the floor. 12. A hussar came galloping down the street and said the battle was beginning. 13. The *Paradise Lost* of Milton is one of the most important works of English literature; it was written in the seventeenth century, but this does not prevent its being still much read. 14. After having been so well received by us, I wonder that he is not ashamed to speak evil of us. 15. The morning was cool and charming, but towards noon the heat became oppressive, and we saw great clouds rising in the west. 16. He says the matter is perfectly clear, but his saying so does not make any difference. 17. He went away complaining that there was no use talking to people who did not want to understand. 18. That was because he was angry, and because he had not succeeded in making himself understood (verſtändlich). 19. Make no mistakes in copying your exercise, or else a second copying will be your punishment. 20. Besides making mistakes the last time, you wrote very badly. 21. "The danger to be avoided," said he, "is not yet past." 22. Going (hingehen) to visit our friends in Schiller-street this afternoon, we met them coming to visit us. 23. His being rich is no excuse for his being lazy; we do not need to be idle merely because we are not forced to earn our bread. 24. A certain man, just before dying, called his sons to him, and told them there was a treasure lying hidden somewhere in his field. 25. Believing they would find it, they began digging everywhere, but without finding the wished-for (erwünſcht) treasure. 26. One of them, wiser than the others, finally guessed what his father had meant by having told them this. 27. This son said that since digging the ground the crop had been much better, and that this was the treasure the father meant.

LESSON XLVIII.

CONCORD AND APPOSITION.

285. Concord of Subject and Verb.

1. The predicate verb (the *finite* part, or that containing the *copula*) agrees with its subject in number and person.

2. Two or more subjects require the verb in the plural, as:

Mein Vater und meine Mutter **ſind** hier geweſen, My father and mother **have** been here.

Remarks. — 1. If the subject nearest to the verb be singular, the verb is sometimes in the singular, especially if the subjects *follow* the verb, as:

Seine Habſucht, ſeine üppige Lebensart, ſein hochfahrendes Weſen **brachte** die Erbitterung gegen ihn aufs höchſte, His avarice, his luxurious mode of living, his arrogant behaviour, **excited** the animosity against him to the highest point. (Schiller, *Egmont's Leben und Tod.*)

Oben bei dem Throne **lag** der König und die Königin, Above near the throne **lay** the King and Queen. (Grimm, *Dornröschen.*)

Note. — This is especially the case when the subjects, indicating things or abstract ideas, are regarded as forming together one idea, or are more less synonymous, e. g.:

Haus und Hof iſt verkauft, House and home **are** sold.

Geld und Gut macht nicht glücklich, Money and property (= wealth) **do** not make [one] happy;

or when particular attention is called to the last (as forming a climax), e. g.:

Mein Vermögen, mein Ruf, **mein Leben ſteht** nicht auf dem Spiele, My property, my reputation, my *life* (the most important of all), **are** not at stake.

2. If the subjects be of different *persons*, the verb agrees in person with the first rather than the second or third, and with the second rather than the third, the plural pronoun of the proper person being usually (always with the second person) expressed before the verb, as:

Du und ich (mein Bruder und ich), **wir** gingen aus, You and I (my brother and I) went out.

Du und deine Schweſter, **ihr ſeid** ausgegangen, You and your sister went out.

3. With titles of rank and compliment the verb is usually in the plural (see also § 49), as:

Seine Majeſtät **haben** geruht u. ſ. w., His Majesty **has** been pleased, etc.

4. *Collectives*, if singular, take a verb in the singular, unless followed by a plural substantive in apposition or in the genitive, as:

Eine große Menſchenmenge **war** zugegen; — but:

Eine große Menge Menſchen **waren** zugegen, A great number of people were present.

NOTES. — 1. The singular may also be used in such cases as that given in the second example above, unless the collective is considered with reference to its component parts *individually*.

2. With nouns of Number in the sing. (see § 185, 1) the verb is used in the plur. only when an *indefinite* quantity is meant, as:

Ein **paar** (= **einige**) Tage **waren** vergangen, A few days had passed; — but:

Ein Paar Stiefel **koſtet** ſieben Thaler, A pair of shoes costs seven dollars.

5. When the real (logical) subject is represented by **es**, or some other neut. sing. pron., before the verb (see §§ 39; 82, Rem. 2; 141), the verb agrees with the *logical*, not with the grammatical subject, as:

Es **ſind** meine Brüder, It **is** my brothers.

NOTE. — With a *personal* pronoun as subject, this **es** follows the verb (see § 39, 2).

6. If the subjects be separated by a disjunctive conjunction or conjunctions, the verb regularly agrees with the last only, but this rule is by no means so strictly observed as in English, even by the best writers, e. g.:

Weder die Union **noch** die Ligue **miſchten** ſich in dieſen Streit, **Neither** the Union **nor** the league took part in this dispute.

Sowohl die Lage **als** die Befeſtigung dieſer Stadt **ſchienen** jedem Angriffe Trotz zu bieten, The situation, **as well as** the fortification, of this city seemed to defy every attack. (SCHILLER, *30jähriger Krieg.*)

NOTES. — 1. Constructions like the following:

Entweder du oder ich **bin** taub, Either you or I **am** deaf,

are in German, as in English, felt to be awkward, and are therefore avoided by substituting some other construction, e. g.:

Entweder ich bin taub, oder du biſt es, Either I am deaf, or you are.

2. The sing. is used after expressions of the time of day, and in the multiplication-table, as:

Es **iſt** zehn Uhr, It **is** ten o'clock.

Zehn mal elf **iſt** (**macht**) hundert und zehn, Ten times eleven **is** one hundred and ten.

286. REPETITION OF SUBJECT.

When several connected sentences have a common subject, the subject must be repeated (as pronoun) when the order of the words is changed, as:

Der Zug kommt um neun Uhr an, und fährt um halb zehn wieder ab, The train arrives at nine o'clock, and leaves again at half-past nine; — but:

Der Zug kommt um neun Uhr an, und um halb zehn fährt **er** wieder ab, The train arrives at nine o'clock, and at half-past nine **it** leaves again.

287. Omission of Predicative Verb.

Haben and ſein, as auxiliaries of tense, may be omitted in a *subordinate* sentence, as:

Nachdem ſie den Brief **geleſen**, weinte ſie, After she **had** read the letter, she wept.

288. Other Concords.

1. The **Attributive** (or **Determinative**) **Adjective** agrees with the substantives it qualifies in gender, number and case (for inflections see Less. XX, XXII, XXIV); the **Predicative** Adjective has no inflection (see § 14).

2. For the concord of Pronouns and Pronominal Adjectives with their antecedent (in gender, number and person) see §§ 38, Rem. 4; 39; 43, Rem. 3, 4; 82, Rem. 1, 2; 83, Rem. 1; 86; 95, 1 (*b*); 162, 2.

Note. — A Relative Pronoun referring to an antecedent of the first or second person takes the verb in the *third* person, unless the relative is followed by the personal pronoun, as stated in § 95, 1 (*b*), e. g.:

Biſt du es, der ſo zittert? — or: Biſt du es, der **du** ſo zitterſt?
Is it you that tremble?

289. The Appositive Substantive.

1. A substantive or pronoun may have another substantive attached to it attributively, giving a further description or definition of the person or thing spoken of. This latter substantive is said to be **in apposition** to the former, as:

Mein Freund, **der Lehrer**, trug ſeine einzige Waffe, **einen dicken Stock**, in der Hand, My friend, **the teacher**, carried his only weapon, **a thick stick**, in his hand.

2. A substantive or pronoun may also be placed in apposition to a sentence or clause, as:

Er ſagte, daß er wieder ganz geſund ſei, **eine Behauptung**, welche ich bezweifelte, or: **was** ich bezweifelte, He said he was quite well again, **a statement** which I doubted.

3. The appositive substantive is in the same case as the substantive which it defines, thus:

Karl (Nom.), mein jüngſter Bruder, iſt krank, Charles, my youngest brother, is ill.

Die Krankheit Karls (Gen.), meines jüngſten Bruders, The illness of Charles, my youngest brother.

Eine gefährliche Krankheit drohte (intr.) Karl (Dat.), meinem jüngſten Bruder; or: bedrohte (trans.) Karl (Acc.), meinen jüngſten Bruder, A dangerous illness threatened Charles, my youngest brother.

NOTES. — 1. A substantive in apposition to a sentence is put in the Nominative, as in the example under 2, above.

2. An appositive genitive without a determinative word before it, especially when governing another genitive, is uninflected, as:

Die Krankheit des Kronprinzen, Sohn des deutſchen Kaiſers, The illness of the Crown-Prince, son of the German Emperor; but:

Die Krankheit des Kronprinzen, des älteſten Sohnes u. ſ. w., The illness of the Crown-Prince, the eldest son, etc.

4. The appositive substantive generally agrees also in number with the word it defines, except in the case of abstract substantives and collectives, as:

Corneliens Kinder, ihr Stolz und ihre Freude, Cornelia's children, her pride and joy.

Da lebten die Hirten, ein harmlos Geſchlecht, There lived the shepherds, a harmless race. (SCHILLER.)

5. The appositive substantive agrees in gender when there is a special form for the feminine, as:

Die Gravitation iſt die Lenkerin der Bahnen aller Himmelskörper, Gravitation is the director of the courses of all heavenly bodies.

6. These rules are also applicable to an apposition introduced by als, 'as,' e. g.:

Ich kannte ihn als Knabe (Nom.), I knew him as (when) a boy (i. e., when *I* was a boy); — but:

Ich kannte ihn als Knaben, I knew him when (*he* was) a boy.

EXERCISE XLVIII.

A. 1. Können Sie mir eine gute Buchhandlung empfehlen? 2. Was für Bücher wollen Sie kaufen? 3. Ich möchte mir die Werke einiger von den besten deutschen Schriftstellern anschaffen. 4. Sie sollten zu Herrn Braun gehen; er hat einen sehr groszen Vorrat, besonders von den deutschen Klassikern. 5. Wo ist das Geschäft? 6. Nur einige Schritt(e) von hier, Nummer fünf, um die Ecke; ich werde Sie begleiten. 7. Das wäre mir sehr angenehm. 8. Sie scheinen ein groszer Bücherfreund zu sein. 9. Ja, das ist eine Schwäche, die mich viel Geld kostet, aber mir auch viel Vergnügen macht. 10. Hier ist der Laden; ich erwarte Sie auf meinem Bureau, wenn Sie fertig sind. 11. Ich danke vielmals für Ihre Aufmerksamkeit. Also, auf Wiedersehen. 12. Zeigen Sie mir gefälligst einige Exemplare von Schillers Werken. 13. Gebunden oder ungebunden? 14. Zeigen Sie mir beides. 15. Aus wie vielen Bänden besteht dieses Exemplar? 16. Aus zwölf, und ich möchte Sie auf den ausgezeichneten Druck aufmerksam machen. 17. Der Druck ist sehr klar; haben Sie noch sonstige (andere) Ausgaben? 18. Wir haben Ausgaben in gröszerem Format', aber nur gebunden. Hier sind sie. 19. Das Format gefällt mir besser, aber ich mag den Einband nicht. 20. Dem ist leicht abzuhelfen. Ich bestelle Ihnen ein Exemplar und lasse es nach Ihrem Geschmack einbinden. 21. Gut, ich möchte es in braunem Leder mit Titel gebunden haben; aber wie viel soll ich Ihnen dafür bezahlen? 22. Die Ausgabe kostet zehn Thaler, der Einband fünf. 23. Bekomme ich Rabatt'? 24. Ja, zehn Prozent gegen bare Bezahlung. 25. Ich bezahle bar; das macht zwei und vierzig Mark. 26. Wünschen Sie noch etwas? 27. Ich

möchte auch Goethes sämmtliche Werke in demselben Format und Einband haben. 28. Es thut mir leid, dass wir keine mehr haben, aber ich kann sie bestellen und gleich mit der anderen Ausgabe einbinden lassen. 29. Zum selben Preise? 30. Nein, es wird mit Einband achtzehn Thaler netto betragen. 31. Dann besorgen Sie es gefälligst, und schicken Sie mir die Werke nebst Rechnung an diese Adresse ; hier ist meine Karte. 32. Ich besorge alles aufs Sorgfältigste ; binnen acht Tagen sollen Sie die Bücher haben.

B. 1. "Books," said Alfonso the Wise of Spain, "are my most honest councillors : neither fear nor hope prevents them telling me what my duty is." 2. "It is not my courtiers," said this king, "who tell me most honestly what my duty is, it is my books." 3. "No courtier dares to say to a king : 'Your Majesty is wrong,' but my books tell me so every day." 4. I asked a gentleman standing near me, if he knew what time it was, and he answered me that it was exactly twelve o'clock. 5. More than two hours have passed since then, so it must now be between two and three o'clock. 6. Was it you that came to see me yesterday, when I was away from home? 7. Yes, my brother and I wanted to visit you, and we were sorry not to find you at home. 8. Margaret, the eldest daughter of Henry VII. of England, married James IV. of Scotland. 9. These were the grand-parents of Mary Stuart, Queen of Scotland. 10. To do what is right, and to be happy, is one and the same, for virtue is its own reward. 11. Dear father and mother, do you remain sitting here until I go for a carriage to drive you home, for I know you are too tired to walk. 12. Twelve and twelve make twenty-four, and twelve times twelve is one hundred and forty-four. 13. After having seen London and Paris, we had not much desire to see other cities. 14. I wrote to K., inviting him to pass his holidays with us, and by return of post received a letter,

saying we might expect him in a fortnight. 15. I asked you first as my oldest friend to assist me in this embarrassment. 16. I know we should avoid asking our friends for help until we have done our utmost to help ourselves. 17. The huntsman whistled, and his dogs came running from the wood. 18. Our teacher was in the habit of telling us we should do what was right, let it cost what it would. 19. Is your teacher still living? Yes, he is still living, but he is getting very old now. 20. Goethe and Schiller are the two greatest poets of Germany: it is difficult to say which of the two is most beloved by the German people. 21. If you think we are right, give us some sign of approval: a word, a smile, a glance will suffice. 22. All the rest of our party arrived at the top of the mountain before sunset, but my friend and I arrived only at nine in the evening. 23. Expect us on Thursday next, health and weather permitting. 24. The gentleman coming out of that shop is Dr. B., and the lady accompanying him is his niece, Miss L. 25. Did you ever see the Emperor William? I have never seen him as Emperor of Germany, but I saw him many years ago as King of Prussia.

LESSON XLIX.

APPOSITION (continued): — APPOSITIVE ADJECTIVES. — SYNTAX OF THE PREPOSITION.

290. The Appositive Adjective.

1. Attributive Adjectives and participles are said to be used appositively when they are separated from their substantive, as:

> Der Page, **jung, hübſch** und **geiſtreich**, war der Liebling des Hauſes, The page, **young, handsome** and **clever**, was the favourite of the house.

In der Schlacht **feurig** und **furchtlos**, war Monmouth sonst überall weichlich und unschlüssig, **Ardent** and **intrepid** in battle, Monmouth was everywhere else effeminate and irresolute.

2. This appositive adjective or participle is, like the predicate adjective, uninflected, and is placed at the end of its clause. It is used much more sparingly in German than in English, and is almost wholly confined to apposition with the *subject* of the sentence (sometimes also with the *direct object*). In English the attributive adjective or participle is generally used appositively when it has more than one modifier, and always when it has a complement (as in the second example above). In German on the contrary the attributive adjective is freely used in all such cases before a substantive. All such appositive adjectives or participles, unless referring to the subject (or direct object) of the sentence, must be rendered in German either by an *attributive* or by a *relative* clause. The following examples will serve to illustrate to what extent the appositive adjective can be used in German, and to show how it is to be replaced in German in various connections.

(*a*) *English Appositive* = *German Appositive* (see also the examples under 1, above):

(*Engl.*) **Beleaguered** with present distresses and the most horrible forebodings on every side, **roused** to the highest pitch of indignation, yet **forced** to keep silence and wear the face of patience, Schiller could endure this constraint no longer. (CARLYLE, *Life of Schiller.*)

(*Germ.*) Von gegenwärtigen Nöten und den schrecklichsten Ahnungen von allen Seiten **heimgesucht**, bis auf den höchsten Grad **entrüstet**, **gezwungen** jedoch, stillzuschweigen und die Maske der Geduld zu tragen, konnte Schiller diesen Zwang nicht länger erdulden.

NOTE. — In this example, as in those under 1. above, the adjectives (participles) *beleaguered*, etc., are in apposition to the subject 'Schiller.'

(*b*) *English Appositive Adjective = German Attributive Adjective or Relative Clause:*

(i) (*Engl.*) To judge from the quantity of light **emitted** from the brightest stars, there is (one has) reason to suppose that some of them are much greater than the sun.
(*Germ.*) Nach der von den hellſten Sternen **ausgeſtrahlten** Lichtmaſſe zu urteilen, hat man Grund anzunehmen, daß einige davon viel größer ſind als die Sonne; or: nach der Lichtmaſſe zu urteilen, **welche** u. ſ. w. **ausgeſtrahlt wird** u. ſ. w.

(ii) (*Engl.*) In the Isle of Man vast trees are found **standing firm** on their roots.
(*Germ.*) Auf der Inſel Man findet man mächtige Bäume, **welche** auf den Wurzeln **feſtſtehen**; or: mächtige, auf den Wurzeln **feſtſtehende** Bäume.

NOTES. — 1. The participles in these examples are in apposition to the *objects* 'quantity (of light)' and 'tree' respectively.

2. Observe the position of the Germ. attributive adj. *immediately before the substantive.*

(*c*) *English Appositive Adjective = German Attributive Adjective:*

(i) (*Engl.*) Bruce caused his men to lie down to take some sleep at a place about half a mile **distant** from the river.
(*Germ.*) Bruce ließ ſeine Leute ſich an einer ungefähr eine halbe Meile vom Fluſſe **entfernten** Stelle niederlegen, um ein wenig zu ſchlafen.

NOTE. — An attributive clause is preferable here, since a relative clause would separate the clause of purpose (um, etc.) from the infin. (niederlegen) on which it depends.

(ii) (*Engl.*) During the eruption of the volcano, the darkness **occasioned** by the ashes was so profound, that nothing like it was ever experienced.
(*Germ.*) Während des Ausbruches des Vulkans **war die** durch die Aſche **verurſachte** Finſternis ſo tief, **wie man** nie etwas Ähnliches wahrgenommen hatte.

NOTE. — Although the participle 'occasioned' is here in apposition to the subject 'darkness,' yet the position of the subject *after* the verb forbids the use of the appositive construction in German, as also in the following sentence:

(iii) (*Engl.*) It was a place **advantageous** for defence.
(*Germ.*) Es war eine zur Verteidigung **günſtige** Stelle.

(*d*) *English Appositive Adjective = German Relative Clause:*

(*Engl.*) This plant has changed into two distinct vegetables, as **unlike** each other as is each of them to the parent-plant.
(*Germ.*) Dieſe Pflanze hat ſich in zwei verſchiedene Gemüſearten verwandelt, **welche** einander ſo **unähnlich ſind**, wie jede derſelben der Mutterpflanze iſt.

NOTE. — Here the attributive construction is inadmissible on account of the subsequent clause wie jede u. ſ. w.

291. SYNTAX OF THE PREPOSITIONS.

The cases governed by the various Prepositions are fully treated of in Lessons IX, XIII, A, and XXXVIII, and their idiomatic use is further defined in Less. XXXIX.

The object of many verbs, as well as that of substantives and adjectives corresponding with them in signification, is expressed by prepositions. The proper use of prepositions after verbs, etc., must be learnt from practice and from the dictionary; but below is given, for convenient reference, the regimen of particular classes of verbs, etc., which differ most widely from their English equivalents.

1. at, of = über + Acc., of *sorrow*, *joy*, *wonder*, etc., as:

Verbs.	*Substantives.*
ſich ärgern, be vexed	Ärger, vexation
erröten, blush	Errötung, blush
erſtaunen, be astonished	Erſtaunen, astonishment
ſich freuen, rejoice	Freude, joy (also an + Dat.)
ſich grämen, grieve	Gram, grief
klagen, complain	Klage, complaint
lachen, laugh	Gelächter, laughter
ſich ſchämen, be ashamed	Scham, Beſchämung, shame
ſpotten, mock	Spott, mockery
ſich (ver)wundern, wonder	Verwunderung, surprise

Also the *Adjectives* ärgerlich, vexed; böſe, angry (at *things*); empfindlich, sensitive; froh, luſtig, merry.

Note.— Böſe takes auf + Acc. when referring to persons.

2. for = auf + Acc., of *expectation*, etc., as: gefaßt, prepared; hoffen, Hoffnung, hope; warten, wait.

3. for = nach, of *longing*, *inquiring*, etc., as:

Verbs.	*Substantives.*
dürſten, thirst	Durſt, thirst
forſchen, inquire	Forſchung, inquiry
hungern, hunger	Hunger, hunger
jagen, hunt	Jagd, chase
ſuchen, search	Luſt,) desire
ſich ſehnen, long	Verlangen,)
verlangen, desire	

Also the *Adjectives* durſtig, thirsty; ehrgeizig, ambitious; gierig, greedy; hungrig, hungry.

4. for = um, of *entreaty*, etc., as: bitten, ask; buhlen, court; flehen, beg; ſich kümmern, concern one's self.

5. from = vor + Dat., of *protection*, etc., as: bewahren, preserve; hüten, protect; retten, save.

6. in = an + Dat., of *plenty*, *want*, etc., as: arm, poor; fruchtbar, fruitful; reich, rich; ſchwach, weak; ſtark, strong.

7. in or on = auf + Acc., of *confidence*, etc., as:

Verbs.	*Substantives.*
ſich brüſten, boast	Stolz, pride
ſich verlaſſen, rely	Verlaß, reliance
vertrauen, trust	Vertrauen, confidence

8. of = an + Dat., of *plenty*, *want*, *doubt*, etc., as:

Verbs.	*Substantives.*
fehlen (impers.), mangeln " } be wanting	Mangel, want
	Reichtum, wealth
zweifeln, doubt	Überfluß, superfluity
verzweifeln, despair	Zweifel, doubt

Also the *Adjectives* krank, sick; leer, empty.

9. of = an + Acc., of *remembrance*, etc., as:

Verbs.	*Substantives.*
denken, think	Gedanke, thought
erinnern, remind	Erinnerung, recollection
ſich erinnern, recollect	

NOTE. — These verbs also govern the Genitive. See § 245.

10. of = auf + Acc. of *suspicion*, *envy*, *pride*, etc., as:

Substantives.	*Adjectives.*
Acht (geben), (pay) attention	achtſam, aufmerkſam, } attentive
Argwohn, suspicion	argwöhniſch, suspicious
Eiferſucht, jealousy	eiferſüchtig, jealous
Neid, envy	eitel, vain
	neidiſch, envious
	ſtolz, proud

11. of = vor + Dat., of *fear*, etc., as:

Verbs.	*Substantives.*
ſich fürchten, be afraid	Furcht, fear
„ erſchrecken, be terrified	Schreck, terror
„ grauen, dread	Grauen, dread

Also the adjectives bange, afraid; ſicher, certain, sure.

12. to = an + Acc., of *address*, etc., as: adreſſieren, address; ſchreiben, write; ſich richten, turn; ſich wenden, apply.

13. to = gegen, after Adjectives signifying an *affection of the mind*, as: barmherzig, merciful; feindlich, hostile; freundlich, friendly; gerecht, just; gleichgiltig, indifferent; gnädig, gracious; grauſam, cruel; nachſichtig, indulgent.

EXERCISE XLIX.

1. My sister is vexed at not receiving an invitation to the party. 2. I am tired of waiting for Charles; let us go without him. 3. Oh no, do not let us go yet; he will be angry at us, if we do not wait for him. 4. Charles has many good qualities, but you cannot rely upon him. 5. The boy is proud of the watch given to him by his father. 6. If you lose your way in a city, it is always safest to apply to a policeman. 7. I have no doubt that this is good advice. 8. Mary is angry at Sarah, because Sarah has made sport of her. 9. Our neighbour has been ill for some days; he complains of rheumatism, and says he has caught cold. 10. I am less vexed at his not coming than at his not sending us word. 11. The war had already lasted more than four years, and people were longing for peace. 12. Diogenes is said to have gone once in daylight through the streets of the city, carrying at the same time a lantern. 13. People began to laugh at him and mock him, asking him what he was looking for. 14. He replied that he was looking for an honest man. 15. The general postponed attacking the enemy, because his army was weak in artillery.

16. Mr. Kalk, the architect, promised that my house should be finished before the 1st July, but I doubt it. 17. The Province of Ontario is rich in iron, but is wanting in coal to smelt it. 18. We have been thinking for some time of selling our house, but we cannot find anyone who is willing to buy it. 19. Be good enough to remind me to buy some postage-stamps, when we go past the post-office. 20. We may learn as much by paying attention to what we see and hear as we can learn from books. 21. The horses, frightened by a passing train, shied, and were on the point of running away. 22. The first settlers in this country had much to endure: they lived for the most part in houses built of [the] trunks of trees and covered in many cases with bark. 23. (Just) as many people lost their lives (the life) by the famine occasioned by the earthquake, as by the earthquake itself. 24. The bad news received yesterday has prevented our going to town to-day. 25. There are men who grow richer by giving than others [do] by receiving.

LESSON L.

WORD-ORDER.

292. The Essential Parts of a Sentence.

1. Every sentence contains three essential parts, viz: the **Subject**, or that of which something is asserted, the **Predicate**, or that which is said of the Subject, and, thirdly, the **Verb** or **Copula**, the word which makes the assertion, and which may include the Predicate (as in the simple tenses of a verb), but does not necessarily do so. Thus, in the sentence: 'He sings,' 'he' is the *Subject*, while 'sings' contains both the *Verb* or *Copula* and the *Predicate*, i. e., it not only asserts something of the Subject, but also says what that something is, being equivalent to 'is singing.' In the sen-

tence: 'He has sung,' on the other hand, 'has' is the *Verb* (or *Copula*), 'sung' is what is asserted, or the *Predicate*.

2. The **Verb** (or Copula) is in German the member of the sentence, the position of which is most absolutely fixed; it is the *cardinal point* or *hinge* on which the sentence turns.

293. NORMAL POSITION OF THE VERB.

In German, there are **three** normal positions for the **Verb**, according to the nature of the sentence.

(*a*) The Verb stands **first**:

1. In *Interrogative* Sentences expecting the answer 'yes' or 'no' (i. e., when the verb is the question-word, see § 23, 2), as:

Iſt Ihr Bruder wohl? **Is** your brother well?

Wird er kommen? **Will** he come?

Heißen Sie Karl? **Is** your name Charles?

2. In sentences expressing a *command* or *wish*, as:

Beſuchen Sie mich morgen, **Come** and see me tomorrow.

Wäre ich zu Hauſe! **Were** I (would that I were) at home!

NOTE. — The verb may either follow or precede the subject in the 3. Sing. Subj. used as Imperative (see § 268, 1), as:

Gott behüte dich! or: Behüte dich Gott! God preserve thee!

3. In *Conditional* clauses, when the conjunction **wenn** is omitted (compare § 59), as:

Wäre das Wetter ſchön, ſo würde ich ausgehen, If the weather were fine, I should go out.

(*b*) The Verb comes **second** (is the **second idea**) in all **principal** assertive sentences (compare § 20), as:

Der Menſch **iſt** ſterblich, Man **is** mortal.

Der jüngere Bruder meines Vaters, welcher ſo krank war, **iſt** tot, My father's younger brother, who was so ill, **is** dead.

Geſtern Abend **ſtarb** der Bruder meines Vaters, Yesterday evening my father's brother **died.**

Sowohl (nicht nur) mein Vater, wie (ſondern auch) mein Bruder **war** zugegen, Both (not only) my father, and (but also) my brother **were** (**was**) present.

REMARKS. — 1. As in the last three examples above, the first member of the sentence may be complex, with several attributes, complements, etc.; the verb is still the **second idea.**

2. The cöordinating conjunctions *proper* (§ 236) do not count as members of the sentence (see the last example above), but *adverbial* conjunctions throw the subject after the verb.

NOTE. — Certain adverbial phrases, of a more or less interjectional nature, such as: freilich, true; ja, yes; ja wohl, to be sure; nein, no; kurz, in short; mit einem Wort, in a word; gut, well, are not regarded as part of the sentence, and do not throw the subject after the verb, thus:

Freilich, ich **habe** es nicht ſelbſt geſehen, **True**, I did not see it myself.

Kurz (mit einem Wort), ich **glaube** es nicht, **In short (in a word)**, I do not believe it.

Gut, ich **werde** kommen, **Well**, I shall come.

3. In assertive sentences of an *emphatic* or *exclamatory* character, the verb sometimes comes first, especially when the particle doch is present, as:

Iſt das ein Wetter! (= Was für ein Wetter iſt das!) What weather!

Habe ich's dir **doch** geſagt! I told you so!

4. If a dependent clause or a quotation precede the principal sentence (compare § 294, *b*, Rem. 2, below), such clause or quotation is regarded as a single member of the sentence, and requires the verb immediately after it, as:

Da ich ſelbſt nicht kommen konnte, **ſchickte** ich meinen Sohn, As I could not come myself, I **sent** my son.

Als ich ankam, **war** es ſchon nach 10 Uhr, When I arrived, it **was** after 10 o'clock.

Wenn er kommen ſollte, **werde** ich zu Hauſe ſein, If he should come, I **shall** be at home.

„Ich will meine Aufgabe nicht lernen," **ſchrie** der unartige Knabe, "I will not learn my lesson," **cried** the naughty boy.

NOTES. — 1. After dependent conditional and adverbial clauses (except those of *time*) the particle **ſo** usually introduces the principal sentence, as:

Da ich nicht ſelbſt kommen konnte, **ſo** ſchickte ich meinen Sohn.

Wenn er kommen ſollte, **ſo** werde ich zu Hauſe ſein.

2. This particle **ſo** should always be inserted after a conditional clause with **wenn** omitted; in colloquial usage, however, the principal sentence sometimes has the subject *before* the verb, **ſo** being omitted, as:

Wäre er früher gekommen, **ſo** hätte er mich geſehen;

or (colloquially):

Wäre er früher gekommen, **er hätte** mich geſehen.

This latter construction, however, should not be imitated.

3. In *proportional* clauses introduced by **je**, **deſto**, or **um ſo**, the dependent clause comes first, and the verb is preceded by the word expressing the comparison, as well as by the particle **je**, etc., as:

Je länger die Nächte ſind, **deſto kürzer ſind** die Tage, The longer the nights are, the shorter are the days.

(*c*) The Verb is **last** in dependent sentences and questions (compare §§ 32; 88), as:

Ich weiß, **daß** der Menſch ſterblich **iſt**, I know **that** man **is** mortal.

Ein Mann, **welcher** geſtern hier **war**, A man, **who was** here yesterday.

Ich gehe, **weil** es ſchon ſpät **iſt**, I go **because** it is late.

Ich weiß nicht, **wer** hier geweſen **iſt**, I do not know who has been here (*dep. question*).

REMARKS. — 1. **Indirect statements** with daß omitted have the construction of *principal* sentences (verb *second;* see §§ 20; 87, 3), as:

Er ſagte, er **habe** es vergeſſen, He said he **had** forgotten it.

2. **Conditional** clauses with wenn omitted follow the *question-order* (verb *first;* compare § 59), as:

Wäre das Wetter ſchön, ſo würde ich ausgehen, **If** the weather **were** fine, I should go out.

3. The Verb precedes two infinitives (or infinitive and part.; see § 199, 3), as in the compound tenses of Modal Auxiliaries, thus:

Er ſagte, daß er nicht **habe kommen wollen**, He said that he **had** not **intended to come.**

4. Clauses with **denn** (='unless,' § 241, 18), having *negative* force, follow the construction of a principal sentence (verb *second*), as:

Ich laſſe Dich nicht, Du **ſegneſt** mich **denn**, I will not let Thee go, **unless** Thou bless me.

Ich werde nicht kommen, **es ſei denn, daß** das Wetter ſchön werde, I shall not come, **unless** (it be that) the weather should become fine.

5. Haben and ſein, as auxiliaries of tense, are frequently omitted at the end of a dependent clause, as:

Er leugnete, daß er das Fenſter zerbrochen (**habe** understood), He denied that he **had** broken the window.

Ich fragte ihn, ob er zur rechten Zeit angekommen (**ſei** understood), I asked him if he **had** arrived in good time.

294. POSITION OF THE SUBJECT.

The Subject is placed:

(*a*) In **Direct Questions**, if it be the question-word, *at the beginning;* otherwise immediately after the Verb, as:

Wer iſt hier geweſen? Who has been here?

Iſt **er** hier geweſen? Has he been here?

Wann kommt **Ihre Schweſter**? When does your sister come?

(*b*) In **Principal Assertive Sentences**, the *normal* position of the Subject is *first;* but if any other word precede the Verb, the Subject *immediately follows the Verb*, as:

Ich werde morgen nicht ausgehen; or:

Morgen werde **ich** nicht ausgehen, **I** shall not go out tomorrow.

REMARKS. — 1. In point of fact it may be said that, in a principal sentence, the Subject follows the Verb quite as often as it precedes it.

2. A preceding dependent clause, or a quotation, always throws the subject after the verb, except when, after a conditional clause with **wenn** omitted, the principal sentence is not introduced by the particle **ſo** (compare § 293, 4, Note 2, above).

3. When the real (*logical*) subject is represented by **es** before the verb as grammatical subject, the logical subject immediately follows the verb, as:

Es iſt **meine Schweſter** geweſen, It was my sister.

(*c*) In **Dependent Sentences**, the Subject, if a relative pronoun, *begins* the sentence, otherwise the Subject immediately follows the connecting word, as:

Der Mann, **welcher** geſtern hier war, The man **who** was here yesterday.

Der Mann, den **ich** geſtern ſah, The man, whom **I** saw yesterday.

Ich ſagte ihr, daß **ich** kommen werde, I told her that **I** should come.

NOTE. — Personal Pronouns, and especially the reflective **ſich**, sometimes precede the Subject, both in principal sentences with the Subject after the Verb, and in dependent clauses, as:

Morgen will **ſich** mein Bruder verheiraten, My brother is going to get married to-morrow.

Er ſagte, daß **ihn** dieſer Menſch beleidigt habe, He said that this fellow had insulted **him**.

295. POSITION OF THE PREDICATE.

1. The **Predicate**, if not included in the Verb (see § 292, 1, above), may consist of a participle or infinitive (as in the compound tenses of the verb); or it may be a substantive, an adjective, or the separable prefix of a compound verb.

2. The Predicate is placed **last in Principal Sentences** and in **Direct Questions**; in **Dependent Sentences** it immediately precedes the Verb.

3. If the Predicate is compound, consisting of two or more of the elements under 1, above, they will occur in the following order: 1. Predicative adjective (or substantive); 2. Separable prefix; 3. Participle; 4. Infinitive; thus:

PRED. ADJ.

Er ſoll ſtets gegen ſeinen armen Bruder ſehr **freigebig**
PART. INF.
geweſen ſein, He is said to **have** always **been** very **liberal** to his poor brother.

PREF. PART. INF.

Sie würde ſchon geſtern **ab = gereiſt ſein**, She would **have departed** yesterday.

REMARK. — Any one of these elements of the Predicate may, for emphasis, occupy the normal position of the subject in the *first* place (*before* the Verb), as:

Schön iſt das Wetter heute nicht, The weather is not (at all) **fine** to-day (i. e., it is *far from* fine).

Soldat iſt mein Bruder, nicht Matroſe, My brother is a **soldier**, not a sailor.

Singen will ich wohl, aber nicht ſpielen, I will **sing**, but not play.

NOTE. — The Separable Prefix and the Participle are, however, rarely placed in this position, except in elevated or poetic diction, or for contrast, as:

Nieder ſteig' ich zum Gefechte, I descend (down I go) to the fight. (SCHILLER.)

Zurücke bleibt der Knappen Troß, The retinue of squires remains behind (*ibid.*).

Entſchloſſen iſt er alſobald, He is resolved at once (*ibid.*).

Gegeben habe ich ihm das Buch nicht, ſondern nur geliehen, I did not **give** him the book, I only lent it to him.

296. POSITION OF OBJECTS AND CASES.

1. **Objects** (not governed by a preposition) precede adjects (objects governed by a preposition), as:

Ich habe einen Brief **an ihn** (an meinen Vater) geſchrieben, I have written a letter **to him** (to my father).

2. **Pronouns** (unless governed by prepositions) precede substantives, as:

Ich habe **ihm** einen Brief geſchrieben, I have written **him** a letter.

3. Of Pronouns, **Personal** before other Pronouns, as:

Ich habe **ihm das** (etwas) gegeben, I have given him **that** (something).

4. Of the cases of Personal Pronouns, the Accusative precedes the Dative, and both precede the Genitive; but the reflexive **ſich** usually precedes all others, as:

Er hat **ſich** (Dat.) es gemerkt, He has taken a note of it (for himself).

5. Of **Substantives**, the *Person* (unless governed by a preposition) precedes the thing; the *Indirect* precedes the Direct Object, and the *Remoter* Object (in the Genitive) follows both, as:

Ich habe **Ihrer Schweſter** das Buch geliehen, I have lent **your sister** the book.

Er hat **dieſen Mann** des Diebſtahls beſchuldigt, He has accused **this man** of theft.

6. The *personal* (or subjective) Genitive (compare § 243, 2) may either precede or follow the substantive which governs it, as:

Meines Vaters Haus, My father's house; or:
Das Haus **meines Vaters**.

7. The *limiting* Genitive (see § 243, 3) follows, except in elevated or poetic diction, as:

Das Ende **des Krieges**, The end of the war.

8. Cases governed by adjectives precede the adjective, but a substantive with a preposition may follow the *predicative* adjective, as:

Ich bin **ihm** dankbar **für ſeine Bemühungen**, I am grateful to him for his exertion.

297. Position of Adverbs and Adverbial Expressions.

1. In general, adverbs precede the word they modify, as:

Ich bin **ſehr** müde geworden, I have become **very** tired.

Er hat das Buch **nicht** geleſen, He has not read the book.

2. Adverbs of **Time** precede objects (except pronouns) and all other Adverbs or Adverbial expressions, as:

	Time.	Object.	Place.	Manner.
Er hat	**geſtern**	das Buch	zu Hauſe	ſehr fleißig ſtudiert,

He studied the book very diligently at home yesterday.

3. Adverbs of **place** precede those of manner, and both follow objects, as in the above example.

4. Of several Adverbs of like kind, the more general precede the special, as:

Morgen um zehn Uhr, At ten o'clock **to-morrow.**

REMARKS. — 1. Any object, adject, adverb or adverbial phrase may occupy the normal position of the subject at the head of a principal sentence (before the verb, compare § 295, Rem., above), as:

Meinen Vater habe ich nicht gesehen, I did not see **my father.**

Gestern kam ich zu spät, I came too late **yesterday.**

2. The *relative* position of objects, abverbs, etc., is the same in principal and subordinate sentences.

298. POSITION OF OTHER MEMBERS OF THE SENTENCE.

1. **Attributive Adjectives** and **Participles** immediately precede the substantive they modify, as:

Ein zur Verteidigung sehr **günstiger** Ort, A place very **favourable** for defence.

Das auf dem Hügel **stehende** Haus, The house **standing** on the hill.

2. **Prepositions** precede their case, with the exceptions given in the lists (see §§ 46; 51; 223).

3. **Conjunctions** come between the words or clauses they connect, as:

Mein Bruder **und** seine Familie sind hier, My brother **and** his family are here.

Ich weiß, **daß** Sie nicht kommen werden, I know **that** you will not come.

NOTE. — In dependent clauses that precede the sentence on which they depend the conjunction is first, as:

Weil ich krank war, konnte ich nicht kommen, **Because** I was ill, I could not come.

299. CONSTRUCTION OF INCOMPLETE CLAUSES.

The Word-order of Incomplete or Elliptical Clauses is the same as that of Complete Clauses, there being no Verb in the former. In Infinitive Clauses the Infinitive comes last; and in Appositive Clauses, the Adjective or Participle comes last, thus:

Gute Freunde (**zu**) **haben** iſt ein großes Glück, **To have** good friends is a great blessing.

Die Kunſt in Öl **zu malen**, The art **of painting** in oil.

Ich werde mich freuen, Sie morgen **zu ſehen**, I shall be glad **to see** you to-morrow.

Dies alles bei mir **denkend**, ſchlief ich ein, **Thinking** all this to myself, I fell asleep.

Von dem Lärm **aufgeſchreckt**, ſprang er aus dem Bette, **Aroused** by the noise, he jumped out of bed.

300. INTERROGATIVE SENTENCES.

1. Direct Questions always *begin with the question-word*, the other members of the sentence occupying the same relative position as in principal sentences. For the position of the Verb and Subject, see §§ 293, 294, above.

2. Questions in German very frequently have the form of a principal assertive sentence, the question being marked only by the rising inflexion of the voice, as:

Du haſt deine Lektion nicht gelernt? You have not learnt your lesson?

NOTES. — 1. This construction often occurs with a **doch** in the sentence, as:

Du wirſt doch kommen? You will be sure to come (will you not?).

Er iſt doch nicht krank? He is not ill (is he? I hope not).

2. Exclamatory sentences frequently have the construction of dependent questions, but may also have that of direct questions, as:

Wer mitgehen dürfte! (Happy he) who might go with you!

Wie iſt das Wetter ſchön! How beautiful is the weather!

RECAPITULATION.

301. General Remarks on German Construction.

The following are the principal points in which German differs from English Construction:

1. The **Verb** (containing the Copula) is the hinge on which the sentence turns, and has its position most absolutely fixed.

2. The Subject does not, as in English, necessarily precede the Verb in Principal Sentences; but if any other member of the sentence precede the Verb, an *inversion of the subject* takes place, and it is thrown *after* the verb.

Notes. — 1. The terms *inversion*, *inverted sentence*, often used by grammarians, refer to the **Subject** only, not to the Verb.

2. This inversion of the Subject is also found in Interrogative and Imperative Sentences (see §§ 293; 294; 300, above).

3. The relative rank of sentences is marked by the varying position of the Verb, which is last in Dependent Sentences.

4. All the other parts of the sentence, except what precedes the Verb, are *included* or *bracketed* between the Verb and the Predicate.

5. Dependent Sentences (including Infinitive and Appositive Clauses; see § 299, above) are marked off from the sentences on which they depend by commas.

SUPPLEMENTARY LESSON G.

COMPLEX SENTENCES.—CLAUSE-ORDER.

302. COMPOUND AND COMPLEX SENTENCES.

1. A sentence is *compound* when it contains more than one *coördinate* clause; *complex* when it contains a *subordinate* clause, thus:

Compound: Ich ging an ihm vorbei, kannte ihn aber nicht,
I went past him, but did not know him.

Complex: Er sagte mir, daß er kommen werde,
He told me that he would come.

2. Any subordinate clause may itself be complex, having another clause dependent upon it, as:

Ich erwartete ihn gestern, **weil** er mir geschrieben hatte, **daß** seine Geschäfte bald beendigt sein würden, I expected him yesterday, **because** he had written me, **that** his business would soon be finished.

NOTE. — In the above example, the clause weil er, etc., depends on the *principal* clause preceding it; whereas the clause daß seine Geschäfte, etc., depends on the clause weil er, etc., which is itself subordinate.

REMARK. — In the following observations as to the relative position or order of clauses, the term "principal sentence" includes all sentences, though themselves subordinate, which occupy the relation of a principal or governing sentence to the clauses dependent upon them.

303. 1. In Complex Sentences, the position of the various dependent clauses is regulated by the following general principle:

Finish the principal sentence before introducing the subordinate clause.

2. Thus, in the example in § 302, 2, above, it would be wrong to insert the last clause (daß . . . würden) within the preceding clause on which it depends, thus:

Weil er mir, daß seine Geschäfte beendigt sein würden, geschrieben hatte.

3. Similarly the following construction would make the complex sentence quite unintelligible:

Die Gewohnheit muß die Fertigkeit eine Sache ohne über die Regel zu denken **zu thun verleihen.**

The observance of the above rule will require the clauses of this sentence to be arranged as follows:

Die Gewohnheit muß die Fertigkeit **verleihen**, eine Sache **zu thun**, ohne über die Regel nachzudenken, Habit (practice) must bestow the readiness of doing a thing without reflecting upon the rule.

4. In the following sentence, again, the isolation of the separable prefix is very objectionable:

Heiter ging die Sonne an jenem Morgen, an dem wir abreiſten, **auf**, The sun rose cheerfully on that morning on which we set out.

The prefix **auf** should be inserted after Morgen.

304. Appositive Clauses, must, however, stand immediately after the particular part of the sentence to which they refer, as:

Die Prieſterin, **von ihrer Göttin ſelbſt gewählet und geheiligt**, ſpricht zu dir, The priestess, chosen and consecrated by the goddess herself, speaks to thee.

Was können wir, **ein ſchwaches Volk der Hirten**, gegen Albrechts Heere? What can we, a weak people of herdsmen, [do] against Albert's hosts?

Ich habe ihm dieſen Fehler, **daß er jede Handlung mißdeute**, ſchon oft vorgeworfen, I have often reproached him with this mistake of misinterpreting every action.

Ich konnte die Frage, **ob wir kämen**, nicht beantworten, I could not answer the question, whether we were coming.

305. Relative Clauses must immediately follow the antecedent:

(*a*) When the latter (whether subject or not) precedes the verb of a principal sentence, as:

Der Mann, **welcher geſtern hier war**, iſt heute wiedergekommen, The man who was here yesterday came again to-day.

Den Mann, **welcher geſtern hier war**, habe ich nicht gekannt, I did not know the man, who was here yesterday.

Note. — If the antecedent does not precede the verb, the relative is introduced after the conclusion of the principal sentence, except as under (*b*), below, thus:

Heute iſt der Mann wiedergekommen, welcher u. ſ. w.
Ich habe den Mann nicht gekannt, welcher u. ſ. w.

(*b*) When their separation from the antecedent would cause ambiguity, as:

Geſtern habe ich meinen Freund, den ich lange nicht geſehen, bei meinem Bruder getroffen, Yesterday I met at my brother's my friend, whom I had not seen for a long time.

Note. — If the relative clause were placed after the conclusion of the principal sentence, the relative den might refer to Bruder.

306. A Subordinate or Dependent Clause (with the exceptions specified in Remarks 3, 4, below) may also, whether subjective, objective or adverbial, *precede* the principal clause, in which case it throws the Subject after the Verb, as:

Ob ich kommen kann (*subjective clause*), iſt zweifelhaft, It is doubtful whether I can come.

Wer gar zu viel bedenkt (*subjective clause*), wird wenig leiſten, He who considers too much, will accomplish little.

Daß er mir nicht geſchrieben (*subjective clause*), macht mir Sorgen, [The fact] that he has not written to me, causes me anxiety.

Ob ich werde kommen können (*objective clause*), weiß ich nicht, I do not know, whether I shall be able to come.

Daß er krank iſt (*objective clause*), habe ich geſtern gehört, I heard yesterday, that he was ill.

Da ich krank war (*adverbial clause*), konnte ich nicht kommen, As I was sick, I could not come.

REMARKS. — 1. Such a clause takes the place of a subject, object or predicate, as the case may be, before the verb (compare §§ 293, *b*, Rem. 4; 294, Rem. 2; 295, Rem.).

2. Adverbial clauses in this way bring expressions of time, place, etc., but more especially those of *cause*, nearer to the verb, which is the part of the sentence they modify.

3. Only *subjective* relative clauses with the *compound* relative **wer, was**, can stand at the head of a sentence, as in the second example above.

NOTE. — The relative **der** is sometimes used instead of **wer** as compound relative (including both relative and antecedent), especially in the plural, as:

Die ſich zu hart vergangen hatten, flohen aus dem Lande. (SCHILLER); i. e., **Diejenigen, welche** u. ſ. w.; or: **Wer** ſich zu hart vergangen **hatte** (sing.), floh u. ſ. w., Those who had committed too great offences, fled from the country.

4. Clauses which modify not the *whole* sentence but a *particular* member, cannot stand at the head of the sentence, but stand either immediately after the word to which they refer, or after the conclusion of the sentence (compare § 297, above). This remark applies especially to *relative clauses* (but see Rem. 3, above, and Note), and to *comparative clauses with* **als**, as:

Sein Unglück war größer, **als er es ertragen konnte** (or: zu groß, **als daß** er es u. ſ. w.), His misfortune was greater than he could bear.

NOTE. — Comparative clauses with **wie** may precede, as:

Wie im Laub der Vogel ſingt,
Mag ſich jeder gütlich thun,
As the bird sings amid the boughs, let every one enjoy himself. (SCHILLER).

EXERCISE G.

1. It seems impossible, says a great botanist, to give, in the present state of our knowledge, a complete definition of what (= that which) is to be considered as an animal, in contradistinction to what one must regard as a plant. 2. The good king Robert Bruce, who was always watchful and prudent, had received information (Kunde) of (von) the intention of these men to attack him suddenly. 3. Bruce caused his men to lie down to take some sleep at a place about half a mile distant from the river (see § 290, *c*, i), while he himself, with two attendants, went down to watch the ford through which the enemy must pass, before they came to the place where king Robert's men were lying. 4. "If I go back," thought the king, "to call my men to (the) arms, these men will get (kommen) through the ford unhindered; and that would be [a] pity, since it is a place so advantageous for defence." 5. In the confusion, five or six of the enemy were slain, or, having been borne down by the stream, [were] drowned. 6. With the natural feeling of a young author (Schriftſteller), he had ventured (it) to go (ſich aufmachen) secretly and witness (beiwohnen + dat.) the first representation of his tragedy at Mannheim. 7. He resolved to be free, at whatever risk (auf jede Gefahr hin); to abandon (= give up) advantages which he could not buy (erkaufen) at such a price; to quit his stepdame (ſtiefmütterlich, adj.) home, and go forth (fortwandern), though friendless and alone, to seek his fortune in the great market (Jahrmarkt) of life. 8. Having well examined the place (Ort), the soldier reported his discovery to Marius, and urgently (dringend) advised (anraten + dat.) him, to make an attack upon the fort from that side where he had climbed up, offering (ſich erbieten) to lead (= show) the way. 9. He ordered his men to advance against the wall with their shields held together in the manner which the Romans named 'testudo' or tortoise (Schildkröte). 10. His mother was present on (bei) this joyous occasion, and she produced (= showed) a paper of (= with) poison, which, as she said, she meant to have given her son in his liquor (Getränk, acc.) rather than that he should submit (himself) to personal disgrace.

PART THIRD.

WORD-FORMATION. — HISTORICAL SKETCH.

LESSON LI.

DERIVATION AND COMPOSITION.

307. 1. New words are formed in a language by two more or less distinct processes: **Derivation** and **Composition.**

2. Derivation is of four kinds, viz.: 1. **without change**; 2. by **internal change**; 3. by **Suffixes**; 4. by **Prefixes.**

NOTE. — All grammatical terminations (inflexions) are really suffixes, but these are not considered under the present head.

308. *A.* **WITHOUT CHANGE.**

Verbs are derived from substantives, adjectives, adverbs, etc., by the simple addition of the endings of conjugation, as: Arbeit, labour; arbeit-en, to labour — Gras, grass; graſ-en, to graze — trocken, dry; trockn-en, to dry — näher, near (compar.); nähern, to approach — gegen, against; begegn-en, to meet.

NOTE. — In many of these derivatives, and in most of those from adjectives, the vowel has Umlaut, as: Pflug; pflüg-en, plough — Hammer; hämmer-n, hammer — ſtark, strong; ſtärk-en, strengthen — tot, dead; töt-en, kill — offen, open; öffn-en, open — empor, up; empör-en, excite.

309. *B.* **BY INTERNAL CHANGE.**

Derivative Verbs. — Verbs are derived from other Verbs:

(*a*) By change (generally Umlaut) of the root or Stem *Vowel*, forming *causative verbs*, which are always transitive and weak, as: fallen, fall; fällen, fell (*cause* to fall) — trinken, drink; tränken, make to drink (drench) — ſitzen, sit; ſetzen, set — liegen, lie; legen, lay — fahren, fare, proceed; führen, lead, *cause* to proceed.

(*b*) By change of *consonant*, with or without vowel-change, as: ſtehen, stand; ſtellen, *cause* to stand, set or place upright — biegen, bend; bücken, bow — neigen, incline; nicken, nod (incline *the head*) — wachen, awake; wecken, arouse (*cause* to awake).

Note. — Many weak verbs and nearly all *strong* verbs are *primitive*; but *derivative* verbs are generally *weak*.

310. Derivative Substantives. — These are derived from Verbs by internal vowel-change without suffix, and are mostly masculine, as: binden, bind; Band, bond, volume; Bund, union — ſitzen, sit; Satz, stake (thing *set* or laid down), etc. — ziehen, draw; Zug, trait, etc. — treten, tread; Tritt, step.

Note. — Observe that in both the Verbs and Substantives above occasional *consonant* changes also occur.

C. BY SUFFIXES.

311. Verb Suffixes.

1. -eln forms derivatives from other verbs, as well as from substantives and adjectives, *usually with Umlaut*, implying diminution or contempt, as: lach-en, laugh; lächeln, smile — Kunſt, art; künſteln, affect (artfully) — fromm, pious; frömmeln, affect piety.

2. -ern from verbs, substantives and adjectives (sometimes with Umlaut), as: folgen, follow; folgern, infer — Schlaf, sleep; ſchläfern, feel sleepy — arg, bad; ärgern, vex.

3. -ieren, mostly from *foreign* stems, without Umlaut, as: marſchieren, march — regieren, reign — ſtudieren, study. Also from German roots, by analogy, as: buchſtabieren, spell.

312. Substantive Suffixes.

1. -t (-ft, -ſt), -d, -de (usually feminine) from verbs, usually with vowel-change, as: beug-en, bend; Bucht bay (bight) — fahren, drive; Fahrt, drive — tragen, wear; Tracht, costume — kommen, come; Kunft, coming (Ankunft, arrival; Zukunft, future) — können, can; Kunſt, art — brennen, burn; Brand, conflagration — kennen, know; Kunde, information.

2., 3. -chen and -lein form diminutives, usually with Umlaut, as: Haus, house; Häuschen, little house, cot — Mann, man; Männlein, manikin.

Notes. — 1. -chen (Engl. -kin), originally Low (North) German only, is now more common than -lein, which however is preferred after gutturals, as: Ringlein, Büchlein.

2. Sometimes a double diminutive suffix, el + chen, is used after gutturals, as: Ringelchen, Büchelchen.

4. **-e** forms a very large number of feminine derivatives from verbs, *often with vowel-change;* also, *usually with Umlaut*, from adjectives, as: fliegen, fly; Flieg-**e**, fly (insect) — geben, give; Gab**e**, gift — ſprechen, speak; Sprach-**e**, speech, language — gut, good; Güt-**e**, goodness — treu, faithful; Treu-**e**, fidelity.

5. **-ei** (from Fr. *-ie*) forms feminine derivatives, *with accent on the suffix:*

(*a*) From verbs in **-eln, -ern**, as: ſchmeicheln, flatter; Schmeichel-**ei**, flattery — zaubern, enchant; Zauber-**ei**.

(*b*) From substantives, indicating state, occupation, etc., most frequently from those in **-er**, as: Jäger, hunter; Jäger-**ei**, hunting — Drucker, printer; Drucker-**ei**, printing (-trade or -office).

NOTES. — 1. It sometimes implies contempt, as: Kinder-**ei**, childish nonsense.

2. By analogy with the formations from stems in **-er**, there has arisen the double suffix **-erei**, added to other stems, as: Sklav-**erei**, slavery (from Sklave).

6. **-el**, from verbs (*sometimes with vowel-change*), generally indicating the *instrument*, as: decken, cover; Deck-**el**, lid — fliegen, fly; Flüg-**el**, wing — ſchließen, lock; Schlüſſ-**el**, key — zieh-**en**, pull; Zügel, rein, bridle.

7. **-en**, from verbs, including all infinitives, as well as others, e. g.: graben, dig; Grab-**en** (masc.), ditch — ſchaden, hurt; Schad-**en** (masc.), injury.

8. **-er**, often with Umlaut, indicating the *actor*, chiefly from verbs, but also from substantives, as: backen, bake; Bäck-**er**, bak-er — malen, paint; Mal-**er**, paint-er — tanzen, dance; Tänz-**er**, danc-er — Garten, garden; Gärtn-**er**, garden-er — Schaf, sheep; Schäf-**er**, shepherd.

NOTE. — Some derivatives from substantives insert **n**, as: Bild-**n**-er, sculptor (from Bild) — Glöck-**n**-er, bell-ringer (from Glocke) — Red-**n**-er, orator (from Rede).

9. **-heit** (Engl. -head, -hood) forms feminine abstracts from substantives and adjectives, as: Gott-**heit**, God-head — Kind-**heit**, child-hood — Blind-**heit**, blindness — Frei-**heit**, freedom.

10. **-keit** replaces **-heit** after adjectives in **-el, -er, -ig, -lich, -bar, -ſam**, as: Eitel-**keit**, vanity — Bitter-**keit**, bitterness — Billig-**keit**, cheapness — Heimlich-**keit**, secrecy — Brauchbar-**keit**, usefulness — Sparſam-**keit**, economy.

NOTE. — Some derivatives from adjectives insert **-ig-** before **-keit**, especially from those in **-haft** and **-los**, as: Süß-**ig**-keit, sweetness — Standhaft-**ig**-keit, steadfastness — Treu-los-**ig**-keit, unfaithfulness.

11. **-in** (compare § 89, 2, Note) forms feminine appellatives from masculine substantives, usually with Umlaut (always so from monosyllables), as: Graf, count; Gräfin, countess — Freund, friend; Freund-in, (female) friend — Gärtner, gardener; Gärtner-in, gardener's wife.

12. **-ling** forms masculine diminutives (sometimes with Umlaut) from verbs, substantives and adjectives, as: lehren, teach; Lehr-ling, apprentice — Flucht, flight; Flücht-ling, fugitive — fremd, strange; Fremd-ling, stranger — jung, young; Jüng-ling, youth.

13. **-nis** (Engl. -ness) forms abstracts from verbs; also from a few adjectives, usually with Umlaut, as: begraben, bury; Begräb-nis, funeral — hindern, hinder; Hinder-nis, obstacle — gefangen, captive; Gefäng-nis, prison — finster, dark; Finster-nis, darkness.

14. **-sal, -sel** form abstracts, (generally neuter) from verbs, and also from a few substantives and adjective, as: schicken, send; Schick-sal, fate — raten, guess; Rät-sel, riddle — Mühe, trouble; Müh-sal, fatigue — trübe, sad; Trüb-sal, tribulation.

15. **-schaft** (Engl. -ship, -scape) forms feminine abstracts from verbs and adjectives, as: Wander-schaft, wandering — Freund-schaft, friendship — Land-schaft, land-scape — Gemein-schaft, community — Eigen-schaft, peculiarity; also some collectives, as: Priester-schaft, priesthood; Gesell-schaft, society.

16. **-tum** (Engl. -dom) forms (generally neuter) abstracts from verbs, substantives and adjectives, as: Wachs-tum, growth — Eigen-tum, property — Reich-tum (masc.), wealth — König-tum, royalty (king-dom).

17. **-ung** (= Engl. -ing in verbal nouns) forms a large number of feminine abstracts, chiefly from verbs, as: Belehr-ung, instruction — Vergeb-ung, forgiveness.

18. The suffixes **-end, -ig, -icht, -ing** are only found after stems which no longer have an independent existence, as: Ab-end, Dutz-end, Eff-ig, Käf-ig, Hab-icht (hawk).

313. Adjective Suffixes.

1. **-bar** (connected with bären, 'bear') from verbs (= Engl. -able) and substantives, also (rarely) from adjectives, as: eß-bar, eat-able — frucht-bar, fruitful — furcht-bar, frightful — offen-bar, evident.

2. **-en, -ern** form adjectives denoting material or kind from substantives, as: gold-en, golden — blei-ern, leaden — silber-n, silver — hölz-ern, wooden.

Note. — Eisern, 'iron,' from Eisen, is anomalous.

3. **-haft** (connected with haben, 'have') forms adjectives, denoting the quality of the primitive, chiefly from substantives (also from a few verbs and adjectives), as: **sünd-haft**, sinful — **tugend-haft**, virtuous — **wohn-haft**, resident — **bös-haft**, malicious — **wahr-haft**, true.

NOTE. — The suffix **-ig** is often added to adjectives in **-haft**, as: **wahrhaft-ig** (compare also § 312, 10, Note, above).

4. **-icht** sometimes replaces **-ig** (see below) after names of materials, as **dorn-icht**, thorny — **stein-icht**, stony; also in **tör-icht**, foolish.

5. **-ig** (= Engl. **-y**, as in might-**y**, etc.) forms a very numerous class of adjectives, usually with Umlaut, from verbs, substantives and particles, and from other adjectives (including the possessive pronouns, see § 119, *c*), as: **nachgieb-ig**, yielding — **günst-ig**, favourable — **mächt-ig**, might-y — **schuld-ig**, guilt-y — **güt-ig**, kind — **völl-ig**, complete — **heut-ig**, of to-day — **vor-ig**, former.

NOTE. — For **-ig** before **-keit**, see § 312, 10, Note; for **-ig** after **-haft**, see 3, above.

6. **-isch** (= Engl. **-ish**) forms adjectives:

(*a*) From proper names, denoting *origin*, as: **luther'-isch**, Lutheran — **preuß-isch**, Prussian.

(*b*) From substantives, as: **dieb-isch**, thiev-**ish** — **himml-isch**, heav-enly; sometimes also with depreciatory sense, as in English, e. g.: **kind-isch**, child-**ish** — **weib-isch**, woman-**ish** (compare **kind-lich**, child-like — **weib-lich**, woman-**ly**).

(*c*) From foreign words (= Lat. **-icus**; Engl. **-ic**, **-ical**), as: **histor-isch**, histor-ical — **log-isch**, log-ical.

7. **-lei** forms variative numerals; see § 182, (*c*).

8. **-lich** (Engl. **-like**, **-ly**) forms numerous adjectives from verbs (with active or passive sense), substantives (usually with Umlaut) and other adjectives (generally with diminutive meaning, like Eng. **-ish**), as: **erfreu-lich**, delightful — **schäd-lich**, injurious — **begreif-lich**, intelligible — **glaub-lich**, credible — **verächt-lich**, contemptible — **jähr-lich**, year-ly — **männ-lich**, man-ly — **natür-lich**, natural — **röt-lich**, redd-ish — **läng-lich**, long-**ish**.

9. **-sam** (Engl. **-some**) from verbs and substantives (also from a few adjectives), as: **aufmerk-sam**, attentive — **heil-sam**, whole-**some** — **furcht-sam**, timid — **ein-sam**, lone-some.

D. BY PREFIXES.

314. Verb Prefixes.

The **Verb Prefixes** coming under the head of derivation are those which are always inseparable, viz: **be-**, **ent-** or **emp-**, **er-**, **ge-**, **miß-**, **ver-**, **zer-**. Their various meanings are given below.

1. **be-** (connected with the prep. bei) is *intensive*, and

(*a*) forms transitive verbs from intransitive (its most frequent use), as: fallen, fall; **be**-fallen, be-fall — gehen, go; **be**-gehen, commit (a crime, etc.) — klagen, mourn; **be**-klagen, mourn for;

(*b*) it forms verbs from substantives and adjectives, with the meaning 'provide with,' 'make,' as: **be**-freunden, be-friend — **be**-ſtär-ken, make strong, strengthen.

2. **ent-** (**emp-** before an **f**, akin to **ant-**, as in **ant**worten) corresponds frequently to the (Latin) prefixes dis-, de- in English words and denotes

(*a*) 'in return,' as: **emp**-fangen, receive; **emp**-fehlen, recommend;

(*b*) 'contrary,' 'against,' 'away from,' having privative force, from verbs, substantives and adjectives, as: **ent**-binden, relieve — **ent**-decken, dis-cover — **ent**-gehen, **ent**-laufen, get away, escape;

(*c*) *transition*, *origin*, as: **ent**-ſchlafen, fall asleep — **ent**-ſtehen, arise, originate.

3. **er-** (Engl. a-, as in a-rouse, a-rise, etc.) denotes:

(*a*) 'out from,' 'upwards,' as: **er**-heben, raise — **er**-wecken, a-waken;

(*b*) *transition* (compare **ent-**, above), as: **er**-beben, begin to tremble — **er**-blühen, come out in blossom — **er**-kalten, grow cold;

(*c*) *acquisition* or *attainment* by the action of the verb (a very common use), as: **er**-betteln, get by begging — **er**-liſten, get by cunning;

(*d*) *accomplishment*, as: **er**-ſchießen, shoot (kill by shooting) — **er**-trinken, be drowned.

4. **ge-** often has no perceptible force, as in: **ge**-neſen, recover (from illness) — **ge**-nießen, enjoy; but commonly it is frequentative and intensive, as: **ge**-bieten, command — **ge**-denken, remember, mention — **ge**-loben, vow.

5. **miß-** (Engl. mis-) has negative force, sometimes with the notion of falsehood or failure, as: **miß**-achten, despise — **miß**-fallen, displease — **miß**-glücken, fail — **miß**-verſtehen, mis-understand.

6. **ver-** (Engl. for- in for-get, for-give) has the general meaning of 'away' and often, like **ent-**, answers to a dis- or de- in English.

(*a*) It is *intensive*, and expresses *excess*, etc., as: **ver**-blühen, fade away — **ver**-kommen, go to ruin — **ver**-zagen, despair.

(*b*) It denotes a *mistake*, etc., as: **ver**-führen, lead astray — **ver**-laufen (refl.), lose one's way — **ver**-legen, mis-lay.

(*c*) It is *privative* (its most frequent use), and denotes loss, parting, waste, dissolution, as: **ver**-gehen, pass away — **ver**-trinken, waste in drink — **ver**-ſpielen, gamble away.

(*d*) It forms verbs from substantives and adjectives denoting a *change* or *transition* into the state of the primitive, as: **ver**-armen, grow poor — **ver**-golden, gild.

7. **zer**- denotes separation, destruction, 'to pieces,' as: **zer**-brechen, break to pieces — **zer**-gliedern, dis-member.

315. Substantive Prefixes.

1. **Erz**- (= Engl. arch-), as: **Erz**-biſchof, arch-bishop — **Erz**-feind, arch-enemy.

. **Ge**- forms *usually neuter* derivatives:

(*a*) **Collectives**, from substantives, as: **Ge**-birge, mountain-range — **Ge**fieder, feathers — **Ge**-ſträuch, bushes.

(*b*) **Associatives** (of persons), from verbs and substantives, as: **Ge**-ſpiele, playmate — **Ge**-ſchwiſter, brothers and sisters (of a family) — **Ge**-ſelle, fellow.

(*c*) **Frequentative** or **intensive abstracts**, also from verbs, as: **Ge**ſpräch, conversation — **Ge**-flüſter, (continued) whispering — **Ge**-töſe, uproar.

Note. — The substantives **G**-lück, **G**-laube contain this prefix.

3. **Miß**-, with the same force as in verbs, e. g.: **Miſſe**-that, misdeed — **Miß**-gunſt, envy.

4. **Un**- is *negative* prefix, as in English, e. g.: **Un**-glück, bad luck — **Un**-recht, wrong — **Un**-ſinn, nonsense. It also expresses something monstrous or unnatural, as: **Un**-that, unnatural or monstrous deed — **Un**-menſch, inhuman monster.

5. **Ur**- (akin to **er**-, see above) denotes

(*a*) *origin*, as in **Ur**-teil (**er**-teilen), sentence, judgment — **Ur**-laub (**er**-lauben), furlough, leave of absence;

(*b*) *primitiveness*, as: **Ur**-ſache (original thing), cause — **Ur**-menſch, primitive man — **Ur**-wald, primeval forest.

Remark. — Substantives with Verb Prefixes (see § 314, above) are derived from verb-stems having these prefixes (e. g.: Ab-zug, Be-zug, from abziehen, beziehen), except those with **ge**- (see 2, above).

316. Adjective Prefixes.

The Prefixes of Adjectives are the same as those of substantives, and with the same force, except **ge**-, which forms:

(*a*) Past Participles, some without corresponding verbs, as: ge-ſittet, well-behaved — ge-ſtiefelt, booted;

(*b*) adjectives from verb-stems, as: ge-nehm, agreeable, acceptable — ge-wiß (from wiſſen, 'know'), certain;

(*c*) from other Adjectives, as: ge-recht, just — ge-treu, faithful.

NOTE. — g-leich also contains this prefix.

317. OTHER PARTS OF SPEECH.

Pronouns, Numerals, Prepositions, Conjunctions and Interjections are for the most part either primitive or compound; for Derivative Numerals and Numeral Adverbs, see §§ 182, 183; for the derivation of other Adverbs, § 189.

II. COMPOSITION.

318. 1. A compound word is one made up of two or more words, each of which maintains its separate form and meaning.

2. In genuine compounds, the last component only is inflected; but there are also spurious compounds, in which one or more of the preceding components takes an inflectional ending (see § 319, 1, Notes 2, 3, below), without liability to further variation.

NOTE. — In a few words arbitrarily written as compounds, both elements are inflected; see § 319, 2, Note, below.

3. Compounds are made with much greater freedom in German than in English. Words that in English are written separately, are often written as one word in German, forming compounds of a length and complexity unknown in the English language, as: Feuerverſicherungsgeſellſchaft, fire insurance company — Luftröhrenſchwindſucht, bronchial consumption.

NOTE. — These long compounds are generally broken up by one or more hyphens as: Feuerverſicherungs-Geſellſchaft, a capital letter usually following the hyphen.

4. When the last component is common to several successive compounds, it is expressed with the last component word only, the omission being indicated in the other cases by a hyphen, as: Apfel-, Kirſch- und Birnbäume, apple, cherry and pear-trees — eine freuden- und nutzloſe Aufgabe, a joyless and profitless task.

5. The Composition of Verbs is fully treated of in Less. XXXVI, and Supp. Less. E.; that of Numerals in Less. XXVIII, and also in §§ 182, 183. The compound Prepositions will be found in Less. XXXVIII, and Conjunctions in Less. XL., and require no special explanation.

319. Composition of Substantives.

The last element is (with exceptions noted under 5, below) a Substantive, which determines the gender, and is alone inflected; the first element generally having the principal accent. The varieties of Compound Substantives are:

1. **Substantive** + Substantive, the first element being in *apposition* or in some *case* or *other relation* (usually genitive) to the other, as below, as: Himmel-reich, kingdom of heaven (*apposition*) — Aug-apfel, eye-ball — Landes-herr, sovereign — Freuden-feſt, joyous festival — Kinder-ſtube, nursery (*genitive* elation) — Tinten-faß, inkstand (stand *for* ink) — Tanz-ſtunde, dancinglesson (*dative* relation) — Ratten-fänger, rat-catcher — Weg-weiſer, guide, finger-post (*accusative* relation) — Oſt-wind, East wind — Freuden-thräne, tear of joy (*origin*) — Fuß-tritt, kick (*instrument*) — Dach-fenſter, window *in* the roof (*place*) — Tage-werk, day's work.

Notes. — 1. *Primary* Compounds are those composed of **stem** + substantives, either with the stem-suffix **-e**, as: Tagewerk; or without suffix, as: Hand-werk, trade — Jagd-horn, hunting-horn.

2. *Secondary* Compounds are made up with a *Genitive case*, Singular or Plural; if singular, the first component takes **-s** after *strong* masculines and neuters, and **-en** after weak substantives, whether sing. or plur.; thus: Sonntag-s-kleid, sunday-dress — Freud-en-geſchrei, cry of joy — Wörter-buch, dictionary.

3. The suffix **-s** is also added to *feminines* in **-t, -heit, -keit, -ſchaft, -ung**, and the foreign endings **-ion, tät**, as: Geburt-s-tag, birthday — Freiheit-s-liebe, love of liberty — Mäßigkeit-s-verein, temperance society — Religion-s-krieg, religious war — Univerſität-s-gebäude, University building.

2. Qualifying **Adjective** + Substantive, as: Edel-ſtein, precious stone, jewel — Jungfrau, virgin — Hoch-zeit, wedding (high time) — Voll-mond, full-moon.

Note. — In a few spurious compounds of this kind, the adjective is declined, as: ein Hoher-prieſter, high-priest; der Hoheprieſter — die Lange-weile, tedium, ennui; Gen. der Langenweile.

3. **Adverb** or **Preposition** + Substantive, usually from compound verbs, but not always, as: Her-kunft, origin — Wohl-that, benefit — Anzahl, number — Bei-ſpiel, example — Hinter-liſt, cunning — Über-macht, superiority.

4. **Verb-stem** + Substantive, sometimes with connecting suffix **-e**, as: Leſ-e-buch, Schreib-feder, Sing-vogel.

5. **Other Compound Substantives.** There is a special class of substantive compounds of a character different from those enumerated above, and of various composition, consisting of:

(*a*) A limiting word (not a subst.) + Substantive, as: Blinde-kuh, blind-man's-buff — Kahl-kopf, bald-head — Groß-maul, boaster — Lang-bein, long-legged person — Schrei-hals, bawler — Viereck, square.

(*b*) Limiting word + Adjective, as: der Nimmer-satt, the glutton — das Immer-grün, the evergreen.

NOTE. — These compounds are masculine when referring to persons, otherwise neuter. The same rule holds good for the compounds under (*c*), below.

(*c*) Verb + Object, limiting word or phrase, as: der Taugenichts, the good-for-nothing — der Spring-ins-feld, the romp — der Stören-fried, the kill-joy — das Stell-dich-ein, the rendezvous.

320. COMPOSITION OF ADJECTIVES.

Compound Adjectives consist of an Adjective preceded by a limiting word, viz.:

1. Adjective + Adjective, as: taub-stumm, deaf-mute — dunkel-blau, dark-blue — rot-bäckig, red-cheeked.

2. Substantive + Adjective:

(*a*) with connecting inflexional suffix (compare § 319, 1, Note 2, above), as: liebes-krank, love-sick — gedanken-voll, pensive — hoffnungs-los, hopeless;

(*b*) without suffix, as: liebe-voll, affectionate — huld-reich, gracious — freude-leer, joyless.

NOTES. — 1. The Adjectives los, reich, voll are of such constant occurrence as to have almost acquired the character of suffixes.

2. In some of these compounds, the substantive expresses *comparison*, or has *intensive* force, as: kreideweiß, white as chalk — federleicht, light as a feather — felsenfest, firm as a rock.

3. Verb + Adjective, as: wiß-begierig, eager for knowledge — merk-würdig, remarkable (noteworthy).

NOTE. — In Compound Adjectives like dankens-wert, 'welcome' ('thankworthy'), the first element is the infinitive used as a *Substantive*.

4. Adverb or Preposition + Adjective, as: hoch-geboren, high-born — wohl-feil, cheap — unter-than, subject — über-klug, overwise.

321. COMPOSITION OF ADVERBS.

Adverbs are compounded of various parts of speech:

1. With Nouns (*mostly in the Genitive*) affixed to other parts of speech, as: Fall: gleich-falls, likewise; jeden-falls, in any case —

Maß(e): einiger=**maßen**, in some degree — Seite: einer=**seits** . . . andrer=**seits**, on the one hand . . . on the other hand — Teil: meiſten=**teils**, chiefly; meines=**teils**, on my part — Weg: gerades=**wegs**, straightway; keines=**wegs**, by no means — Weile: einſt=**weilen**, mittler=**weile**, meanwhile, meantime — Weiſe: glücklicher=**weiſe**, fortunately; kreuz=**weiſe**, crosswise; thörichter=**weiſe**, foolishly.

NOTE. — The *masc.* and *neuter* genitive-inflection =s, from its frequent use in adverbial genitives, has become an adverbial suffix, and is sometimes attached to *fem.* substs., as: die Nacht, *adv.* nachts, by night. So also has the suffix =**wärts**, as: himmel=**wärts**, heavenward — nord=**wärts**, northward.

2. With **Prepositions** (or original **Adverbs**) prefixed or suffixed to other parts of speech, as: **zu**=gleich, at the same time — gerade=**zu**, straight on — **auf**=wärts, upward; berg=**auf**, uphill — **unter**=wegs, on the way; berg=**unter**, downhill — **heutzu**=tage, nowadays — jahre=**lang**, for years.

3. With **Pronouns** (or **Stems** originally **Pronominal**) compounded with each other, as: wohin? whither? dahin, dorthin, thither — woher? whence? daher, dorthin, thence, etc.

For *Numeral* **Adverbs**, see § 182.

LESSON LII.

HISTORICAL SKETCH. — GRIMM'S LAW. — UMLAUT, etc.

322. Relation between German and English.

1. A comparison of German words and forms with their English equivalents will serve to show that a very large number of both words and grammatical forms are common to both languages. Though rarely absolutely identical in form, the resemblances are both so close and so numerous that they cannot be the result of mere borrowing on the part of either language from the other, but must imply *relationship*, or, in other words, *a descent from a common source, a common origin.*

English and German are therefore Modern Dialects of one and the same original language.

2. This original language is no longer extant, either as a spoken or as a written language. There are, however, other languages — some still spoken, some known to us only as written — which were once als-

dialects of this common ancestor, or Grundſprache, as German philologists call it. This group or *sub-family* of languages is called the GERMANIC or TEUTONIC, the common source or Grundſprache of which was itself a dialect of a larger *family*, all of whose members were dialects of, and derived from, one common primitive source (Urſprache). This family is called the INDO-GERMANIC, INDO-EUROPEAN or ARYAN family, and includes most European and several Asiatic languages.

3. The divisions of this great family, with the chief representatives, ancient (written) and modern (spoken), of each, are as follows, beginning from the East:

(*a*) INDIC — *ancient:* Sanskrit, etc.; *modern:* Hindustani, etc.

(*b*) PERSIC — " Zend, etc.; " Persian, etc.

(*c*) GREEK — *ancient* and *modern*.

(*d*) ITALIC — *ancient:* Latin, etc.; *modern:* the Romance languages (Italian, French, Spanish, etc.).

(*e*) LITHUANIC.

(*f*) SLAVONIC — Russian, Polish, Bohemian, etc.

(*g*) GERMANIC — see below.

(*h*) CELTIC — Irish, Gaelic, Welsh, etc.

323. THE GERMANIC LANGUAGES.

The Germanic or Teutonic group of languages may be classified as follows:

1. GOTHIC or EAST GERMANIC, once spoken by the Goths of Mœsia, on the Danube, represented only by a translation of portions of the Bible, made by Ulfilas, Bishop of the Goths, in the 4th century, A. D.

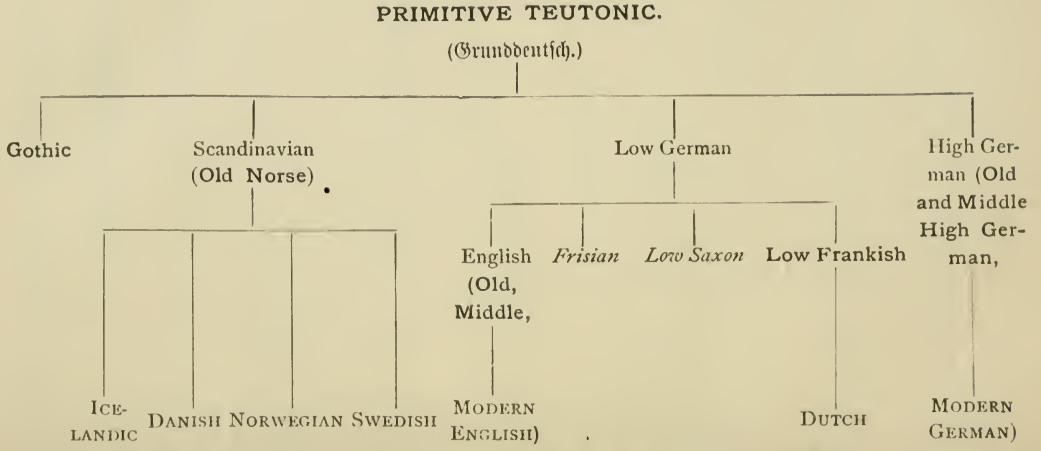
2. SCANDINAVIAN or NORTH GERMANIC — *ancient:* Old Norse; *modern:* Icelandic, Danish (Norwegian), Swedish.

3. LOW GERMAN or WEST GERMANIC — *ancient:* Frisian, Low Saxon, Low Frankish, Old English (Anglo-Saxon), Middle English; *modern:* Dutch, ENGLISH.

NOTE. — The modern representatives of the other Low German languages are mere dialects — known as *Plattdeutsch* (i. e., Flat German), the present (High) German literary language having displaced them.

4. HIGH GERMAN or SOUTH GERMANIC, including the (no longer spoken) Old and Middle High German, and the **GERMAN**, as spoken and written at the present day.

The following diagram will serve further to illustrate the relationships of the German language:



NOTES. — 1. The languages printed in **heavy tye** are extinct; those in *Italics* are now only represented by dialects; those in CAPITALS are languages (not mere dialects) of the present day.

2. High-German includes also Middle German; it is now, and has been since the 16th century, the only literary language of the German empire, extending also into parts of Austria and Switzerland.

324. History of High German.

The High German (including the Middle German) branch of the Germanic sub-family has passed through three stages, as follows:

1. **Old High German**, to the 12th century. Its literature is chiefly ecclesiastical — its principal authors being monks, such as Otfrid, the Frank, author of a rhyming harmony of the Gospels, and Notker, of St. Gallen in Switzerland. Each author wrote in his own dialect.

Note. — The chief characteristic of this Old High German, which distinguishes it from the subsequent stages, is the comparative fulness and distinctiveness of its grammatical forms. Thus Tagen, Söhnen, Gaben (dat. pl.) = O. H. G. tag-um, sun-um, geb-ôm respectively; and the pres. indic. of nëman (neȝmen) is as follows: nim-u, nim-is, nim-it, nëmam-(ês), nëm-at, nëm-ant. It also has a fifth case (the *Instrumental*).

2. **Middle High German** (A. D. 1100—1500). Literature during this period passed from the hands of the clergy into those of the *nobles;* hence its courtly character. The branches of poetic composition therein represented were *Epic* and *Lyric* Poetry, the former comprising not only the great National Epics of the 'Nibelungenlied' and 'Gudrun,' but also the Courtly or Art Epics of Chivalry, such as Wolfram von Eschenbach's 'Parcival' and Gottfried von Straszburg's 'Tristan und Isolde'; the latter comprising the productions of the 'Minnesänger,' of whom the greatest was Walther von der Vogelweide. The *Dialect of Suabia* (which included Baden, Würtemberg and parts of Bavaria) became the leading literary language.

Note. — Middle is distinguished from Old High German chiefly by the loss of the full vowels of inflectional syllables, which were for the most part changed into e. Thus the O. H. G. datives pl. tag-um, geb-ôm are in Mid. H. G. tag-en, geb-en; and the pres. indic. of nëmen is: nim-e, nim-est, nim-et, nëm-en, nëm-et, nêm-ent. It is further distinguished from O. H. G. by the spread of the Umlaut (see § 326, below), which in the former is confined to the vowel a, to the vowels o and u also; and from both O. H. G. and Modern German by the large number of its diphthongal sounds (ai, ei, oi, öi, au, ou, öu, eu, ia, ie, io, iu; ua, ue, üe, uo), the greater number of which are unknown in both the preceding and the later stage of the language.

3. **New** or **Modern High German**, from 1500 to the present day, forming, since before the beginning of the 16th century, the standard *literary language* of all German-speaking people. Its basis is Doctor Martin Luther's translation of the Bible (1522—34), in which he adopted the „Kanzleisprache" or *official court language* particularly of the Duchy of Saxony, as being, in his own words, „**die gemeine deutsche Sprache**, welcher nachfolgen alle Fürsten und Könige in ganz Deutschland."

NOTE. — The chief characteristic which distinguishes Modern (New) High German from Middle High German is the lengthening of all stem-vowels before a single consonant. Thus ſagen, ſprach, loben, all have the stem-vowel long in Modern German, but short in Middle High German. To this may be added the use of the letter h to mark a preceding long vowel, as in nehmen, M. H. G. nemen (with short e); the change of ſ into ſch before l, n, as: Schlaf, Schnee, M. H. G. slâf, snê; and that of the long vowels î, û, into the diphthongs ei, au respectively, as: mein, bein, drei, Weib, Maus, Haus, Haut, laut, M. H. G. mîn, dîn, drî, wîb, mûs, hûs, hût, lût.

325. GRIMM'S LAW OF Lautverſchiebung.

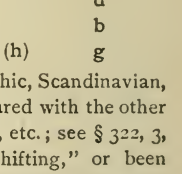
1. The law of the progression or shifting of mutes, Germ. **Lautverſchiebung**, also called GRIMM'S LAW after its chief discoverer, Jakob Grimm, the illustrious grammarian, is one of the most striking features of the Germanic languages.

2. The **Mutes** are divided into three classes, according to the organ with which they are uttered, viz.: LINGUALS (or DENTALS): t, th, d; LABIALS: p, ph (f), b; and PALATALS (or GUTTURALS): k (c), ch (h), g. Each of these classes contains a *tenuis* (or *surd*), an *aspirate* or *spirant*, and a *media* (or *sonant*), thus:

	TENUES.	ASPIRATES or SPIRANTS.	MEDIAE.
LINGUALS:	t	th	d
LABIALS:	p	ph, f	b
PALATALS:	k, c	kh, ch (h)	g

3. In the majority of the Germanic languages — Gothic, Scandinavian, Low German (including therefore ENGLISH) — as compared with the other members of the Indo-Germanic family (Greek, Latin, etc.; see § 322, 3, above), each of these mutes has undergone *one* "shifting," or been pushed forward one stage in its own class, the tenues having been changed into aspirates (or more strictly *spirants*), the aspirates into mediæ, and the mediæ into tenues. In High German alone they have undergone a second "shifting" in the same direction.

NOTE. — The accompanying diagram will serve further to illustrate this process, showing how the mutes observe the following rotation from primitive Indo-Germanic through general Germanic (including English) to High German, viz.: Tenuis, Aspirate, Media; Aspirate, Media, Tenuis; Media, Tenuis, Aspirate.



3. Taking Latin or Greek as representing the first or primitive Indo-Germanic stage, and English as representing the second, or general Germanic stage (the first shifting), the following scheme will show the *theoretical* working of this law:

	Linguals.	Labials.	Palatals.
Latin, Greek, etc.:	t. th, d	p, ph, b	k, kh, g
= English, etc.:	th, d, t	ph, b, p	kh, g, k
= (High) German:	d, t, th	b, p, ph	g, k, kh

5. The operation of the law is, however, subject to the following general exceptions:

(*a*) p and k were changed in the second shifting, not into aspirates proper, but into the *spirants* f and h (= ch) respectively, and these spirants were not subjected to any further change.

(*b*) The lingual aspirate is represented in High German by z, ſ, ſſ, or ß.

(*c*) The second shifting of media to tenuis took place in High German in the *lingual series* only, except in one dialect (the Alemannian).

(*d*) The aspirate (or spirant) ch is never found in Modern German at the beginning of a word.

6. Hence the modified scheme below will represent approximately the *actual* working of the law:

	Linguals.	Labials.	Palatals.
Latin, Greek, etc.:	t, th, d	p, ph (f), b	k, kh (h), g
= English, etc.:	th, d, t	f, b, p	h, g, k
= (High) German:	d, t, z, s, ss, sz	f, b, f	h(ch) g, k (ch)

Note. — Latin has c, f, and h for k, ph and kh respectively; and the ch at the bottom of the last column does not occur at the beginning of words; see 5, (*d*), above.

EXAMPLES OF Lautverſchiebung.

(Note. — Examples from Lat. unless otherwise specified.)

1. Linguals: (*a*) t — th — d; as: tectum — thatch — Dach); tenuis — thin — dünn; tu — thou — du; tres — three — drei; frater — brother — Bruder; (*b*) th — d — t, as: thygatêr (Gr.) — daughter — Tochter; thyra (Gr.) — door — Türe; thêr (Gr.) — deer — Tier; (*c*) d — t — z, s, ss, sz, as: domus — timber — Zimmer; dakr-y (Gr.) — tear — Zähre; sedere — sit — ſitzen; edere — eat — eſſen.

2. Labials: (*a*) p — f — f, as: pugno — fight — fechten; pedem — foot — Fuß; piscis — fish — Fiſch; (*b*) ph (Lat. f) — p — b, as: frater — brother — Bruder; fagus — beech — Buche; (*c*) b — p — f, as: cannabis — hemp — Hanf.

3. Palatals: (*a*) k (Lat. c) — h — ch (h if initial), as: canis — hound — Hund; octo — eight — acht; noc-tem — night — Nacht; (*b*) kh (Lat. h) — g — g, as: hostis — guest — Gaſt; hortus — garden — Garten; (*c*)

g — k (c) — ch (k if initial) as; gelidus — cold — kalt; genu — knee Knie; jugum — yoke — Joch; frango — break — brechen.

NOTE. — A further class of exceptions is caused by the fact that the mutes are sometimes protected from change by an adjacent consonant, as: wander — wandern; stone — Stein; haste — Hast; night — Nacht; craft — Kraft. There are also other deviations from the strict rule too numerous to be mentioned here.

326. UMLAUT.

1. **Umlaut** is the modification of an accented **a, o, u, au** into **ä (e), ö, ü, äu** respectively, and is caused by the influence of an **i** or **j** in the following syllable.

REMARKS.— 1. The vowels **a, o, u**, with the diphthong **au**, are guttural or "back" vowels, and approach the sound of the following **i**, which is a palatal or "front" vowel.

2. This **i** or **j** appears in Old High German, but has disappeared — with some exceptions, as under (*d*), (*e*), (*f*), below — in Modern German, and even in Middle High German. The following are a few examples of the origin and working of this law:

(*a*) In the plur. of Substantives of the Sohn Model (§ 21), the termination **-e** is in O. H. G. **-i**, as: Gäste, O. H. G. gast-i; Kräfte, O. H. G. krafti.

NOTE. — Not all substantives with Umlaut in the plural have this origin; a number of them (e. g., Sohn), which originally belonged to declension-forms without an **-i**, having followed the analogy of the others.

(*b*) In the plur. of the Dorf Model (§ 36), the ending **-er** is in O. H. G. **-ir**, as: Kälber, O. H. G. kalbir.

(*c*) In diminutives in **-chen** (orig. **-kîn**) and **-lein** (orig. **-lîn**), as: Knäbchen, Knäblein, from Knabe.

(*d*) In fem. appellatives in **-in**, as Gräfin, from Graf.

(*e*) In substs. in **-nis**, as Begräbnis, from graben.

(*f*) In adjs. in **-ig**, as gütig, thätig, from gut, That.

(*g*) In the impf. subj. of strong verbs, the final **-e** is in O. H. G. **-i**, as: gäbe, O. H. G. gabi.

3. Sometimes the Umlaut of **a** is represented by **e** instead of **ä**, as in Engel (angel), from angil, Gr. angelos; Eltern, parents, from alt.

4. Instances of Umlaut occur in English also, as in mouse, mice; goose, geese; old, elder; but they are comparatively rare, and the influence of Umlaut ceased in English at a very early period. In German on the contrary it is still an active principle.

APPENDICES.

A. Substantives of Mauer Model with Umlaut in Plural.

(Lesson V, § 17.)

Masculine.

Acker, field
Bruder, brother
Hammer, hammer
Schwager, brother-in-law
Vater, father

Boden, bottom, loft
Faden, thread
Garten, garden
Graben, ditch
Hafen, harbour
Laden, shop
Ofen, stove
Schaden, damage

Apfel, apple
Hammel, wether
Handel, affair, quarrel
Mantel, cloak
Nabel, navel
Nagel, nail
Sattel, saddle
Schnabel, beak
Vogel, bird

Feminine.

Mutter, mother
Tochter, daughter

Neuter.

Kloster, cloister

B. Masculine Monosyllables of Hund Model (without Umlaut).

(Less. VII, § 22, 1.)

Aal, eel
Aar, eagle
Arm, arm
Bord, board, shelf
Born, well
Docht, wick
Dolch, dagger
Dom, dome, cathedral
Druck, pressure, print
Grad, degree
Gurt, girth
Hag, hedge
Hall, sound
Halm, blade (of grass), etc.
Hauch, breath
Horst, eyry
Hort, refuge
Huf, hoof
Hund, dog
Kalk, lime
Kork, cork
Krahn, crane
Lachs, salmon
Lack, lac
Laut, sound
Luchs, lynx
Molch, salamander
Mond, moon
Mord, murder
Ort, place
Park, park
Pfad, path
Pfau, peacock
Pol, pole
Puls, pulse
Punkt, point
Punsch, punch
Quarz, quartz
Quast, tassel
Schuft, mean fellow
Schuh, shoe
Spat, spar (mineral)
Staar, starling
Stahl, steel
Stoff, material
Sund, strait, sound
Taft, taffeta
Tag, day
Takt, tact, bar (in music)
Talk, talc
Thran, train-oil
Thron, throne
Torf, peat
Tusch, flourish of trumpets
Zoll, inch

C. Feminines of Sohn Model.

(All with Umlaut; Less. VII, § 22, 3.)

Angſt, anguish	Haut, skin	Nacht, night
Ausflucht, evasion	Kluft, cleft	Naht, seam
Axt, axe	Kraft, strength	Not, need
Bank, bench	Kuh, cow	Nuß, nut
Braut, bride	Kunſt, art	Sau, sow
Bruſt, breast	Laus, louse	Schnur, string
Fauſt, fist	Luft, air	Stadt, town
Frucht, fruit	Luſt, desire	Wand, wall
Gans, goose	Macht, power	Wurſt, sausage
Gruft, grave	Magd, maid-servant	Zunft, guild
Hand, hand	Maus, mouse	Zuſammenkunft, meeting

Also those ending in -nis and -ſal.

D. Irregular Foreign Substantives.

(Less. VII, § 22, 6.)

1. Der Kaplan, chaplain, pl. Kapläne.

2. The following foreign substs. with accent on last syll. follow the Hund Model: der Monolog′, soliloquy; der Dialog′, dialogue; also those in **-or** accented, as: der Humor′, humour; der Major′, major.

3. The following are mixed (Ohr Model): der Alliga′tor, alligator; der Dämon, demon; der Kon′ſul, consul; das Stereoſkop′, stereoscope; das Teleſkop′, telescope; also those from the Lat. in **-or** unaccented, as: der Doktor, der Profeſſor.

4. The following are weak or mixed (Ohr Model): der Adamant′, adamant; der Diamant′ (or Demant), diamond; der Magnet′, magnet.

E. Neuter Monosyllables of Hund Model.

(Less. VII, § 22, 5.)

Beet, flower-bed	Gift, poison	Moos, moss	Schilf, rush
Beil, hatchet	Gleis, rut	Netz, net	Schrot, shot
Bein, leg	Heft, handle	Öl, oil	Schwein, pig
Bier, beer	Horn,[2] horn	Pferd, horse	Seil, rope
Blech, tin-plate	Joch, yoke	Pfund, pound	Sieb, sieve
Blei, lead	Knie, knee	Pult, desk	Spiel, game
Boot,[1] boat	Kreuz, cross	Recht, right	Stück, piece
Brot, bread	Land,[2] land	Reh, roe-deer	Tau, cable
Ding,[2] thing	Licht,[2] light	Reich, empire	Teil, share
Erz, ore	Los, lot	Riff, reef	Wehr, weir
Fell, hide	Ma(a)l, mole, mark; time	Roß, horse	Werk, work
Feſt, festival		Salz, salt	Wort,[2] word
Fett, fat	Maß, measure	Schaf, sheep	Zelt, tent
Floß,[1] raft	Moor, moor	Schiff, ship	Zeug, stuff
			Ziel, goal

Also eight in **-r**:

Haar, hair	Jahr, year	Paar, pair	Tier, animal
Heer, army	Meer, sea	Rohr, reed	Thor, gate

[1] Also with Umlaut. [2] See also App. G.*

F. Weak Masculines not ending in **-e**.

(Less. XIV, § 57, 2.)

Bär, bear	Geck, fop	Kaffer, Caffir	Prinz, prince
Baier, Bavarian	Gesell, fellow	Mensch, man	Spatz, sparrow
Bulgar', Bulgarian	Graf, count	Mohr, Moor	Steinmetz, stone-
Bursch, lad	Hagestolz, old bachelor	Narr, fool	Thor, fool [mason
Christ, Christian	Held, hero	Nerv, nerve	Ungar, Hungarian
Fink, finch	Herr, master	Ochs, ox	Vorfahr, ancestor
Fürst, prince	Hirt, herdsman	Pommer, Pomeranian	

G. Substantives of Mixed Declension.

(Less. XV, §§ 61–63.)

(*a*) **Name** Model (Masc.).

Balke(n), beam	Glaube, faith	Schade, injury (pl. Schäden)
Buchstabe, letter of the alphabet	Haufe, heap	Schreck(en), fright
Fels(en), rock	Name, name	Tropfe(n), drop
Friede, peace	Same, seed	Wille, will
Gedanke, thought		

Also one neut.: das Herz, G. des Herzens.

(*b*) **Nachbar** Model.

1. Masculines:

Bauer, peasant	Lorbeer, laurel	*Pantoffel, slipper	*Stiefel, boot
Gevatter, godfather	Nachbar, neighbour	Stachel, sting	Vetter, cousin
Kon'sul, consul			

2. Neuters: Auge, eye Ende, end

* Also after Maler Model.

(*c*) **Ohr** Model.

1. Masculines:

Ahn, ancestor	Mast, mast	Sporn, spur	Strauß,[3] ostrich
Forst, forest	Pfau,[1] peacock	(also Sporen)	Unterthan,[2] subject
Gau,[1] district	Schmerz, pain	Staat, state	Zierat, ornament
Husar,[2] hussar	See, lake	Strahl, beam	Zins, interest

2. Neuters: Bett, bed Hemd, shirt Ohr, ear

[1] Also after Hund Model. [2] Also after Knabe Model.

To these may be added the foreign substantives in App. D. [3] See also App. G.*

*G.** Double Plurals with different meanings.

(Less. XV, § 64.)

das Band:	Bänder, ribbons	Bande, ties
die Bank:	Bänke, benches	Banken, commercial banks
das Ding:	Dinge, things	Dinger, creatures
der Dorn:	Dorne or Dörner, thorns	Dornen, thorns (collectively)
das Gesicht:	Gesichter, faces	Gesichte, visions
das Horn:	Hörner, horns	Horne, kinds of horn
der Laden:	Läden, shops	Laden, shutters
das Land:	Länder, separate countries[1]	Lande, provinces or districts
das Licht:	Lichte, candles	Lichter, lights
der Mann:	Männer, men	Mannen, vassals
der Mond:	Monde, satellites	Monden, months (poetic)
der Ort:	Örter, (single) places[2]	Orte, places (collectively)
die Sau:	Säue, sows	Sauen, wild boars
der Strauß:	Straußе or Straußen, ostriches	Sträuße, nosegays
das Tuch:	Tücher, cloths	Tuche, kinds of cloth
das Wort:	Wörter, single words	Worte, coherent words
der Zoll:	Zolle, inches	Zölle, tolls

[1] For instance — die Länder Europas, the countries of Europe (individually considered); but die Deutschen Lande, the German districts or provinces; die Niederlande, the Netherlands. Poets use the latter form also in the sense of the former.

[2] For instance — in allen Örtern der Provinz, in all (inhabited) places of the province; but an allen Orten, in all places generally, everywhere.

H. Nouns (*mostly abstract*) which form their Plural by means of a derivative or of a compound form — which itself is used both in the Singular and Plural.

(Supp. Less. B., § 66, 3, Note.)

Singular.	*Plural.*
der Bau, building	die Bauten
(der Bau, burrow, etc.	die Baue)
das Bestreben, effort	die Bestrebungen
der Betrug, deceit, fraud	die Betrügereien
der Bund, alliance	die Bündnisse
der Dank, thanks	die Danksagungen
das Erbe, inheritance	die Erbschaften
der Friede, treaty of peace	die Friedensverträge
die Gewalt, force, violence	die Gewaltthätigkeiten
die Gunst, favour	die Gunstbezeugungen
der Kummer, affliction, trouble	die Kümmernisse
das Lob, praise	die Lobsprüche
der Mord, murder	die Mordthaten
der Rat, counsel, advice	die Ratschläge

Singular.	*Plural.*
(der Rat, councillor	die Räte)
der Raub, robbery	die Räubereien
der Segen, blessing	die Segnungen
der Streit, quarrel, dispute	die Streitigkeiten
der Tod, death, decease	die Todesfälle
das Unglück, misfortune	die Unglücksfälle
der Verdruß, vexation	die Verdrießlichkeiten
der Zank, quarrel	die Zänkereien

I. Exceptions to the Rules on Gender.

(Less. XVII, XVIII, §§ 80, 89, 90.)

80. 1. (*a*) *Fem.:* die Mannsperson, male-person. *Neut:* all diminutives in **-chen** and **-lein.**

2. (*a*) *Neut.:* das Weib, woman; das Mensch, wench; das Frauenzimmer, woman; and all diminutives in **-chen** and **-lein.**

(*b*) Trees, etc.:

der Ahorn, maple	der Kohl, cabbage	das Moos, moss
der Apfel, apple	der Kohlrabi, Brussels-spouts	der Roggen, rye
das Epheu, ivy	das Korn, grain	der Spargel, asparagus
das Geranium, geranium	der Lauch, leek	der Spinat, spinach
der Hafer, oats	der Lorbeer, laurel	der Tabak, tobacco
der Hanf, hemp	der Mais, maize	der Weizen, wheat
der Klee, clover		

Also Compounds, as: der Schwarzdorn, blackthorn; das Geißblatt, honey-suckle; das Vergißmeinnicht, forget-me-not; das Tausendschön, daisy; and diminutives, as: das Veilchen, violet.

3. (*a*) Metals — *Masc.:* der Kobalt, cobalt; der Stahl, steel; der Tombak, pinchbeck; der Wismut, bismuth; der Zink, zinc. *Fem.:* die Platina, platina.

(*b*) Countries, etc. — *Masc.:* der Peloponnes, Peloponnesus; der Haag, the Hague; also those in **-gau**, as: Aargau. *Fem.:* die Krim, Crimea; die Levante, the Levant; die Ukraine, the Ukraine; and those in **-ei, -au, -z.**

89. 1. (*a*) *Neut.:* das Messing, brass.

(*b*) *Feminines* in **-el:**

Achsel, shoulder	Distel, thistle	Gurgel, throat	Mangel, mangle
Ampel, lamp	Drossel, thrush	Hummel, humble-bee	Mistel, mistletoe
Amsel, black-bird	Eichel, acorn		Muschel, shell
Angel, fish-hook	Fabel, fable	Insel, island	Nadel, needle
Bibel, bible	Fackel, torch	Kanzel, pulpit	Nessel, nettle
Buckel, boss (of a shield)	Fessel, fetter	Kartoffel, potato	Orgel, organ
	Fibel, spelling-book	Koppel, leash; brace (of dogs)	Pappel, poplar
Cymbel, cymbal	Formel, formula		Parabel, parable
Dattel, date	Gabel, fork	Kugel, ball	Primel, primrose
Deichsel, carriage-pole	Geißel, scourge	Kuppel, cupola	Raspel, rasp
	Gondel, gondola	Mandel, almond	Regel, rule

Runzel, wrinkle	Semmel, roll of bread	Tafel, table	Waffel, waffle
Schachtel, band-box	Sichel, sickle	Troddel, tassel	Windel, swaddling-cloth
Schaufel, shovel	Spindel, spindle	Trommel, drum	
Schaukel, swing	Staffel, step of a ladder	Trüffel, truffle	Wurzel, root
Schindel, shingle		Wachtel, quail	Zwiebel, onion
Schüſſel, dish	Stoppel, stubble		

In **-er**:

Ader, vein	Folter, rack	Marter, torture	Steuer, tax
After, aster	Halfter, halter	Mauer, wall	Tochter, daughter
Auſter, oyster	Kammer, chamber	Mutter, mother	Trauer, mourning
Blatter, blister	Kelter, wine-press	Natter, adder	Veſper, even-tide, vespers
Butter, butter	Kiefer, pine	Nummer, number	
Ceder, cedar	Klammer, cramp-iron	Oper, opera	Wimper, eyelash
Dauer, duration	Klapper, rattle	Otter, otter	Ziffer, cipher
Elſter, magpie	Lauer, lurking-place	Rüſter, elm	Zither, guitar
Faſer, fibre	Leber, liver	Scheuer, barn	
Feder, feather, pen	Leier, lyre	Schleuder, sling	
Feier, celebration	Leiter, ladder	Schulter, shoulder	

NOTE. — The names of rivers ending in **-er** or **-el** are also feminine, e.g.: die Oder, die Weſer, die Moſel.

Neuters in **-el**:

Bündel, bundle	Kapitel, chapter	Rudel, herd, flock	Siegel, seal
Dunkel, darkness	Mittel, means	Scharmützel, skirmish	Übel, evil
Exempel, example	Orakel, oracle	Segel, sail	Wieſel, weasel

In **-en**:

Almoſen, alms	Füllen, colt	Laken, sheet (bed-clothes)	Wappen, coat-of-arms
Becken, basin	Kiſſen, cushion		
Eiſen, iron		Lehen, fief	Zeichen, token

And all infinitives when used as substantives.

In **-er**:

Abenteuer, adventure	Gatter, grate, railing	Meſſer, knife	Scepter or Zepter, sceptre
		Mieder, bodice	
Alter, age	Gitter, trellis	Muſter, pattern	Silber, silver
Bauer, bird-cage	Kloſter, cloister	Opfer, sacrifice	Steuer, helm
Eiter, pus	Kupfer, copper	Pflaſter, plaster	Theater, theatre
Euter, udder	Lager, couch	Polſter, cushion	Ufer, shore
Fenſter, window	Laſter, vice	Pulver, powder	Waſſer, water
Feuer, fire	Leder, leather	Regiſter, register, index	Wetter, weather
Fieber, fever	Luder, carrion		Wunder, wonder
Fuder, load	Malter, a grain measure	Ruder, oar	Zimmer, apartment
Futter, fodder		Schauer, shower	

NOTE. — Münſter, 'minster,' occurs both as *masculine* — from its present form — and as *neuter* — from its derivation from the Latin *monasterium*.

(*c*) *Feminines*:

Acht, proscription	Bank, bench	Brunſt, conflagration	Burg, castle
Art, manner, kind	Bai, bay	Brut, brood	Fahrt, expedition
Bahn, path	Braut, bride	Bucht, bay	Flucht, flight

Flur, field
Flut, flood
Form, form
Fracht, freight
Frau, woman
Frist, time
Furcht, fear
Furt, ford
Geiß, goat
Gicht, gout
Gier, eagerness
Glut, glow
Gunst, favour
Haft, custody
Hast, haste
Huld, grace
Hut, guard
Jagd, chase
Kost, food
Kraft, strength
Kuh, cow
Kur, (obsolete), election
Last, load
List, cunning
Mark, boundary
Marsch, marsh, fen
Mauth, excise
Milch, milk
Naht, seam
Null, zero
Pein, torment
Pflicht, duty
Post, post
Pracht, splendour
Qual, torment
Rast, rest
Saat, seed
Scham, shame
Schar, host, troop
Schau, show
Scheu, dread
Schicht, layer, stratum
Schlacht, battle
Schlucht, ravine
Schmach, disgrace
Schrift, writing
Schuld, guilt, debt
Schwulst, swelling
See, sea
Sicht, sight
Spreu, chaff
Spur, trace
Statt, stead, place
Stirn, brow
Streu, litter
Sucht, longing, passion
That, deed
Thür, door
Tracht, load, costume
Trift, pasturage
Uhr, watch
Wacht, guard
Wahl, choice
Wehr, defence
Welt, world
Wucht, bulk, heavy weight
Wulst, pad
Wut, rage
Zahl, number
Zeit, time
Zier, ornament
Zucht, discipline
Zunft, guild

Also those in App. C.

Neuters:

Aas, carrion
Amt, office
Bad, bath
Band, ribbon
Bett, bed
Bild, picture
Blatt, leaf
Blut, blood
Buch, book
Bund, bundle
Dach, roof
Ding, thing
Dorf, village
Ei, egg
Eis, ice
Fach, compartment
Faß, cask
Feld, field
Fleisch, flesh
Garn, yarn
Geld, money
Glas, glass
Gleis, groove, rut
Glied, limb
Glück, luck
Gold, gold
Grab, grave
Gras, grass
Gut, property, estate
Harz, resin
Haupt, head
Haus, house
Heil, prosperity
Hemd, shirt
Herz, heart
Heu, hay
Hirn, brain
Holz, wood
Huhn, fowl
Kalb, calf
Kind, child
Kinn, chin
Kleid, garment
Korn, corn
Kraut, herb
Lamm, lamb
Land, land
Laub, foliage
Leid, suffering
Lied, song
Lob, praise
Loch, hole
Lohn, wages
Lot, plumb-line
Mahl, meal, repast
Malz, malt
Mark, marrow
Maul, mouth (of beasts)
Mehl, flour
Mensch, wench
Mus, pap, jam
Nest, nest
Obst, fruit
Ohr, ear
Pech, pitch
Pfand, pledge
Rad, wheel
Reis, twig
Ries, ream
Rind, head of cattle
Scheit, log of wood
Schild, sign-board
Schloß, lock; castle
Schmalz, grease, lard
Schwert, sword
Stift, foundation
Stroh, straw
Thal, valley
Tuch, cloth
Vieh, cattle
Volk, nation
Wachs, wax
Wamms, jacket, vest
Weh, woe
Weib, woman
Werg, tow
Wild, game
Wohl, wellbeing
Wort, word
Wrack, wreck
Zelt, tent
Zinn, tin

Also those in App. E.

2. (*a*) **Der** Hornung, February; **das** Petschaft, seal.

(*b*) **Der** Abend, evening; **das** Dutzend, dozen.

(*c*) *Masculines:*

Buchſtabe, letter of the alphabet	Glaube, faith	Wille, will	Löwe, lion
Friede, peace	Haufe, heap	Affe, monkey	Rabe, raven
Funke, spark	Name, name	Drache, dragon	Käſe, cheese
Gedanke, thought	Same, seed	Falke, falcon	
	Schade, injury	Haſe, hare	

And names of males, as: der Bote, messenger; der Knabe, boy, etc.

Neuters: Auge, eye; Ende, end; Erbe, inheritance.

(*e*) Der Katholik', Catholic.

3. (*b*) *Masculines:* Irrtum, error; Reichtum, wealth.

(*c*) *Feminines* in **-nis**:

*Bedrängnis, distress	Erlaubnis, permission	*Verdammnis, damnation
*Befugnis, authority	Erſparnis, savings	Verderbnis, corruption (is also used as neuter)
Bekümmernis, sorrow	Fäulnis, putrefaction	
Beſorgnis, apprehension	*Fördernis, furtherance	Verſäumnis, neglect, omission
Betrübnis, affliction	Finſternis, darkness	
Bewandtnis, conjuncture	Kenntnis, knowledge	Wildnis, wilderness
Empfängnis, conception	*Schreckнis, terror	
Erkenntnis, cognition	Trocknis, drought	

* Also neuter.

Feminines in **-ſal**: Drangſal, tribulation; Mühſal, trouble; Trübſal, affliction.

Masculine in **-ſel**: Stöpſel, stopper, etc.

90. 4. *Feminine* compounds of Mut: Anmut, grace; Demut, humility; Großmut, generosity; Langmut, long-suffering; Sanftmut, meekness; Schwermut, melancholy; Wehmut, sorrowfulness.

J. Nouns which have a double Gender.

(Less. XVIII, § 91.)

der Band (pl. Bände), volumes	das Band (pl. Bänder), ribbon
der Bund (pl. Bünde), confederacy	das Bund (pl. Bünde), bundle
der Bauer (pl. Bauern), peasant	das Bauer, cage
der Chor (pl. Chöre), chorus	das Chor (pl. Chore), choir
der Erbe (pl. Erben), heir	das Erbe, inheritance
die Erkenntnis, intuition	das Erkenntnis, verdict
der Geiſel, hostage	die Geißel, scourge
die Gift (Mitgift), dowry	das Gift, poison
der Harz, Hartz mountains	das Harz, resin
der Heide (pl. Heiden), heathen	die Heide, heath
der Hut (pl. Hüte), hat	die Hut, heed, guard
der Kiefer, jaw	die Kiefer (pl. Kiefern), pine-tree
der Kunde, customer	die Kunde, knowledge, tidings
der Leiter, guide	die Leiter, ladder
der Mangel, want	die Mangel, mangle
das Mark, marrow	die Mark (pl. Marken), border-land
der Meſſer, measurer, surveyor	das Meſſer, knife
der Reis, rice	das Reis (pl. Reiſer), twig

der Schild (pl. Schilde), shield	das Schild (pl. Schilder), sign-board
der See (pl. Seen), lake	die See, sea, ocean
der Sprosse, offspring	die Sprosse, step (in a ladder)
die Steuer, tax, duty	das Steuer, helm
der Stift, pencil, tack	das Stift, pious foundation
der Teil, part	das Teil, share, portion
der Thor (pl. Thoren), fool	das Thor (pl. Thore), gate
der Verdienst, gain	das Verdienst, merit

K. Monosyllabic Adjectives without Umlaut.

(Less. XXV, § 125.)

barsch, harsh	hohl, hollow	platt, flat	schroff, rugged
brav, good	hold, favourable	plump, clumsy	starr, stiff
bunt, variegated	kahl, bald	rasch, quick	stolz, proud
dumpf, dull (said of sound)	karg, stingy	roh, raw	straff, tight, stretched
	knapp, tight	rund, round	stumpf, blunt
falb, fallow	lahm, lame	sacht, gentle, low	toll, mad
falsch, false	laß, tired	sanft, soft	voll, full
flach, flat	matt, wearied	satt, satiated	wahr, true
froh, joyful	morsch, rotten	schlaff, slack	zahm, tame
glatt, smooth	nackt, naked	schlank, slender	

The practice varies with bang or bange, afraid; blaß, pale; fromm, pious; gesund, sound; klar, clear; naß, wet; zart, tender.

L. Strong Verbs not given in the Lists.

(Less. XXXII, § 192. — Rare forms in [ ].)

1. dingen (W.), hire	——	gedungen
2. gä(h)ren (W.), ferment	gor	gegoren
3. gebären,[1] bear, bring forth	gebar	geboren
4. keifen (W.), chide, scold	kiff	gekiffen
5. klieben (W.), split, cleave	klob	gekloben
6. kneipen[2] (W.), pinch	knipp	geknippen
7. pflegen,[3] practise	{ pflog [pflag] }	gepflogen
8. saugen[4] (W.), suck	sog	gesogen
9. schinden (W.), flay	{ [schand] [schund] }	geschunden
10. schleißen (W.), fray	schliß	geschlissen
11. schnauben (W.), snort	schnob	geschnoben
12. schrauben (W.), screw	schrob	geschroben
13. schwären,[5] fester	{ schwor [schwur] }	geschworen
14. spleißen (W.), split	spliß	gespliſſen
15. stecken[6] (W. N.), stick, be stuck	stak	[gestocken]
16. stieben (W. N.), scatter	stob	gestoben
17. stinken, stink	stank	gestunken

[1] gebierst, etc. [2] Rarely strong. [3] Weak in other meanings. [4] saugst, saugt, or saugst, saugt. [5] schwiert. [6] stickst, etc.; generally weak.

EXERCISES IN COMPOSITION.

EXPLANATIONS.— 1. References are to the §.

2. Words in *Italics* are not to be translated.

3. Words connected by ‿, if followed by a note, are included in that note; otherwise such connected words are to be rendered by a single word in German.

4. The gender is not given, where it is according to rule.

I. One may[1] say of the metaphysicians[2] what Scaliger said of the natives[3] of the Basque[4] Provinces[5]: "I am told[6] that they understand each‿other, but I do not believe it."

[1] 'can.' [2] Metaphysiker. [3] der Eingeborene. [4] baskisch. [5] Provinz, *f.* [6] 113, 2.

II. "A friend of mine,"[1] says Lord Erskine, "suffered from[2] continual[3] sleeplessness.[4] Various[5] means[6] were tried[7] to‿send‿him‿to‿sleep[8]—but in‿vain.[9] At‿last his physicians resorted[10] to an experiment[11] which succeeded perfectly.[12] They dressed[13] him *in* a watchman's‿coat,[14] put[15] a lantern into his[16] hand, placed[17] him in a sentry-box,[18] and — he was asleep[19] in ten minutes."

[1] 119, 3 (*c*). [2] an + dat. [3] fortwährend. [4] Schlaflosigkeit. [5] verschieden. [6] Mittel, *n.* [7] versuchen. [8] ihn einzuschläfern. [9] vergebens. [10] verfallen auf + acc. [11] Versuch, *m.* [12] vollständig. [13] anziehen + dat. of pers. and acc. of thing. [14] Nachtwächterkittel, *m.* [15] stecken. [16] 44, 6 (*b*). [17] stellen. [18] Wachthäuschen. [19] eingeschlafen.

III. The great Goethe was not particularly[1] fond[2] of music. When a pianist[3] once, at a Court‿concert in Weimar, was in‿the‿middle[5] *of* a very long sonata,[6] the poet suddenly[7] rose[8] up and, to the horror[9] of the assembled[10] ladies and gentlemen, exclaimed[11]: "If it lasts[12] three minutes longer, I shall confess[13] everything."

[1] besonder, adj. [2] Freund. [3] Klavierspieler. [4] Hof, *m.*; use compound word. [5] mitten in. [6] Sonate, *f.* [7] plötzlich. [8] stehen. [9] Schrecken, *m.* [10] versammeln. [11] rufen. [12] dauern. [13] gestehen.

IV. In the first piece[1] Theodore Hook wrote for the stage,[2] a traveller[3] comes up‿to[4] the door of an inn,[5] and says: "Excuse *me*, my friend, are you the master of this house?" — "Yes, sir," is[6] the reply; "my wife has‿been[7] dead these[8] three weeks."

[1] Stück, *n.* [2] Bühne. [3] der Reisende. [4] auf . . zu, 224, 4. [5] Gasthaus. [6] lautet. [7] 257, 4, Note. [8] 'for the last three weeks'; 46.

V. "Ven you're *a* married *man*, Samivel," said old[1] Weller, "you'll understand a‿good‿many‿things[2] as[3] you don't understand now; but vether it's worth‿while[4] going‿through[5] so much to learn so little, as the charity‿boy[6] said ven he got‿to‿the‿end‿of[7] the alphabet, is *a* matter‿o'‿taste.[8] I rayther think it isn't.[9]"

[1] a proper name preceded by an adj. takes the art. [2] Vieles. [3] 'that,' 96, 5. [4] der Mühe wert. [5] durch'machen. [6] Armenschüler. [7] fertig sein mit. [8] Geschmacksache. [9] 'I scarcely think (glauben) it.'

VI. George Selwyn's morbid[1] passion[2] for public executions[3] and similar[4] horrors[5] was notorious.[6] He paid‿a‿visit‿to Lord Holland while the latter lay on his[7] deathbed.[8] When his‿lordship[9] was told[10] that Mr. Selwyn had called,[11] he said: "Should he come again, please bring him up.[12] If I am still alive[13] I shall be‿happy[14] to see him. If I am dead he will be happy to see me."

[1] krankhaft. [2] Leidenschaft. [3] Hinrichtung. [4] ähnlich. [5] Gräuel, *m.* [6] allgemein bekannt. [7] 44, 6 (*a*). [8] Sterbebett. [9] Se. Gnaden. [10] benachrichtigen. [11] 'been there.' [12] 210, 3, (*b*). [13] am Leben. [14] sich freuen.

VII. At[1] the time when Napoleon the Third lived as *an* exile[2] in London, he was always a welcome guest at[3] Lady Blessington's, at[4] Gore House. Very soon after his return[5]

to Paris, while his political[6] prospects[7] were still rather[8] doubtful,[9] her ladyship[10] paid a visit to[11] that capital, and met[12] the Prince driving[13] in the Bois de Boulogne. It was an embarrassing[14] encounter,[15] for the future[16] Emperor of the French had shown[17] himself anything but[18] grateful for her ladyship's[10] courtesy.[19] He saluted[20] her, however,[21] with forced politeness,[22] and asked: "Countess,[23] shall you stay long in Paris?" — "I really[24] cannot say," answered Lady Blessington, with a bewitching[25] smile; "and you?"

[1] 227, (*b*), 2. [2] der Verbannte. [3] bei. [4] in. [5] Rückkehr, *f.* [6] politisch. [7] Aussicht, *f.* [8] ziemlich. [9] zweifelhaft. [10] 'the lady.' [11] besuchen. [12] treffen (*trans.*). [13] auf einer Spazierfahrt. [14] verlegen. [15] Zusammentreffen. [16] zukünftig. [17] erweisen. [18] nichts weniger als. [19] Freundlichkeit. [20] grüßen. [21] indessen. [22] Höflichkeit. [23] gnädige Gräfin. [24] wirklich. [25] bezaubernd.

VIII. Talleyrand was bored[1] for[2] his[3] autógraph[4] by a dull[5] English nobleman.[6] At last[7] he sent him the following invitation[8]: "Dear Lord, — *Will you* honour[9] me with your company[10] next Wednesday evening, at eight o'clock. I have invited a number[11] of exceedingly clever[12] people, and I do not like[13] to be the only fool[14] among them."

[1] zum Überdruß bestürmen. [2] um. [3] 'an.' [4] Autograph, *n.* [5] einfältig. [6] Edelmann. [7] endlich. [8] Einladung. [9] beehren, *imper.* [10] Gegenwart (presence). [11] Anzahl, *f.* [12] geistreich. [13] gerne mögen. [14] Dummkopf.

XI. At a dinner party[1] in Paris, a dull[2] and ugly[3] baron[4] sat between Madame de Staël and Madame Récamier (the acknowleged belle[5] of the day), and whispered[6] to the former: "Am I not fortunate to be[7] *sitting* between beauty and genius[8]?" — "Not so very fortunate," replied the offended authoress,[9] "for you possess[10] neither the one nor the other!"

[1] Diner (Fr.), *n.* [2] dumm. [3] häßlich. [4] Baron'. [5] Schönheit. [6] ins Ohr flüstern. [7] sich befinden. [8] Genie, *n.* [9] Schriftstellerin. [10] besitzen.

X. When the dramatist Gilbert was one day descending[1] in the greatest hurry[2] the steps[3] fronting[4] the Savage Club,[5] a stranger, in a state[6] of excitement[7] which defied[8] regular[9] construction,[10] addressed him thus: "Excuse *me*, have you seen a gentleman with one eye of the name of[11] X. —?" Gilbert answered[12] this question with another: "Stop[13] a moment. What's the name of his other eye?"

[1] herunterſteigen. [2] Eile, *f.* [3] Treppe, sing. [4] vor. [5] use the Engl. words. [6] Zuſtand, *m.* [7] Aufregung. [8] ſpotten + gen. [9] regelrecht. [10] Wortfolge. [11] Namens. [12] beantworten. [13] erlauben.

XI. When Charles Lamb was still a clerk[1] in the India-House,[2] he was one day rebuked[3] as follows[4] by a superior[5]: "I have remarked, Mr. Lamb, that you always come to[6] the office[7] very late." — "That's true, to be sure,[8]" answered Elia; "but you must not forget that I always go away very early." Of course[9] such an explanation[10] was more than enough.[11]

[1] Schreiber; 44, 5. [2] use the Engl. words. [3] zur Rede ſtellen. [4] folgendermaßen. [5] der Vorgeſetzte. [6] auf. [7] Bureau, *n.* [8] wohl (after the verb 'is'). [9] natürlich. [10] Erklärung. [11] hinreichend.

XII. I never in my life committed[1] more than one *act of* folly,[2]" said Rulhière one day in the presence of Talleyrand. "But when will it end[3]?" inquired the latter.

[1] begehen, trans. [2] Torheit. [3] enden.

XIII. While Sheridan was staying[1] at the country house[2] of a friend, he was one morning asked[3] by a lady to accompany her on a walk. The lady was neither witty nor beautiful, and the author of the 'School for Scandal'[4] was at a loss[5] for an excuse, until he luckily[6] discovered and announced[7] to her that it was raining. His disappointed[8] persecutress[9]

retired,[10] but shortly[11] came back to announce[12] that the weather had cleared up.[13] "So it has,[14] madam,[15]" said Sheridan, driven[16] to despair[17]; "but it has only[18] cleared up *enough* for one — not yet for two."

[1] auf Beſuch ſein. [2] Landhaus. [3] bitten. [4] Läſterſchule. [5] verlegen um. [6] glücklicherweiſe. [7] mitteilen + dat. [8] in ihren Erwartungen (expectations) getäuſcht; 283, 4. [9] Verfolgerin. [10] ſich zurückziehen. [11] bald. [12] mit der Nachricht. [13] ſich aufklären. [14] allerdings. [15] gnädige Frau. [16] 299. [17] Verzweiflung; use def. art. [18] höchſtens.

XIV. Foote, being annoyed[1] one day by an itinerant[2] fiddler,[3] who produced[4] harsh[5] discords[6] under his window, threw him down a coin[7] and bade him be gone,[8] as one scraper[9] at[10] a door was quite sufficient.[11]

[1] beläſtigen; 284, 1, (*a*). [2] herumziehend. [3] Geigenſpieler. [4] hervorbringen. [5] ſchrill. [6] Mißton, *m.* [7] Geldſtück, *n.* [8] ſich aus dem Staube machen. [9] Kratzer. [10] an. [11] genug.

XV. A certain nobleman was detected[1] trying[2] to cheat[3] at[4] cards,[5] and turned[6] out of the house with the threat[7] that he should be thrown out of the window if he came again. He related his misfortune[8] to Talleyrand, protested[9] his innocence,[10] and asked[11] him at the same time[12] for[13] advice.[14] "Well, my dear friend, I advise you to play in future[15] only on the ground floor.[16]"

[1] entdecken. [2] "in the attempt." [3] betrügen. [4] im. [5] Kartenſpiel, *n.* [6] weiſen. [7] Drohung. [8] Mißgeſchick, *n.* [9] beteuern. [10] Unſchuld, *f.* [11] bitten. [12] zugleich. [13] um. [14] Rat, *m.* [15] künftig. [16] zu ebener Erde.

XVI. A barrister[1] entered[2] the court[3] one morning with his wig[4] *stuck* quite on one side. Not being aware[5] how ridiculous[6] he looked,[7] he was surprised[8] at[9] the observations[10] made[11] upon it,[12] and at length[13] he asked Curran: "Do

you see anything ridiculous[14] in this wig, Mr. Curran?" — "Nothing except the head," was the consolatory[15] answer.

[1] Advokat'. [2] treten in + acc. [3] Gerichtssaal, *m.* [4] Perrücke, *f.* [5] wissen, 284, 1 (*b*). [6] lächerlich. [7] aussehen. [8] sich wundern. [9] über + acc. [10] Bemerkung. [11] 290, 2 (*b*). [12] darüber. [13] endlich. [14] 122, 11. [15] tröstlich.

XVII. After a duel[1] with young O'Connell, Lord Alvanley gave a guinea[2] to the coachman[3] who had driven him to and from the *scene of* the encounter.[4] Surprised at[5] the largeness of the sum,[6] the man said: "My lord,[7] I only *took* you to[8] ——" Alvanley interrupted him with the words: "My friend, the guinea is for bringing[9] me back, not for taking[10] me."

[1] Duell', *n.* [2] Guinee', *f.* [3] Kutscher; 45, Rule 2. [4] "to the *scene of* the encounter (Stelldichein, *n.*) and from there back." [5] durch. [6] "large sum (Summe)." [7] gnädiger Herr. [8] ich habe Sie ja nur hin—. [9] 277. [10] hinnehmen, use the perf.

XVIII. A gentleman, who had been worsted[1] in a dispute[2] with Porson, lost his temper.[3] "Professor,[4]" said he, "my opinion[5] of you is most[6] contemptible.[7]" — "Sir," returned the great Grecian,[8] "I never yet met[9] with any[10] of your opinions that was[11] not contemptible."

[1] den Kürzern ziehen. [2] Disputation. [3] die Geduld. [4] Herr Professor. [5] Meinung. [6] 127, 2. [7] verächtlich. [8] Grieche. [9] vorkommen (impers. + dat. of pers.). [10] ein (nom.). [11] plupf. subj.; 268, 4.

XIX. The English,[1] says Sydney Smith, are a calm,[2] reflecting[3] people; they are ready to give time and money as soon as they are convinced[4] of a thing; but they love dates,[5] names, and certificates.[6] In the midst of the most heartrending[7] narratives,[8] John Bull requires[9] the day[10] *of the month*, the year[11] *of our Lord*, the name of the parish,[12]

and the countersign[13] of three or four respectable[14] householders.[15] As soon as these affecting[16] circumstances[17] have been stated,[18] he can no longer hold out,[19] but[20] gives way[21] to his natural kindness — puffs,[22] blubbers,[23] and subscribes.

[1] Engländer. [2] ruhig. [3] überle'gend. [4] überzeu'gen. [5] Zahl, *f.* [6] Beglaubigungsſchein, *m.* [7] herzzerreißend. [8] Erzählung. [9] verlangen. [10] Datum. [11] Jahreszahl. [12] Kirchſpiel, *n.* [13] Unterſchrift, *f.* [14] angeſehen. [15] Hausherr. [16] rührend. [17] Umſtand, *m.* [18] angeben. [19] es aushalten. [20] 236, 1, Rem. 1. [21] freien Lauf laſſen. [22] ſchnauben. [23] ſchluchzen.

XX. A young poet once came to Piron to read[1] him a couple of new sonnets[2] written[3] by him, and ask him which he preferred.[4] The moment[5] he had finished the first, Piron said hastily[6]: "I prefer the other," and positively[7] refused[8] to listen even[9] *to* a line[10] of it.

[1] vorleſen. [2] Sonnett', *n.* [3] verfaſſen; 290, 2 (*b*). [4] vorziehen. [5] Sobald ... nur. [6] haſtig. [7] durchaus. [8] ſich weigern. [9] auch nur. [10] Zeile.

XXI. Wewitzer, the well-known actor[1] and wag,[2] was joking[3] and laughing at[4] rehearsal[5] one day, instead of minding[6] his part.[7] Raymond, the stage-manager,[8] took[9] him to task,[10] saying: "Mr. Wewitzer, I wish[11] you would pay[12] a little attention.[13]" — "Well,[14] sir,[15]" answered Wewitzer, "so I am[16]; I'm paying as little attention as possible."

[1] Schauſpieler. [2] Witzbold, *m.* [3] ſcherzen. [4] auf. [5] Probe, use def. art. [6] paſſen + auf, with acc.; 224, 2, (*b*). [7] Rolle. [8] Regiſſeur. [9] ſtellen. [10] zur Rede. [11] wollte. [12] geben. [13] Acht. [14] Nun. [15] Herr Regiſſeur. [16] das thue ich ja auch.

XXII. The younger Dumas once perpetrated[1] a cruel[2] joke[3] at the expense[4] of the Manzanares,[5] the rivulet[6] that

runs‿through[7] Madrid and is called a river by the grandiloquent[8] inhabitants of this city. When the famous dramatist[9] was[10] one day present[10] at a bullfight,[11] either the heat, or some[12] revolting[13] incident[14] in the show,[15] overcame[16] him to‿such‿an‿extent[17] that he fainted.[18] On[19] somebody bringing him a glass of water, as he was recovering,[20] Dumas declined[21] it, saying[22] in[23] a faint[24] voice: "Go and pour it into the Manzanares; the river needs[25] it much more than I!"

[1] machen. [2] bitter. [3] Witz. [4] auf Koſten. [5] masc. [6] Bach. [7] durchlau'fen. [8] großſprecheriſch. [9] Drama'tiker. [10] beiwohnen + dat. [11] Stiergefecht. [12] 157. [13] empörend. [14] Vorfall, *m.* [15] Schauſpiel, *n.* [16] überwäl'tigen. [17] dermaßen. [18] ohnmächtig werden. [19] 277, Rem. 6. [20] ſich erholen. [21] ablehnen. [22] 284, 1 (*a*). [23] mit. [24] ſchwach. [25] nötig haben + acc.

XXIII. Frank Talfourd, who rejoiced‿in[1] a stature[2] of six feet and several inches, was playfully[3] challenged[4] at the Savage Club one evening to raise his foot as‿high‿as[5] the chandelier[6] that hung in the middle of the room. Lifting[7] his foot with‿rather‿too‿much‿vigour,[8] he knocked down one of the glass‿globes,[9] which fell to the ground and was‿smashed[10] to atoms.[11] Frank rang *the bell* instantly, and asked the responding[12] waiter for[13] the amount[14] of his bill.[15] "Pray, sir, what have you had?" — "Oh!" said Talfourd, pointing[16] *up* to[17] the chandelier, "only a glass of that."

[1] ſich erfreuen + gen. [2] Höhe. [3] im Scherze. [4] auffordern. [5] bis zu. [6] Kronleuchter. [7] in die Höhe werfen, 284, 1 (*b*). [8] etwas zu kräftig. [9] Glaskuppel, *f.* [10] zerſchellen, *neut.* [11] "into *a* thousand pieces." [12] erſcheinen. [13] nach. [14] Betrag, *m.* [15] Rechnung. [16] hinzeigen, 284, 1 (*a*). [17] auf.

XXIV. Douglas Jerrold once said to a young gentleman who burned with[1] *an* ardent‿desire[2] to see himself in‿print[3];

"Be advised[4] by me, young man; don't take down[5] the shutters until you have something in the window worth‿looking‿at.[6]"

[1] vor + dat. [2] Begierde. [3] gedruckt. [4] use laſſen, with refl. form, 114, (*b*). [5] ab. [6] ſehenswert, 122, 11.

XXV. Alexandre Dumas had a well-won[1] reputation in Paris[2] society as a teller‿of‿anecdotes. At a large evening‿party, he was[3] rather[4] annoyed[3] at the persistent[5] efforts of his hostess to‿induce‿him[6] to exhibit[7] his power[8] in this accomplishment.[9] At last, tired of refusing,[10] he said: "Every one has his trade,[11] madam.[12] The gentleman who entered[13] the room just before me is a distinguished[14] artillery‿officer. Let him bring a cannon here and fire[15] it; then I will tell one of my little stories."

[1] wohlverdient. [2] Pariſer, 122, 9. [3] ſich ärgern + über with acc. [4] nicht wenig. [5] unabläſſig. [6] ihn dahin zu bringen. [7] zeigen. [8] Fertigkeit. [9] Fach, *n.* [10] subst. inf. [11] Handwerk. [12] gnädige Frau. [13] eintreten in. [14] ausgezeichnet. [15] abfeuern.

XXVI. Some brainless[1] acquaintance[2] of Rivarol's was boasting[3] of[4] his having[5] mastered[6] four languages. "I congratulate[7] you," said Rivarol; "you'll have in‿future[8] four words for one idea.[9]"

[1] gedankenarm. [2] der Bekannte, 122, 1, 2. [3] prahlen. [4] 277, Rem. 1. [5] daß clause. [6] ſich völlig aneignen. [7] gratulieren + dat. [8] künftig. [9] Gedanke.

XXVII. On the day after the first representation[1] of 'L'Ami des Femmes,[2]' a comedy[3] by Alexandre Dumas (the second), the author's father sent him a letter, congratulating[4] him on[5] the success[6] of his piece,[7] and volunteering[8] *his own* collaboration[9] on[10] some future[11] one.[12] The letter

closed with a somewhat grandiloquent phrase[13]: "If *a* guarantee[14] is desired[15] for my ability,[16] I *beg to* refer[17] you to[17] 'Monte Christo' and 'The Three Musketeers.'[18]" The son replied: "Even if I did not know the great works you[19] mention,[20] I should gladly[21] accept your offer,[22] on account of the high opinion[23] my father evidently[24] entertains[25] of you."

[1] Aufführung. [2] der Frauenfreund. [3] Luſtſpiel, *n.* [4] "in which he congratulated." [5] zu. [6] Erfolg, *m.* [7] Stück, *n.* [8] ſich erbieten. [9] "to collaborate (mitarbeiten)." [10] an. [11] ſpäter. [12] 122, 4, Note. [13] Phraſe. [14] Bürgſchaft. [15] verlangen. [16] Fähigkeit. [17] hinweiſen auf + acc. [18] Musketier. [19] 96, 7. Obs. [20] erwähnen. [21] mit Freuden. [22] Anerbieten, *n.* [23] Meinung. [24] augenſcheinlich. [25] "has."

XXVIII. Curran happened to tell[1] Sir[2] Thomas Turton that he could never speak in public[3] a quarter of an hour without moistening[4] his lips.[5] Sir Thomas declared that he had spoken *for* five hours in the House of Commons[6] on[7] the Nabob of Oude without feeling[8] the least[9] thirst. "That is very remarkable indeed,[10]" observed[11] Curran, "for everybody[12] agrees[13] that it[14] was the driest[15] speech of the session.[16]"

[1] erzählte gelegentlich. [2] dem Sir. [3] öffentlich. [4] anfeuchten; 224, 2, (*b*). [5] Lippe, *f.* [6] Unterhaus. [7] über + acc.. [8] verſpüren. [9] gering. [10] ja (immediately after the verb). [11] bemerken. [12] Alle (pl.). [13] darin übereinſtimmen. [14] das. [15] trocken. [16] Seſſion.

XXIX. A gentleman praising[1] the personal[2] charms[3] of a very plain[4] lady in Foote's presence, the latter[5] said: "Why don't you lay[6] claim[7] to[8] such a beauty?" — "What right have I to[9] *do so?*" was[10] the counter-question.[11] "Every right," replied Foote, "by[12] the universal[13] law of nations[14] — as the first discoverer.[15]"

[1] 284, 1 (*a*). [2] perſönlich. [3] Reiz, *m.* [4] "anything but (241, 19, Note)

beautiful." [5] 134. [6] machen. [7] Anſpruch, *m.* [8] auf + acc. [9] dazu. [10] lautete. [11] Gegenfrage. [12] nach. [13] allgemein. [14] Völkerrecht. [15] Entdecker.

XXX. One day the poet and banker[1] Rogers took[2] Thomas Moore and Sydney Smith home in his carriage from a breakfast, and insisted[3] on showing them by the way[4] Dryden's house in some obscure[5] street. It was very wet weather; the house looked[6] *very much* like[6] other old houses, and, having[7] thin shoes on, they both strongly[8] remonstrated[9]; but in vain. Rogers got out[10] himself,[11] expecting[12] them[13] to do likewise[14]; but Sydney Smith leaned[15] laughing out of the window, and exclaimed: "Oh,[16] now you see why Rogers doesn't mind[17] getting[18] out: he has goloshes[19] on. But, my dear Rogers, lend each of us a golosh; we will then each stand upon one leg and admire the house as long as you please.[20]"

[1] Banquier (pron. as in French). [2] bringen. [3] beſtehen auf + acc., 277. [4] unterwegs. [5] obſcur. [6] ausſehen wie. [7] 284, 1 (*b*). [8] energiſch. [9] proteſtieren. [10] ausſteigen. [11] 42, 3, Rem. [12] "and expected." [13] 275. [14] das Gleiche. [15] lehnte. [16] Oho. [17] ſich ſcheuen vor + dat. [18] 277, Rem. 3. [19] Galoſche, *f.* [20] gefallen, impers., + dat.

XXXI. "When I was going from my house at Enfield to the India House one morning," says Charles Lamb, "I met Coleridge on his way to pay me a visit. He was brimful[1] of some[2] new idea, and — in spite of[3] my telling him that my time was precious[4] — he drew me into the door of an unoccupied[5] garden by the roadside,[6] and[7] there — sheltered[8] by[9] an evergreen[10] hedge[11] from observation[12] — *he* took[13] me by[14] the button of my coat,[15] closed[16] his[17] eyes, and commenced an enthusiastic[18] discourse,[19] waving[20] at the same time[21] his right hand gently,[22] as[23] the musical[24] words flowed in an unbroken[25] stream[26] from his[27] lips. I listened[28] entranced[29]; but the striking[30] of a church clock re-

called[31] me to *a sense of* my duty.[32] I saw it was of no use to attempt to break away[33]; so[34] I took‿advantage‿of[35] his absorption[36] in his subject,[37] quietly[38] cut off the button from my coat with my pen-knife[39] and decamped.[40] As I was passing[41] the same garden five hours afterwards on my way‿home,[42] I heard Coleridge's voice, looked‿in,[43] and — there he stood, with closed eyes, the button[44] in his fingers, gracefully waving his right hand, just as *when* I had left[45] him. He had never[46] missed[47] me."

[1] übervoll' von. [2] irgend ein. [3] trotzdem daß. [4] kostbar. [5] unbenutzt. [6] Landstraße. [7] Insert verb and object here. [8] schützen, 291, 5; 299. [9] durch. [10] immergrün. [11] Hecke. [12] Beobachtung. [13] fassen. [14] 228 (*b*). [15] Rockknopf. [16] schließen, 123. [17] 44, 6 (*a*). [18] begeistert. [19] Rede. [20] hin und her bewegen, 131, *B*., Rem. [21] wobei. [22] anmutig ('gracefully'). [23] während. [24] wohltönend. [25] unaufhalt'sam. [26] Strom. [27] 44, 6 (*b*). [28] zuhören. [29] entzückt. [30] Schlagen, inf. subst. [31] erinnern an + acc. [32] Pflicht, *f*. [33] "I saw (erkennen) the uselessness (Nutzlosigkeit) of an attempt to break‿away (sich losreißen)." [34] deshalb. [35] benutzen (*trans*.). [36] "it that he was absorbed (völlig versunken in + acc.)." [37] Gegenstand, *m*. [38] ruhig. [39] Federmesser, *n*. [40] Reißaus nehmen. [41] vorbeikommen an + dat. [42] Heimweg. [43] hineingucken. [44] 255, 2. [45] verlassen. [46] gar nicht. [47] vermissen.

Sir Thomas More.

XXXII. Erasmus describes[1] this great man thus[2]: — "More seems to be made[3] and born for Friendship[4]; of this virtue he is a sincere[5] follower[6] and very strict observer.[7] He is not afraid[8] to be accused[9] of[10] having many friends, which,[11] according‿to Hesiod, is said[12] to be no great praise.[13] Every‿one may[14] become More's friend; he is not slow[15] in choosing,[16] he is kind[17] in cherishing,[18] and constant[19] in keeping[20] them.[21] If by‿accident[22] he becomes the friend of one[23] whose vices[24] he cannot correct,[25] he slackens[26] the reins[27] of friendship towards[28] him, diverting[29] it rather[30] by‿little‿and‿little,[31] than entirely[32] dissol-

ving[33] it. Those[34] persons whom he finds[35] *to be* sincere[36] and consonant[37] to his own[38] virtuous[39] disposition,[40] he is so charmed[41] with,[42] that he appears to place[43] his chief[44] worldly[45] pleasure in their conversation[46] and company. And although More is negligent[47] in[48] his own temporal[49] concerns,[50] yet[51] no one is more assiduous[52] in assisting[53] the suits[54] of his friends than he. What shall I say more? If any person is desirous[55] to have a perfect[56] model[57] of friendship, no one can afford[58] him a better than More. In his conversation[59] he shows so much affability[60] and sweetness of manner,[61] that no man can be of so austere a disposition,[62] but that[63] More's conversation must[64] make[65] him cheerful[65]; and no matter[66] so unpleasing,[67] but that *with* his wit[68] *he* can take away[69] from it all disgust.[70]"

[1] beſchreiben. [2] folgendermaßen. [3] ſchaffen, 186; 299. [4] 44, 1 (*b*). [5] aufrichtig (*adv.*). [6] "to be a follower of" = nachfolgen + dat. [7] "and very strictly observes (beobachten) it." [8] 277; 291, 11. [9] "of the reproach (Vorwurf) of having." [10] 277, Rem, 1. [11] 96, 5. [12] 200, 5 (*c*). [13] Ruhm, *m.* [14] "can." [15] langſam. [16] Wählen, 270; use def. art. [17] freundlich. [18] pflegen. [19] unerſchütterlich. [20] feſthalten. [21] "of his friends." [22] zufällig, 239, Rem. 2. [23] "a man (Menſch)." [24] Laſter, *n.* [25] verbeſſern. [26] lockern. [27] Band; 64. [28] mit. [29] ablenken; 284, 1 (*a*). [30] lieber. [31] allmälig. [32] ganz. [33] löſen. [34] ſolch. [35] erfinden. [36] aufrichtig. [37] entſprechend + dat. [38] eigen. [39] tugendhaft. [40] Sinnesart. [41] bezaubern. [42] Use as prep. before "those persons." [43] ſtellen in + acc. [44] "greatest." [45] weltlich. [46] Unterhaltung. [47] gleichgiltig. [48] gegen. [49] weltlich. [50] Angelegenheit. [51] doch. [52] ſtrebſam. [53] "in the support (Unterſtützung) of." [54] Angelegenheit. [55] wünſchen. [56] vollkommen. [57] Ideal', *n.*; use compound word. [58] liefern. [59] Umgang, *m.* [60] Leutſeligkeit. [61] Liebenswürdigkeit. [62] ſo herbe geſinnt. [63] daß nicht. [64] ſollte. [65] aufheitern. [66] Gegenſtand, *m.* [67] widrig. [68] Witz, *m.* [69] entfernen von. [70] Alles Widerwärtige.

VOCABULARY.

ABBREVIATIONS.

I. German:

Anm. = Anmerkung, note.
A. T. = Altes Teſtament, Old Testament.
a. a. O. = am angeführten Orte, in the place referred to.
bgl., vergl. = vergleichen, the like.
b. = any case of the definite article.
d. h. = das heißt, } that is.
d. i. = das iſt, }
d. J. = dieſes Jahres, of this year.
d. M. = dieſes Monats, of this month.
Dr. = Doktor, Doctor.
Ew., Ewr. = Euer, Eure, Eurer (in titles).
fl. = Gulden, florin.
Fr. = Frau, Mrs.
Frhr. = Freiherr, Baron.
Frl. = Fräulein, Miss.
geb. = geboren, born.
geſt. = geſtorben, died.
Gr. = Groſchen (a coin).
h., heil. = heilig, holy, saint.
Hr., Hrn. = Herr, Herrn, Mr.
i. J. = im Jahre, in the year.
Kap. = Kapitel, chapter.
Kr. = Kreuzer (a coin).
l. = lies, read.
M., Mk., M. = Mark (money).
Mſkr. = Manuſkript, manuscript.
Maj. = Majeſtät, Majesty.
N., N. N. = Name, name.
n. Chr. = nach Chriſto, after Christ.
N. S. = Nachſchrift, postscript.
N. T. = Neues Teſtament, New Testament.
Pf., Pfd. = Pfund, pound.
Pf. = Pfennig, penny.
pp. = und ſo weiter, and so forth.
Se., Sr. = Seine, Seiner, his (in titles).
S. = Seite, page.
St., Skt. = Sankt, Saint.
ſ. = ſiehe, see.
ſ. o. = ſiehe oben, see above.
ſ. u. = ſiehe unten, } see below.
ſ. w. u. = ſiehe weiter unten, }
T., Th., Thl. = Teil, Theil, part.
Thlr. = Thaler (money).
u. a. m. = und andere mehr, } et cætera.
u. dgl. m. = und dergleichen mehr, }
u. ſ. f. = und ſo fort, }
u. ſ. w. = und ſo weiter, }
V. = Vers, verse.
v. Chr. = vor Chriſto, before Christ.
vergl., vgl. = vergleiche, compare.
v. o. = von oben, from the top.
v. u. = von unten, from the bottom.
z. B. = zum Beiſpiel, for example.

II. Latin (in addition to others which are used in English also):

A. C. = *Anno Christi*, in the year of Our Lord (Christ).
a. c. = *anni currentis*, of the current year.
S. T. = *Salvo Titulo*, without prejudice to the title (used in addresses where the proper title of the person addressed is uncertain).

VOCABULARY.

GERMAN—ENGLISH.

EXPLANATIONS. — 1. The numerals refer to the §.

2. All verbs are weak and regular, unless referred to a §; the conjugation of others will be found under the § indicated.

3. A — indicates that the word in question is to be supplied; under masc. and neuter substantives, the terminations of the gen. sing. and nom. plur. are given; thus: Wagen (-s; —) means that the gen. sing. of Wagen is Wagens, and the nom. plur. the same as the nom. sing. The sign ¨ indicates Umlaut in the pl., e. g.: Garten, (-s; ¨) means that the gen. sing. of this word is Gartens, and the nom. pl. Gärten; Sohn (-es; ¨e) means: gen. sing. Sohnes, nom. pl. Söhne; under fem. substs. the pl. only is given.

4. With adjectives, ¨er indicates Umlaut in the compar. and superl.

5. Proper names are not given when they are the same in German as in English.

A.

Ab, off.
A'bend, *m.* (-es; -e), evening; heute —, this evening.
abends, in the evening.
aber, but; however.
abfahren (186; sein), to set off, depart, go; set sail.
abhalten (188), to hinder, deter.
abhelfen (159), to help, remedy; dem ist leicht abzuhelfen, that is easily remedied.
abholen, to call for.
abkühlen (sich), to (get) cool.
abreisen (sein), to set out, start, depart.
abschneiden (118), to cut off.
acht, eight; — Tage, a week.
Acht, *f.*, attention, care; sich in — nehmen, to be careful, take care.
addieren, to add.
Adresse, *f.* (-n), address.
Al'gebra, *f.*, algebra.
allein', *adj.*, alone, only; *conj.*, but, only.
all(er, e, es), all, (the) whole; alle Tage, every day;
Alles, *n. sing.*, all, everything.
allerdings', *adv.*, certainly, of course.
als, than, as; as a; when; als ob, as if.
also, thus, so; so then, accordingly.
alt (¨er), old, ancient.
Alter, *n.* (-s), age, old age.
Amerikaner, *m.* (-s, —), American.
an (*dat.* or *acc.*, 65), on, at (227), to, towards, in, by, near, of; er starb am Fieber, he died of fever (231, *c*).
anbieten (131), to offer.
ander, other; die Andern, the others.
ändern, to alter, change; es läßt sich nicht —, it cannot be helped.
anderthalb, one and a half.
Anfang, *m.* (-es; ¨e), commencement, beginning.
anfangen (188), to begin, commence.
anfangs, in the beginning, at first.
angenehm (*dat.*), pleasant, agreeable.
ängstlich, frightened, timid, anxious.
anhalten (188), to continue.
Anhöhe, *f.* (-n), hill.
ankaufen (sich), to settle, buy up property.
ankleiden (sich), to dress.
ankommen (167; sein), to arrive; in B. (*dat.*) —, to arrive at B.
anrichten, to cause.
anschaffen, to provide, procure.

antreffen (167), to meet with, find.
Antwort, *f.* (-en), answer, reply.
antworten (*dat.*), to answer, reply.
anziehen (131), to draw on; put on (clothes).
Apfel, *m.* (-s; ¨), apple.
Apfelbaum, *m.* (-s; ¨e), apple-tree.
April', *m.* (-s), April.
Ar'beit, *f.* (-en), work; labour; task.
arbeiten, to work.
Arbeiter, *m.* (-s; —), workman.
Architekt', *m.* (-en; -en), architect.
Arie (*trisyll.*), *f.* (-n), air, song
arm (¨er), poor
Arm, *m.* (-es; -e), arm.
artig, well behaved; — ſein, to behave one's self properly (of children).
Arzt, *m.* (-es; ¨e), physician, doctor.
Aſchenputtel, *n.* (-s), Cinderella.
Aſt, *m.* (-es; ¨e), bough, branch.
Aſtrolog', *m.* (-en; -en), astrologer.
auch, also, too, even; wer —, whoever; wir ſind es —, so are we.
auf, (*dat. or acc.*) on, upon (65); for, in (230); at (227, 3); to; open; — drei Wochen, for three weeks (*fut.*, 229, *b*, 2); — daß, in order that; — dem Lande, in the country.
aufbleiben (120), to stay up, sit up, remain up.
Aufenthalt, *m.* (-es; -e), sojourn, stay; delay.
Aufgabe, *f.* (-n), task, lesson, exercise.
aufgeben (181), to give up.
aufhängen, to hang up.
aufheben (131), to raise up, lift up, pick up; abolish, annul, cancel.
aufhören, to cease, stop.
aufmachen, to open.
aufmerkſam, attentive; einen auf etwas — machen, to call the attention of anyone to anything.
Aufmerkſamkeit, *f.* (-en), attention; kindness.
aufſchieben (131), to put off, postpone, delay.
aufſetzen, to put up; put on (of a hat).
aufſtehen (186; ſein), to rise, get up.
aufſteigen (120; ſein), to rise, ascend, mount.
auftreten (181; ſein), to appear.
aufziehen (131), to wind up (of a time-piece).
Auge, *n.* (-s; -n), eye.
Augenblick, *m.* (-es; -e), moment, instant.
aus (*dat.*, 46), out of; from, of; out.
Ausdruck, *m.* (-es; ¨e), expression.
Ausflug, *m.* (-es; ¨e), excursion, pleasure-trip; einen — machen, to take a pleasure-trip.
Ausgabe, *f.* (-n), edition.
ausgezeichnet, excellent.
ausgleiten (118; ſein), to slide, slip.
auslaſſen (188), to omit, leave out.
auslöſchen, to put out, extinguish.
ausſehen (181), to look (like, [nach).
Ausſicht, *f.* (-en), view, prospect.
ausſprechen (167), to pronounce.
Ausſtellung, *f.* (-en), exhibition.
außer (46), outside of; *conj.* except, besides.
außerhalb (*gen.*), outside of.
auswendig, by heart.
auszeichnen, to distinguish.
auszíehen (131; ſein), to remove (*intr.*).
Axt, *f.* (¨e) axe.

B.

backen (186), to bake.
Backſtein, *m.* (-es; -e), brick.
Bahnhof, *m.* (-es; ¨e), railway-station.
bald (eher, am ehſten), soon, shortly.
Band, *n.* (-es; ¨er), ribbon; *m.* (-es; ¨e), volume.
Bank, *f.* (¨-en), bank; (¨e), bench.
bar, (paid in) cash, ready (of money).
Bär, *m.* (-en; -en), bear.
Barbier, *m.* (-es; -e), barber.
bauen, to build.
Bauer, *m.* (-n *or* -s; -n), peasant, countryman.
Baum, *m.* (-es; ¨e), tree.
Bauplatz, *m.* (-es; ¨e), site.
bedauern, to pity; regret; (ich) bedaure, I am sorry.
bedenken (99, 2), to consider.
bedienen, to serve, wait upon; ſich —, to help one's self.
Bedingung, *f.* (-en), condition.
beeilen (ſich), to hasten, hurry.
Beere, *f.* (-en), berry.
Befehl, *m.* (-es; -e), command, order; zu —, at (your) service, what is (your) pleasure?
befehlen (167), to command.
befleißen (ſich, 118), to apply one's self

befriedigen, to satisfy, content.
begegnen, (*dat.*; ſein), to meet.
begießen (123), to water (flowers, etc.).
beginnen (158), to begin.
begleiten, to accompany.
Begleitung, *f.* (-en), accompaniment.
begnügen (ſich — mit), to be satisfied, be contented (with).
Begriff, *m.* (-eš; -e), idea, notion; im — ſein, to be upon the point of, be about (to).
behaupten, to assert, affirm; to maintain.
bei (46), by, at, about; with; — Tiſche, at table; — meinem Onkel, at my uncle's; — mir, with me, at my house, about me; — ſchönem Wetter, in fine weather.
beide, both, two.
beides, *n. sing.*, both.
Beifall, *m.* (-eš), applause.
beinahe, almost, nearly.
beißen (118), to bite.
beiſtehen (186; *dat.*), to assist, aid.
Bekanntſchaft, *f.* (-en), acquaintance.
bekennen (99), to acknowledge; confess.
bekommen (167), to obtain, get, receive, have.
bemerken, to perceive, observe.
bemühen (ſich), to take pains, try.
bequem', convenient, comfortable, commodious.
Berg, *m.* (-eš; -e), mountain, hill.
bergen (159), to hide.
berſten (159), to burst.
berühmt, famous, celebrated.
beſchäftigen, to occupy, employ; beſchäftigt, busy, employed.
beſinnen (ſich; 158), to deliberate, reflect.
beſonderš, particularly, especially.
beſorgen, to attend to.
beſprechen (167), to discuss.
beſſer (*see* gut), better.
beſt, (*superl. of* gut, *which see*), best; zum Beſten, for the benefit of; am beſten, best (of all).
beſtehen (186), to undergo, pass (an examination); — (aušš), to consist (of); — (auf + *acc.*), to insist (upon).
beſteigen (120), to ascend.
beſtellen, to order.
beſtrafen, to punish.
beſtreiten (118), to defray.
Beſuch, *m.* (-eš; -e), visit, visitors; — haben, to have visitors; —e machen, make calls; bei Jemand auf — ſein, to be on a visit at any one's.
beſuchen, to visit; die Univerſität —, to study at the university.
beten, to pray, say prayers.
betragen (186), to amount to.
Betragen, *n.* (-š), behaviour, conduct.
betreffen (167), to concern; was mich betrifft, as for me.
betrügen (131), to cheat, deceive.
Bettler, *m.* (-š; —), beggar.
bewegen (131), to induce; to move.
beweiſen (120), to prove, demonstrate.
bewundern, to admire.
bezahlen, to pay (*acc. of thing; dat. of person and acc. of thing when both are present, otherwise acc. of person*).
Bezahlung, *f.* (-en), payment.
Bibliothek', *f.* (-en), library.
biegen (131), to bend.
Bier, *n.* (-eš; -e), beer, ale.
bieten (131), to offer.
Bild, *n.* (-eš; -er), picture, portrait.
Bildung, *f.* (-en), education.
Billet' (*pron.* bill-yett), *n.* (-teš; -te), ticket.
billig, cheap.
binden (144), to bind, tie, fasten.
binnen (*dat.*), within.
biš (34), till, until, up to, as far as; zwei — drei, two or three; — zu (*dat.*), — nach (*dat.*), as far as.
Biſchof, *m.* (-eš, ¨-e), bishop.
bitten (181; for, um), to ask, beg; (ich) bitte, if you please, please (*lit.*, I beg, pray); wenn ich — darf, if you please (*lit.*, if I may ask).
blaſen (188), to blow.
Blatt, *n.* (-eš; ¨er), leaf.
blau, blue.
bleiben (120; ſein), to remain.
Bleiſtift, *n.* (-eš; -e), lead-pencil.
blind, blind.
Blitz, *m.* (-eš; -e), lightning.
blitzen, (*impers.*), to lighten.
Blume, *f.* (-en), flower.
Blumenkohl, *m.* (-š), cauliflower.
bombardieren, to bombard.
Boot, *n.* (-eš; Böte, *or* -e), boat.
böſe, bad, evil; cross, angry.
Böſewicht, *m.* (-eš; -er), villain.

Bote, *m.* (-n ; -n), messenger.
braten (188), to roast.
brauchen (*gen. or acc.*), to require, want, need, use, make use of.
braun, brown.
brechen (167), to break.
breit, broad, wide.
brennen (99), to burn, be burning.
Brief, *m.* (-es ; -e), letter, epistle.
bringen (99, 2), to bring, take.
Brot, *n.* (-es ; -e), bread; loaf.
Brücke, *f.* (-n), bridge.
Bruder, *m.* (-s ; ¨), brother.
Buch, *n.* (-es ; ¨er), book.
Bücherfreund, *m.* (-es ; -e), lover of books.
Buchhändler, *m.* (-s; —), book-seller.
Buchhandlung, *f.* (-en), book-shop.
Büreau (*pron.* bü-ro'), *n.* (-s; -s), (business) office.
Bürgermeister, *m.* (-s ; —), mayor.
Butter, *f.*, butter.

C.

Chokolade, *f.*, chocolate.
Christ, *m.* (-en ; -en), Christian.
Cousine, *f.* (-n), cousin.

D.

da, there, in that place; here; *conj.*, as, when, because, since.
Dach, *n.* (-es ; ¨er), roof.
dafür, for that, for it, for them (*of things*).
daher', thence, hence, therefore.
damit, therewith, with it, with that.
Dampferlinie, *f.* (-n), steamship-line.
Dampfschiff, *n.* (-es ; -e), steam-boat, steamer.
dankbar, thankful, grateful.
Dankbarkeit, *f.*, thankfulness.
danken (*dat.*), to thank; ich danke (Ihnen), (no) thank you.
dann, then.
daran, thereon.
darauf, thereon, on it, on them (*of things*), etc.
darin, therein, in that, in it.
darüber, over that, over it: about it, at it.
darum, therefore.
das, *n. of* der, *which see.*
daselbst, there, in that place.
daß, that; (auf) —, in order that.
davon, thereof, of it.
dein, deine, dein, thy.
denken (99; *gen. or generally* an + *acc.*), to think; sich —, to imagine.
denn, for, *conj.*
der, die, das, *def. art.*, the (4 ; 44); *rel. pr.*, who, which, that (92, 93, 95); *dem. pr.*, the one, he, she, it, that (133 ; 140–143).
derjenige, diejenige, dasjenige (135 ; 140), that, this, the one; he, she, it.
derselbe, dieselbe, dasselbe (136; 143), *adj. and pr.*, the same; he, she, it, etc.
deshalb', for this or that reason, therefore, on that account.
desto, (all) the, so much the; — besser, so much the better; je mehr — besser, the more, the better.
deswegen, on that account.
deutlich, clear, distinct; clearly, distinctly.
deutsch, German; auf Deutsch, im Deutschen, in German.
Deutschland, *n.* (-s), Germany.
Diamant', *m.* (-s *or* -en; -en), diamond.
die, *f. of* der, *which see.*
Dieb, *m.* (-es ; -e), thief.
Diener, *m.* (-s; —), servant.
Dienstag, *m.* (-es; -e), Tuesday.
dieser, diese, dieses (dies), (6; 134, 140, 143), this, that; the latter.
diesseits, *adv.*, on this side.
dingen (App. L.), to hire.
dividieren, to divide.
doch, yet, however, but, after all, pray, well, just.
Doktor, *m.* (-s; Doktoren), doctor.
Donner, *m.* (-s; —), thunder.
donnern, to thunder.
Donnerstag, *m.* (-es ; -e), Thursday.
Dorf, (-es ; ¨er), village.
dort, there, yonder, in that place.
drei, three.
dreifach, three-fold, triple, treble.
dreimal, three times, thrice.
dreißig, thirty.
dreschen (159), to thresh, thrash.
dringen (144), to press.
drittehalb, two and a half.
drüben, over there, over the way.
Druck, *m.* (-es), printing, print.
du, thou, you.
dünn, thin.
durch (34), through; by.
durchaus', absolutely, entirely; — nicht, by no means, not at all.

durchſuch'en, to search through.
dürfen (196–202; *permission*), to dare; be permitted, allowed; darf ich? may I?
Durſt, *m.* (–es), thirst; — haben, to be thirsty.
Dutz'end, *n.* (–es; –e), dozen.

E.

eben, *adv.*, even, just; exactly; ſo—, just now.
Ecke, *f.* (–n), corner.
E'delſtein, *m.* (–es; –e), precious stone, jewel.
ehe, *adv. and conj.*, ere, before.
ehren, to honour, esteem.
ehrlich, honest; — währt am längſten, honesty is the best policy.
Ei, *n.* (–es; –er), egg.
Eigentum, (–es; ¨er), property, possession, estate.
Eile, *f.* haste, hurry; was haſt du für —? what is your hurry?
eilen, to hasten, hurry.
eilig, hasty, speedy; es — haben, to be in a hurry, be in haste.
ein, eine, ein (9), a, an; one; die Einen, some.
einander, one another, each other.
Einband, *m.* (–es; ¨e), binding.
einbinden (144), to bind (a book).
eindringen (144; ſein), to enter by force; rush in; press in, penetrate.
einer, eine, ein(e)s (150), *pron.*, one (*equivalent of* man).
einfältig, simple, silly.
Einfluß, *m.* (–es, ¨e), influence.
einige, some, several, a few.
einladen (186), to invite.
einmal, once.
Einmaleins, *n.* (*indecl.*), multiplication-table.
einpacken, to pack up.
einrechnen, to reckon in; comprise in account.
einſchlagen (186), to strike (of lightning).
einſchreiben (120), to book, inscribe, check (luggage).
einſehen (181), to perceive, comprehend.
einſeitig, one-sided.
einſteigen (120; ſein), to mount into, get into (carriage, etc.).
Ein'trittsexa'men, *n.* (–s; —), entrance-examination, matriculation-examination.
Einwohner, *m.* (–s; —), inhabitant.
Eis, *n.* (–es), ice; ice-cream.
Eiſen, *n.* (–s), iron.
Eiſenbahn, *f.* (–en), railway.
elegant', elegant.
Elle, *f.* (–n), yard.
Eltern (*no sing.*), parents.
empfehlen (167; *dat. of pers.*), to recommend.
empfinden (144), to feel, experience.
endlich, at last, finally, at length.
engliſch, *adj.*, English; auf Engliſch, in English.
Ente, *f.* (–n), duck; Enten-braten, *m.* (–s; —), roast duck.
entge'gengehen (188; ſein; *dat.*), to go to meet.
entge'genkommen (167; ſein; *dat.*), to come to meet.
entſchließen (ſich; 123), to resolve, decide.
entſchuldigen, to excuse.
entweder, either; entweder . . . oder, either . . . or.
entwerfen (159), to draw (a plan, etc.); design.
entzückt, delighted, charmed.
er, he.
Erbſe, *f.* (–n), pea.
Erdbeben, *n.* (–s; —), earthquake.
Erdbeere, *f.* (–n), strawberry.
Erde, *f.*, earth, ground.
erfinden (144), to invent.
Erfindung, *f.* (–en), invention.
Erfolg, *m.* (–es; –e), success.
erfrieren (131; ſein), to freeze, be frozen.
ergreifen (118), to seize.
erhalten (188), to receive, get.
erinnern (ſich; *gen. of thing remembered*), to remember.
erkälten (ſich), to catch cold.
Erkältung, *f.* (–en), cold.
erkennen (99), to recognize.
erklären, to explain.
erkundigen (ſich), to inquire; ſich bei jemand nach etwas —, to inquire of anyone about anything.
erlauben (*dat. of pers.*), to permit, allow.
erleben, to experience.
ernennen (99), to nominate, appoint; zum Gouverneur —, to appoint (as) governor.
erobern, to conquer, overcome.
erſchrecken (167; ſein), to be frightened.
erſt, first; fürs erſte, for the present; der erſte beſte, the first which comes to hand; *adv.*, first, only, not before, not till.
erſtens, first, in the first place.
ertrinken (144), to drown, be drowned.
erwählen (zu), to elect (as).
erwarten, to expect, wait for.

erwünſchen, to wish for, desire.
erzählen, to relate, narrate, tell.
eß (38, 39), it; they; there; er iſt —, it is he; eß ſind Männer, they are men.
eſſen (181), to eat; zu Mittag —, to dine.
etwa, nearly, about.
Etwaß, something, anything.
euer, eure, euer, your.
Europa, *n.* (-ß), Europe.
Exa'men, *m.* (-ß; —), examination.
Exemplar', *n.* (-ß; -e), copy (of a work, etc.).

F.

Fabrik', *f.* (-en), factory.
Faden, *m.* (-ß; ¨), thread.
fahren (186; ſein), to go, drive, ride (in a conveyance); travel; sail.
Fahrt, *f.* (-en), journey, voyage; ride, drive.
Fall, *m.* (-eß; ¨e), fall; case, event; in dem Falle, in that case.
fallen (188; ſein), to fall.
falls, in case.
Fami'lie, *f.* (-n), family.
fangen (188), to catch.
faſt, almost, nearly; — nie, hardly ever.
Februar, *m.* (-ß), February.
fechten (124), to fight, fence.
Feder, *f.* (-n), feather; pen; spring.
feiern, to celebrate.
Feiertag, *m.* (-eß; -e), holiday.
Feind, *m.* (-eß; -e), enemy.
Feld, *n.* (-eß; -er), field.
Felſ(en), *m.* (-enß; -en), rock.
Fenſter, *n.* (-ß; —), window.
Ferien, *pl.* (*no sing.*), vacation, holidays.
Ferne, *f.* (-n), distance; in der —, at a distance.
fertig, ready, done; — ſein (mit), to have finished (with).
Feſtlichkeit, *f.* (-en), festivity.
Feuer, *n.* (-ß; —), fire.
Fieber, *n.* (-ß; —), fever.
finden (144), to find; meet with; think, be of opinion; man findet ſich nicht leicht, people do not find each other easily.
Fiſch, *m.* (-eß; -e), fish.
Flaſche, *f.* (-n), bottle.
flechten (124), to weave.
Fleiſch, *n.* (-eß), meat.
fleißig, diligent; industrious; diligently, etc.
fliegen (131; ſein), to fly.
fliehen (131), flee.
fließen (123), flow.
Flöte, *f.* (-n), flute.
Flügel, *m.* (-ß; —), wing.
Fluß, *m.* (-eß; ¨e), river.
folgen (ſein; *dat.*), to follow.
Forelle, *f.* (-n), trout.
Format', *n.* (-eß; -e), size (of a book).
fort, forth; away, gone; wir müſſen —, we must be off.
fortgehen (188; ſein), to go away.
fortwährend, perpetual, continual, incessant.
fragen (186), to ask questions; Fragen, *n.* (-ß), questioning, asking questions (action of).
Frankreich, *n.* (-ß), France.
franzöſiſch, French.
Frau, *f.* (-en), woman, wife, lady, madam, mistress, Mrs.
Fräulein, *n.* (-ß; —), young lady, Miss; mein —, Miss.
freigebig, liberal, generous.
freilaſſen (188), to set free, liberate.
freilich, to be sure, indeed, of course.
Freitag, *m.* (-eß; -e), Friday.
fremd, strange; foreign.
Fremde, (*adj. subst.*) *m. or f.*, stranger, foreigner.
Fremdling, *m.* (-eß; -e), stranger.
freſſen (181), to eat (said of beasts).
Freude, *f.* (-n), joy, delight.
freuen (ſich; at, über + *acc.*), to rejoice, be glad; eß freut mich, I am glad.
Freund, *m.* (-eß; -e), friend; ich bin ein — von, I like.
Freundin, *f.* (-nen), friend (female).
freundlich, friendly, kind.
Freundſchaft, *f.* (-en), friendship.
Friede(n); *m.* (-nß), peace.
Friedrich, *m.* (-ß), Frederick; Friedrichſtraße, Frederick-street.
frieren (131), to freeze; feel cold; eß friert mich, I feel cold; mich friert, I am cold.
friſch, fresh.
Fritz, *m.* (-enß), Fred, Freddy.
froh, joyful, glad; frohen Mutes, cheerfully.
fröhlich, joyous, merry.
Frucht, *f.* (¨e), fruit.
früh, early; früher, earlier; formerly.
Frühling, *m.* (-eß; -e), spring.
früh'ſtücken, to breakfast.
Fuchs, *m.* (-eß; ¨e), fox.
führen, to lead; go, lie.
füllen, to fill.
fünf, five.
fünfthalb, four and a half.
fünfzig, funfzig, fifty.
Funke(n), *m.* (-nß; -n), spark.

für (34), for.
Furcht (vor), *f.* fear (of).
fürchten, to fear; ſich — vor (+ *dat.*), to fear, be afraid of.
Fuß, *m.* (-es ; ¨e), foot.

G.

gä(h)ren (App. L.), ferment.
ganz, *adj.*, whole, entire; the whole of; *adv.*, quite, wholly, altogether, entirely.
gar, even; — nicht, not at all; — nichts, nothing at all.
Garten, *m.* (-s ; ¨), garden.
Gärtner, *m.* (-s; —), gardener.
Gaſt, *m.* (-es; ¨e), guest.
Gaſthaus, *n.* (-es; ¨er), inn, hotel.
gebären (167), to bear, bring forth.
geben (181), to give; *v. impers.*, es giebt, there is, there are.
Gebot', *n.* (-es ; -e), commandment.
Geburts'tag, *m.* (-es; -e), birthday; zum —, as a birthday-present.
Gedanke, *m.* (-ns; -n), thought.
gedeihen (120), to thrive.
gedenken (99), to intend.
Gedicht, *n.* (-es ; -e), poem.
gedrängt, packed, compressed, crowded.
Geduld, *f.*, patience.
gefährlich, dangerous; dangerously.
gefallen (188), to please, suit; wie gefällt es Ihnen in Boſton? how do you like Boston?
gefällig, pleasing, complaisant, kind; iſt dem Herrn etwas —? will the gentleman be helped to anything?
gefälligſt, if you please.
Gefühl, *n.* (-es; -e), feeling; emotion.
gegen (34), towards, against, about; for.
gehen (188; ſein), to go; walk; wie geht es Ihnen? how do you do? how are you?
gehören (*dat.*), to belong (to).
Geige, *f.* (-n), violin; Geigenſpiel, *n.* (-s), violin-playing.
gelb, yellow.
Geld, *n.* (-es ; -er), money.
Geldbeutel, *m.* (-s; —), purse.
gelegen, convenient; opportune; nichts könnte mir gelegener ſein, nothing could suit me better.
gelingen (144; ſein), to succeed; es gelingt mir, I succeed.
gelten (159), to be worth.
Gemälde, *n.* (-s ; —), painting, picture.
Gemüſe, *n.* (-s; —), vegetables.
genau, precise, exact; precisely, exactly, carefully, minutely.
General', *m.* (-es ; -e), general.
geneſen (181; ſein), to get well, recover (from an illness).
genießen (123; ſein), to enjoy; eat or drink.
genug, enough.
Geometrie', *f.*, geometry.
Gepäck, *n.* (-es), luggage, baggage.
gerade, *adj.*, straight; *adv.*, exactly, just.
Geräuſch, *n.* (-es ; -e), noise.
gering, small, trifling, mean; nicht im —ſten, not in the least.
gern (lieber, am liebſten), with pleasure, willingly, gladly; etwas — haben, to like a thing; — lernen, to like to learn, study; das iſt — möglich, that is very probable.
Gerſte, *f.* barley.
geſalzen, ſalzen, salt.
Geſang, *m.* (-es), singing.
Geſchäft, *n.* (-es ; -e), business; mercantile establishment; shop, store.
Geſchäftsangelegenheit, *f.* (-en), business matter, business engagement.
geſchehen (181; ſein), to happen.
Geſchenk, *n.* (-es ; -e), gift, present.
Geſchichte, *f.* (-n), history, story.
Geſchmack, *m.* (-es), taste.
geſchult, *p.p.*, ſchulen, trained, cultivated.
Geſchwiſter, *pl.*, brothers and sisters.
Geſellſchaft, *f.* (-en), company, party.
Geſicht, *n.* (-es ; -er *and* -e), face, countenance; Geſichter, faces; Geſichte, visions.
Geſpiele, *m.* (-n ; -n), playmate.
geſtern, yesterday.
Geſundheit, *f.* health.
gewinnen (158), to win, gain.
gewiß (*gen.*), certain (of); certainly, surely.
gewiſſenhaft, conscientious.
Gewitter, *n.* (-s; —), thunder-storm, storm.
Gewohnheit, *f.* (-en), custom, habit; die — haben, to be accustomed to.
gewöhnlich, usual, customary; generally, usually.
gießen (123), to pour.

glänzen, to shine, glitter.
glänzend, brilliant.
Glas, *n.* (-es; ¨er), glass.
glatt, smooth, slippery.
glauben (*dat. of pers.*), to believe; think.
gleich, at once, at the same time, immediately, directly; so—, immediately, etc.
gleichen (118), to be like, resemble.
gleiten (118), to glide, slip.
glimmen (123), to glimmer.
Glück, *n.* (-es), (good) fortune, good luck; success; — wünschen, to congratulate, wish success to.
glücklich, happy, fortunate; successfully.
Gold, *n.* (-es), gold.
golden, of gold, golden.
Gouverneur', *m.* (-es; -e), governor.
graben (186), to dig.
Grad, *m.* (-es; -e), degree.
Graf, *m.* (-en; -en), count, earl.
Gräfin, *f.* (-nen), countess.
Gramma'tik, *f.* (-en), grammar.
Gras, *n.* (-es; ¨er), grass.
gratulieren (*dat.*), to congratulate.
greifen (118), to grasp.
Griechenland, *n.* (-s), Greece.
groß (¨er, *sup.* größt), great, large, big, tall.
grün, green.
gründlich, thoroughly.
grüßen, to greet, salute, bow to; Ihr Freund läßt Sie —, your friend wishes to be remembered to you.
Guitarre, *f.* (-n), guitar.
gut, *adj.*, good; kind; *adv.*, well; so — sein und, to be so kind as to.
Gutes, *n.*, good (thing).

H.

Haar, *n.* (-es; -e), hair.
haben (24), to have; Recht —, to be (in the) right; Unrecht —, to be (in the) wrong; was — Sie? what is the matter with you? vor—, to intend, propose, purpose.
Hafen, *m.* (-s; ¨), port, harbour, haven.
Hafer, *m.* (-s), oats.
Hagelkorn, *n.* (-es; ¨er), hail-stone.
hageln, to hail.
halb, half; — drei, half past two.
Hälfte, *f.* (-n), half.
halten (188), to hold, think; — für, consider; ich halte viel von ihm, I think highly of him (esteem, value him highly).
Hand, *f.* (¨e), hand.
Händler, *m.* (-s; —), dealer, shop-keeper.
Handschuh, *m.* (-es; -e), glove.
hangen (188), to hang, be suspended; das Bild hängt, the picture is hanging.
hängen, to hang, suspend.
Harfe, *f.* (-n), harp; Harfen-Begleitung, accompaniment on the harp.
hart (¨er), hard.
Hase, *m.* (-n; -n), hare.
hassen, to hate.
hauen (188), to hew.
Hauptstadt, *f.* (¨e), capital.
Haus, *n.* (-es; ¨er), house; zu Hause, at home; nach Hause, home.
heben (131), to raise, lift.
Heer, *n.* (-es; -e), army.
heftig, violent, heavy; heavily (of rain).
Heide, *m.* (-n; -n), heathen.
Heinrich, *m.* (-s), Henry.
heiser, hoarse.
heiß, hot.
heißen (188), to be called, be named; mean, signify; wie heißt das auf Deutsch? how do you say that in German? wie heißt? what is the name of? ich heiße A., my name is A.
Held, *m.* (-en; -en), hero.
helfen (159; *dat.*), to help.
hell, bright; brightly.
herabsteigen (120; sein), to descend.
herauskommen (167; sein), to come out.
Herbst, *m.* (-es; -e), autumn.
Herde, *f.* (-n), flock, herd.
hereinkommen (167; sein), to come in.
Herr, *m.* (-n; -en), master; gentleman; Lord; Mr.; Ihr — Vater, your father.
Herz, *n.* (-ens; -en), heart.
herzlich, heartily, exceedingly.
Heu, *n.* (-es), hay.
heute, to-day; — Abend, this evening; — Morgen, this morning; — über vierzehn Tage, this day fortnight; heutzutage, now-a-days.
hier, here; — zu Lande, in this country.
hiermit, herewith, with this.
Himmel, *m.* (-s; —), heaven, sky.
hinaufgehen (188; sein), to go up.
hinaussehen (181), to look out (at the window, zum Fenster).
hineingehen (188; sein), to go in.
hingehen (188; sein), to go (hence); go anywhere.
hinter (65), behind.
Hitze, *f.* heat.

hoch (*loses* c *in inflection; compar.* höher, *sup.* höchſt), high.
hoffen, to hope.
hoffentlich, *adv.*, (it is) to be hoped, I hope.
Hoffnung, *f.* (-en), hope.
höher, *compar. of* hoch, *which see.*
holen, (to go and) bring, fetch; get; — laſſen, to send for.
Holz, *n.* (-es), wood.
hören, to hear; listen; ſagen —, to hear say, hear.
hübſch, pretty.
Huhn, *n.* (-es; ¨er), fowl; chicken.
Hund, *m.* (-es; -e), dog.
hundert, hundred.
Hundert, *n.* (-s; -e), hundred.
Hunger, *m.* (-s), hunger; ich habe —, I am hungry.
hungrig, hungry.
Hut, *m.* (-es; ¨e), hat.
hüten, to guard, keep.

I.

ich, I.
ihr, *pers. pron.*, to her, her (*dat. sing.*); you (*nom. pl.*).
ihr, ihre, ihr, *poss. adj.*, her; its; their.
Ihr, Ihre, Ihr, *poss. adj.*, your.
ihrer, ihre, ihres, ihre (der, die, das), ihrige (der, die, das), *poss. pron.*, hers; its; theirs.
Ihrer, Ihre, Ihres, Ihre (der, die, das), Ihrige (der, die, das), *poss. pron.*, yours.
Ihretwillen, for your sake.
im, *contr. for* in dem.
immer, always; at all times; noch —, still.
in (65; *dat. or acc.*), in, at; into, to.
indem', while, whilst.
innerhalb (*gen.*), on the inside, within.
Inſtrument', *n.* (-es; -e), (musical) instrument.
intereſſant', interesting.
irgend einer, — jemand, any one.
Irland, *n.* (-s), Ireland.
Italien, *n.* (-s), Italy.

J.

Ja, yes, indeed, certainly, you know; did I (etc.) not; ja wohl, yes indeed, yes to be sure, yes certainly.
jagen, to hunt, chase, pursue.
Jagen, *n.* (-s), hunting (act of).
Jäger, *m.* (-s; —), hunter, huntsman.
Jahr, *n.* (-es; -e), year.
Ja'kob, *m.* (-s), James.
jawohl, *see* ja.
je, ever (at any time); the (*before comparative degree*, 126, 4); — zwei, two at a time.
jedenfalls, certainly, at all events.
jeder, jede, jedes, every, each, every one, any.
jedermann, everyone, everybody.
jemals, ever, at any time.
jemand, somebody, some one, any body, any one.
jener, jene, jenes, that, that one, that person; yonder; the former.
jenſeits, on the other side, beyond.
jetzt, now, at present.
Johann', *m.* (-s), John.
Ju'gend, *f.*, youth.
Ju'li, *m.* (-s), July.
jung (¨er), young.
Junge, *m.* (-n; -n), boy, lad.
Jüngling, *m.* (-es; -e), young man, youth.
Ju'ni, *m.* (-s), June.

K.

Kaffee, *m.* (-s), coffee.
Kaiſer, *m.* (-s; —), emperor.
Kalbskotelette, *f.* (-n), veal-cutlet.
kalt (¨er), cold.
Kamin', *n.* (-es; -e), fireplace.
Kardinal', *m.* (-s; -e), cardinal.
Karl, *m.* (-s), Charles.
Karte, *f.* (-n), card.
Kartoffel, *f.* (-n), potato.
Käſe, *m.* (-s; —), cheese.
kaufen, to buy.
kaum, hardly, scarcely.
keifen (App. L.), to chide.
kein, keine, kein, no, not a, not any.
keiner, keine, kein(e)s, *pron.*, nobody, not anybody, no one, none.
Kellner, *m.* (-s; —), waiter
kennen (99), to know, be acquainted with.
Kenntnis, *f.* (-e), knowledge; *pl.* acquirements, attainments.
Kind, *n.* (-es; -er), child.
Kirche, *f.* (-n), church.
klar, clear.
Klaſſe, *f.* (-n), class.
Klaſſiker, *m.* (-s; —), classic writer, classic.
Klavier', *n.* (-s; -e), piano.
Kleid, *n.* (-es; -er), dress; *pl.* clothes.
klein, small, little.
klieben (App. L.), to cleave.

klimmen (123), to climb.
klingeln, to ring (said of small bells); es klingelt, there is a ring (at the door, etc.).
klingen (144), to sound.
Knabe, *m.* (-n; -n), boy.
Knall, *m.* (-es; -e), loud quick sound; clap, thunder-clap.
Knecht, *m.* (-es; -e), (farm) servant, man-of-all-work.
kneifen (118), to pinch.
kneipen (App. L.), to pinch.
Knochen, *m.* (-s; —), bone.
Koch, *m.* (-es; ¨e), cook.
Komet', *m.* (-en; -en), comet.
kommen (167; ſein), to come; arrive; — laſſen, to send for; wie kommt das? how is that?
König, *m.* (-(e)s; -e), king.
Königin, *f.* (-nen), queen.
Königſtraße, *f.* King-street.
können (196–202; ability, etc.), to be able, can; know, be versed in, know how.
Konzert', *n.* (-es; -e), concert.
Kopf, *m.* (-es; ¨e), head.
Korb, *m.* (-es; ¨e), basket.
Koſten, *pl.*, expenses.
koſten (*acc. of pers. and of thing*), to cost.
krank (¨er), ill; sick; Kranke, (*adj. subst.*), sick person, patient.
Krankheit, *f.* (-en), disease, illness.
Krieg, *m.* (-es; -e), war.
kriechen (123), to creep.
Kri'tiker, *m.* (-s; —), critic.
Küche, *f.* (-n), kitchen.
Kuh, *f.* (¨e), cow.
Kunſt, *f.* (¨e), art.
Künſtler, *m.* (-s; —), artist.
kurz (¨er), short.
kürzlich, not long ago, lately, recently.
Kutſcher, *m.* (-s; —), coachman, driver.

L.

lachen (*gen. or* über + *acc.*), to laugh (at).
Lachs, *m.* (-es; -e), salmon.
laden (186), to load; invite.
Laden, *m.* (-s; — *and* ¨), window-shutter (*pl.* —); shop, store (*pl.* ¨).
Land, *n.* (-es; ¨er *and* -e), land, country; country (opposed to town); auf dem —e, in the country; aufs — gehen, to go into the country; zu —e, by land; hier zu —e, in this country.
Landſchaft, *f.* (-en), landscape.
lang (¨er), long.
lange, *adv.* long, a long time or while, for a long time; ſo —, so long as; er iſt — nicht hier geweſen, he has not been here for a long time; er iſt nicht — hier geweſen, he has not been here long.
langſam, slow; slowly.
längſt, long ago, long since.
Lärm, *m.* (-es), noise.
laſſen (188; 200, 7), to let, allow; leave; have (a thing done); ſagen —, to send word; kommen —, to send for; ich laſſe das Buch einbinden, I am having the book bound; es läßt ſich nicht leugnen, it cannot be denied.
Laſter, *n.* (-s; —), vice.
Latein, *n.* (-s), Latin.
Lauf, *m.* (-es; ¨e), course.
laufen (188; ſein), to run.
läuten, to ring (of large bells), toll.
leben, to live; be alive.
Leben, *n.* (-s; —), life.
Lebewohl, *n.* (-s), farewell, adieu.
Leder, *n.* (-s; —), leather.
legen, to lay, put, place, set.
Lehrer, *m.* (-s; —), teacher, master.
leicht, light, easy; easily, readily.
leid (*only used as pred. with* ſein *and* thun), sorry, grieved; es iſt, es thut mir —, I am sorry.
leiden (118), to suffer; an etwas —, to suffer from anything.
leider, alas! unfortunately!
leihen (120), to lend.
Leiſten, *m.* (-s; —), (shoemaker's) last.
leiſten, to accomplish.
Lektion', *f.* (-en), lesson
lernen, to learn, study.
leſen (181), to read.
Leſen, *n.* (-s), (act of) reading.
letzt, last, final.
Leute, *pl.* (*no sing.*), people, persons.
Licht, *n.* (-es; -er *and* -e), light.
lieb, dear.
Liebe, *f.* love, affection; — zu, love of.
lieben, to love.
lieber (*comp. of* gern); *conj.*, rather; ich gehe —, I prefer to walk.
Lied, *n.* (-es; -er), song.
liegen (181; ſein, haben), to lie; be; be situated.
link, left.
links, to (or on) the left.
loben, to praise.
Loch, *n.* (-es; ¨er), hole.
Löffel, *m.* (-s; —), spoon.
Lohengrin, *m.* (-s), name of an opera by Wagner

los, loose, slack; was ist —? what is the matter?
lösen, to free, redeem; ein Billet —, buy a ticket.
losspringen (144; sein; auf + *acc.*), to spring upon, leap upon.
Louise, *f.* (-nē), Louisa.
Löwe, *m.* (-n; -n), lion.
Ludwig, *m.* (-s), Louis.
Luft, *f.* (¨e), air, atmosphere.
lügen (131), to lie, utter a falsehood.
Lügner, *m.* (-s; —), liar.
lustig, merry; merrily; sich über einen — machen, to make sport of one.

M.

machen, to make; arrange; cause, give; be (in arithm. calculations); ich mache mir nichts daraus, I care nothing for it; eine Seereise —, to take a voyage; einen Spaziergang —, to take a walk.
Mädchen, *n.* (-s; —), girl.
Magd, *f.* (¨e), maid, maid-servant.
Mai, *m.* (-es *or* -en), May.
Mal, *n.* (-es; -e), time (occasion); zum letzten —, for the last time.
malen, to paint.
Maler, *m.* (-s; —), painter.
Malerei', *f.* (art of) painting.
man, *pron.*, one, we, you, they, people; — sagt, they say, people say, it is said.
mancher, manche, manches, *adj. and pron.*, many a.
Mangel, *m.* (-s), want.
Mann, *m.* (-es; ¨er), man.
Mantel, *m.* (-s; ¨), cloak, mantle.
Margarete, *f.* (-tē), Margaret.
Marie, *f.* (-rē), Mary.
Mark, *f.* (—), mark (a coin = 100 Pfennig or about 25 cents).
Markt, *m.* (-es; ¨e), market.
marschieren (sein *or* haben), to march.
März, *m.* (-es), March.
Masern, *pl.*, measles.
Mathematik', *f.*, mathematics.
Matrose, *m.* (-n; -n), sailor.
Maus, *f.* (¨e), mouse.
Mehl, *n.* (-es), flour.
mehr, more; nicht —, no longer, not now.
mehrere, several; mehreres, several things, a good deal.
mehrmals, several times.
meiden (120), to avoid.
Meile, *f.* (-n), mile (German), league.
mein, meine, mein, my.
meine (der, die, das), mine.
meinen, to think, be of opinion, suppose, mean; das sollte ich —, I should think so (*emphatic*).
meinetwegen, (um) meinetwillen, for my sake; for all I care.
meinige (der, die, das), mine.
Meinung, *f.* (-en), opinion.
meist (*superl. of* viel), most; am —en, most, most of all.
Meister, *m.* (-s; —), master.
melken (124), to milk.
Melodie', *f.* (-n), melody, tune; air.
Menge, *f.* (-n), great quantity or number.
Mensch, *m.* (-en; -en), a human being, man; person; *pl.*, mankind, people.
messen (181), to measure.
Messer, *n.* (-s; —), knife.
Metall', *n.* (-es; -e), metal.
mieten, to rent.
Milch, *f.* milk.
Million', *f.* (-en), million.
Minute, *f.* (-n), minute.
Minutenzeiger, *m.* (-s; —), minute-hand.
mir (*dat. of* ich), (to) me.
mit (46), with; by (in multiplication).
Mittag, *m.* (-es; -e), midday, noon; zu — essen, to dine.
Mittagessen, *n.* (-s; —), dinner.
mitten, in the middle or midst of; — im Winter, in the middle of winter.
Mittwoch, *m.* (-es), Wednesday.
mögen (196–202; preference, liking), to be able; may; like; ich mag das nicht, I do not like that; ich möchte, I should like.
möglich, possible; das ist gern —, that is very probable.
Monarch', *m.* (-en; -en), monarch.
Mo'nat, *m.* (-es; -e), month.
Montag, *m.* (-s; -e), Monday.
Morgen, *m.* (-s; —), morning; guten —, good morning; des —s (*or* morgens), in the morning.
morgen, to-morrow; — früh, to-morrow morning.
müde, tired, weary.
Mühe, *f.* trouble; nicht der — wert, not worth while.
Mühle, *f.* (-n), mill.
multiplizieren, to multiply.
Musik', *f.* music.
musikalisch, musical.
müssen (196–202; necessity), to be obliged or forced, must.
Mut, *m.* (-es), mood, courage, spirit; mir ist schlecht zu —e, I feel ill; frohen —es, cheerfully.
Mutter, *f.* (¨), mother.

N.

nach (46), after; according to; by (of time-piece); past (of hour of day); to (before proper names of places); — Hause, home.

Nachbar, *m.* (-s *and* -n; -n), neighbour.

nachdem', *conj.*, after.

nachgehen (188; sein), to go after; go or be too slow (of a time-piece).

Nachmittag, *m.* (-es; -e), afternoon; des —s, in the afternoon.

Nachricht, *f.* (-en), news.

nächst (*superl. of* nah), next.

Nächste, *m.* (*adj. subst.*), fellow-creature, neighbour.

nächstens, shortly, soon, very soon.

Nacht, *f.* (¨e), night.

nah, (näher, nächst), near.

Nähe, *f.*, nearness; neighbourhood; in meiner —, near me; in my neighbourhood.

Name, *m.* (-ns; -n), name, title.

natür'lich, naturally, of course, I suppose.

neben (65), beside, besides; near, alongside of, by.

nebst (51), together with, including.

Neffe, *m.* (-n; -n), nephew.

nehmen (167), to take; sich in Acht —, to take care, beware.

nein, no.

nennen (99), to call, name.

netto, net (*commercialterm*).

neu, new.

neulich, lately, the other day, not long ago.

neunteh'alb, eight and a half.

nicht, not; — mehr, no longer; — wahr? is (it, etc.) not (so)?

nichts (*indecl.*), nothing.

nie, never.

Niederlande (die), *pl.*, The Netherlands.

nie'mand, nobody, no one, no person, not anybody, etc.

noch, still, yet, even; — ein, one more, another; — etwas, something (anything) more; — einmal, over again; — heute, before the end of the day, before the day is over; — immer, up to the present time, still; — vor vierzehn Tagen, only a fortnight ago.

Nord'eisenbahn, *f.* (-en), Northern-Railway.

nötig, necessary.

November, *m.* (-s), November.

Nu'mero, *n.* (-s), number.

nur, only. just.

Nuß, *f.* (¨e), nut.

nützlich, useful.

O.

ob, whether, if.

oben, above, up-stairs; nach —, upward.

obgleich', although.

oder, or.

Ofen, *m.* (-s; ¨), stove.

offen, open

Offizier', *m.* (-es; -e), officer.

öffnen (sich), to open.

oft (¨er), often, frequently.

O'heim, *m.* (-es; -e), uncle.

ohne (34), without; but for.

Onkel, *m.* (-s; —), uncle.

P.

Palast, *m.* (-es; ¨e), palace.

Pantoffel, *m.* (-s; -n), slipper.

Papier', *n.* (-es; -e), paper.

Papst, *m.* (-es; ¨e), pope.

Paris', *n.* (von —), Paris.

passend, fit, suitable.

pfeifen (118), to whistle.

Pfennig, *m.* (-es; -e), (the one hundredth part of a mark), penny.

Pferd, *n.* (-es; -e), horse.

Pferdebahn, *f.* (-en), tramway, tram; street-cars, horse-cars.

Pflaume, *f.* (-n), plum.

pflegen (*weak*), to attend to; to be accustomed, wont; — (*strong*, App. L.), to practise, exercise.

Pfund, *n.* (-es; -e), pound.

Philosophie', *f.* (-n), philosophy.

Plan, *m.* (-s; -e *or* ¨e), plan, design.

Planet', *m.* (-en; -en), planet.

Platz, *m.* (-es; ¨e), place; — nehmen, to sit down, be seated.

Platzregen, *m.* (-s; —), shower, down-pour.

plaudern, to chat, talk.

Portion', *f.* (-en), portion, plate (of meat, etc.).

Post, *f.* (-en), post, post-office.

Postbote, *m.* (-n; -n), postman.

prächtig, magnificent.

Preis, (-es; -e), price; prize.

preisen (120), to praise.

Procent', *n.* (-es; -e), per cent.

Professor, *m.* (-s; -en), professor.

promovieren, to take a degree, graduate.

Publikum, *n.* (-s), public; audience.

Punkt, *m.* (-es; -e), point; — zehn Uhr, at ten o'clock precisely.

Pünktlichkeit, punctuality

Q.

Qua'derſtein, *m.* (-eš ; -e), cut-stone, freestone.
quellen (124; ſein), to gush.

R.

Rabatt, *m.* (-eš; -e), discount, abatement.
Rand, *m.* (-eš; ¨er), edge, rim, brim.
Rat, *m.* (-eš), counsel, advice.
raten (188), to counsel, advise.
Rauch, *m.* (-eš), smoke.
Raupe, *f.* (-n), caterpillar.
Rechnen, *n.* (-š), arithmetic.
Rechnung, *f.* (-en), account, bill, reckoning ; calculation; ein Strich durch die —, disappointment; ſchreiben Sie daš auf meine —, charge that to me.
recht, right.
Recht, *n.* (*indecl.*), right ; — haben, to be right, be in the right.
rechtš, to (on) the right.
recht'zeitig, at the right time, punctually.
Rede, *f.* (-n), speech; oration.
reden, to speak, talk.
Reformation', *f.* (-en), reformation.
Regen, *m.* (-š), rain.
Re'gentropfen, *m.* (-š ; —), drop of rain.
regieren, to reign, rule, govern.
Regierung, *f.* (-en), government, reign ; unter der —, in the reign (of).
Regiment', *n.* (-eš ; -er), regiment.
regnen, to rain.
reiben (120), to rub.
reich, rich, wealthy.
reichen, to reach, hand.
reif, ripe.
Reiſe, *f.* (-n), journey, voyage; eine — machen, to take a journey.
Reiſekoſten, *pl.*, travelling-expenses.
reiſen (ſein *and* haben), to travel, journey, go.
Reiſende (*adj. subst.*), traveller.
reißen (118), to tear, pull.
reiten (118; ſein), to ride.
rennen (99; ſein), to run, race.
Reſtauration', *f.* (-en), eating-house, restaurant.
retten, to save, rescue; ich rettete ihm daš Leben, I saved his life.
reuen (*impers.*), to repent; eš reut mich (*gen.*), I repent (of).
Rheumatiſmuš, *m.* (*gen.* —), rheumatism.
richtig, right, correct; correctly ; — gehen, to be correct (of a time-piece); auf die —e Weiſe, in the right way.
Richtung, *f.* (-en), direction.
riechen (123), to smell.
Rieſe, *m.* (-n ; -n), giant.
Rindfleiſch, *n.* (-eš), beef.
Ring, *m.* (-eš ; -e), ring.
ringen (144), to wring.
rinnen (158), to run, flow.
Rock, *m.* (-eš ; ¨e), coat.
Roman', *m.* (-š ; -e), romance, novel.
Römer, *m.* (-š; —), Roman (*subst.*).
rot, *adj.* (¨er), red.
Rot'käppchen, *n.* (-š ; —), Little Red (Riding) Hood.
Rot'wein, *m.* (-eš), red-wine.
Rübe, *f.* (-n), turnip; gelbe —, carrot.
Rubin', *m.* (-eš; -e), ruby.
rudern, to row.
rufen (188), to call.
ruhig, quiet.
Ruhm, *m.* (-eš), praise.
rund, round.
Ruſſe, *m.* (-n ; -n), Russian.

S.

Saal, *m.* (-eš ; Säle), hall.
Sache, *f.* (-n), thing, matter, affair, business ; biſt du deiner — gewiß, are you certain of your information, etc.
ſagen, to say, tell ; — hören, to hear say, hear.
Sahne, *f.*, cream.
ſämmtlich, complete (of literary works).
Sankt Lorenz, *m.*, St. Lawrence.
Sängerin, *f.* (-nen), (female) singer.
Sara, *f.* (-š), Sarah.
Satz, *m.* (-eš; ¨e), sentence.
ſaufen (123), to drink (of beasts).
ſaugen (App. L), to suck.
Schade(n), *m.* (-nš ; ¨n), damage, injury, harm, mischief; eš iſt ſchade, it is a pity.
Schäfer, *m.* (-š ; —), shepherd.
ſchaffen (186), to create.
ſchallen (123), to sound, resound.
Schalter, *m.* (-š; —), wicket, ticket-office.
ſchämen (ſich ; *gen. or* über + *acc.*), to be ashamed.
ſcharf (¨er), sharp.
ſcheiden (120), to separate.
ſcheinen (120; *dat.*), to shine; appear, seem.
ſchelten (159), to scold.
ſchenken (*dat. of person and acc. of thing*), to give, make a present of, present.

ſcheren (131, B.), to shear.
ſchicken, to send.
ſchieben (131), to shove, push.
ſchießen (123), to shoot.
Schiff, *n.* (-eś; -e), ship, vessel.
Schild, *n.* (-eś; -er), sign-board.
Schildkröte, *f.* (-n), tortoise.
ſchinden (App. L.), to flay.
Schlacht, *f.* (-en), battle.
ſchlafen (188), to sleep; ſich — legen, to retire to rest, go to bed.
Schlafrock, *m.* (-eś; ¨e), dressing-gown.
Schlaf'zimmer, *n.* (-ś; —), bedroom.
ſchlagen (186), to beat, strike.
ſchlecht, bad; badly.
ſchleichen (118; ſein), to slink, sneak.
ſchleifen (118), to sharpen, grind.
ſchleißen (App. L.), to slit.
ſchließen (123), to lock, shut, close; conclude, finish.
ſchlimm, bad.
ſchlingen (144), to sling.
Schlitten, *m.* (-ś; —), sleigh.
Schlitt'ſchuhlaufen, *n.* (-ś), (act of) skating.
Schloß, *n.* (-eś; ¨er), castle, palace.
ſchmecken, to taste, relish; wie ſchmeckt Ihnen dieſes? how do you like (the taste of) this?
Schmeichelei', *f.*, flattery.
ſchmeicheln (*dat.*), to flatter.
ſchmeißen (118), to throw, fling.
ſchmelzen (124), to melt, smelt.
Schmerz, *m.* (-eś *or* -enś; -en), pain.
ſchnauben (App. L.), to snort.
Schnee, *m.* (-ś), snow.
ſchneiden (118), to cut; reap; ſich in die Hand —, to cut one's hand.
Schneider, *m.* (-ś; —), tailor.
ſchneien, to snow.
ſchnell, quick; quickly.
Schnellzug, *m.* (-eś; ¨e), express-train.
ſchon, already, as early as, readily, easily, indeed; — lange, for a long time (past).
ſchön, fine, beautiful, handsome.
Schönheit, *f.* (-en), beauty.
Schotte, *m.* (-n; -n), Scotchman.
ſchrauben (App. L.), to screw.
ſchrecken (167), to be startled.
ſchreiben (120), to write (to, *dat. or* an + *acc. of pers.*).
ſchreien (120), to cry, scream, shout.
ſchreiten (118; ſein), to stride, step, stalk.
Schriftſteller, *m.* (-ś; —), writer, author.
Schritt, *m.* (-eś; -e), stride, step, pace.
Schu'bert, *m.* (-ś), Schubert (German musician).
Schuh, *m.* (-eś; -e), shoe.
Schuld, *f.*, guilt; (-en), debt; ſchuld an etwaś ſein, to be to blame for anything.
Schule, *f.* (-n), school.
Schüler, *m.* (-ś; —), pupil, scholar, school-boy.
Schuſter, *m.* (-ś; —), shoemaker, cobbler.
ſchütteln, to shake.
ſchwach (¨er), weak, infirm.
Schwäche, *f.* (-n), weakness, infirmity.
Schwager, *m.* (-ś; ¨), brother-in-law.
Schwalbe, *f.* (-n), swallow.
ſchwären (App. L.), to fester.
ſchwarz (¨er), black.
ſchweigen (120), to be silent, keep silence.
Schweigen, *n.* (-ś), keeping silence, (act of) silence.
Schweiz (die, *gen.* der Schweiz), Switzerland.
ſchwellen (124; ſein), to swell.
ſchwer, heavy, hard, difficult.
ſchwerlich, hardly, scarcely.
Schweſter, *f.* (-n), sister.
ſchwimmen (158), to swim.
Schwimmen, *n.* (-ś), swimming (act of).
ſchwinden (144), to vanish.
ſchwingen (144), to swing; ſich —, to leap, bound.
ſchwören (131), to swear.
ſchwül, sultry, close.
See, *m.* (-ś; -en), lake.
Seereiſe, *f.* (-n), voyage.
Segelſchiff, *n.* (-eś; -e), sailing-vessel, ship.
ſehen (181), to see, perceive; look, behold.
ſehr, very, very much, exceedingly.
ſein, ſeine, ſein, his, its, one's.
ſein (52; ſein), to be; (*as aux.*), to be, have.
ſeit (46), since; — wann, since when, how long; — acht Tagen, for a week past.
ſeitdem', *conj.*, since.
ſelbſt, self; even.
ſenden (99), to send.
Serviette, *f.* (-n), table-napkin.
ſetzen, to set, put, place; ſich —, to seat one's self, sit down.
ſich, *pron. refl. acc. and dat.*, one's self, himself, herself, itself, themselves; to himself, themselves, etc.; *recipr.*, one another.
ſie, she, it; her, it; they; them.
Sie (*for* du *and* ihr), you.

ſieben, seven.
Sieb'entel, *n.* (-s; —), seventh part.
ſieden (123), to boil.
Silber, *n.* (-s), silver.
ſingen (144), to sing.
ſinken (144; ſein), to sink.
ſinnen (158), to reflect.
ſitzen (181), to sit.
Sklave, *m.* (-n; -n), slave.
Smaragd, *m.* (-es; -e), emerald.
ſo, so, thus, in such a manner, indeed (*not translated in the apodosis to a conditional clause*); —eben, just, just now; — ein, eine, ein, such a.
ſobald, as soon as.
ſofort, immediately, directly.
ſogar, even.
Sohn, *m.* (-es; ¨e), son.
ſolch(er), *adj. and pron.*, such.
Soldat', *m.* (-en; -en), soldier.
ſollen (196–202; duty or obligation), to be in duty bound, be to; shall; be said.
Sommer, *m.* (-s; —), summer.
ſondern (*after negatives only*), but.
Sonnabend, *m.* (-es; -e), Saturday.
Sonne, *f.* (-n), sun.
Sonntag, *m.* (-es; -e), Sunday.
ſonſt, else, otherwise; — noch, any more, any other, any besides.
ſonſtig, other, different.
Sophie, *f.* (-ns), Sophia.
ſorg'fältig, careful; carefully.
ſpät, late.
ſpazieren (*also* — gehen, 188), to take a walk, go for a walk, go walking; — fahren (186), to go for a drive.
Spazier'gang, *m.* (-es; ¨e), walk; einen — machen, to take a walk.
Speck, *m.* (-es), bacon.
ſpeien (120), to spit.
Speiſekarte, *f.* (-n), bill of fare.
ſpeiſen, to eat, dine.
Sperling, *m.* (-es; -e), sparrow.
ſpielen, to play.
ſpinnen (158), to spin.
ſpleißen (App. L.), to split.
Sprache, *f.* (-n), language.
Sprachtalent', *n.* (-es; -e), talent for (learning) languages.
Sprach'ſtudium, *n.* (-s; -ien), linguistic study.
ſprechen (167), to speak, say, tell; to speak or talk to or with.
Sprechen, *n.* (-s), speaking (act of), speech.
Sprichwort, *n.* (-es; ¨er), proverb.
ſprießen (123), to sprout.
ſpringen (144; ſein), to spring, leap, jump.
St. Lo'renz, *m.*, St. Lawrence.
Staat, *m.* (-es; -en), state.
Stadt, *f.* (¨e), town, city.
Stadt'thor, *n.* (-es; -e), town-gate, city-gate.
Stadt'uhr, *f.* (-en), town-clock.
Stahl, *m.* (-es), steel.
Stand, *m.* (-es; ¨e), stand; condition; zu —e kommen, to be completed, be done; im —e ſein, to be able, be in a position to.
ſtark (¨er), strong, powerful; severe.
ſtatt'finden (144), to take place, happen.
ſtechen (167), to sting.
ſtecken (App. L.), to stick.
ſtehen (186; ſein *or* haben), to stand, be; be situated.
ſtehlen (167), to steal.
ſteigen (120; ſein; auf + *acc.*), to climb, mount, ascend, descend, get down or off, alight.
Stelle, *f.* (-n), place, spot.
ſtellen, to put, place, set (upright).
ſterben (159; ſein), to die.
ſtieben (App. L.), to scatter.
ſtill, still; quiet.
Stimme, *f.* (-n), voice.
ſtinken (App. L.), to stink.
Stock, *m.* (-es; ¨e), stick, cane.
ſtören, to interrupt, disturb, trouble.
ſtoßen (188), to push, kick, strike, bump, knock.
Straße, *f.* (-n), street, road.
ſtreichen (118), to stroke.
ſtreiten (118), to quarrel.
ſtreng, severe; severely.
Strich, *m.* (-es; -e), stroke, dash; ein — durch die Rechnung, disappointment.
Strom, *m.* (-es; ¨e), stream, current.
Strumpf, *m.* (-es; ¨e), stocking.
Stück, *m.* (-es; -e), piece.
Stückchen, *n.* (-s; —), little piece, morsel, bit.
Student', *m.* (-en; -en), student.
Studium, *n.* (-s; Studien), study.
ſtudieren, to study.
Studieren, *n.* (-s), studying (act of).
Stuhl, *m.* (-es; ¨e), chair.
Stunde, *f.* (-n), hour, lesson.
Stundenzeiger, *m.* (-s; —), hour-hand.

Sturm, *m.* (-es; ¨e), storm, tempest.
subtrahieren, to subtract.
ſuchen, to seek, search, look for.
Suppe, *f.* (-n), soup, broth.

T.

ta'deln, to blame, find fault with.
Tag, *m.* (-es; -e), day; acht —e, a week; ſeit acht —en, for a week past; ein — um den andern, every other (alternate) day; alle drei —e, every third day.
Ta'geſan'bruch, *m.* (-es), day-break.
Tante, *f.* (-n), aunt.
tapfer, brave, valiant; bravely, valiantly.
Tapferkeit, *f.*, courage, valour.
Taſche, *f.* (-n), pocket.
Taſſe, *f.* (-n), cup.
Taucher, *m.* (-s; —), diver.
tauen, to thaw.
Teil, *m.* (-es; -e), part, portion.
teilen, to divide, share.
teils, partly, in part; teils . . . teils, partly . . . partly.
Telegraph', *m.* (-en; -en), telegraph.
Telephon', *n.* (-s; -e), telephone.
Teller, *m.* (-s; —), plate.
Teppich, *m.* (-es; -e), carpet.
Teſtament', *n.* (-es; -e), testament, (last) will.
teuer, dear, costly.
Thal, *n.* (-es; ¨er), valley.
Thaler, *m.* (-s; —), dollar.
That, *f.* (-en), deed; exploit, achievement.
thauen, to thaw.
Thee, *m.* (-s), tea.
Themſe, *f.*, Thames.
Thor, *n.* (-es; -e), gate, gateway.
Thor, *m.* (-en; -en), fool.
Thron, *m.* (-es; -e), throne.
thun (196), to do.
Thür(e), *f.* (-n), door.
Tier, *n.* (-es; -e), beast, animal.
Tiſch, *m.* (-es; -e), table.
Titel, *m.* (-s; —), title; mit —, with title (printed on the back).
Tochter, *f.* (¨), daughter.
Töchterchen, *n.* (-s; —), little daughter.
Torontoer, *adj.*, (of) Toronto.
tot, dead.
töten, to kill.
träge, idle, lazy, indolent.
tragen (186), to carry.
traurig, sad, sorrowful, melancholy.
Trauung, *f.* (-en), marriage (-ceremony).
treffen (167), to hit, happen upon, meet with; hit upon, fall in with.
treiben (120), to drive.
Treppe, *f.* (-n), stairs, staircase.
treten (181), to tread, step.
treu, faithful, true.
triefen (123), to drop, drip.
trinken (144), to drink.
Trinken, *n.* (-s), (act or habit of) drinking.
Trink'geld, *n.* (-es; -er), drinking-money, gratuity, tip.
trotz (223), in spite of.
trotzdem' was, in spite of what.
Trun'kenbold, *m.* (-es; -e), drunkard.
Tuch, *n.* (-es; ¨er *and* -e), cloth.
Tu'gend, *f.* (-en), virtue.

U.

Übel, *n.* (-s; —), evil.
über (65), over, above, across, through, by way of; heute — drei Wochen, this day three weeks.
überhaupt', in general, generally; as a matter of fact, at any rate.
ü'bermorgen, the day after tomorrow.
überre'den, to persuade.
überſet'zen, to translate; ins Deutſche —, to translate into German.
Ü'berzieher, *m.* (-s; —), overcoat.
übrig, remaining, left over; das Übrige, the remainder, what is left; — bleiben, to be remaining or left.
Übung, *f.* (-en), exercise; practice.
Ufer, *n.* (-s; —), bank, shore.
Uhr, *f.* (-en), clock, watch; um vier —, at four o'clock; wie viel — iſt es? what o'clock is it?
unmög'lich, impossible; ich kann —, I cannot possibly.
Un'recht, *n.* (-es), wrong; — haben, to be (in the) wrong.
unſer, unſere, unſer, our.
unten, below, down-stairs.
unter (65), under, beneath, below; among; — der Regierung Eliſabeths, in the reign of Elizabeth.
unterneh'men (167), to undertake.
Unterneh'men, *n.* (-s), enterprise, undertaking.
Un'terſchied, *m.* (-es; -e), difference.
Un'wahrheit, *f.* (-en), untruth, falsehood.
un'wahrſcheinlich, improbable.

un'weit (*gen.*), not far from.
un'zufrieden, discontented, dissatisfied.
ur'teilen, to judge.
u. ſ. w., *abbrev. for* und ſo weiter, and so forth, etc.

V.

Vater, *m.* (-s; ¨), father.
verbergen (159), to conceal, hide.
verbrennen (99), to burn, consume with fire.
verderben (159), to spoil (*intr.*); — (*weak*), to spoil (*tr.*), injure.
verdrießen (123), to vex.
Vereinigten Staaten (die), *pl.*, The United States.
vergebens, in vain.
vergelten (159), to requite, reward.
vergeſſen (181), to forget.
Vergnügen, *n.* (-s), pleasure, delight, amusement.
Verhältnis, *n.* (-ſes; -ſe), circumstance.
verhei'raten (ſich mit), to marry.
verkaufen, to sell; dieſes Haus iſt zu —, this house is for sale.
verlaſſen (188), to leave, desert, quit; ſich — auf (+ *acc.*), to rely upon, depend upon.
verleiden, to render disagreeable, spoil.
verletzen, to hurt, wound
verlieren (131), to lose.
Verluſt, *m.* (-es; -e), loss.
vermieten, to let, rent.
vermittelſt (*gen.*), by means of.
verreiſen, to go on a journey.
verreiſt, absent on a journey.
verſammeln, to collect, assemble.
verſchreiben (120), to prescribe.
verſchwenden, to squander, waste.
verſchwinden (144; ſein), to disappear, vanish.
verſprechen (167), to promise.
verſtehen (186), to understand; ſich — auf (+ *acc.*), to be a judge (of).
verſtorben, deceased.
verſuchen, to try.
Verwandte, *m. and f.* (*adj. subst.*), relative.
verzeihen (120; *dat.*), to pardon, excuse.
Verzeihung, *f.* (-en), pardon, forgiveness; um — bitten, to beg pardon.
verzweifeln, to despair.
Vetter, *m.* (-s; -n), cousin.
viel (mehr, meiſt), much, many, a great deal of; wie — Uhr, what o'clock.
vielleicht', perhaps, possibly.
vielmal, vielmals, many times, frequently, often.
vier, four.
Viertel, *n.* (-s; —), fourth part, quarter.
Viertelſtun'de, *f.* (-n), quarter of an hour.
vierzehn, fourteen; — Tage, a fortnight.
Violoncell', *n.* (-es; -e), violoncello.
Vogel, *m.* (-s; ¨), bird.
voll (*gen. or* von), full.
vollen'den, to finish, complete.
von (46), of, from, by, about, concerning.
vor (65), before, of, in front of, ago; — acht Tagen, a week ago.
vorbei, over, past.
vorbeigehen (188), to go by, pass by.
vorbereiten (ſich), to prepare (for, auf + *acc.*).
vorfahren (186; ſein), drive up to the door, etc.
vorgehen (188; ſein), to go (or be) fast (of a timepiece).
vor'geſtern, the day before yesterday.
vorhaben, to contemplate, intend.
Vorhang, *m.* (-es; ¨e), curtain.
vorig, preceding, last.
vorläufig (*adv.*), temporarily, for the present.
vorleſen (181; + *dat. of person*), to read to.
Vormund, *m.* (-es; ¨er), guardian.
Vorrat, *m.* (-es; ¨e), stock, provision.
vorſichtig, cautious, prudent.
Vorſtadt, *f.* (¨e), suburb.
vorſtellen, to present, introduce.
vorteilhaft, advantageous.
vorüber, past.
vorüberfließen (131; ſein), to flow past.
vorübergehen (188; ſein), to go past, pass by; am Hauſe —, to go by, go past, the house.
vorziehen (131), to prefer

W.

wachſen (186), to grow.
Wagen, *m.* (-s; —), waggon, carriage.
wägen (131, B.), to weigh.
wählen, to choose, select.
wahr, true, real; nicht —? am (I, etc.) not? is it not so?
währen, to last, continue.
während (*gen.*; 223), during; while.
Wahrheit, *f.* (-en), truth.
wahrſcheinlich (*adv.*), probably.

Waiſenhaus, *n.* (-es; ¨er), orphan-asylum.
Wald, *m.* (-es; ¨er), forest, wood.
Wand, *f.* (¨e), wall.
Wand(e)rer, *m.* (-s; —), traveller.
wann? when?
warm (¨er), warm.
warten (auf + *acc.*), to wait for.
warum, why, wherefore.
was, what, that which, which, that; — für ein, eine, ein, what kind of a, what.
waſchen (186), to wash.
Waſſer, *n.* (-s; —), water; zu —, by water.
weben (131), to weave.
wechſelhaft, changeable.
wecken, to wake, awake, waken.
Weck'uhr, *f.* (-en), alarm-clock.
weder, neither; — . . . noch, neither . . . nor.
Weg, *m.* (-es; -e), way, road; ſich auf den — machen, to set out, be off.
wegen (*gen.*; 223), on account of, because of, for the sake of, for.
Weib, *n.* (-es; -er), woman; wife.
weichen (118), to yield.
Weide, *f.* (-n), pasturage, pasture.
Weihnachten, *pl.*, Christmas.
weil, because.
Wein, *m.* (-es; -e), wine.
weinen, to weep, cry.
Weinkarte, *f.* (-n), wine-card.
weiſe, *adj.*, wise.
Weiſe, *f.* (-n), manner, mode, way; auf dieſe —, in this way.
weiſen (120), to point out, show.
weiß, white.
weit, far.
weiter, farther, further.
Weizen, *m.* (-s; —), wheat.
welcher, welche, welches, *rel. pron.*, who, which, that; *interrogative adj.*, which? what?; —, *adj.* (*in exclamations*), what a! what!
Welt, *f.* (-en), world; auf der —, in the world.
wem, *dat. of* wer, to whom?
wenden (99), to turn; ſich —, to apply (to, an + *acc.*).
wenig, little, few.
wenn, when, whenever, as soon as; if; — auch, even if.
wer, who; he who, whoever; who?
werben (159), to sue.
werden (159), to become, grow; (*as aux. of the passive voice*, 112–114), to be; — aus, to become of.
werfen (159), to throw.
Werk, *n.* (-es; -e), work.
weſſen, whose; whose?
weshalb, wherefore? why?
Wetter, *n.* (-s), weather; bei dieſem —, in this weather.
wider (*acc.*; 34), against, contrary to.
wie, how; how?; — ſehr auch, however much.
wieder, again, once more.
wie'derſehen (181), to see again, meet again.
Wie'derſehen, *n.* (-s), meeting again; auf —, good-bye till we meet again.
wiegen (131), to weigh.
Wilhelm, *m.* (-s), William.
Wille, *m.* (-ns), will; wish; um . . . willen (*gen.*), for the sake of.
Wind, *m.* (-es; -e), wind.
winden (144), to wind.
windig, windy.
Winter, *m.* (-s; —), winter.
wir, we.
wirklich, *adv.*, really, truly.
Wirtin, *f.* (-nen), hostess; landlady.
wiſſen (196), to know (*said of knowledge*); nicht daß ich wüßte, not that I know of.
Wiſſenſchaft, *f.* (-en), science.
wiſſentlich, knowingly.
wo? where; where?
Woche, *f.* (-n), week.
wohl, *pred. adj.*, well (*of health*); mir iſt nicht — zu Mut, I do not feel well; —, *adv.*, well, then, indeed, I suppose; ja —, yes, to be sure.
wohnen, to dwell, live, reside.
Wohnung, *f.* (-en), dwelling, house, residence.
wollen (196–202), to will, desire, wish, want, intend, mean, like; — Sie ein Glas Waſſer? will you have a glass of water?
woran, whereon, on which, on what, of what.
worauf, whereon, on which, for which, on what.
woraus, wherefrom, from what, of what.
worin, wherein, in which, in what.
Wort, *n.* (-es; ¨er *and* -e), word.
worüber? about what? at what? over what?
wundern (ſich), to wonder, be astonished (at, über + *acc.*); es wundert mich (*impers.*), I wonder.
Wunſch, *m.* (-es; ¨e), wish.
wünſchen, to wish, desire, want; Glück —, to congratulate, wish success.
Wurm, *m.* (-es; ¨er), worm.

Wurzel, *f.* (-n), root.
Wut, *f.*, rage, fury.
wütend, furious.

3.

zahlen, to pay.
Zahn, *m.* (-es; ¨e), tooth.
Zahnweh, *n.* (-es), tooth-ache.
zehn, ten.
Zeichen, *n.* (-s; —), sign.
zeigen, to show.
zeihen (120), to convict.
Zeit, *f.* (-en), time; zu allen —en, in all ages.
Zeitung, *f.* (-en), newspaper.
zerreißen (118), to tear (to pieces).
zerrinnen (158), to vanish, run away (of liquids).
ziehen (131), to draw; pull, take.
Zimmer, *n.* (-s; —), room.
zu (46), to, at; — meinem Onkel, to my uncle's; — derselben Zeit, at the same time; *adv.*, too; closed, shut.
zubringen (99), to pass, spend (*said of time*).
Zucker, *m.* (-s), sugar.
zuerst', first, first of all.
zufolge (*gen. or dat.*; 223), in consequence of, according to.
zufrieden, contented, satisfied.
Zug, *m.* (-es; ¨e), train.
zumachen, to shut, close.
zurückbringen (99), to bring back.
zurückbleiben (120; sein), to remain behind; remain at home.
zurückkommen (167), to return, come back.
zurücklegen, to put by, lay up.
zusammen, together.
zusammenstoßen (188), to collide.
zuschicken, to send to (*dat.*).
zuschließen (123), to lock up, fasten, shut.
Zweck, *m.* (-es; -e), aim, object.
zwei, two.
zweitens, secondly.
zwingen (144), to force.
zwischen (65), between.
zwölf, twelve.

ENGLISH—GERMAN.

Note. — The government of verbs is given only where it differs from English usage.

A.

able, fähig, geschickt; to be —, können, 196; im Stande sein.
about, *prep.* (around), um, 34, 226, (*a*); (the person), bei, 46, 226, (*d*); *adv.*, (nearly), ungefähr; etwa, 226, (*b*), (*c*); to be — to, im Begriffe sein.
above, *prep.*, über, 65.
absent, abwesend; —-mindedly, zerstreut.
abuse, *v.*, mißhan'deln.
accept, annehmen, 167.
accompany, begleiten (*tr.*).
account; on — of, wegen, 223; halb(en), halber, 223; on that —, deswegen, deshalb.
accusation, Anklage, *f.* (-n).
accuse (of), anklagen (*gen. of thing*), beschuldigen (*gen. of thing*).
accustomed, gewohnt; to be —, die Gewohnheit haben.
acknowledge, anerkennen, (99).
acquaintance, Bekanntschaft, *f.* (-en); to make the — of, kennen lernen.
acquit (of), lossprechen (167; *gen. of thing*).
act; to — amiss, mißhandeln.
add, addieren.
address, *subst.*, Adresse, *f.* (-n).
address, *v.*, anreden.
admire, bewundern.
advance, vorrücken (*intr.*).
advantage, Vorteil, *m.* (-es; -e).
advantageous, vorteilhaft.
advice, Rat, *m.* (-es).
advise, raten (188; *dat.*).
affair, Sache, *f.* (-n).
afraid; to be — (of); sich fürchten (vor + *dat.*).
after, nach, 46.
afternoon, Nachmittag, *m.* (-es; -e).
afterwards, nachher, hernach, darauf.
again, wieder, nochmals.
against, wider, gegen, 34.
ago, vor (*prep.* + *dat.*), 65;

many years —, vor vielen Jahren; a week — to-day, heute vor acht Tagen.
agreeable, angenehm.
ail, fehlen; what —s you? was fehlt Ihnen?
alas! ach!
all (the), all, Alles; aller, alle, alles; — the same, einerlei.
allow, erlauben (*dat.*); laſſen, 188; to be —ed, dürfen, 196.
Alma (river), Alma, *f.*
almost, faſt, beinahe.
alone, allein.
along, längs, entlang (223, 18, 19).
alphabet, Alphabet', *n.* (-es; -e).
already, ſchon.
also, auch.
always, immer.
America, Amerika, *n.* (-s).
amiss; to act —, miß'handeln, 209.
among, amongst, unter, 65.
a, an, ein, eine, ein.
ancient, alt; the —s, die Alten, *pl.*
and, und.
anecdote, Anekdote, *f.* (-n).
angry, böſe; be — at, böſe ſein auf (+ *acc.*).
animal, Tier, *n.* (-es; -e).
another (a different one), ein anderer; (one more), noch ein, eine, ein.
answer, *subst.*, Antwort, *f.* (-en).
answer, *v.*, antworten (*dat.*); beantworten (*acc. of thing*, *dat. of pers.*).
answering (act of), Antworten, *n.* (-s).
ant, Ameiſe, *f.* (-n).
any (*partitive*, 2, 2); irgend, ein, eine, ein; —thing, irgend etwas, etwas; — thing but, nichts weniger als; *pl.*, welche, einige; not —body, not —one, niemand; not —, kein, keine, kein.
apartment, Gemach, *n.* (-es; ¨er).
appear, ſcheinen, erſcheinen, 120.
apple, Apfel, *m.* (-s; ¨); — -tree, Apfelbaum, *m.* (-es; ¨e).
apply to anyone, ſich an jemanden (*acc.*) wenden, 99.
appoint (as), ernennen (99; zum, zur).
approval, Beifall, *m.* (-es).
April, April', *m.* (-s).
architect, Architekt', *m.* (-en; -en).
arm, Arm, *m.* (-es; -e); —s, *pl.*, Waffen.
army, Armee, *f.* (-n).
arrival, Ankunft, *f.* (¨e).
arrive, ankommen (167; ſein).
art, Kunſt, *f.* (¨e).
article, Arti'kel, *m.* (-s; —).
artillery, Artillerie, *f.*; Geſchütz, *n.* (-es).
artist, Künſtler, *m.* (-s; —).
as (241, 8–11), als; wie; ſo; da; — soon —, ſobald (wie); — a, als; — . . . —, (eben)ſo . . . wie *or* als.
ascend, aufſteigen, ſteigen, 120.
ashamed; to be — of, ſich ſchämen (*gen. or* über + *acc.*).
ask, fragen (186); — for, bitten (181, um); verlangen (nach).
asking questions (act of), Fragen, *n.* (-s).
assert, behaupten.
assist, beiſtehen (186; ſein; *dat.*).
astonish; to be —ed (at), ſich wundern (über + *acc.*).
astonishing, erſtaunend.
at (*of locality*), in, an, auf, zu, 227 (*a*); (*of time*) um, zu, bei, 227, (*b*); (*of price*) um, 227, (*c*); not — all, gar nicht; — my brother's, bei meinem Bruder; — last, — length, endlich.
attack, *v.*, angreifen, 118. *subst.*, Angriff, *m.* (-es; -e).
attempt, *subst.*, Verſuch, *m.* (-es; -e).
attendant, Begleiter, *m.* (-s; —).
attention, Aufmerkſamkeit; to pay —, Acht geben (181; auf + *acc.*).
attentive, aufmerkſam.
August, Auguſt', *m.* (-s).
aunt, Tante, *f.* (-n).
author (of a particular work), Verfaſſer, *m.* (-s; —).
autumn, Herbſt, *m.* (-es; -e).
avoid, meiden, vermeiden, 120.
away, fort, abweſend; — from home, von Hauſe.

B.

back, *adv.*, zurück.
bad, badly, ſchlecht.
bag, Sack, *m.* (-es; ¨e).
bank, Bank, *f.* (-en).
bark (of trees, etc.), Baumrinde, *f.*
basket, Korb, *m.* (-es; ¨e).
battery, Batterie, *f.* (-n).
battle, Schlacht, *f.* (-en).
be, ſein (52); werden (159; *as aux. of passive*, 112, R. 5); ſtehen (186); there is, there are, es giebt, es iſt, etc., 220; (*of health*) ſich befinden (144); how are you? wie geht es Ihnen? I am to, ich ſoll.
bear, *subst.*, Bär, *m.* (-en; -en).
bear (bring forth), *v.*, gebären (167).
beat, *v.*, ſchlagen (186).

beautiful, ſchön; the —, das Schöne.
beauty, Schönheit, *f.* (-en).
because, weil; da.
become, werden (159), ſtehen (186; *dat.*).
bed, Bett, *n.* (-es; -en); to go to —, zu Bette gehen, ſich ſchlafen legen; in —, zu Bette.
bee, Biene, *f.* (-n).
beef, Rindfleiſch, *n.* (-es).
beer, Bier, *n.* (-es; -e).
before, *prep.*, vor (65; *dat. or acc.*); *conj.*, bevor; ehe (daß).
beg (ask), bitten (181; for, um); to — pardon, um Verzeihung bitten; — (for alms), betteln.
beggar (-man), Bettler, *m.* (-s; —); —-woman, Bettlerin, *f.* (-nen).
begin, anfangen (188); beginnen (158).
behave, ſich betragen (186).
behind, hinter (65; *dat. or acc.*).
believe, glauben (*dat. of person*).
belong (to), gehören (*dat.*).
beloved, geliebt, wert.
below, *prep.*, unter (*dat. or acc.*; 65); unterhalb (*gen.*; 223); *adv.*, unten.
besides, *adv.*, außerdem.
between, zwiſchen (*dat. or acc.*; 65).
beverage, Getränk, *n.* (-es; -e).
bid, *v.* (order), heißen (188).
big, groß.
bill, Rechnung, *f.* (-en).
bird, Vogel, *m.* (-s; ¨).
bird-cage, Vogelbauer, *n.* (-s; —).
birth-day, Geburtstag, *m.* (-es; -e); as a — -present, zum Geburtstag.
bishop, Biſchof, *m.* (-es; ¨e).
bite, *v.*, beißen (118).
bitter, bitter.
black, *adj.*, ſchwarz (¨er).
black, *v.* (*of boots*), wichſen.
blame, *v.*, tadeln.
blindly, blindlings.
blow, *v.*, blaſen (188).
blue, blau.
board; on — (*of a ship*), am Bord.
boat, Boot, *n.* (-es; -e *or* Böte).
bodily, körperlich.
bombard, bombardieren.
bone, Knochen, *m.* (-s; —).
book, Buch, *n.* (-es; ¨er).
bookseller, Buchhändler, *m.* (-s; —).
born, *part.*, geboren (167).
borne; having been — down by the stream, vom Strome fortgeriſſen.
botanist, Bota'niker, *m.* (-s; —).
both, beide; alle beide, beides.
bough, Aſt, *m.* (es; ¨e).
Boston, Boſton, *n.* (-s); the — train, der Zug von (nach) Boſton.
boy, Knabe, *m.* (-n; -n).
brave, tapfer.
bread, Brot, *n.* (-es; -e).
break, brechen (167); — through, einbrechen.
breakfast, *v.*, frühſtücken; *subst.*, Frühſtück, *n.* (-es).
bridge, Brücke, *f.* (-n).
bring, bringen (99); holen; to — with one, — along, mitbringen; to — in, hereinbringen; to — up, heraufbringen.
broad, breit.
brother, Bruder, *m* (-s; ¨).
brother-in-law, Schwager, *m.* (-s; ¨).
build, bauen.
building, Gebäude, *n.* (-s; —); (act of), Bauen, *n.* (-s).
bullet, Kugel, *f.* (-n).
burn, brennen (99; *intr.*); verbrennen (99; *tr. and intr.*).
business, Geſchäft, *n.* (-es; -e).
business-matter, Geſchäftsangelegenheit, *f.* (-en).
but, aber; allein (241, 1); ſondern (*only after a negative*, 236, R. 1).
button, Knopf, *m.* (-es; ¨e).
buy, kaufen.
buying (action of), Kaufen, *n.* (-s).
by, 228; (near by), bei (*dat.*); (*of agent with pass. voice*) von (*dat.*); (*of means or instrument*) durch (*acc.*), mit (*dat.*); — rail(way), mit der Eiſenbahn.

C.

call (out), rufen 188; (name), nennen, 99; be —ed, heißen, 188.
call, *subst.* (visit), Beſuch, *m.* (-es; -e).
can, können, 196–202.
cannon, Kanone, *f.* (-n).
capable, fähig (*gen.*, *or* + zu).
capital, *subst.*, Hauptſtadt, *f.* (¨e).
cardinal-point (*see* point).
care, Acht, *f.*; to take —, ſich in Acht nehmen (167); do you — to? haben Sie Luſt? for all I —, meinetwegen.
carpet, Teppich, *m.* (-es; -e).
carriage, Wagen, *m.* (-s; —).
carry, tragen, 186; to — up, hinauftragen.
case, Fall, *m.* (-es; ¨e).
castle, Schloß, *n.* (-es; ¨er)

cat, Katze, *f.* (-n).
catch, fangen, 188; — cold, sich erkälten.
cause; to — to, lassen (188; + *infin.*).
celebrate, feiern; —d, berühmt.
century, Jahrhundert, *n.* (-es; -e).
certain, —ly, gewiß, jedenfalls.
chair, Stuhl, *m.* (-es; ¨e).
chancellor, Kanzler, *m.* (-s; —).
change, *v. tr.*, ändern; *v. intr.*, sich ändern.
Charles, Karl, *m.* (-s); little —, Karlchen, *n.* (-s).
charming, *adj.*, reizend
cheap, billig.
cheese, Käse, *m.* (-s; —).
cherry, Kirsche, *f.* (-n).
chicken, Huhn, *n.* (-es; ¨er).
child, Kind, *n.* (-es; -er).
Christmas, Weihnachten, *pl.*
church, Kirche, *f.* (-n).
Cinderella, Aschenputtel, *n.*, (-s).
city, Stadt, *f.* (¨e).
claim to be, wollen, 196.
clear, klar.
clever, geschickt.
climate, Klima, *n.* (-s).
climb up, hinaufklettern.
cloak, Mantel, *m.* (-s; ¨).
clock, Uhr, *f.* (-en).
close, zumachen; schließen, zuschließen, 123.
cloth, Tuch, *n.* (-es; -e *or* ¨er).
clothes, Kleider, *n. pl.* (*see* Kleid).
cloud, Wolke, *f.* (-n).
coachman, Kutscher, *m.* (-s; —).
coal, Kohle, *f.* (-n).
coat, Rock, *m.* (-es; ¨e).
coffee, Kaffee, *m.* (-s).
cold, kalt (¨er); to catch —, sich erkälten.
colour, Farbe, *f.* (-n).
combat, Kampf, *m.* (-es; ¨e).
come, kommen (167; sein); — in, hereinkommen; — here, hierherkommen; — down, herunterkommen; — out, herauskommen; — back, zurückkommen; — again, wiederkommen; what is to —, das Bevorstehende.
coming (act of), Kommen, *n.* (-s).
command, *v.*, befehlen (167; *dat.*).
commandment, Gebot, *n.*, (-es; -e).
company, Gesellschaft, *f.*, (-en).
complain, klagen (über + *acc.*).
complete, vollständig.
concert, Konzert', *n.* (-es; -e).
condition, Bedingung, *f.* (-en).
confusion, Verwirrung, *f.* (-en); Bestürzung, *f.* (-en).
congratulate, Glück wünschen, gratulieren (*dat.*).
conscious, bewußt (+ *gen.*).
consequence; in — of, zufolge (223).
consider, betrachten; halten für, 188.
consist (of), bestehen (aus), 186.
contented, zufrieden.
contradistinction, Gegensatz, *m.* (-es; ¨e).
contrary; on the —, im Gegenteil.
convent, Kloster, *n.* (-s; ¨).
convince (of), überzeu'gen (*gen. of thing*).
cool, *adj.*, kühl.
copy, *subst.*, Exemplar', *n.* (-es; -e); *v.*, abschreiben, 120.
corner, Ecke, *f.* (-n).
correct, *adj.*, richtig.
cost, *v.*, kosten (+ *acc. or dat. of person*).
counsellor, Ratgeber, *m.* (-s; —).
Count, *subst.*, Graf, *m.* (-en; -en).
Countess, Gräfin, *f.* (-nen).
country, Land, *n.* (-es; ¨er); in the —, auf dem Lande; — -man, Bauer, *m.* (-n *or* -s; -n).
couple, Paar, *n.* (-es; -e).
courtier, Höfling, *m.* (-es; -e).
cousin, Vetter, *m.* (-s; -n).
cover, *v.*, decken.
create, schaffen, 186.
creditor, Gläubiger, *m.* (-s; —).
creep, kriechen, 123.
crime, Verbrechen, *n.* (-s; —).
crop, crops, Ernte, *f.*
cry (call), rufen, 188; (weep), weinen.
cup, Tasse, *f.* (-n).
curtain, Vorhang, *m.* (-es; ¨e).
cut, schneiden, 118; — off, abschneiden; to — one's hand, sich in die Hand schneiden.

D.

danger, Gefahr, *f.* (-en).
dangerous, gefährlich.
dare, sich unterstehen, 186; dürfen, 196.
daughter, Tochter, *f.* (¨).
day, Tag, *m.* (-es; -e); in broad —light, bei hellem Tage.
dead, tot.
deal; a great — of, viel.
dealer, Händler, *m.* (-s; —).
dear, lieb, teuer.
dearly-bought, teuer.

decide, *intr.*, ſich entſchließen, 123; —d, *adj.*, entſchieden.
defence, Verteidigung, *f.* (-en).
definition, Definition, *f.* (-en).
deserve, verdienen.
desire, Verlangen, *n.* (-s; —); Luſt, *f.* (¨e).
desperate, verzweifelt.
devote, widmen.
diamond, Diamant', *m.* (-s *or* -en; -en).
dictionary, Wörterbuch, *n.* (-es; ¨er).
die, ſterben (159; ſein).
difference, Unterſchied, *m.* (-es; -e).
difficult, ſchwer.
dig, graben, 186.
diligence, Fleiß, *m.* (-es).
diligently, fleißig.
dinner, Mittagseſſen, *n.* (-s; —).
disagreeable, unangenehm.
disappoint, enttäuſchen.
discover, entdecken.
discoverer, Entdecker, *m.* (-s; —).
discovery, Entdeckung, *f.* (-en).
disgrace, Schande, *f.* (-n).
displeased, unzufrieden.
dissatisfied, unzufrieden.
distant, entfernt.
disturb, ſtören.
diver, Taucher, *m.* (-s; —).
divide, teilen.
divine, göttlich.
do, thun (196); (make), machen; (*as aux. is not translated by a separate form; see* 31, R. 3); how — you —? wie geht es Ihnen?
doctor, Doktor, *m.* (-s; Dokto'ren); (physician), Arzt, *m.* (-es; ¨e); that is Dr. B., das iſt der Doktor B.
dog, Hund, *m.* (-es; -e).
dollar, Thaler, *m.* (-s; —).
door, Thür(e), *f.* (-en); at the —, an der Thür(e).
doubt, *subst.*, Zweifel, *m.* (-s; —).
doubt, *v.*, zweifeln (an + *dat.*); I have no — of it, ich habe keinen Zweifel daran.
down, herunter; — -stairs, unten.
dozen, Dutzend, *n.* (-es; -e).
draw, ziehen, 131; zeichnen.
dress, Kleid, *n.* (-es; -er).
dress, *v. tr.*, ankleiden; *v. intr.*, ſich ankleiden.
drink, trinken, 144; — (*of beasts*), ſaufen, 123.
drive, *v. tr.*, treiben, 120; *intr.*, (go in a conveyance), fahren (186; ſein); go for a —, ſpazieren fahren.
driving (act of), Fahren, *n.* (-s).
drop, Tropfen, *m.* (-s; —).
drown, *intr.*; be —ed, ertrinken, 144.
duke, Herzog, *m.* (-es; -e *or* ¨e).
during, während (*gen.*; 223).
duty, Pflicht, *f.* (-en).
dwelling-house, Wohnhaus, *n.* (-es; ¨er).

E.

each, jeder, jede, jedes; — other, einander.
eagle, Adler, *m.* (-s; —).
ear, Ohr, *n.* (-es; -en).
early, früh.
earn, verdienen.
earth, Erde, *f.*; — -quake, Erdbeben, *n.* (-s; —).
east, Oſt(en), *m.*
easy, —ily, leicht.
eat, eſſen, 181; freſſen, 181, (*said of beasts*).
effort, Anſtrengung, *f.* (-en), Bemühung, *f.* (-en); Verſuch, *m.* (-s; -e).
either, entweder; — . . . or, entweder . . . oder.
elect (as), erwählen (zum).
elm, Ulme, *f.* (-n).
else, or —, ſonſt.
embarrassment, Verlegenheit, *f.* (-en).
emperor, Kaiſer, *m.* (-s; —).
endure, ausſtehen, 186.
enemy, Feind, *m.* (-es; -e).
engaged, verſagt; I have another engagement, I am — elsewhere, ich bin anderswo verſagt.
English, engliſch; — (language), Engliſch (des Engliſchen); into —, ins Engliſche.
Englishman, Engländer, *m.* (-s; —).
enjoy, genießen (123; *gen. or more generally acc.*).
enough, genug; be —, ſuffice, genügen.
err, irren.
escape, entfliehen (131; *dat.*).
esteem, achten.
etc., u. ſ. w. (*abbreviation for:* und ſo weiter).
Europe, Europa, *n.* (-s).
even, *adv.* ſogar, ſelbſt; not —, nicht einmal'; — if, wenn auch.
evening, Abend, *m.* (-es; -e).
ever, je, jemals.
every, jeder, jede, jedes; —body, —one, jedermann, jeder, jedweder, jeglicher; — week, alle acht Tage.
everywhere, überall.
evil, *subst.*, Böſes, *n.*
exactly, gerade, eben.
examination, Examen, *n.* (-s; —).
examine, unterſuch'en, beobachten.

exceeding, —ly, höchſt, ſehr, äußerſt.
except, außer (*dat.*; 46).
excuse, *v.*, entſchuldigen (*tr.*), verzeihen (*dat.*); *subst.*, Entſchuldigung, *f.* (-en).
exercise, *subst.*, Aufgabe, *f.* (-n).
expect, erwarten.
expense, Koſten, *pl.*; at the — of, auf Koſten.
eye, Auge, *n.* (-s; -n).

F.

fail (in business), fallieren.
fall, fallen (188; ſein).
family, Familie, *f.* (-n).
famine, Hun'gersnot, *f.*
far, weit; as — as, bis nach (*dat.*); not — from, unfern, unweit (*gen.*; 223, 23, 24).
farewell, Lebewohl, *n.* (-s).
fast (quick), geſchwind, ſchnell.
father, Vater, *m.* (-s; ¨).
favour, Gefallen, *m.* (-s; —).
fear, Furcht, *f.*; for —, aus Furcht.
feather, Feder, *f.* (-n).
February, Februar, *m.* (-s).
feel, fühlen; (perceive), empfinden, 144; *v. intr.* (*of health*), ſich befinden; zu Mute ſein; I — ill, mir iſt ſchlecht zu Mute.
few, wenig, wenige; a —, einige, ein paar.
field, Feld, *n.* (-es; -er).
fight, fechten, 124; ſtreiten, 118.
fill, füllen.
find, finden, 144; — out, ausfinden; — again, wiederfinden.
fine, ſchön.
finger, Finger, *m.* (-s; —).
finish, vollen'den; to have —ed (with), fertig ſein (mit); —ed, fertig.
fire, Feuer, *n.* (-s; —).
first, *adj.*, der, die, das erſte; *adv.*, zuerſt, erſtens; — of all, zuerſt.
fish, Fiſch, *m.* (-es; -e).
fishing, Fiſchen, *n.* (-s).
fit for, — to, gut zu.
five, fünf.
flatter, ſchmeicheln (*dat.*).
flatterer, Schmeichler, *m.* (-s; —).
fleet, *subst.*, Flotte, *f.* (-n).
floor, Fußboden, *m.* (-s; ¨).
flour, Mehl, *n.* (-es).
flow, *v.*, fließen, 123, ſein.
flower, Blume, *f.* (-n).
fly, fliegen 131, ſein; — away, wegfliegen.
follow, folgen (ſein; *dat.*).
foot, Fuß, *m.* (-es; ¨e).
for, 229, *prep.* (*in behalf of*), für, *acc.*, 34; (*of purpose*) zu, *dat.*, 46; — reading, zum Leſen; (*of past time*) ſeit, *dat.*, 46; — three days (past), ſeit drei Tagen; (*of fut. time*) auf, *acc.*, 229, (*b*), 2; — three days (to come), auf drei Tage.
forbid, verbieten (131; *dat.*).
force, zwingen, 144; to be —d, obliged (to), müſſen, 196–202.
ford, Furt, *f.* (-en).
forest, Wald, *m.* (-es; ¨er).
forgery, Verfälſchung, *f.* (-en).
forget, vergeſſen, 181.
forgive, vergeben (181; *dat.*).
former, jener, jene, jenes.
fort, Feſte, *f.* (-n).
fortieth (part), Vierzigſtel, *n.* (-s; —).
fortnight, vierzehn Tage.
fortunately, glücklicherweiſe; glücklicher Weiſe.
fortune, good- —, Glück, *n.* (-es).
four, vier.
fox, Fuchs, *m.* (-es; ¨e).
France, Frankreich, *n.* (-s).
Francis, Franz, *m.* (-ens).
Fred(dy), Fritz, *m.* (-ens).
Frederick, Friedrich, *m.* (-s); Frederick-street, die Friedrichſtraße.
free, frei.
freeze, 131, frieren.
French, franzöſiſch; — (language), Franzöſiſch, *n.* (des Franzöſiſchen).
fresh, friſch.
Friday, Freitag, *m.* (-es; -e).
friend, Freund, *m.* (-es; -e).
friendless, freundlos.
friendly, freundlich.
friendship, Freundſchaft, *f.* (-en).
frighten (terrify), erſchrecken; to be —ed, erſchrecken, 167.
frog, Froſch, *m.* (-es; ¨e).
from (*direction*), von, aus (*dat.*; 46); (*cause*) aus; (*time*) über + *acc.*, 65; a week — to-day, heute über acht Tage; (*disease*) an, *dat.*, 65; er iſt an dieſer Krankheit geſtorben, he died of that disease.
front; in — of; vor (*dat. or acc.*; 65).
fully, ganz.
funeral, Begräbnis, *n.* (-ſes; -ſe).
furious, -ly, wütend.
future, Zukunft, *f.*

G.

gallop, galoppieren.
garden, Garten, *m.* (-s; ¨).
gardener, Gärtner, *m.* (-s; —).
gather, ſammeln.
general, General', *m.* (-es; -e).

generally, gewöhnlich.
generous, freigebig.
gentleman, Herr *m.* (-n ; -en).
George, Georg, *m.* (-s).
German, *adj.*, deutſch ; — (language), Deutſch, *n.* (des Deutſchen); in —, auf Deutſch; into —, ins Deutſche.
Germany, Deutſchland, *n.* (-s).
get (become), werden, 159.
girl, Mädchen, *n.* (-s; —).
give, geben, 181; — up, aufgeben.
glad, froh (*gen.*); be —, ſich freuen ; I am —, es freut mich; I should be — to, should like to, ich möchte gern.
glass, Glas *n.* (-es; ¨er).
glove, Handſchuh, *m.* (-es ; -e).
go, gehen (188; ſein); reiſen; — away, weggehen, fortgehen; — back, zurückgehen; — out, (hin)ausgehen; — down, hinuntergehen; — up, hinaufgehen; — past the place, an einem Platze vorübergehen ; — for, fetch, holen.
goal, Ziel, *n.* (-es ; -e).
God, god, Gott, *m.* (-es; ¨er).
Goethe, Goethe, *m.* (-s).
gold, *subst.*, Gold, *n.* (-es).
gold, *adj.*, golden, golden.
good, gut ; be — enough, haben Sie die Güte ; — morning, guten Morgen.
goodness, Güte, *f.*
graceful, -ly, anmutig.
grand-parents, Großeltern, *pl.*
grapes, Trauben, *pl.*
grass, Gras, *n.* (-es; ¨er).
grateful, dankbar.
great, groß (¨er, größt).
green, grün ; *subst.*, Grün, *n.* (—s).
grind, ſchleifen, 118.
ground, Boden, *m.* (-s); Erde, *f.*
grow, wachſen, 186; werden, 159.
guess, erraten, 188.
guest, Gaſt, *m.* (-es; ¨e).

H.

habit, Gewohnheit, *f.* (-en); to be in the — of, die Gewohnheit haben zu, etc.; pflegen.
half, *adj.*, halb ; — an hour, eine halbe Stunde.
half, *subst.*, Hälfte, *f.* (-n).
hand, Hand, *f.* (¨e).
handsome, ſchön.
handwriting, Handſchrift, *f.* (-en).
hang, *v. tr.*, hängen ; *v. intr.*, hangen, 188.
happy, glücklich.
harbour, Hafen, *m.* (-s; ¨).
hard, ſchwer.
hardly, kaum.
hare, Haſe, *m.* (-n; -n).
harvest, *subst.*, Ernte, *f.* ; *v.*, ernten.
haste, Eile, *f.* ; to make —, eilen.
hat, Hut, *m.* (-es; ¨e).
have, haben, 24; ſein, 52, 53; laſſen, 188, 200, 7; to — to, be obliged to, müſſen, 196-202 ; will you — a cup of tea? wollen Sie eine Taſſe Thee?
hay, Heu, *n.* (-es).
he, er ; der ; — who, derjenige welcher, etc., wer.
head, Kopf, *m.* (-es; ¨e).
health, Geſundheit, *f.*
hear, hören; to — say, ſagen hören.
hearing, Gehör, *n.* (-es).
heart, Herz, *n.* (-ens ; -en) ; by —, auswendig.
heat, Hitze, *f.*
heath, Heide, *f.* (-n).
heaven, Himmel, *m.* (-s; —).
heavy, ſchwer; —ily, ſchwer; (*of rain*) ſtark ; heaviest of all, am allerſchwerſten.
help, *subst.*, Hilfe.
help, *v.*, helfen (159; *dat.*); it cannot be —ed, es läßt ſich nicht ändern.
Henry, Heinrich, *m.* (-s).
her, *pers. pron.*, ſie (*acc.*); ihr (*dat.*).
her, *poss. adj.*, ihr, ihre, ihr.
here, hier.
hide, *v.*, verbergen, 159.
high, hoch, höher, höchſt (*loses* c *in inflexion*); to think —ly of, viel halten von, 188.
him, ihn (*acc.*), ihm (*dat.*).
himself (he), er ſelbſt ; (to) —, ſich (*acc. or dat.*).
his, *poss. adj.*, ſein, ſeine, ſein.
his, *poss. pron.*, ſeiner, ſeine, ſeines; der, die, das ſeine ; der, die, das ſeinige.
hoarse, heiſer.
hold, halten, 188; — together, zuſammenhalten.
holiday, Feiertag, *m.* (-es ; -e) ; —s, Ferien, *pl.*
home, Heimat, *f.* ; *adv.*, nach Hauſe; at —, zu Hauſe ; to go —, nach Hauſe gehen, 188.
honest, ehrlich, redlich, aufrichtig.
honey, Honig, *m.* (-es).
hope, *subst.*, Hoffnung, *f.* (-en); *v.*, hoffen.
horse, Pferd, *n.* (-es; -e).
hospital, Hoſpital, Spital, *n.* (-es; ¨er).

hostess, Wirtin, *f.* (-nen).
hot, heiß.
hour, Stunde, *f.* (-n); — -hand, Stundenzeiger, *m.* (-s; —).
house, Haus, *n.* (-es; ¨er); at your —, bei Ihnen.
how, wie; — do you do? wie geht es Ihnen? wie befinden Sie sich?
however, aber; jedoch.
howl, heulen.
human, menschlich; — being, Mensch, *m.* (-en; -en).
hundred, hundert; *subst.*, Hundert, *n.* (-es; -e).
hunger, Hunger, *m.* (-s).
hungry, hungrig; be —, Hunger haben.
hunter, Jäger, *m.* (-s; —).
hunting (act of), Jagen, *n.* (-s); (chase) Jagd, *f.*; go —, auf die Jagd gehen.
huntsman, Jäger, *m.* (-s; —).
hurry, Eile, *f.*; I am in a —, ich bin in der Eile, ich habe es eilig.
hurt, *v.*, verletzen.
husband, Mann, *m.* (-es; ¨er).
hussar, Husar, *m.* (-en *or* -s; -en).

I.

I, ich.
ice, Eis, *n.* (-es).
idea, Idee, *f.*, Gedanke, *m.* (-ns; -n).
idle, faul, träge.
idleness, idling, Müßiggang, *m.* (-es).
if, wenn; (whether), ob.
ignorant, unwissend.
ill, krank; — -health, schlechte Gesundheit, *f.*
illness, Krankheit, *f.* (-en).
imagine, sich (*dat.*) denken (99, 2).
immediately, (so)gleich.
importance, Wichtigkeit.
important, wichtig, bedeutend.
impossible, unmöglich.
in, in, *dat.*, 65; auf, *dat.*, 65, 230, (*a*); — the country, auf dem Lande.
inch, Zoll, *m.* (-es).
induce, bewegen, 131, B.
industrious, —ly, fleißig.
industry, Fleiß, *m.* (-es).
inform, mitteilen.
inhabitant, Einwohner, *m.* (-s; —).
ink, Tinte *or* Dinte, *f.*
innocence, Unschuld, *f.*
inquire, sich erkundigen, fragen, 186.
inside of, innerhalb (*gen.*; 223).
insist on, bestehen (auf + *acc.*).
instead of, statt, anstatt (*gen.*; 223).
intend, beabsichtigen, vor'haben, gedenken (99, 2).
intention, Absicht, *f.* (-en).
interrupt, unterbrech'en, 167.
into, in (*acc.*; 65).
invent, erfinden, 144.
invitation, Einladung, *f.* (-en).
invite, einladen, 186.
iron, Eisen, *n.* (-s); *adj.*, eisern.
it (38, 39), es; er; sie; der, die, dasselbe; in —, darin; for —, dafür; of —, davon; with —, damit; to —, dazu.
its, *poss. adj.*, sein, ihr.
itself, es selbst.

J.

James, Jakob, *m.* (-s).
January, Januar, *m.* (-s).
John, Johann' *m.* (-s).
journey, Reise, *f.* (-n).
joyous, fröhlich.
July, Ju'li, *m.* (-s).
jump, springen, 144; — down, herunterspringen, hinunterspringen.
June, Ju'ni, *m.* (-s).
just, gerade, eben; — now, soeben, — as, ebenso.
justify, rechtfertigen.

K.

kick, stoßen, 188.
kind; what — of, was für (ein, eine, ein); of many —s, vielerlei; *adj.*, gut, freundlich; to be so — as to, so gut sein und.
kindness, Güte, Gütigkeit, Freundlichkeit, *f.*
king, König, *m.* (-es; -e); King-street, die Königstraße.
kingdom, Königreich, *n.* (-es; -e).
knife, Messer, *n.* (-s; —).
knock down, herunterschlagen, 186.
know (*of acquaintance*), kennen, 99; (*of knowledge acquired by mental effort*) wissen, 196; — how, können, 196.
knowledge, Kenntnis, *f.* (-se), Wissenschaft, *f.* (-en).
known, bekannt.

L.

lady, Dame, *f.* (-n); young — (Miss), Fräulein, *n.* (-s; —).
lake, See, *m.* (-s; -en).
landscape, Landschaft, *f.* (-en).
language, Sprache, *f.* (-n).
lantern, Laterne, *f.* (-n).
large, groß (¨er, größt).
last, letzt, vorig; at —, endlich; *v.*, dauern.
late, spät.

lately, neulich, kürzlich.
Latin, *subst.*, Latein', *n.* (-s).
latter, the —, jener.
laugh, lachen; — (at), lachen (*gen. or* über + *acc.*); he —s at (makes sport of) you, er macht sich über Sie lustig.
lawyer, Advokat', *m.* (-en; -en).
lay, legen.
lazy, faul, träge.
lead, Blei, *n.* (-es).
lead, *v.*, führen.
lead-pencil, Bleistift, *m.* (-es; -e).
leaf, Blatt, *n.* (-es; ¨er).
learn, lernen.
learned, *adj.*, gelehrt.
learning (action of), Lernen, *n.* (-s).
least; at —, wenigstens.
leave, lassen, 188; — behind, desert, abandon, verlassen; — out, auslassen.
left, link; be —, übrig bleiben.
leg, Bein, *n.* (-es; -e).
lemonade, Limonade, *f.* (-n).
lend, leihen, 120.
lesson, Aufgabe, *f.* (-n); Lektion, *f.* (-en).
let, lassen, 188.
letter (*of alphabet*), Buchstabe, *m.* (-ns; -n); (epistle), Brief, *m.* (-es; -e).
liar, Lügner, *m.* (-s; —).
library, Bibliothek', *f.* (-en).
lie (be recumbent), liegen 181; — down, sich hinlegen.
life, Leben, *n.* (-s; —).
lighten (flash), blitzen.
lightning, Blitz, *m.* (-es; -e).
like, mögen, 196–202; gern haben, 24; I should —, ich möchte (gern); to — to learn, gern lernen; I — music, ich bin ein Freund von Musik; how do you — London? wie gefällt Ihnen London?
lily, Lilie, *f.* (-n).
Limburg, *adj.*, Limburger.
lion, Löwe, (-n; -n).
listen to, anhören (*tr.*).
literature, Literatur', *f.*
little (*of size*), klein; (*of quantity*) wenig.
live, leben; (dwell), wohnen.
living, le'bend, leben'dig.
locality, Gegend, *f.* (-en).
London, London, *n.* (-s); *adj.*, Londoner.
long, *adj.*, lang (¨er); *adv.*, lange (¨r); have you been here —? sind Sie schon lange hier? he has not been here for a — time, er ist lange nicht hier gewesen; three months —er, noch drei Monate; no —er (*lit.*, not more), nicht mehr.
long for, *v.*, sich sehnen nach.
look for, suchen, suchen nach; — like, aussehen (wie *or* nach), 181; it —s (appears, seems) like rain, es sieht nach Regen aus; — up, hinaufsehen, 181.
lose, verlieren, 131.
lost, verloren.
loud, —ly, laut.
Louisa, Louise *f.* (-ns).
love, *v.*, lieben.
lower, unter, nieder (*adjs.*).

M.

magnificent, prächtig.
majesty, Majestät', *f.* (-en).
make, machen.
man, Mann, *m.* (-es; ¨er); — (human being), Mensch, *m.* (-en; -en); —kind, Mensch, *m.*; men (soldiers), Soldaten; little —, Männlein, *n.* (-s; —).
manikin, Männlein, *n.* (-s; —).
manner, Weise; in that —, auf die Weise.
many, viele; — a, — a one, mancher, manche, manches.
March, März, *m.* (-es).
Margaret, Margarete, *f.* (-ns).
market, Markt, *m.* (-es; ¨e).
marriage (-ceremony), Trauung, *f.* (-en).
married, verheiratet.
marry, heiraten, verheiraten (sich mit).
marsh, Sumpf, *m.* (-es; ¨e).
Mary, Marie, *f.* (-ns).
matter, Sache, *f.* (-n); what is the —? was giebts? was ist los? what is the — with you? was fehlt Ihnen?
May (month of), Mai, *m.* (-es *or* -en).
may, *v.*, dürfen; können; mögen, 196–202.
mayor, Bürgermeister, *m.* (-s; —).
me, mich (*acc.*), mir (*dat.*).
mean; in the — time, unterdessen; by —s of, vermittelst; vermöge, *gen.*, 223.
mean, *v.*, meinen; to — to, intend to, wollen, 196–202.
meat, Fleisch, *n.* (-es).
meet, *v.*, begegnen (*dat.*; sein); to go to —, entgegen gehen (188; *dat.*).
meeting, Versammlung, *f.* (-en).
mental, geistig.
merchant, Kaufmann, *m.* (-es; -leute).
mere, —ly, bloß.
merry, merrily, lustig.
messenger, Bote, *m.* (-n; -n).
metal, Metall', *n.* (-es; -e).
microscope, Mikroskop', *n.* (-es; -e).
middle, Mitte, *f.*; in the —

of summer, mitten im Sommer.
mile, Meile, *f.* (-n).
milk, Milch, *f.*
mine, meiner, meine, meines; der, die, das meine; der, die, das meinige.
minute, Minute, *f.* (-n); — -hand, Minutenzeiger, *m.* (-s; —).
misfortune, Unglück, *n.* (-es).
Miss (young lady), Fräulein, *m.* (-s; —).
mistake, Fehler, *m.* (-s; —).
mock, spotten (*gen. or* über + *acc.*).
moisten, benetzen.
moment, Augenblick, *m.* (-es; -e).
monarch, Monarch', *m.* (-en; -en).
Monday, Montag, *m.* (-s; -e).
money, Geld, *n.* (-es; -er).
month, Monat, *m.* (-es; -e); a — ago, vor einem Monat.
more, mehr; noch; one —, noch einer.
morning, Morgen, *m.* (-es; —); in the —, des Morgens; good —, guten Morgen.
mostly, meistens.
mother, Mutter, *f.* (ü).
mountain, Berg, *m.* (-es; -e).
mourning, Trauer, *f.*
Mr., Herr, *m.* (-n; -en).
much, viel; very —, sehr; as —, eben so viel.
music, Musik', *f.*
musician, Mu'siker, *m.* (-s; —).
must, müssen, 196–202.
my, *poss. adj.*, mein, meine, mein (*also expressed by dat. of pers. pron.* + *def. art.*).
myself (I), (ich) selbst.

N.

name, *subst.*, Name, *m.* (-ns; -n); nennen, *v.*, 99; what is the — of? wie heißt? what is your —? wie heißen Sie?
nation, Nation, *f.* (-en).
native town, Geburtsstadt, *f.* (ü-e).
natural, natürlich.
naughty, unartig.
near, *prep.*, neben (*dat. or acc.*; 65).
necessity, Not, *f.*
need, *v.*, brauchen; be in — of, bedürfen (196; *gen. or acc.*); in — of, bedürftig (*gen.*).
neglect, *v.*, vernachlässigen.
neighbour, Nachbar, *m.* (-s; -n); — (*fem.*), Nachbarin (-nen).
neither, weder; — . . . nor, weder . . . noch.
nest, Nest, *n.* (-es; -er).
never, nie; niemals; — yet, noch nie.
new, neu.
news, Nachricht, *f.* (-en).
newspaper, Zeitung, *f.* (-en).
next, nächst (*see* nahe).
Niagara Falls, die Niagara-Fälle.
niece, Nichte, *f.* (-n).
night, Nacht, *f.* (ü-e); at —, nachts, des Nachts.
no, *adj.*, kein, keine, kein; *adv.*, nein; —body, — person, niemand, keiner, keine, keines; — more, — longer, nicht mehr; —, thank you, ich danke (Ihnen).
noble, edel.
noise, Lärm, *m.* (-es).
noon, Mittag, *m.* (-es; -e).
north, Nord, *m.* (-es); Norden, *m.* (-s).
not, nicht; — a, kein, keine, kein; — yet, noch nicht; — at all, gar nicht; are (you, etc.) —? nicht wahr?
nothing, nichts.
notwithstanding, ungeachtet, *gen.*, 223.
novel, *subst.*, Roman', *m.* (-es; -e).
November, November, *m.* (-s).
now, jetzt.
nowhere, nirgends.
nut, Nuß, *f.* (ü-e).

O.

oak, Eiche, *f.* (-n).
obey, gehorchen (*dat.*).
oblige, verbinden, 144; be —d or compelled (to), müssen.
occasion, *subst.*, Gelegenheit, *f.* (-en); *v.*, verursachen.
o'clock, Uhr (*invariable*); what — is it? wie viel Uhr ist es.
of (231), von, *dat.*, 46, 231; (*material*) aus, *dat.*, 46; (*cause*) an, *dat.*; 231, (*d*); the treaty — Paris, der Vertrag zu Paris; the battle — Waterloo, die Schlacht bei Waterloo; — the Alma, an der Alma.
off, ab.
offer, bieten, 131, *dat. of pers.*; anbieten, 131, *dat. of pers.*
officer, Offizier, *m.* (-es; -e).
often, oft (ü-er), oftmals, manchmal.
oh! O! oh!
old, alt (ü-er).
on, 232, auf, an, *dat. or acc.*, 65; (*of time*) an, *dat.*

232, (*a*); (*about*) über, *acc.*, 65.
once, einmal.
one, eins; ein, eine, ein; the small —, der, die, das Kleine; — and the same, eins; — and a half, anderthalb.
only, nur; (*of time*) erſt; not — . . . but also, nicht nur . . . ſondern auch.
open, *adj.*, offen; *v.*, aufmachen.
opinion, Meinung, *f.* (-en).
opportunity, Gelegenheit, *f.* (-en).
oppressive, drückend.
or, oder; three — four, drei bis vier; either . . . —, entweder . . . oder; — else, ſonſt.
orator, Redner, *m.* (-s; —).
order, *v.* (command), befehlen, 167, *dat. of pers.*; (prescribe), verordnen; beſtellen.
other, ander; every — day, einen Tag um den andern.
otherwise, ſonſt; anders.
our, *adj.*, unſer, unſere, unſer.
ours, *pron.*, unſer, unſere, unſeres; der, die, das unſere; der, die, das unſrige.
out of, aus (*dat.*; 46); — — (or at) the window, zum Fenſter hinaus.
over, über (*dat. or acc.*; 65); — there, — the way, drüben.
overcoat, Überrock, *m.* (-es; ¨e); Überzieher, *m.* (-s; -).
own, *adj.*, eigen.

P.

paint, malen; to — (other than pictures), anſtreichen, 118.
painter, Maler, *m.* (-s; —).
painting (art of), Malerei', *f.*
palace, Palaſt', *m.* (-es; ¨e); Schloß, *n.* (-es; ¨er).
pale, bleich.
paper, Papier, *n.* (-es; -e); news—, Zeitung, *f.* (-en).
paradise, Paradies', *n.* (-es).
pardon, Verzeihung, *f.*
parents, Eltern, *pl. only.*
Paris, Paris', *n.* (von Paris).
Paris, *adj.* (= Parisian), Pariſer.
part, Teil, *m.* (-es, -e); for the most —, meiſtens, meiſtenteils.
party, Geſellſchaft, *f.* (-en).
pass, *v.*, *tr.*, (*of time*, to spend, etc.), zubringen (99, 2); — (an examination), beſtehen, 186; *intr.*, vergehen (188, 2, ſein); verfließen (123; ſein); — through, durchkommen (167; ſein).
passing, *adj.*, vorübergehen.
past, vergangen, vorüber, vorbei; to go — the house, am Hauſe vorübergehen, vorbeigehen.
patient, Kranke, *adj. subst.*, *m. f.*
pay, bezahlen (*acc. of thing, dat. of pers.*; *acc. of pers. when pers. only is mentioned*); — attention, Acht geben; — a visit, einen Beſuch machen (*dat. of pers.*); beſuchen (*acc. of pers.*).
paying (action of), Bezahlen, *n.* (-s).
peace, Friede(n), *m.* (-ns).
pear, Birne, *f.* (-n).
peasant, Bauer, *m.* (-n *or* -s; -n).
pen, Feder, *f.* (-n).
people (*pl.*), Leute, *pl.* (*no sing.*); — (*indef.*), man; — say, man ſagt; —, nation, Volk, (-es; ¨er).
pepper, Pfeffer, *m.* (-s).
perfect, —ly, ganz, vollkommen.
perhaps, vielleicht'.
permission, Erlaubnis, *f.*
permit, erlauben (*dat. of pers.*).
person, Perſon', *f.* (-en).
personal, perſönlich.
philosopher, Philoſoph', *m.* (-en; -en).
physician, Arzt, *m.* (-es; ¨e).
pick up, aufheben, 131.
picture, Bild, *n.* (-es; -er); Gemälde, *n.* (-s; —).
piece, Stück, (-es; -e).
pigeon, Taube, *f.* (-n).
pinch, kneifen, 118.
pity, *v.*, bedauern; it is a —, es iſt ſchade.
place, *subst.*, Platz, *m.* (-es; ¨e); Ort, *m.* (-es; -e *or* ¨er); to take —, ſtattfinden, 144; in that —, da, daſelbſt, dort(en).
place, *v.*, ſtellen, ſetzen.
plant, Pflanze, *f.* (-n).
plate, Teller, *m.* (-s; —).
play, *v.*, ſpielen.
pleasant, angenehm.
please, gefallen (188; *dat.*); (if you) please, (ich) bitte, wenn ich bitten darf, gefälligſt.
pleasure, Vergnügen, *n.* (-s); —-trip, (short) excursion, Ausflug, *m.* (-es; ¨e); to take a (short) —-trip, einen Ausflug machen.
plum, Pflaume, *f.* (-n).
poem, Gedicht, *n.* (-es; -e).
poet, Dichter, *m.* (-s; —).
point; cardinal — (of the compass), Himmelsgegend, *f.* (-en); to be upon the — of, im Begriffe ſein.

poison, *subst.*, Gift, *n.* (-es; -e); *v.*, vergiften.
policeman, Polizeidiener, *m.* (-s; —); Schutzmann, *m.* (-es; -leute).
poor, arm (¨er).
position, Stelle, *f.* (-n); Stellung, *f.* (-en).
possess, beſitzen, 181.
possible, möglich.
post, —-office, Poſt, *f.* — -man, Poſtbote, *m.* (-n; -n); by return —, mit umgehender Poſt.
postage-stamp, Briefmarke, *f.* (-n).
postpone, aufſchieben, 131.
pound, Pfund, *n.* (-es).
power, Kraft, *f.* (¨e).
praise, *v.*, loben; preiſen, 120.
pray, *v.*, beten; *interj.*, bitte!
precise, —ly, genau.
prefer, vorziehen, 131; I — to walk, ich gehe lieber.
prepare; to — for, ſich vorbereiten auf (*acc.*).
presence, Gegenwart, *f.*
present, *adj.*, gegenwärtig; for the —, für's Erſte.
present, *subst.*, Geſchenk, *n.* (-es; -e).
president, Präſident', *m.* (-en; -en).
press, *v.*, bringen, 144.
pretty, hübſch, ſchön; *adv.* (tolerably), ziemlich.
prevent, verhindern.
price, Preis, *m.* (-es; -e).
prince, Fürſt, *m.* (-en; -en); Prinz, *m.* (-en; -en).
prison, Gefängnis, *n.* (-ſes; -ſe).
probable, probably, wahrſcheinlich; probably, wohl.
professor, Profeſſor, *m.* (-s; -en).
promise, *v.*, verſprechen, 167.
propose, vorſchlagen, 186.
proud (of), ſtolz (auf + *acc.*).
proverb, Sprichwort, *m.* (-es; ¨er).
province, Provinz', *f.* (-en).
prudent, vorſichtig.
Prussia, Preußen, *n.* (-s).
Prussian, *subst.*, Preuße, *m.* (-n; -n).
public, öffentlich.
punish, beſtrafen, ſtrafen.
punishment, Strafe, *f.* (-n).
pupil, Schüler, *m.* (-s; —).
pure, rein.
put on (coat, etc.), anziehen, 131; — — (hat), aufſetzen.

Q.

quality, Eigenſchaft, *f.* (-en).
quarrel, *v.*, ſtreiten, 118; ſich ſtreiten (mit).
quarter, Viertel, *n.* (-s; —); — of an hour, Viertelſtunde, *f.* (-n).
queen, Königin, *f.* (-nen).
quick, —ly, ſchnell; quickly, flugs.
quit, *v.*, verlaſſen, 188.
quite, ganz.

R.

railway-station, Bahnhof, *m.* (-es; ¨e).
rain, *subst.*, Regen, *m.* (-s); *v.*, regnen.
raise, heben, 131.
rather, eher, lieber.
raven, Rabe, *m.* (-n; -n).
read, leſen, 181; to — to, vorleſen (*dat.*).
reading (act of), Leſen, *n.* (-s).
ready, fertig, bereit; readily, leicht.
reason, Grund, *m.* (-es; ¨e).
receive (get), erhalten, 188; bekommen, 167; — (as a host), aufnehmen, 167; by receiving, durch Nehmen.
recover (from illness), geneſen (181; ſein).
red, *adj.*, rot (¨er); *subst.*, Rot, *n.*
Reformation, Reformation, *f.* (-en).
refuse, *intr.*, ſich weigern.
regard, anſehen (181; für + *acc.*); betrachten (als).
regret; I regret, es thut mir leid.
reign, Regierung, *f.* (-en).
relate, erzählen.
related, verwandt (*dat. or* mit).
rely upon, ſich verlaſſen (188; auf + *acc.*).
remain, bleiben (120; ſein); — at home, — behind, zurückbleiben; — over, übrig bleiben; — standing, ſtehen (186) bleiben.
remarkable, merkwürdig.
remember, ſich erinnern (*gen.*); I wish to be —ed to him, ich laſſe ihn grüßen.
remind of, erinnern an (+
rent, *v.*, vermieten. [*acc.*).
repeat, wiederho'len.
reply, *subst.*, Antwort, *f.* (-en).
reply, *v.*, antworten, erwidern, verſetzen.
report, *v.*, berichten.
representation, Vorſtellung, *f.* (-en).
resemble, ähnlich ſein (*dat.*); gleichen (118; *dat.*).
reside, wohnen.
resist, widerſte'hen (186; *dat.*).
resolve, *v.*, ſich entſchließen, 123.
rest; all the —, alle andern; retire to —, ſich ſchlafen (188) legen.

return, vergelten (159); — good for evil, vergelte Böſes mit Gutem; by — of post, mit umgehender Poſt, umgehend.
reward, *subst.*, Lohn, *m.* (-eŝ).
rheumatism, Rheumatiſmus, *m.* (deŝ —).
ribbon, Band, *n.* (-eŝ; ¨er).
rich (in), reich (an + *dat.*).
rid, loŝ; to get — of, loŝ werden (+ *gen. or acc.*).
ride, reiten (118); (in a conveyance), fahren (186).
riding (act of; not in a conveyance), Reiten, *n.* (-ŝ).
right (*adj.*), recht; (correct), richtig; in the — way, auf die richtige Weiſe; *subst.*, Recht, *n.* (-eŝ; -e); to be (in the) —, Recht haben.
righteous, gerecht; the — (man), der Gerechte.
ring, *subst.*, Ring, *m.* (-eŝ; -e); —, *v.*, läuten (of a large bell), klingeln (of a small bell); there is a — at the door, es klingelt.
ripe, reif.
rise (get up), aufſtehen, (186; ſein); (ascend), aufſteigen (120; ſein).
river, Fluß, *m.* (-eŝ; ¨e).
road, Weg, *m.* (-eŝ; -e); Straße, *f.* (-n).
Roman, Römer, *m.* (-ŝ; —).
room (apartment), Stube, *f.* (-n); Zimmer, *n.* (-ŝ; —).
rose, Roſe, *f.* (-n).
row, *v.*, rudern.
run, laufen (188; ſein); — after, nachlaufen (188; ſein; *dat.*); — away, davon'laufen.
Russia, Rußland, *n.* (-ŝ).
Russian, *subst.*, Ruſſe, *m.* (-n; -n).

S.

sad, traurig.
safe, ſicher.
sailing-ship, Segelſchiff, *n.* (-eŝ; -e).
sale; for —, zu verkaufen.
same, *adj. and pron.*, der, die, daſſelbe; der, die, daŝ daſſelbige; der, die, daŝ nämliche; at the — time, zu gleicher Zeit; all the —, one and the —, einerlei.
Sarah, Sara, *f.* (-ŝ).
satisfied, zufrieden.
Saturday, Sonnabend, *m.* (-eŝ; -e); Samŝtag, *m.* (-eŝ; -e).
save, retten; I —d his life, ich rettete ihm daŝ Leben.
say, ſagen; to hear —, ſagen hören; (assert, claim to be), wollen (196–202); to be said, ſollen (196–202).
scholar (pupil), Schüler, *m.* (-ŝ; —).
school, Schule, *f.* (-n); —boy, Schüler, *m.* (-ŝ; —).
scold, ſchelten, 159.
Scotland, Schottland, *n.* (-ŝ).
scream, ſchreien, 120.
search (for), ſuchen.
seat one's self, sit down, ſich ſetzen.
second, *num. adj.*, zweite.
second (of time), *subst*, Sekunde, *f.* (-n).
secret, —ly, geheim, heimlich.
see, ſehen, 181.
seek, ſuchen.
seem, ſcheinen, 120.
self, ſelbſt.
sell, verkaufen.
send, ſchicken; — to, zuſchicken; — word to, benachrichtigen (*acc. of pers.*); — for, holen laſſen (188), ſchicken nach.
September, September, *m.* (-ŝ).
servant, Diener, *m.* (-ŝ; —); Dienſtbote, *m.* (-n; -n); Magd, *f.* (¨e).
serve, dienen (*dat.*); — (of a meal), ſervieren.
set, *tr.* (of a time-piece), ſtellen; *intr.* (of the sun), unter'gehen (188; ſein); — free, befreien.
settler, Anſiedler, *m.* (-ŝ; —).
seven, ſieben.
several, einige; etliche; mehrere.
shake, ſchütteln.
shall, ſollen (196–202).
she, ſie.
shield, Schild, *m.* (-eŝ; -e).
ship, Schiff, *n.* (-eŝ; -e).
shoe, Schuh, *m.* (-eŝ; -e).
shoemaker, Schuſter, *m.* (-ŝ; —); Schuhmacher, *m.* (-ŝ; —).
shoot, ſchießen, 123.
shop, Laden, *m.* (-ŝ; ¨).
shore, Ufer, *n.* (-ŝ; —).
short, kurz; —ly, nächſtens.
shout, ſchreien, 120.
show, zeigen.
shutter, Laden, *m.* (-ŝ; —).
shy, *intr.* (of horses), ſcheu werden, 159.
sick, krank; the — (man), der Kranke.
side, Seite, *f.* (-n); on this — of, *prep.*, dieſſeit (*gen.*; 223); on that — of, *prep.*, jenſeit (*gen.*; 223); on this —, *adv.*, dieſſeits; on that —, *adv.*, jenſeits.
sign, *subst.*, Zeichen, *n.* (-ŝ; —); *v.*, unterzeich'nen.
silence, Schweigen, *n.* (-ŝ).
silent, ſtumm.
silly, einfältig.
silver, Silber, *n.* (-ŝ).
since (241, 12), *prep.*, ſeit.

dat., 46; *adv.*, ſeitdem; *conj.*, da.
sing, ſingen, 144.
singer, Sängerin, *f.* (-nen).
single, einzig.
sink, ſinken, 144.
sister, Schweſter, *f.* (-n).
sit, ſitzen (181; ſein); — down, ſich ſetzen; — up, remain up, aufbleiben, 120.
six, ſechs.
skate, *v.*, Schlittſchuh laufen, 188.
skill, Geſchicklichkeit, *f.*
slave, Sklave, *m.* (-n; -n).
slay, töten.
sleep, *v.*, ſchlafen, 188; *subst.*, Schlaf, *m.* (-es).
sleighing, Schlittenbahn, *f.* (-en).
slipper, Pantoffel, *m.* (-s; -n).
slow, —ly, langſam.
small, klein.
smelt, ſchmelzen, 124.
smile, *v.*, lächeln; *subst.*, Lächeln, *n.* (-s).
sneak, ſchleichen (118; ſein).
snow, *subst.*, Schnee, *m.* (-s); *v.*, ſchneien.
so, ſo; — are we, wir ſind es auch.
soldier, Soldat', *m.* (-en; -en).
some, einige, etliche, welche, manche; etwas; irgend ein, eine, ein; — one, —body, jemand, —thing, —what, etwas; —where, irgendwo; — of it, davon; for — time (*past*), ſeit einiger Zeit.
son, Sohn, *m.* (-es; ¨e); little —, Söhnchen, *n.* (-s; —).
song, Lied, *n.* (-es; -er).
soon, bald (*comp.* eher, *superl.* am eheſten); as — as, ſobald.
Sophia, Sophie, *f.* (-ns).
sorry; I am —, es iſt mir leid, es thut mir leid.
sound, —ly, feſt.
sour, ſauer.
South, Süd(en), *m.* (-s).
Spain, Spanien, *n.* (-s).
speak, ſprechen, 167, reden; — with *or* to, ſprechen (*acc. of pers.*).
speaking (act of), Sprechen, *n.* (-s).
spectacles (pair of), Brille, *f.* (-n).
speech, Rede, *f.* (-n).
spite; in — of, trotz (*gen.*; 223, 16).
spoil, *v. tr.*, verleiden.
sport; to make — of any one, ſich über jemand(en) (*acc.*) luſtig machen.
spread out, ſich verbreiten.
spring, *v.*, ſpringen (144; ſein); *subst.*, Frühling, *m.* (-es; -e).
square (in a town), Platz, *m.* (-es; ¨e).
St. Lawrence, Sanct Lorenz, *m.*
stand, ſtehen, 186.
start (for), abreiſen (nach).
state (condition), Zuſtand, *m.* (-es; ¨e).
statesman, Staatsmann, *m.* (-es; -männer).
stay, bleiben (120; ſein); — up, aufbleiben; — away, fortbleiben.
steal, ſtehlen, 167.
steam-engine, Dampfmaſchine, *f.* (-n).
steamer, Dampfſchiff, *n.* (-es; -e).
steel, Stahl, *m.* (-es).
stick, *subst.*, Stock, *m.* (-es; ¨e).
still, *adv.*, noch, doch; noch immer.
sting, ſtechen, 167.
stocking, Strumpf, *m.* (-es; ¨e).
stop, *v. intr.*, aufhören.
storm, Sturm, *m.* (-es; ¨e).
story, Geſchichte, *f.* (-n).
stove, Ofen, *m.* (-s; ¨).
stranger, Fremdling, *m.* (-es; -e); Fremde (*adj. subst.*).
stream, Strom, *m.* (-es; ¨e).
street, Straße, *f.* (-n).
strong, ſtark (¨er).
student, Student', *m.* (-en; -en).
study, *subst.*, Studium, *n.* (-s; Studien); (room), Studierzimmer, *n.* (-s; —); *v.*, ſtudieren; — (prepare) for, ſich vorbereiten auf (+ acc.).
studying (act of), *subst.*, Studieren, *n.* (-s).
submit, ſich unterwer'fen, 159.
subscribe, unterſchrei'ben, 120.
succeed, gelingen, *impers.*, 144; I —, es gelingt mir.
such, ſolch, ſolcher, ſolches: ſo.
sudden, —ly, plötzlich.
suffer, leiden, 118.
suffice, genügen (*dat.*).
sufficient, hinreichend.
summer, Sommer, *m.* (-s; —).
sun, Sonne, *f.* (-n); — -dial, Sonnenuhr, *f.* (-en); — -set, Sonnenuntergang, *m.* (-es).
Sunday, Sonntag, *m.* (-es; -e).
support, unterſtütz'en.
sure, ſicher; to be —, freilich; zwar.
Switzerland, die Schweiz (der Schweiz).

T.

table, Tiſch, *m.* (-es; -e).
tailor, Schneider, *m.* (-s; —).
take, nehmen, 167; — a walk,

einen Spaziergang machen; ſpazieren gehen, 188; — a voyage, eine Seereiſe machen; — up, (hin)aufnehmen; — care, ſich in Acht nehmen; — place, ſtattfinden, 144; — cold, ſich erkälten.

talk, ſprechen (167; mit).

tall, groß (¨er, *superl.* größt).

tea, Thee, *m.* (-s).

teacher, Lehrer, *m.* (-s; —).

tear (to pieces), zerreißen, 118.

telegram, *subst.*, Depeſche, *f.* (-n).

tell, ſagen (*dat. of pers. or* zu); erzählen (*dat. of pers.*).

teller, Erzähler, *m.* (-s; —).

tempest, Sturm, *m.* (-es; ¨e).

ten, zehn.

terrible, —ly, fürchterlich.

than, als; als daß.

thank, danken (*dat.*); no — you, ich danke (Ihnen).

that, *demonstr. adj.*, dieſer, dieſe, dieſes; jener, jene, jenes; *rel. pron.*, der, die, das; welcher, welche, welches; *demonstr. pron.*, der, die, das; *conj.*, daß.

the, der, die, das; *adv.*, je, deſto; um ſo.

their, ihr, ihre, ihr.

them (*acc.*), ſie; (*dat.*) ihnen.

then, dann; since —, ſeitdem.

there, da; — is, — are, es iſt, es ſind; es giebt, 220.

therefore, darum.

thereupon, darauf.

they, ſie, es; (*indef.*), man.

thief, Dieb, *m.* (-es; -e).

thin, dünn.

think, denken, 99, 2; — of, denken, *gen. or* an + *acc.*; (believe), glauben; I should — so, ich ſollte es meinen; — highly of, esteem, etc., viel halten (188) von.

third, dritte.

thirst, Durſt, *m.* (-es).

thirsty, durſtig; to be —, Durſt haben.

thirty, dreißig.

this, *adj. and pron.*, dieſer, dieſe, dieſes.

those, diejenigen; die; jene.

though, obgleich.

thousand, tauſend; *subst.*, Tauſend, *n.* (-es; -e).

three, drei.

through, durch, *acc.*; 34.

throw, werfen, 159; ſchmeißen, 118; — away, wegwerfen.

thunder-storm, Gewitter, *n.* (-s; —).

Thursday, Donnerstag, *m.* (-es; -e).

tie, binden, 144.

till, bis, 34.

time, Zeit, *f.* (-en); (occasion), Mal, *n.* (-es; -e); what — is it? wie viel Uhr iſt es? for the third —, zum dritten Male; at the right —, rechtzeitig; at the same —, zu gleicher Zeit.

tired, müde.

title, Titel, *m.* (-s; —).

to, 233, zu (*dat.*; 46); (*with names of places*) nach (*dat.*; 46); an, auf, in (*acc.*; 65, 233, 2); — the concert, ins Konzert; (*before inf.*) zu, 272–274; (*of purpose*) um zu, 273.

to-day, heute.

to-morrow, morgen; — morning, morgen früh.

too, zu; (also), auch.

top, Gipfel, *m.* (-s; —).

tortoise, Schildkröte, *f.* (-n).

towards, gegen (*acc.*; 34).

town, Stadt, *f.* (¨e); —-hall, Rathaus, *n.* (-es; ¨er).

tragedy, Trauerſpiel, *n.* (-es; -e); Tragödie, *f.* (-n).

train (on a railway), Zug, *m.* (-es; ¨e); Boston —, der Zug von (nach) Boſton.

translate, überſetz'en.

transparent, durch'ſichtig.

travel, reiſen (haben, ſein).

traveller, Reiſende, *ad. subst.*

treasure, Schatz, *m.* (-es; ¨e).

treaty, Vertrag, *m.* (-es; ¨e).

tree, Baum, *m.* (-es; ¨e); little —, Bäumchen, *n.* (-s; —).

triumph, Triumph', *m.* (-es; -e).

true, wahr; (faithful), treu (*dat.*).

trunk (of a tree), Baumſtamm, *m.* (-es; ¨e).

trust, *v.*, trauen (*dat.*).

truth, Wahrheit, *f.* (-en).

try, verſuchen.

Tuesday, Dienstag, *m.* (-es; -e).

two, zwei; beide; — at a time, je zwei; — and a half, drittehalb.

U.

umbrella, Regenſchirm, *m.* (-es; -e).

uncle, Oheim, *m.* (-es; -e); Onkel, *m.* (-s; —).

under, unter (*dat. or acc.*; 65).

understand, begreifen, 118; verſtehen, 186; to make one's self understood, ſich verſtändlich machen.

undertaking, Unterneh'men, *n.* (-s).

unfortunate, unglücklich; —ly, leider.

unhindered, ungehindert.

United States (The), die Vereinigten Staaten.
university, Universität', *f.* (-en).
until, *conj.*, bis (daß).
untruth, Unwahrheit, *f.* (-en).
upon, auf (*dat. or acc.*; 65);
upper, ober.
up-stairs, oben, nach oben, hinauf.
use; of no —, un'nütz.
useful, nützlich; the —, das Nützliche.
utmost, möglichst.

V.

vainly, in vain, vergeblich; vergebens.
valley, Thal, *n.* (-es; ¨er).
venture, *v.*, wagen.
verse, Vers, *m.* (-es; -e).
very, sehr; recht; — much, sehr.
vex, ärgern; be —ed (at), sich ärgern (über + *acc.*).
victory, Sieg, *m.* (-es; -e).
village, Dorf, *n.* (-es; ¨er).
vinegar, Essig, *m.* (-s; -e).
violet, Veilchen, *n.* (-s; —).
virtue, Tugend, *f.* (-en).
visit, Besuch, *m.* (-es; -e); to be on a — at any one's, bei jemand auf Besuch sein; *v.*, besuchen; einen Besuch abstatten, machen (*dat. of pers.*).
visitor; to have —s, Besuch haben.
voice, Stimme, *f.* (-n).
voyage, Reise, *f.* (-n), Seereise, *f.* (-n).

W.

wait for, warten auf (*acc.*).
waiter, Kellner, *m.* (-s; —).
walk, *subst.*, Spaziergang, *m.* (-es; ¨e); take a —, einen Spaziergang machen; spazieren gehen, 188.
walk, *v.*, gehen, 188; spazieren gehen.
walking (act of), Gehen, *n.* (-s); Spazierengehen, *n.* (-s).
want, wünschen; wollen (196).
wanting; to be —, fehlen (*dat.*), mangeln (*dat.*).
war, Krieg, *m.* (-es; -e).
warm, —ly, warm (¨er).
warning, Warnung, *f.* (-en).
waste, verschwenden.
watch, *subst.*, Uhr, *f.* (-en); Taschenuhr, *f.* (-en); *v.*, bewachen.
watchful, wachsam.
watch-key, Uhrschlüssel, *m.* (-s; —).
water, Wasser, *n.* (-s; —).
waver, schwanken.
way, Weg, *m.* (-es; -e); (manner), Weise, *f.* (-n); in this —, auf diese Weise.
we, wir.
weak (in), schwach (an + *dat.*).
wear, *v. intr.* (of clothes), sich tragen, 186.
weather, Wetter, *n.* (-s); in fine —, bei schönem Wetter.
Wednesday, Mittwoch, *m.* (-s).
week, Woche, *f.* (-n); acht Tage; for a — past, seit acht Tagen.
weigh, *intr.*, wiegen, 131.
welcome, willkom'men.
well, *pred. adj.*, wohl, gesund; *adv.*, gut; as — as, sowohl als; — known, bekannt.
West, West(en), *m.* (-s).
wet, naß (¨er).
what, *interrog. pron.*, was? *interrog. adj.*, welcher, welche, welches; — kind of, was für (ein, eine, ein); *rel. pron.* (= that which), was; — a! welch! — is that in German? wie heißt das auf Deutsch?
when, *interrog.*, wann? zu welcher Zeit? *conj.*, wenn; als, 58.
where, wo.
whether, ob.
which, *interrog. adj.*, welcher, welche, welches; *rel. pron.*, welcher, welche, welches; der, die, das; that —, was.
while, whilst, während (daß), indessen.
whistle, pfeifen, 118.
white, weiß.
who, *interrog.*, wer? *rel. pron.*, welcher, welche, welches; der, die, das; he —, the one —, wer.
whole, ganz; the — of, ganz.
whom, wen (*acc.*), wem (*dat.*).
whose, *interrog.*, wessen? *rel.*, dessen, *m. n. sing.*; deren, *f. sing.*; *pl.*
why, warum? weshalb?
wide, breit.
will, wollen, 196–202.
William, Wilhelm, *m.* (-s).
willing; to be —, wollen, 196.
wind, Wind, *m.* (-es; -e).
wind up, aufziehen, 131.
window, Fenster, *n.* (-s; —).
windy, windig.
wine, Wein, *m.* (-es; -e).
wing, Flügel, *m.* (-s; —).
winter, Winter, *m.* (-s; —).
wise, weise; klug (¨er).
wish (for), wünschen.
with, 234, mit (*dat.*; 46); bei (*dat.*; 46).
without, ohne (*acc.*; 34).
witty, witzig.
wolf, Wolf, *m.* (-es; ¨e).
woman, Frau, *f.* (-en).

wonder, Wunder, *n.* (-s; —); I —, es wundert mich, ich wundere mich; — of the world, Weltwunder, *n.* (-s; —).
wood, Wald, *m.* (-es; ¨er).
word, Wort, *n.* (-es; -e *or* ¨er); to send —, benachrichtigen.
work (labour), Arbeit, *f.* (-en); (thing done), Werk, *n.* (-es; -e); *v.*, arbeiten.
world, Welt, *f.* (-en); in the —, auf der Welt.
worth, *adj.*, wert; — while, der Mühe wert.
wound, *v.*, verwunden.
wring, ringen, 144.
write (to), schreiben (120; *dat. or* an + *acc. of pers.*).
writing (act of), Schreiben, *n.* (-s).
wrong; to be (in the) —, Unrecht haben.

Y.

yard (measure), Elle, *f.* (-n).
year, Jahr, *n.* (-es; -e).
yellow, gelb.
yes, ja.
yesterday, gestern; —'s, von gestern, gestrig.
yet, noch; not —, noch nicht.
yonder, dort.
you, 38, 40, ihr; Sie; du; euch; Sie; dich.
young, jung; — man, Jüngling, *m.* (-es; -e).
your, 40, 43, euer, eure, euer; dein, deine, dein; Ihr, Ihre, Ihr.
yours, der, die, das eure, eurige; der, die, das Ihre, Ihrige; der, die, das deine, deinige; eurer; deiner; Ihrer.
youth (time of), Jugend, *f.*; (young man), Jüngling, *m.* (-es; -e).

INDEX.

*** The references are to the sections and subsections, unless otherwise specified; N. = Note; R. = Remark; O. = Observation; p. = page.

Abbreviations, p. 404.

aber, conj., **236.**

Ablaut, **105,** R., **110.**

'About,' how rendered in Germ., **226.**

Absolute accusative, **255;** absolute superlative, of adjs., **127,** 2; of advs., **190,** 4–6.

Abstract substs., take article, **44,** 1 (*b*); plural of, **66,** 3; App. H.

Accentuation, p. 10; in compound verbs, **117,** 3, **204, 205,** 3, **208, 209, 212;** of compound adv. prefixes, **206,** 2, N. 1.

Accusative, use of, **3, 252–255;** place of, **296,** 4; after preps., **34, 50, 65, 223,** 19, R. 2; expresses time, **184,** 1; measure, **185,** 4; after reflexive verbs, **216;** after impers. verbs, **217,** 2, (*a*), **219, 220;** after adjs., replacing gen., **244,** R. 1, 2; double acc., **253;** after intrans. verbs, **254;** cognate acc., **254,** 1; adverbial acc., **255;** absolute acc., **255,** 2; before advs. of direction, **224,** 1.

Address, modes of, **40, 43, 47.**

Adjects, place of, **296,** 1, **297,** R. 1.

Adjectives, when spelt with a capital, pp. 11, 12; predicative, not declined, **14, 100;** place of, **18, 20,** O. 3, **295, 296,** 8; attributive, decl. of, **101;** strong, **102,** weak, **115,** mixed, **116,** table, **121,** general remarks, **122;** place of, **290,** (*b*), N. 2, **298,** 1, **299;** indeclinable in -er, **122,** 9; as advs., **122,** 8; of colour, **122,** 3; in -el, -en, -er, **122,** 6; a succession of, **122,** 5; after pers. prons., **122,** 10; after indef. prons. and numerals, **122,** 11, 12; after welche, **122,** 13; used as substs., **122,** 2; comparison of, **125–127;** without Umlaut, App. L.; incapable of comparison, **161,** N.; adjs. used as attributes only, **160;** as predicates only, **161;** as prefixes to verbs, **206,** 4, **212;** governing gen. and acc., **244;** dative, **251;** preps., **291;** possessive adjs., **43, 44,** 6, (*a*); interrogative, **84–86;** appositive adj., **290;** concord, **288;** derivation, by suffixes, **313;** by prefixes, **316;** composition, **320.**

Adverbial clauses, **306.**

Adverbial conjunctions, coördinating, **237;** throw the subject after the verb, R. 1.

Adverbial expressions, place of, **45, 297.**

Adverbs, **187;** place of, **45, 297;** formation, **182,** (*a*), **183,** (*c*), **189;** comparison, **128, 190;** numeral adverbs, **182, 183;** idiomatic uses of certain adverbs, **195;** advs. with an accusative, **224,** 1; with preps., **224,** 3, 4.

-age, substs. in, gender, **89,** 2, (*e*).

Agent, with passive, **112,** R. 3.

-al, foreign substs. in, declension, **22,** 6.

'all' expressed by ganz, **170,** 1; 'at all,' **157.**

allein, conj., **236, 241,** 1.

aller, -e, -es, **169;** aller- before superlatives, **127,** 1, N.; alles of a number of persons or things, **162,** 2; before adjs., **122,** 12.

Alphabet, German, pp. 1, 5, 13.

als, conj., **239,** 3 (*b*); after a comparative, **126,** 1; distinguished from wenn and wann, **58, 241,** 6, 8; 'but,' **241,** 19; als clause replaces Engl. part. of time, **284,** 1, (*a*); introducing an apposition, **289,** 6; with comparative clauses, **306,** R. 4.

alš daß, after adjs. with zu, 273, N.
alš ob, alš wenn, 239, 3, (b), and R. 4.
am, before a superl., 127, 1, (b), 128, 190, 3.
an, prep., 65; expresses date, 184, 2, (a); of locality, 227, (a), 2, 232, (c), 2, 233, (c), 2; of cause, with diseases, 231, (c); with names of battles, 231, (d), 2; after verbs and adjs., 244, 245, 1, 291, 6, 8, 9, 12.
=an, foreign substs. in, declension, 22, 6.
ander, ordinal numeral, 166, 1, N.; anderfeitš, 238; anderthalb, 183, (b), R. 2.
angeſichtš, 223, 20.
anſtatt, 223, 14; governing an infin. or daß clause, 276.
'any,' how rendered in German, 2, 2, 157, 180.
Apposition, appositive substantive, 289; participle, 280, (b), 281, R. 3; adjective or participle, 290; clauses, 304.
=ar, foreign substs. in, declension, 22, 6.
Article, not used before words in partitive sense, 2, 2; definite, declension, 4; agreement, 5, 1; repetition of, 5, 2; use, 44; contraction with preps., 34, R., 46, R. 1, p. 83, O., 65, R.; with proper names, 44, 2, 3, 73, 76, 2, 5, 78; for poss. adj., 44, 6.
Article, indefinite, declension, 9; use, 44, 4, 5.
Aryan languages, 322, 2, 3.
'as,' how rendered in Germ., 162, 4, 241, 8-11.
Associatives, how formed, 315, 2, (b).
=aſt, foreign substs. in, declension, 22, 6.
=at, foreign substs. in, declension, 22, 2, 6.
'at,' of time of day, 184, 3, (c); how rendered in Germ., 227; after verbs, etc., 291, 1.
'at all'; see 'all.'
Attributive adj., see Adjective.
auch, adv., after rel. prons., 96, 6, idiomatic use of, 195, 9; conj., 236, 237, R. 2, 238.
auf, prep., 65; with abs. superl. of advs., 190, 6; of locality, 227, (a), 3, 230, (a), 232, (c), 233, (c), 2; of future time, 229, (b), 2; after adjs. and verbs, 245, 1, 291, 2, 7, 10; after reflexive verbs, 215, 1, (b).
auf daß, 239, 3, (b), 268, 3.
aus, prep., 46; of cause, 229, (c).
außen, adv., 189, 3; comparison, 130.
außer, prep., 46.
außerhalb, 223, 3.
äußerſt, with absolute superl., 127, 2, 190, 4.
Auxiliary is verb in compound tenses, 26, 32.
Auxiliary verbs of mood, see 'Modal Auxiliaries.'
Auxiliary verbs of tense, 25, 53; place of, with Modal Auxiliaries, 199, 3; omitted in dependent clauses, 287.

bald, comparison of, 190; bald . . . bald, 238.
=bar, suffix of adjs., 313, 1.
'be,' with p. part., how rendered in Germ., 112, R. 5.
be=, insep. prefix, 35, R. 6, 204; meaning of, 314, 1.
bei, prep., 46; = 'with,' 'about,' 226, (d); of time, 227, (b), 3; idioms, 228, (b), (c), 232, (d); of battles, 231, (d), 1.
beide, beideš, 165, 3.
beißen Model, 118.
bevor, 241, 13, 14.
binnen, 51, 1.
biš, prep., 34, 50, 4; conj., 239, 3, (b).
bleiben Model, 120.
Blume Model, 56.
'both . . . and,' 238.
'but,' rendered by alš, 241, 19.
'by,' with passive, 112, R. 3; how rendered in Germ., 228.

Capitals, use of, p. 11; 122, 2, 9, N., 11, O.
Calling, verbs of, 242, 3, 253; with p. part., 281, 6.
Cardinal numerals, 163, 165; gender as substs., 80, 2, (c), 165, 10.
Cases, use of, 3; syntax of, 242-255; place of, 296.
Cause, adverbial expressions of, 284, 1, (b), 306, R. 2; their place in a sentence, 45, Rule 5.
=chen, substs. in, declension, 16, 17; gender, 89, 3, (a); subst. suffix, 312, 2; produces Umlaut, 326, R. 2, (c).
Choosing, verbs of, 242, 3, N., 253.
Clauses, conditional, 59, 267, 293, (a), 3; proportional, see 'Comparative clauses,' below; dependent, preceding principal, 293, (b), R. 4, 294, (b), R. 2, 306; with denn, 241, 18, 293, (c), R. 1; incomplete or elliptical, 299; order of clauses, 302-306; apposi-

tive, **304**; relative, **305**; subjective, objective, adverbial, **306**.
Cognate accusative, **254**, 1.
Collectives, declension of those with prefix Ge-, **16**, **17**, 2; gender, **89**, 3, (*d*); concord of with verb, **285**, R. 4; formation, **315**, 2, (*a*).
Colour, adjs. of, used as substs., **122**, 3.
Comma, before dependent sentences, **98**, 3, N., **301**, N. 5; before infin. clauses, **273**, R. 2.
Comparative degree, **125**, **126**; declension of, **126**, 5.
Comparative clauses, with þeſtо, etc., **126**, 4, **293**, (*b*), R. 4, N. 3; **306**, R. 4 and N.
Comparison, of adjs., **125–130**; of equality, **126**, 3, **241**, 8; irregular, **129**; defective, **130**; of advs., **128**, **190**; adjs. incapable of, **161**, N.
Compass, points of, p. 104, top; gender, **80**, 1, (*c*).
Compiex sentences, **302–306**.
Composition of words, **318–321**; of numerals, **165**, 5–7, **182**, **183**; of Verbs, **203–213**; of substs., **319**; of adjs., **320**; of advs., **321**.
Compounds, accentuation of, p. 11; how formed, **318–321**; primary and secondary, **319**, 1, N. 1, 2; spurious, **319**, 2, N.
Compound substantives, of irregular declension, **68**; of irregular gender, **90**, 4, App. I., p. 388; how formed, **319**.
Compound tenses, formation, **25**, **108**; construction, **26**, **33**.
Compound sentences, **302**.
Compound verbs, **203–213**, separable, **109**, **117**, **205–207**; inseparable, **35**, R. 6, **109**, **204**; compounded with substs., **206**, 3; with adjs., **206**, 4, **212**; separable and inseparable, **208**; with double prefixes, **207**, **213**; with miþ-, **209**; with þer- and þin-, **210**; from compound substs., **211**.
Concord, of Subject and Verb, **285**; other concords, **288**.
Conditional clauses, **59**, **239**, R. 1, 2, 4, **267**, **293**, (*a*), 3, (*b*), R. 4, N. 1, 2; elliptical, **268**, 2, N., **293**, (*c*), R. 2; use of ſo in, **59**, N.; **293**, (*b*), R. 4, N. 2.
Conditional conjunctions, **59**, **239**, R. 1, 2, 4.
Conditional mood, formation of tenses of, **25**, 2, 3; shorter forms, **111**, **112**, R. 1; in Modal Auxiliaries, **199**, 4; use, **263**, **267**.
Conjugation of verbs; see "Verbs," "Modal Auxiliaries."
Conjunctions, **235–241**; coördinating, proper, **236**; not counted, **293**, (*b*), R. 2; adverbial, **237**, **293**, (*b*), R. 2; correlative, **238**; place of, **298**, 3.
Conjunctive Mood, see "Subjunctive."
Considering, verbs of, **242**, 3, **253**.
Consonants, pronunciation, p. 9, top; digraphs and trigraphs, pp. 5, 8, 14; doubling of, in verbs, **118**, R. 1, **123**, R. 1, **167**, A., R. 2, **181**, O. 6.
Construction of Sentences, **292–306**; principal, **20**, **26**, **293**, (*b*), **294**, (*b*), **295**, 2, **297**, R. 1, 2; dependent, **32**, **33**, **293**, (*c*), **294**, (*c*), **295**, 2, **297**, R. 2, **306**; direct interrog., **23**, **293**, (*a*), 1, **294**, (*a*), **295**, 2, **300**; indirect statements, **87**, **293**, (*c*), R. 1; indirect questions, **88**; relative sentences, **98**, **305**; imperative, **293**, (*a*), 2; of clauses with þenn, **293**, (*c*), R. 4; of incomplete clauses, **299**; general remarks, **301**; compound and complex, **302**, **303**; see also "Clauses," "Conditional clauses."
Contracted form of strong declension, **70**, R. 3.
Contraction of def. art. and preps., **34**, R., **46**, R. 1, p. 83, O., **65**, R.
Coördinating Conjunctions, proper, **236**, adverbial, **237**, correlative, **238**.
Copula, **292**; place of, **293**, **301**, 1.
Correlative prons., **43**, R. 3, 4; conjunctions, **238**; clauses, **241**, 9, **293**, (*b*), R. 4, N. 3.
Countries, names of, gender, **80**, 3, (*c*); see also "Places, names of."

-ƀ, suffix of substs., **312**, 1.
ƀa, adv., with prep. annexed, **38**, R. 5, **142**; conj., **239**, 3, (*b*); various uses of, **241**, 12, (*d*), 20; with preps., representing an infin. or ƀaþ clause, **277**; replaces Engl. part. of time and cause, **284**.
ƀamit, conj., expresses purpose, **239**, 3, (*b*), **268**, 3.

daß before the verb ſein, **141**; of a number of persons or things, **162**, 2.
daß, conj., omitted, **87**, 3, **241**, 3, 13, **266**, R. 2; use, **239**, (*b*), **241**, 3; expressing purpose, **268**, 3.
daß clauses governed by preps., **224**, 2, (*a*); for infin., **272**, R. 1, **275**, **276**, R. 2, **277**.
Date, how expressed, **184**, 2, (*a*).
Dative, use of, **3**, **248**; place of, **296**, **4**; ethical dat., **249**; dat. after verbs, **250**; after adjs., **251**; after preps., **46**, **51**, **65**, **223**; after reflexive verbs, **216**, 2; after impersonal verbs, **217**, 2, (*b*), **219**, 1; after ſein and werden, **217**, 2, (*c*); after interjections, **240**, 4, (*b*).
häuchten, see deuchten, dünken.
-de, subst. suffix, **312**, 1.
Declension; see "Substantives," "Adjectives," "Pronouns," "Numerals."
Definite Article; see "Article."
Degrees of comparison; see "Comparison."
dem after ſein, **250**, (*e*), **268**, 6.
Demonstrative pronouns; see "Pronouns."
denn, conj., **236**; adv. conj., **237**, **239**, **241**, 7, 18, **293**, (*c*), R. 4.
dennoch, adv. conj., **237**.
Dependent sentences; see "Construction," "Sentences."
Dependent questions; see "Construction," "Sentences," "Indirect questions."
der, die, das; see "Article, definite"; demonst. pron., **132**, **133**, **135**, 2, **140**, 1, (*a*), (*b*), **142**, **143**, 1, 2; after wer, **162**; relative pron., declension, **93**; use, **95**, **140**, 2; replaced by wo before preps., **95**, 2; used for wer, **306**, R. 3, N.
dergleichen, rel. pron., **97**; demonstr. pron., **132**, **139**, 2.
deren, gen. pl. of demonstr. pron., when used, **133**, 2, N.
Derivation, **307–317**; of numerals, **182**, **183**; of advs., **189**; see also "Adjective," etc.
derjenige, **132**, **135**, **140**, 1, (*b*).
dero, **49**.
derſelb(ig)e, **132**, **136**; replaces poss. adjs. and pers. prons., **143**, 2–4.
desgleichen, rel. pron., **97**; demonst. pron., **139**, 1; adv., **139**, 1, N.
deſſen, used for gen. of welcher, **95**, 1, (*a*); precedes its case, **95**, 3; of neut. pers. pron., **143**, 1; for poss. adj., **143**, 2.
deſſenungeachtet, adv. conj., **237**, **241**, 21.
deſto, **126**, **4**, **237**, **241**, 2, **293**, (*b*), R. 4, N. 3.
deuchten, **99**, 2.
dieſer Model, **6**.
dieſer, declension, **6**; use, **132**, **134**, **140**, 1, (*a*), **141**; replaces pers. prons., **143**, 3.
dieſes(s), **223**, 12, R.
Digraphs, consonantal, pp. 4, 8, 14.
Diminutives, gender, **89**, 3, (*a*); formation, **312**, 2; origin, **326**, R. 2, (*c*).
Diphthongs, pp. 4, 6, 14.
Direct objects, clause or neut. pron. as, **250**, R. 2; infin. as, **272**, R. 2; see also "Accusative," "Cases," "Object."
Direct questions; see also "Questions," "Interrogative Sentences."
Direction, expressing by hin- and her- before verbs, **210**; with an accusative, **224**, 1.
Distance, measure of, **185**, 4.
doch, adv., idiomatic use, **195**, 8; adv. conj., throws subj. after verb, **237**, R. 3, **293**, (*b*), R. 3; in questions, **300**, 2, N. 1.
Dorf Model, **36**, **37**; origin of Umlaut in, **326**, R. 2, (*b*).
Double Accusative, **253**.
" Gender, **91**; App. J.
" Plurals, **64**; App. G.*
" Prefixes, **207**, **210**, **213**.
" Vowels, pp. 4, 6, 14; do not take Umlaut, p. 12.
drei, declension, **165**, 2.
dünken, **99**, 2.
durch, prep., **34**; prefix, **208**.
dürfen, conjugation of, **196–199**; use, **200**, 1.

e, in conjugation of verbs, **31**, R. 1, **35**, R. 2–4, **107**, R. 1; in imperative, etc., **167**. B., R. 3, **181**, O. 4; in subjunctive, **31**, R. 2, **107**, O. 3; in dat. of substs., **21**, (*a*), O. 4, **46**, R. 2; in adjs., **102**, R. 2, **122**, 6, **125**, R. 5, 6, **126**, 5; in poss. adjs., **43**, R. 2; in poss. prons., **119**, (*a*) Obs., (*c*), N. 1; represents Umlaut of a, **326**, R. 3.
-e, adjs. in, declension, **102**,

R. 2; comparison, **125**, R. 6.
-e, substs. in, declension, **54**, **57**, 1, **61**; gender, **89**, 2, (*c*); subst. suffix, **312**, 4.
eben, **195**, 2.
ebenſo, **237**, **241**, 8.
ehe, conj., **241**, 13, 14; comparison, **130**.
-ei, substs. in, gender, **89**, 2, (*a*); subst. suffix, **312**, 5.
ein, see "Article, Indefinite."
ein, numeral, **163**, **165**, 1; with def. art., **165**, 1, (*c*),
einander, **42**, 2. [and N.
einer, indef. pron., **145**, **150**; cardinal numeral, **163**, **165**, 1, (*b*).
einerlei, **182**, (*c*), N.
einerſeits, **238**.
einige, einigeš, etliche, etliches, indef. pron., **145**, **152**; numeral, **168**, **173**, **180**; before adjs., **122**, 12.
einmal, **182**, (*a*), N. 2, 3.
eins in counting, **165**, 1, (*d*).
einſt, **182**, (*a*), N. 2; **187**, 1, (*e*).
-el, substs. in, declension, **16**, **17**; fems. in, **57**, R. 2; gender, **89**, 1, (*a*), App. I.; adjs. in, declension, **122**, 6; comparison, **125**, R. 6; subst. suffix, **312**, 6.
-el, verb-stems in, drop e, **35**, R. 4.
-elchen, diminutive suffix, **312**, 2, N. 2.
Elliptical constructions, **59**, **239**, R. 2, 4, **266**, N. 4, **267**, 6, N., **268**, 2, N., **269**, R. 6, **278**, **293**, (*b*), R. 4, N. 2, **299**.
-eln, verbs in, conjugation, **35**, R. 4; formation, **311**, 1.
-em, substs. in, declension, **16**, **17**, **69**, 1; gender, **89**, 1, (*a*).
emp-, insep. prefix, **35**, R. 6, **204**; meaning, **314**, 2.
-en, substs. in, declension, **16**, **17**; gender, **89**, 1, (*a*), App. I.; adjs. in, declension, **122**, 6; comparison, **125**, R. 6; not used as predicates, **160**; advs. in, **189**, 3; subst. suffix, **312**, **7**; adj. suffix, **313**, 2.
-en for -eš in gen. sing. of adjs., **102**, R. 1.
-end, substs. in, gender, **89**, 2, (*b*); subst. suffix, **312**, 18.
Endings of weak verbs in simple tenses, **35**; of strong do., **107**; of substs., **70**; of adjs., **121**.
English, its relations to German, **322**.
Enlarged form of strong declension, **70**, 4.
-enš, termination of advs., **183**, (*c*), **189**, 1, (*d*), **190**, 7.
ent-, insep. prefix, **35**, R. 6, **204**; meaning, **314**, 2.
entgegen, **51**, 2.
entlang, **223**, 19, R. 2.
entweder ... oder, **238**, **285**, R. 6, N. 1.
-enz, foreign substs. in, gender, **89**, 2, (*e*).
er-, insep. prefix, **35**, R. 6, **204**; meaning, **314**, 3.
-er, substs. in, declension; **16**, **17**; fems. in, **57**, R. 2, gender, **89**, 1, (*a*), App. I.; adjs. in, declension, **122**, 6; comparison, **125**, R. 6, **126**, N.; subst. suffix, **312**, 8.
-er, verb-stems in, drop e, **35**, R. 4.
-er, Plural ending, **36**; origin, **326**, R. 2, (*b*).
-erei, subst. suffix, **312**, 5, N. 2.
-ern, Adjs. in, not used as predicates, **160**; adj. suffix, **313**, 2.
-ern, Verbs in, conjugation, **35**, R. 4; formation, **311**, 2.
erſt, adv., idiomatic use, **195**, 4.
erſtens, adv., distinguished from zuerſt, **195**, 5, N.
Erz-, subst. prefix, **315**, 1.
es, neut. pron., uses of, **39**; omission of, **113**, 2, N.; for a number of persons or things, **162**, 2; as subject of impersonal verbs, **217**, **220**, 2, R. 2, N.; after adjs. governing gen., **244**, R. 1; representing a following infin., **272**, R. 2.
es giebt, es iſt, etc., **220**.
eſſen Model, **181**.
Ethical dative, **249**.
etliche; -es, see einige.
etwa, **187**, III., **226**, (*c*).
etwas, indef. pron., **145**, **149**; indef. numeral, **168**, **177**; before adjs., **122**, 11.
'even,' rendered by ſelbſt, **42**, 3, R.
'ever,' after rel. prons., **96**, 6.
Exclamatory clauses, **269**, R. 6, **293**, (*b*), R. 3, **300**, N. 2.

-fach, -fältig, form multiplicative numerals, **182**, (*b*).
fallen Model, **188**.
falls, subord. conj., **239**, 3, (*b*).
-fältig; see -fach.
Factitive accusative, **253**.
Factitive predicate, **253**, **254**, 3.
Family names, **74**, **76**, 4, 6.
fechten Model, **124**.
'few,' how rendered in Ger., **145**, **152**, **168**, **173**, **175**.
'for,' how rendered in Ger., **229**; after verbs, substs. and adjs., **291**, 2–4.

Foreign substs., accentuation, p. 10, bottom; declension, 22, 6, 37, 4, App. D., 57, 5, 63, 3, 77; gender, 89, 2, (e).
Fractional numbers, 183, (a), (b).
freilich, 187, IV.; does not count as a member of a sentence, 293, (b), R. 2, N.
Frequentatives, how formed, 315, 2, (c).
frieren Model, 131.
'from,' after verbs, 291, 5.
für, prep., 34; not used of purpose, 229, (a); after verbs of considering, 253.
Future Tense, how formed, 25, 2; use, 261; replaced by present, 257, 5.
Future-perfect Tense, how formed, 25, 3; use, 262; replaced by perfect, 259, 4.

ganz, indef. numeral, 168, 170.
ge-, prefix of p. part., 30; when omitted, 35, R. 5, 6, 109, 112, R. 2, 204; of verbs, 35, R. 6, 204, 314, 4; with sep. verbs, 117, 2, 205, 2; with mißּ-, 209; of substs., 315, 2; of adjs., 316; declension of substs. beginning with ge-, 16, 17, 2, 36, 37, 3; gender, 89, 3, (d).
gegen, prep., 34.
gegenüber, 51, 4.
gehen with infin., 271, (c).
gemäß, 51, 5.
gen, 50, 2.
Gender of substs., according to meaning, 80, and form, 89; of compound substs., 90, 4, App. I., p. 383; double gender, 91, App. J.; general remarks on, 90; exceptional gender, App. I.
Genitive, use of, 3, 243; after adjs., 244; after verbs, 245; adverbial, of time and manner, 184, 2, (b), 189, 2, 246; of place, 246; after reflexive verbs, 215, 216; after impers. verbs, 219, 2, (a); after interjections, 240, 4, (a); after preps., 222, 223; uninflected appositive genitive, 289, 3, N. 2; position of in a sentence, 296, 4–7.
genug, indef. num. and adv., 168, 178; followed by inf., 273, 3.
German language, its relations to English, 322; historical sketch, 322–326.
Germanic languages, 322, 323; diagram of, p. 37(.
gern, comparison of, 190, 1; idiomatic use of, 195, 3.
Gerunds, or infin. in -ing, not to be confounded with pres. part., 277, R. 3, 4, 6.
Gerundive, 282.
glauben, infin. after, 275, gleich, prep., 51, 6. [R. 3.
-gleichen, 48, 97, 139.
Graf Model, 55.
Grimm's Law, 325.
groß, comparison, 125, 5.
Grundsprache, 322.
gut, comparison, 129; as adv., 195, 10, N., 293, (b), R. 2, N.

h, mute before consonants, after vowels and after t, p. 9; when rejected after t, p. 12.
haben, conjugation, 24; use, 25; with infin., 271, (b), and R. 1, 272, R. 2; omission of in dependent sentences, 287, 293, (c), R. 5.
-haft, suffix of adjs., 313, 3.
halb, numeral, 183, (a), N. 2, (b).
halb(en), halber, prep., 222, 223, 1.
'half,' how rendered in Ger., 183, (a), N. 2; (b).
half-hours, 184, 3, (a).
heißen with infin., 271, (d).
-heit, substs. in, gender, 89, 2, (a); subst. suffix, 312, 9.
helfen Model, 159.
her, prefix, 210.
hier, 187, II., (a); before preps., 142.
High German, history of, 324.
hin, prefix, 210.
hinten, adv., 189, 3; comparison, 130.
hinter, prep., 65; sep. and insep. prefix, 208.
hoch, declension, 122, 7; comparison, 129.
höchst, with absolute superl., 127, 2, 190, 4.
'however,' adv. conj., how rendered in Germ., 241, 15.
Hours of the day, 184, 3.
Hund Model, 21, (b).
hundert, 165, 8, 10, (c).
Hyphen, its use in compounds, 318, 3, N., and 4.

i, produces Umlaut, 326.
-ich, substs. in, declension, 22, 2; gender, 89, 1, (a).
-icht, subst. suffix, 312, 18; adj. suffix, 313, 4.
-ie, foreign substs. in, gender, 89, 2, (e).
-ier, foreign substs. in, declension, 22, 6.
-ieren, foreign verbs in, take no ge- in p. part., 35, R. 5; verb suffix, 311, 3.
'if,' when rendered by ob, 241, 4.

-ig, substs. in, declension, **22**, 2; gender, **89**, 1, (*a*); adjs. in, not used as predicates, **160**; advs. in, superl. of, **190**, 5; suffix of poss. prons., **119**, (*c*); subst. suffix, **312**, 18; adj. suffix, **313**, 5; before -heit, **312**, 10, N.; after -haft, **313**, 3, N.; produces Umlaut, **326**, (*f*).

Igro, **49**.

-it, foreign substs. in, gender, **89**, 2, (*e*).

immer, adv., **187**, I., (*e*); after rel. prons., **96**, 6.

Imperative Mood, true forms of, **31**, R. 4; endings, in weak verbs, **35**; in strong, **107**; expressed by laſſen, **200**, 7, (*a*); replaced by subjunctive, **268**, 1; use of, **269**. [**196**.

Imperfect-Present Verbs,

Imperfect Tense, formation, in weak verbs, **30**; in strong, **104**; endings, in weak verbs, **35**; in strong, **107**.

Imperfect Indicative, use, **258**; distinguished from Perfect, **259**, 2, 3; replaced by present, **257**, 3.

Imperfect Subjunctive, for conditional, **111**, **263**, 2, N.; in hypothetical periods, **267**, 2; to express wish, **268**, 2; to express possibility, **268**, 5; origin of Umlaut in, **326**, (*g*).

Impersonal Verbs, **217**; conjugation, **218**; government, **219**; 'there is,' etc., **220**; impersonal use of passive voice, **113**, 2.

'in,' how rendered in Germ., **230**, **291**, 6, 7.

in, prep., **65**; rendered by 'at,' **227**, (*a*), 1, and 4.

-in, substs. in, declension, **57**, R. 3; gender, **89**, 2, (*a*); subst. suffix, **312**, 11; produces Umlaut, **326**, (*d*).

Indefinite article, see "Article, Indef." [**180**.

Indefinite numerals, **168**–

Indefinite pronouns, **145**–**157**.

indem, subord. conj., **239**, **241**, 16; replaces Engl. participle, **284**, 1, (*a*), (*b*).

indeſſen, conj., **237**, **239**, **241**, 15.

Indicative mood, use, **256**; tenses of, **257**–**262**; in indirect statements, **266**, R. 3; in hypothetical periods, **267**, R. 5.

Indirect statement, **87**, **265**; tense of, **266**; construction of, **293**, (*c*), R. 1.

Indirect or dependent questions, **88**, **293**, (*c*); objective, with infin., **275**, R. 4; use of ob in, **277**, R. 5.

Indo-European or Indo-Germanic languages, **322**.

Infinitive, place of, **26**, **33**, **295**, 3, **299**; endings, **35**; for p. part. in Modal Auxiliaries, etc., **199**, 2; with passive sense after laſſen, **200**, 7, (*c*), N.; for imperative, **269**, R. 5; as subst., **270**; without zu, **271**; with zu, **272**; of purpose, **273**; after substs., **274**; accusative with inf., not used in Germ., **275**; in objective indirect questions, **275**, R. 4; governed by preps., **276**, **277**; infin. in -ing, or gerund, **277**, R. 3–6; in elliptical constructions, **278**; replaced by p. part., **281**, R. 6, 7; as part of predicate, **295**.

'-ing,' infinitive in, or gerund **277**, R. 3–6.

-ing, substs. in, declension, **22**, 2; gender, **89**, 1, (*a*); subst. suffix, **312**, 18.

inmitten, **223**, 21.

innen, adv., **189**, 3; comparison, **130**.

innerhalb, **223**, 4, and R.

Inseparable prefixes, **35**, R. 6, **109**, **203**, **204**, **207**, **209**, **212**, **213**; meaning of, **314**.

Interjections, **240**.

Inversion, inverted sentence, **301**, 2, N. 1, 2.

Interrogative pronouns and adjs., **81**–**86**.

Interrogative sentences, construction, direct, **23**; **293**, (*a*), 1, **294**, (*a*), **295**, 2, **300**, **301**, N. 2; indirect or dependent, **88**, **275**, R. 4, **277**, R. 5, **293**, (*c*).

Intransitive verbs, used only impersonally in the passive, **113**, 2; accusative after, **254**.

-ion, foreign substs. in, gender, **89**, 2, (*e*).

-iren, verbs in; see -ieren.

irgend, **157**.

-iſch, adjs. in, not used as predicates, **160**; adj. suffix, **313**, 6.

Italics, not used in Germ., p. 12.

'it,' when rendered by er, ſie, **13**.

j, produces Umlaut, **326**.

ja, idiomatic use, **195**, 11.

ja, jawohl, not counted as member of sent., **293**, (*b*), R. 2, N.

je, before cardinal numerals, **165**, 9.

je . . . deſto, **126**, 4, **239**, 3, (*b*), **293**, (*b*), R. 4, N. 3.

je(mals), adv., 187, I., (e).
jeder, declension, 6; indef. pron., 145, 153; indef. numeral, 168, 171; jedes, of a number of persons or things, 162, 2.
jedermann, 145, 147.
jedoch, 237.
jedweder; see jeder.
jeglicher; see jeder.
jemand, 145, 148.
jener, declension, 6; use, 132, 134, 140, 1, (c), 141, 142.
jenseit(s), 223, 13, and R.
jetzt, 187, I., (b).

kein, declension, 8; indef. numeral, 168, 172.
keiner, indef. pron., 145; used for niemand, 151.
-keit, substs. in, gender, 89, 2, (a); subst. suffix, 312, 10.
kennen, 196, R. 4, N. 1
Knabe Model, 54.
kommen, with p. part., 281, R. 5.
können, conjugation, 196–199; use, 200, 2, 202.
kraft, prep., 223, 7.

-l, forms fractions, 183, (a).
längs, 223, 18, and R. 1.
Language, German, historical sketch of, 322–326.
Language-names from adjs., 122, R. 2.
Languages, Indo-Germanic, etc., 322, 2, 3; Germanic, 323.
lassen, its use, for passive voice, 114, (b); as Modal Auxiliary, 200, 7.
laut, 223, 8.
Lautverschiebung, 325.
-lei, forms variative numerals, 182, (c).
-lein, substs. in, declension, 16, 17; gender, 89, 3, (a); subst. suffix, 312, 3; produces Umlaut, 326, R. 2, (c).
Letters, German, shape and pronunciation of, see Introduction, pp. 1–12.
letzt, 130.
-leute, plurals in, 68, 1.
-lich, adjs. in, not used as predicates, 160; superl. of advs. in, 190, 5; suffix of advs., 189, 1, (b); of adjs., 313, 8.
lieber, compar. of gern, 190; use, 195, 3.
-ling, substs. in, declension, 22, 2; gender, 89, 1, (a); subst. suffix, 312, 12.
-lings, suffix of advs., 189, 1, (c).
loben, paradigm of, active, 31; reflexive, 41; passive, 112.

-m, substs. in, declension, 69; gender, 89, 1, (a).
Macht, irregular compounds of, 68, 2.
-mal, forms numeral advs., 182, (a).
Maler Model, 16, 17, App. A.
man, indef. pron., for passive voice, 114, (a); use, 145, 146; replaced by einer, 150; with imperative, 269, R. 2.
mancher, indef. pron., 145, 154; indef. numeral, 168, 174; before adjs., 122, 12.
-mann, substs. in, declension, 68, 1.
Manner, advs. of, 189; their place in a sentence, 45, Rule 5.
Materials, names of, take art., 44, 1, (b); plural of, 66, 2.
'may,' when expressed by dürfen, 200, 3, (b), N.
'meanwhile,' how rendered in Germ., 241, 15.
Measure, expressions of, 185: advs. of, 187, III.
mehr, when used in comparison of adjs., 126, 2, 161, N.; adv. of quantity, 129, N. 1; indef. numeral, 168, 179.
mehrere, -es, indef. pron., 145, 152; indef. numeral, 168, 175; before adjs., 122, 12.
mein Model, 8.
Middle High German, 324, 2.
Million, declension, 165, 10, (d).
Minutes of the hour, 184, 3, (b).
miß-, verb-prefix, 204, 209, 314, 5; subst. prefix, 315, 3.
mit, 46; after reflexive verbs, 215, 1, (a).
mittel, comparison, 130.
mittelst, see vermittelst.
Mixed declension, of substs., 60–63, 70; of adjs., 116, 121, III.
Modal auxiliaries, 196–202; peculiar forms, 196, R. 1–3; paradigms, 198; further peculiarities, 199; idiomatic use, 200–202.
Modern High German, 324, 3.
Modification of vowels; see Umlaut.
mögen, conjugation, 196–199; use, 200, 3, 202.
Monosyllables, declension, 22, 1, 3, 5, App. B., C., E., 37; gender, 89, 1, (a).
Month, day of, how expressed, 166, 3.
Months, names of, p. 104, top; gender, 80, 1, (b).
Moods of the verb, their use,

256–278; see also "Conditional," "Indicative," etc.
'most,' with absolute superlative, 127, 2.
Motion, neuter verbs of, conjugated with ſein, 53, (*b*).
müſſen, conjugation, 196–199; use, 200, 4, 202.
Mut, fem. compounds of, App. I, p. 388; zu Mute ſein, werden, 250, (*e*).
Mutes, progression or shifting of, 325.

nach, prep., 46, 184, 3, (*b*), 233, (*c*), 1; after adjs., 244; after verbs, etc., 291, 3; after reflexive verbs, 215, 1, (*a*).
Nachbar Model, 62, 63.
nachdem, subord. conj. clause with, replaces Engl. perf. part., 284, R. 1.
nächſt, 51, 7.
nahe, comparison, 129.
Name Model, 60, 61.
Names, see "Materials," "Persons," "Places," "Proper Names."
nämliche, der, 132, 137.
neben, prep., 65.
nebſt, 51, 8.
nennen, infin. with, 271, (*d*).
Neuter verbs conjugated with ſein, 53.
New High German, 324, 3.
nicht, place of, 12.
nicht nur . . . ſondern auch, 238.
nicht ſowohl . . . als, 238.
nichts, indef. pron., 145, 149; before adjs., 122, 11.
nichtsdeſtoweniger, cöord. adv. conj., 237.
nichts weniger als, 241, 19, N.
nie, obsolete adv., comparison, 130.
nie(mals), 187, I., (*e*).
nieder, 130.
niemand, 145, 148; replaced by keiner, 151, 1.
nimmer, 187, I., (*c*).
-nis, substs. in, declension, 22, 4; gender, 89, 2, (*d*), 3, (*c*); subst. suffix, 312, 13; produces Umlaut, 326, (*e*).
noch, adv., idiomatic use, 195, 7; conj., 237, 238.
Nominative, use of, 3, 242.
Number, in Substs., 3; expressions of, 185.
Numerals, cardinal, 163, 165; ordinal, 164, 166; Roman, how rendered in Germ., 166, 2, N.; indefinite, 168–180; derivative, 182, 183; multiplicative, 182, (*b*); variative, 182, (*c*); fractional, 183, (*a*), (*b*).
nun, 195, 1.
nur, 195, 12.

ob, prep., 51, 10; conj., 241, 4; when omitted, 239, R. 4, 267, R. 6, N.; in indirect questions, 277, R. 5.
ob auch, 239, R. 3, 4.
oben, adv., 189, 3; comparison, 130.
oberhalb, 223, 5.
obgleich, obſchon, obwohl, 239, R. 3, 4.
Object, direct, see "Accusative"; indirect, see "Dative"; remote, with reflexive verbs, 216.
Objects, place of, 45, 296, 297, R. 1, 2.
Objective clause before the verb, 306.
Objective genitive, 243, 3.
oder, 236, 238.
'of,' how rendered in Germ., 3, 46, R. 3; 231; omitted before infin. clauses, 277, R. 1; after verbs, etc., 291, 8–11.
ohne, prep., 34; governing infin. or daß clause, 224, 2, (*b*), 276.
ohnedem, 50, 3.
Ohr Model, 62, 63.
Old High German, 324, 1.
-on, foreign mascs. in, declension, 22, 6.
'on,' how rendered in Germ., 232; after verbs, etc., 291, 7.
'one,' rendered by es, 39, R. 3; indef. pron., 145, 146, 150; not expressed after adjs., 122, 4.
-or, foreign substs. in, declension, 22, 6, 63, 3.
Ordinal numerals, 164, 166.
Origin, genitive of, 243, 1.
Orthography, p. 11; recent changes in, p. 12.

paar (ein), indef. numeral, 173, 3, N.
Participial constructions, English, how rendered in Germ., 284; English pres. part. after 'come,' 281, R. 5; not to be confounded with inf. in -ing, or gerund, 277, R. 3.
Participle, past, how formed, in weak verbs, 30; in strong, 105; of Modal Auxiliaries, 199, 2.
Participles, place of, 26, 33, 283, 4, 295, 1, 3, and N., 298, 299; endings, 30, 35; used as adjectives, 122, 1; as substs., 122, 2; comparison of, 125, 4; isolated strong, 194, N.; use of, 279–284; present part., 280; not used with 'to be,' 31, R. 3; past, 281; with

imperative force, 269, R. 5; fut. pass. part., or gerundive, 282; general remarks, 283; no perfect part. in Germ., 284, R. 1; appositive participles, 280, (*b*), 281, R. 3, 283, 3, 290.
Partitive genitive, 243, 6.
Partitive sense, words used in, take no art., 2, 2.
Passive voice, 112-114; paradigm, 112; agent with, R. 3; limitations of, 113; substitutes for, 114; passive of transitive verbs, 113, 1; of intransitive verbs, 113, 2.
Past participle, see "Participles."
'people,' indef. pron., 145, 146.
Periphrastic forms of conjugation, English, 31, R. 3.
Perfect participle, none in Germ., 284, R. 1.
Perfect tense, formation, 25, 1; use, 259; replaced by present, 257, 4.
Personal pronouns, declension, 38; use, 39-42, 44, 6, (*b*); place of, 45, Rules 3, 4, 294, (*c*), N., 296, 3, 4; replaced by demonstratives, 143; after gleichen, 48; after halben, wegen, 223, 1, 2, R. 3; omitted with imperative, 269, R. 1.
Persons, before things, 45, Rule 2, 296, 5; names of, how declined, 73, 74, 76, 2-7; article with names of, 73, 1, 2, 76, 2, 5, 78.
Place, advs. of, 187, II.; position in a sentence, 11, 45, Rule 5, 297, 3, and R. 1.
Places, proper names of, 72, 76, 1; article with, 44, 3.
Pluperfect tense, formation, 25, 1; plupf. indicative, use, 260; plupf. subjunctive, used for conditional, 263, 267, 2, and R. 4; to express a wish, 268, 2.
Plural, see "Concord," "Number," "Substantives."
Possessive adjs., 43; agreement, 43, 5; replaced by def. art., 44, 6.
Possessive case, rendered in Germ. by the genitive, 3, 243, 4.
Possessive dative, 44, 6, 249.
" pronouns, 119.
Possibility, advs. of, 187, VI.; expressed by impf. subj., 268, 5.
Predicate, definition of, 292, 1, 295; place of, 295; factitive pred., 253, 254, 3.
Predicative nominative, 242.
Predicative adj., not declined, 14, 100; place of, 18, 20, O. 3, 295, 3, 296, 8; factitive, 254, 3.
Prefixes, of verbs, 203-213, 314; inseparable, 35, R. 6, 109, 204, 207, 208, 209, 212; meaning of, 314; separable, 117, 205-208, 210, 295; separable and inseparable, 208; compound, 206, 2; double, 207; accent of, 204, 205, 3; place of, 117, 295, 3, and N.; subst. prefixes, 315; adj. prefixes, 316.
Prepositions, governing accusative only, 34, 50; dative only, 46, 51; dat. or acc., 65; genitive, 222, 223; contracted with def. art., 34, R., 46, R. 1, p. 83, O., 65, R.; general remarks on, 224; joined to advs., 224; governing the infin., 224, 2, (*b*), 276, 277; English preps. and their Germ. equivalents, 225-234; place of, 46, 51, 223, 298, 2; after verbs, etc., 291.
Present participle; see "Participial Constructions, English," and "Participles."
Present tense, endings, in weak verbs, 35, in strong, 107; pres. indicative, 257, 267, R. 5; pres. subj., replaces imperative, 268, 1, 269, and R. 2.
Preterite, see "Imperfect."
Primary Form of strong declension, 70, R. 2.
Principal assertive sentences, construction, 20, 26, 59, N., 293, (*b*), 294, (*b*), 295, 2, 297, R. 1, 2, 301, 2, 302, R., 303.
Principal parts of a verb, 28.
Progression of mutes, 325.
Pronouns, agreement of, 13; place of, 45, 296, 2-4; personal, declension, 38; use of es, 39; use in address, 40, 47, 49; dative of, replaces poss. adj., 44, 6, (*b*); reflexive, 41, 42; reciprocal, 42; interrogative, 81-83; relative, 92-97, place of, 98; possessive, 119; demonstrative, 132-143; indefinite, 145-157; remarks on, 162.
Pronunciation, Introduction, pp. 1-12.
Probability, expressed by future, 261, 2; by future-perfect, 262.
Proper names, declension of, 66, 1, 72-74, 76.
Proportional Clauses; see "Comparative Clauses."
Purpose, conjs. of, 239, 3,

(*b*); expressed by ʒu, **229**, (*a*); by subj. with daß, etc., **268**, 3; by infin. with ʒu or um . . . ʒu, **273**, R. 1, **276**, **1**.

Quality, genitive of, **243**, 5.
Quantity of vowels, pp. 9, 10.
Quantity, expressions of, **185**.
Quarters of the hour, **184**, 3, (*a*).
Questions, direct, construction of, **23**, **293**, (*a*), 1, **294**, (*a*), **295**, 2, **300**; indirect or dependent, **88**, **293**, (*c*).
Question-word, begins sentence, **23**, O. 2, **293**, (*a*), 1, **294**, (*a*).

Reciprocal pronouns, **42**.
Reflexive pronouns, **41**, **42**, **44**, 6, (*b*), N.; used in reciprocal sense, **42**; place of, **294**, (*c*), N.
Reflexive verbs, paradigm of, **41**; for passive, **114**, (*b*); use, **214–215**; government, **216**.
Relative clauses, replace Engl. part., **284**, 2, (*a*); place of, **305**, **306**, R. 3, and N., R. 4.
Relative pronouns, **92–97**; place of, **98**, **294**, (*c*), **305**; introduce dependent clauses, **98**; not omitted in Germ., **96**, 7, O.; concord of, **95**, 1, (*b*), **288**, 2, N.
Relative superlative, of adjs., **127**; of advs., **190**, 3.
Roman numerals, how read in Germ., **166**, 2, N.

-ſ, plurals in, **77**, 5.
-ſ, suffix of advs., **189**, 1, 2, **321**, 1, N.; suffix in subst. compounds, **319**, 1, N. 2, 3.
-ſal, substs. in, declension, **22**, 4; gender, **89**, 3, (*c*); subst. suffix, **312**, 14.
-ſam, adj. in, superl. of, **190**, 5; adj. suffix, **313**, 9.
ſamt, **51**, 9.
-ſchaft, substs. in, gender, **89**, 2, (*a*); subst. suffix, **312**, 15.
ſchießen Model, **123**.
ſchlagen Model, **186**.
ſchon, idiomatic use, **195**, 6.
Script, German, pp. 13–16.
ſehr, with absolute superl., **127**, 2, **190**, 4.
ſein, 'to be,' use as auxiliary, **25**, 4; conjugation, **52**; verbs conjugated with, **53**; with past part., **112**, R. 5, (*b*); as impersonal, **217**, **220**; with dat., **250**, (*e*); with infin., **272**, R. 2; omitted in dependent sentences, **287**.
ſeit, prep., **46**, **241**, 12, (*a*); conj., **239**, **241**, 12.
ſeitdem, adv. conj., **237**; subord. conj., **239**, **241**, 12, (*c*).
-ſel, substs. in, gender, **89**, 3, (*c*); subst. suffix, **312**, 14.
ſelber, ſelbſt, **42**, 3, and R.
ſelbig, **136**, N.
ſelbſt; see ſelber.
Sentences, construction of, **292–306**; essential parts of, **292**; construction of assertive principal, **20**, **26**, **59**, N., **293**, (*b*), **294**, (*b*), **295**, 2, **297**, R. 1, **301**, 2, **306**; of dependent, **32**, **33**, **98**, **293**, (*c*), **294**, (*c*), **295**, 2; relative, **98**, **305**, **306**, R. 3 and N., R. 4; interrogative, **23**, **88**, **293**, (*a*), 1, **293**, (*c*), **294**, (*a*), **295**, 2, **300**; exclamatory, **293**, (*b*), R. 3; expressing command or wish, **293**, (*a*), 2; conditional, **59**, **293**, (*a*), 3; position of verb in, **293**; of subject, **294**; of predicate, **295**; of objects, etc., **296**; of advs., etc., **297**; of other members, **298**; inverted, **301**, N. 1, 2; compound and complex, **302–306**.
Separable prefixes, when separated, **117**; place of, **295**, 3 and N., **303**, **4**.
'shall,' how rendered in Germ., **201**.
Shifting of mutes, **325**.
'since,' how rendered in Germ., **241**, 12.
ſingen Model, **144**.
Singular, see "Concord," "Substantives."
'so,' rendered by eß, **39**, 3.
ſo, after conditional and adverbial clauses, **59**, **239**, R. 2, **267**, R. 3, **293**, (*b*), R. 4, N. 1, 2, **294**, (*b*), R. 2; replaces ſolch before ein, **138**, N. 2; adv. conj., **237**.
ſo . . . ſo, **241**, **9**.
ſo ein, followed by wie, **162**, 4.
ſogar, adv. conj., **237**, R. 2.
Sohn Model, **21**; origin of Umlaut in, **326**, R. 2, (*a*).
ſolch(er), demonstr. pron., **132**, **138**; followed by wie, **162**, 4; before adjs., **122**, 12.
ſollen, conjugation, **196–199**; use, **200**, 5, **201**, **202**.
'some,' how rendered in Germ., 2, 2, **150**, **152**, **155**, **168**, **173**, **177**, **180**.
ſonder, **50**, 1.
ſondern, **236**, R. 1.
ſowohl . . . als (auch), **238**; **285**, R. 6.

ſpinnen Model, **158.**
ſprechen Model, **167.**
ſſ, ß, p. 5; in verbs, **118**, R. 2, **123**, R. 1, **181**, O. 1, **188**, R. 3.
ſtatt, see anſtatt.
-ſt, subst. suffix, **312**, 1.
ſtehen, with infin., **272**, R. 2.
Stem of verbs, **27.**
Strong declension; see "Substantives, declension of."
Strong conjugation; see "Verbs, conjugation of."
Subject, definition of, **292**; place of, **294**; in principal sentences, **20**, **59**, N.; in direct questions, **23**, O. 1; in dependent sentences, **33**, N.; inversion of, **301**, 2, N. 1, 2; expressed by nom. case, **3**, **242**, 1; agreement with verb, **285**; repetition of, **286.**
Subjective clause, **306**; relative, **306**, R. 3.
Subjective genitive, **243**, 2.
Subjunctive Mood, use, **264–268**, for conditional, **111**, **263**, N.; in indirect statements, **87**, **265**, **266**; in indirect questions, **88**; in hypothetical periods, **239**, R. 1, **267**; for imperative, **31**, R. 4, **268**, 1, **269**; expressing a wish, **268**, 2; of purpose, **268**, 3; after a negative, etc., **268**, 4; of possibility, **268**, 5; origin of Umlaut in impf. subj., **326**, (*g*).
Substantives, their declension, Maler Model, **16**, **17**; Sohn do., **21**, (*a*), **22**, App. C.; Hund do., **21**, (*b*), **22**, App. E.; Dorf do., **36**, **37**; Knabe, Graf, Blume do., **54–57**, App. F.; Name, Nachbar, Ohr do., **60–63**, App. G.; with double plurals, **64**, App. G.*; Summary and tables, **70**; essential parts, **71**; anomalous, **66–69**; substs. without plural, **66**; without sing., **67**; of measure, weight and number, **185**; as verb prefixes, **206**, 3, **212**; irregular compound substs., **68**; appositive subst., **289**; derivation, by internal change, **310**; by suffixes, **312**; by prefixes, **315**; composition, **319**; see also under "Accentuation," "Compound Substantives," "Foreign Substantives," "Gender."
Suffixes, of verbs, **311**; of substs., **312**; of adjs., **313.**
Superlative degree, of adjs., relative, **127**, 1; absolute, **127**, 2; of advs., **190**, 3–7.

-t, substs. in, gender, **89**, 2, (*b*); subst. suffix, **312**, 1.
-tät, foreign substs. in, gender, **89**, 2, (*e*).
tauſend, **165**, 8, and 10, (*c*).
teils . . . teils, **238.**
Tense, in indirect statements, **87**; in indirect questions, **88**; auxiliaries of, use, **25**, **53**; place of with auxiliaries of mood, **199**, 3.
Tenses, simple, how formed in weak verbs, **30**; in strong, **104–107**, **110**; endings of, in weak verbs, **35**; in strong, **107**; compound, how formed, **25**, **108**; construction, **26**, **33**; sequence of tenses in indirect statements and questions not observed in Germ., **87**, 2, **88**, 2, **266**, 4; of the indicative, how used, **257–262** (see also under the various tenses); of the conditional, **263**, N.; the tense in indirect statements, **87**, **266**; in hypothetical periods, **267.**
Terminations; see "Endings."
'than' after the comparative, **126**, 1, **241**, 7.
'that,' how rendered in Germ., **140.**
'the . . . the' before comparatives, **126**, 4.
'there,' rendered by es, **39**, 1, R.; 'there is, there are,' **220.**
'they,' indefinite, **145**, **146.**
-thum; see -tum.
Time, expressions of, **184**; place of, **11**, **45**, **297**, 2, **306**, R. 2; advs. of, **187**, I.; English participial constructions of, how rendered in Germ., **284**, (*a*); time of day, **184**, 3, **285**, R. 6, N. 2.
Titles of rank, **49**; **76**, 5, 6.
'to,' how rendered in Germ., **46**, R. 4; **233.**
Towns, names of, gender, **80**, 3, (*c*); see also "Places, names of."
Transitive verbs, English, with object unexpressed, rendered by reflexive verbs in Germ., **215**, 2; often intrans. in Germ., **250**, R. 1, **252**, R.
Trigraphs, consonantal, pp. 4, 8, 14.
trotz, **223**, 16, and R. 2.
-tum, substs. in, declension, **37**; gender, **89**, 3, (*b*); subst. suffix, **312**, 16.

über, prep., **65**; after interjections, **240**, 4, (*a*); after

verbs, etc., **291**, 1; prefix, **208**; after reflexive verbs, **215**, 1.
um, prep., **34**, **184**, 3, (*c*), **226**, (*a*), (*b*), **227**, (*b*), 1; after verbs, **291**, 4; governing an infin. of purpose, **224**, 2, (*b*), **273**, **276**; prefix, **208**.
um ſo, before comparatives, **126**, 4, **241**, 2, **293**, (*b*), R. 4, N. 3. [12.
um . . . willen, **223**, 22, R. 1,
Umlaut, pp. 3, 6, 12, 14; in declension of substs., **17**, (*a*), **21**, (*a*), **22**, **36**, **70**, R. 6, App. A., C.; in subj. mood, **107**, O 2; in comparison of adjs., **125**, R. 1, in strong verbs, **186**, **188**, **192**, R. 1; in Modal Auxiliaries, **196**, R. 1; in derivation, **308**, N., **309**, **311**, 1, 2, **312**, 2-4, 8, 11-13, **313**, 5; origin, **326**.
un=, subst. prefix, **315**, 4.
und, **236**.
unfern, **223**, 23.
=ung, substs. in, gender, **89**, 2, (*a*); subst. suffix, **312**, 17.
ungeachtet, prep., **223**, 15; conj. **239**, 3, (*b*), **241**, 21.
units, before tens, **165**, 7.
'unless,' how rendered in Germ., **241**, 18.
unten, adv., **189**, 3; comparison, **130**.
unter, prep., **65**; prefix, **208**.
unterdeſſen, adv. conj., **237**; subord. conj., **239**, 3, (*b*), **241**, 15.
unterhalb, **223**, 6.
unweit, **223**, 24.
ur=, subst. prefix, **315**, 5.
=ur, substs. in, gender, **89**, 2, (*e*).
Urſprache, **322**.
Variative numerals, **182**, (*c*).
ver=, insep. verb prefix, **35**, R. 6, **204**; meaning, **314**, 6.
Verb, place of, **20**, **32**, **33**, **87**, 2, **88**, 2, **266**, R. 2, **267**, R. 2, **292**, **293**, **301**; English periphrastic forms of, how rendered in Ger., **31**, R. 3; tenses of, **256-262**, **263**, **266** (see also under the various tenses); moods of, **256-278** (see also under the various moods); concord of, **285**; when omitted, **269**, R. 6, **287**.
Verbs, stem of, **27**; principal parts of, **28**; weak conjugation of, **30**, **31**; endings of simple tenses, **35**; verbs conjugated with ſein, **53**; neut., of motion, etc., **53**; irregular weak, **99**; strong, **103-108**, App. L.; beißen Model, **118**; bleiben do., **120**; ſchießen do., **123**; fechten do., **124**; frieren do., **131**; fingen do., **144**; ſpinnen do., **158**; helfen do., **159**; ſprechen do., **167**; eſſen do., **181**; ſchlagen do., **186**; fallen do., **188**; table of strong verbs, **192**; passive voice, **112-114**; reflexive verbs, paradigm of, **41**; use, **214-216**; impersonal verbs, **217-220**; compound verbs, insep., **35**, R. 6, **109**, **204**, **207-209**, **211-213**; separable, **117**, **205 - 208**, **210**; auxiliaries of tense, **25**, **53**; irregular strong, **194**, **196**; auxiliaries of mood, **196-202**; verbs with two nominatives, **242**, 2, 3; with genitive, **245**; with dative, **250**; with accusative, **252**, **253**; verbs of choosing, **242**, N.; of calling, considering, **253**; verbs followed by the subjunctive, **265**; by the infin. without zu, **271**, with zu, **272**; prepositions after, **291**; derivation of, without change, **308**; with internal change, **309**; by suffixes, **311**; by prefixes, **314**.
vermittelſt, **223**, 9.
vermöge, **223**, 10.
viel, comparison of, **129**; indef. pron., **145**; indef. numeral, **168**, **176**; before adjs., **122**, 11, 12.
Vocative, **242**, 1.
voll, prefix, sep. and insep., **208**; adj., **244**.
von, prep., **46**, **228**, (*a*), **231**, (*b*), **234**; used for genitive, **46**, R. 3; with passive voice, **112**, R. 3; with names of places, **72**, 3, 4; with names of persons, **76**, 6; replaces genitive of quality, **243**, 5, N.; after partitives, **243**, 6, N.; after voll, **244**; after verbs, **245**, 2
vor, prep., **65**, **184**, 3, (*b*), **234**; after verbs, etc., **291**, 5, 11; after reflexive verbs, **215**, 1, (*b*).
vorn, adv., **189**, 3; comparison, **130**.
Vowels, modified, pp. 3, 6, 12, 14; double, pp. 4, 6, 12, 14; importance of, p. 8, bottom; long and short, pp. 9, 10; see also "Umlaut."
während, prep., **75**, 2, **223**, 17; conj., **239**, 3, (*b*), **241**, 13; replaces Engl. participle of time, **284**, 1, (*a*).
wann, **58**, **187**, I., (*d*).
warum, **83**, R. 3, N.

waß, interrog. pron., declension and use, **83**; sometimes = 'why,' **83**, 6, **162**, 3; used for etwaß, **149**, 1; relative pron., **92**, **96**; followed by daß, **162**, 1; of a number of persons or things, **162**, 2; not governed by preps., **83**, 3, **96**, 7; construction of sentences with, **98**, 3.

waß für (ein), **86**.

'we,' indef., **146**.

Weak conjugation, see "Verbs"; declension, see "Substantives," "Adjectives."

weder . . . noch, **238**.

wegen, **75**, 1, **223**, 2, and R. 3.

Weight, expressions of, **185**.

weil, **239**, 3, (*b*), **241**, 17.

welcher, interrog. pron. and adj., **6**, **81**, **82**, **84**, **85**; in exclamations, **85**, 1, 2; relative pron., **92**, **94**, **95**; indefinite pron. and numeral, used for 'some," **145**, **155**, **180**; before adjs., **122**, 13.

wenig, comparison of, **129**; indef. pron., **145**; indef. numeral, **168**, **176**; before adjs., **122**, 12.

wenn, **58**, **239**, 3, (*b*), R. 1–4, **267**; omission of, **239**, R. 2–4, **267**, R. 2, 3, 6, N., **293**, (*a*), 3, R. 4, N. 2, (*c*), R. 2, **294**, (*b*), R. 2.

wenn auch, wenn gleich, wenn ſchon, **239**, 3, (*b*), and R. 3, N.

wenn . . . nicht, **239**, 3, (*b*), **241**, 18.

wer, interrog. pron., **81**, **83**; relative pron., **92**, **96**.**135**, (*b*), N.; followed by der, **162**, 1; replaced by der, **306**, R. 3, N.; construction of sentences with, **98**, 3.

werden, pres. and impf. of, **19**; conjugated with ſein, **53**, (*a*); use as auxiliary of tense, **25**, 2; as auxiliary of passive voice, **112**, **113**; conjugation, **112**; as impersonal verb, **217**, 2, (*c*); with dat., **250**, (*e*).

'when,' how rendered in Germ., **58**.

'whether,' expressed by mögen, **200**, 3, (*c*).

'while, whilst,' how rendered in Germ., **241**, 15.

'whole,' how rendered in Germ., **168**, **170**.

wider, prep., **34**; prefix, **204**.

wie, in comparisons, **126**, 3, **241**, 6, 8; after ſolch ein, ſo ein, **162**, 4; subord. conj., **239**, 3, (*b*); in comparative clauses, **306**, R. 4, N.

wieder, prefix, **208**, N. 2.

wievielſte, der, **164**, **166**, 3, N. 2.

'will,' how rendered in Germ., **201**.

Wish, expressed by the Subjunctive, **268**, 2; construction of sentences expressing, **293**, (*a*), 2.

wiſſen, **196**, and N. 1.

wo, **187**, II., (*c*); before preps., replacing interrog. prons., **83**, 3, and relative prons., **95**, 2, **96**, 7.

wohl, comparison of, **190**; idiomatic use, **195**, 10.

wollen, its conjugation, **196–199**; its use, **200**, 6, **201**, **202**.

worden, for geworden, in passive voice, **112**, R. 2; when omitted, **112**, R. 4.

'you,' how rendered in Ger., **40**; indef. pron., **146**.

=zehn, in compound numerals, **165**, 5.

zer=, insep. prefix, **35**, R. 6, **204**; meaning, **314**, 7.

=zig, in numerals, **165**, 6.

zu, prep., **46**, **227**, (*a*), 4, (*b*), 2, (*c*), **228**, (*c*), **229**, (*a*), **230**, (*c*), **232**, (*b*), **233**, (*b*), (*c*), 2, (ii); with Infinitive, **272–277**; place of, **109**, **117**, R. 2; with insep. verbs, **205**, 2; followed by als daß or um zu, with verbs of choosing, **242**, 3, N., **253**; after adjs., **244**.

zuerſt, **195**, 5.

zufolge, **223**, 11, R.

zunächſt, **51**, 7.

zuwider, **51**, 3.

zwei, declension of, **165**, 2.

zwiſchen, prep., **65**.

THE COPP, CLARK CO. LTD. TORONTO